

DrayTek

Vigor2860 Series

VDSL2 Security Firewall



Your reliable networking solutions partner

User's Guide

V3.0

Vigor2860 Series VDSL2 Security Firewall User's Guide

Version: 3.0

Firmware Version: V3.7.8

(For future update, please visit DrayTek web site)

Date: January 07, 2015

Copyright Information

Copyright Declarations

Copyright 2015 All rights reserved. This publication contains information that is protected by copyright. No part may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language without written permission from the copyright holders.

Trademarks

The following trademarks are used in this document:

- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.
- Windows, Windows 95, 98, Me, NT, 2000, XP, Vista and Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corp.
- Apple and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Other products may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective manufacturers.

Safety Instructions and Approval

Safety Instructions

- Read the installation guide thoroughly before you set up the router.
- The router is a complicated electronic unit that may be repaired only by authorized and qualified personnel. Do not try to open or repair the router yourself.
- Do not place the router in a damp or humid place, e.g. a bathroom.
- The router should be used in a sheltered area, within a temperature range of +5 to +40 Celsius.
- Do not expose the router to direct sunlight or other heat sources. The housing and electronic components may be damaged by direct sunlight or heat sources.
- Do not deploy the cable for LAN connection outdoor to prevent electronic shock hazards.
- Keep the package out of reach of children.
- When you want to dispose of the router, please follow local regulations on conservation of the environment.

Warranty

We warrant to the original end user (purchaser) that the router will be free from any defects in workmanship or materials for a period of two (2) years from the date of purchase from the dealer. Please keep your purchase receipt in a safe place as it serves as proof of date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, we will, at our discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components, without charge for either parts or labor, to whatever extent we deem necessary to restore the product to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal value, and will be offered solely at our discretion. This warranty will not apply if the product is modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions. The warranty does not cover the bundled or licensed software of other vendors. Defects which do not significantly affect the usability of the product will not be covered by the warranty. We reserve the right to revise the manual and online documentation and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof without obligation to notify any person of such revision or changes.

Be a Registered Owner

Web registration is preferred. You can register your Vigor router via <http://www.DrayTek.com>.

Firmware & Tools Updates

Due to the continuous evolution of DrayTek technology, all routers will be regularly upgraded. Please consult the DrayTek web site for more information on newest firmware, tools and documents.

<http://www.DrayTek.com>

European Community Declarations

Manufacturer: DrayTek Corp.
Address: No. 26, Fu Shing Road, Hukou Township, Hsinchu Industrial Park, Hsinchu County, Taiwan 303
Product: Vigor2860 Series Router

DrayTek Corp. declares that Vigor2860 Series of routers are in compliance with the following essential requirements and other relevant provisions of R&TTE 1999/5/EC, ErP 2009/125/EC and RoHS 2011/65/EU.

The product conforms to the requirements of Electro-Magnetic Compatibility (EMC) Directive 2004/108/EC by complying with the requirements set forth in EN55022/Class B and EN55024/Class B.

The product conforms to the requirements of Low Voltage (LVD) Directive 2006/95/EC by complying with the requirements set forth in EN60950-1.

This product is designed for the DSL and 2.4GHz/5GHz WLAN network throughout the EC region.

Regulatory Information

Federal Communication Commission Interference Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device may accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The antenna/transmitter should be kept at least 20 cm away from human body.

DrayTek Vigor2860 series VDSL2/ADSL2+ routers are compliant with 47 C.F.R. Part 68.



More update, please visit www.draytek.com.

Table of Contents

1

| | |
|---|----------|
| Introduction..... | 1 |
| 1.1 Web Configuration Buttons Explanation | 2 |
| 1.2 LED Indicators and Connectors | 3 |
| 1.2.1 For Vigor2860 | 3 |
| 1.2.2 For Vigor2860n | 5 |
| 1.2.3 For Vigor2860n-plus | 7 |
| 1.2.4 For Vigor2860Vn-plus..... | 9 |
| 1.2.5 For Vigor2860ac | 11 |
| 1.2.6 For Vigor2860Vac..... | 13 |
| 1.3 Hardware Installation | 15 |
| 1.4 Printer Installation | 16 |
| 1.5 Accessing Web Page | 24 |
| 1.6 Changing Password | 25 |
| 1.7 Introducing Dashboard..... | 27 |
| 1.7.1 Virtual Panel | 27 |
| 1.7.2 Name with a Link | 28 |
| 1.7.3 Quick Access for Common Used Menu..... | 29 |
| 1.7.4 GUI Map | 30 |
| 1.7.5 Web Console | 31 |
| 1.7.6 Config Backup | 32 |
| 1.7.7 Logout..... | 32 |
| 1.8 Online Status..... | 32 |
| 1.8.1 Physical Connection | 32 |
| 1.8.2 Virtual WAN | 35 |
| 1.9 Saving Configuration..... | 35 |

2

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------|
| Quick Setup..... | 37 |
| 2.1 Quick Start Wizard | 37 |
| 2.1.1 For WAN1 (ADSL/VDSL2)..... | 39 |
| 2.1.2 For WAN2 (Ethernet) | 45 |
| 2.1.3 For WAN3/WAN4 (USB)..... | 54 |
| 2.2 Service Activation Wizard..... | 56 |
| 2.3 VPN Client Wizard | 59 |
| 2.4 VPN Server Wizard..... | 65 |
| 2.5 Wireless Wizard | 70 |
| 2.6 VoIP Wizard..... | 74 |
| 2.7 Registering Vigor Router | 76 |

3

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Advanced Configuration | 79 |
| 3.1 WAN | 79 |
| 3.1.1 Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network..... | 79 |
| 3.1.2 General Setup..... | 81 |
| 3.1.3 Internet Access | 88 |
| 3.1.4 Multi-PVC/VLAN | 118 |
| 3.2 LAN | 125 |
| 3.2.1 Basics of LAN | 125 |
| 3.2.2 General Setup..... | 127 |
| 3.2.3 Static Route | 137 |
| 3.2.4 VLAN..... | 142 |
| 3.2.5 Bind IP to MAC | 146 |
| 3.2.6 LAN Port Mirror..... | 148 |
| 3.2.7 Wired 802.1x..... | 149 |
| 3.2.8 Web Portal Setup..... | 150 |
| 3.3 Load-Balance /Route Policy..... | 152 |
| 3.4 NAT | 162 |
| 3.4.1 Port Redirection | 164 |
| 3.4.2 DMZ Host..... | 168 |
| 3.4.3 Open Ports..... | 171 |
| 3.4.4 Port Triggering | 173 |
| 3.5 Firewall..... | 176 |
| 3.5.1 Basics for Firewall..... | 176 |
| 3.5.2 General Setup..... | 178 |
| 3.5.3 Filter Setup | 183 |
| 3.5.4 DoS Defense | 191 |
| 3.6 User Management..... | 195 |
| 3.6.1 General Setup..... | 196 |
| 3.6.2 User Profile | 198 |
| 3.6.3 User Group | 203 |
| 3.6.4 User Online Status..... | 204 |
| 3.7 Objects Settings | 205 |
| 3.7.1 IP Object | 205 |
| 3.7.2 IP Group | 208 |
| 3.7.3 IPv6 Object | 209 |
| 3.7.4 IPv6 Group..... | 211 |
| 3.7.5 Service Type Object | 212 |
| 3.7.6 Service Type Group..... | 214 |
| 3.7.7 Keyword Object | 216 |
| 3.7.8 Keyword Group..... | 218 |
| 3.7.9 File Extension Object..... | 219 |
| 3.7.10 SMS/Mail Service Object..... | 221 |
| 3.7.11 Notification Object..... | 226 |
| 3.8 CSM Profile | 228 |
| 3.8.1 APP Enforcement Profile..... | 229 |
| 3.8.2 APPE Signature Upgrade..... | 233 |
| 3.8.3 URL Content Filter Profile..... | 235 |
| 3.8.4 Web Content Filter Profile..... | 239 |
| 3.8.5 DNS Filter Profile..... | 243 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| 3.9 Bandwidth Management | 245 |
| 3.9.1 Sessions Limit..... | 245 |
| 3.9.2 Bandwidth Limit | 247 |
| 3.9.3 Quality of Service..... | 249 |
| 3.10 Applications | 258 |
| 3.10.1 Dynamic DNS | 258 |
| 3.10.2 LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding | 261 |
| 3.10.3 Schedule..... | 265 |
| 3.10.4 RADIUS/TACACS+ | 267 |
| 3.10.5 LDAP /Active Directory Setup..... | 269 |
| 3.10.6 UPnP..... | 272 |
| 3.10.7 IGMP | 274 |
| 3.10.8 Wake on LAN..... | 275 |
| 3.10.9 SMS / Mail Alert Service | 276 |
| 3.10.10 Bonjour | 278 |
| 3.11 VPN and Remote Access | 281 |
| 3.11.1 Remote Access Control..... | 282 |
| 3.11.2 PPP General Setup | 282 |
| 3.11.3 IPsec General Setup..... | 284 |
| 3.11.4 IPsec Peer Identity..... | 285 |
| 3.11.5 Remote Dial-in User | 287 |
| 3.11.6 LAN to LAN | 290 |
| 3.11.7 VPN TRUNK Management..... | 302 |
| 3.11.8 Connection Management | 311 |
| 3.12 Certificate Management | 312 |
| 3.12.1 Local Certificate | 312 |
| 3.12.2 Trusted CA Certificate | 316 |
| 3.12.3 Certificate Backup..... | 318 |
| 3.13 Central VPN Management | 319 |
| 3.13.1 General Setup..... | 319 |
| 3.13.2 CPE Management | 322 |
| 3.13.3 VPN Management | 328 |
| 3.13.4 Log & Alert | 330 |
| 3.14 Central AP Management | 331 |
| 3.14.1 Status..... | 331 |
| 3.14.2 WLAN Profile | 332 |
| 3.14.3 AP Maintenance | 336 |
| 3.14.4 AP Map..... | 337 |
| 3.14.5 Traffic Graph..... | 340 |
| 3.14.6 Rogue AP Detection | 341 |
| 3.14.7 Load Balance..... | 345 |
| 3.14.8 Function Support List..... | 347 |
| 3.15 VoIP | 348 |
| 3.15.1 DialPlan | 350 |
| 3.15.2 SIP Accounts | 359 |
| 3.15.3 Phone Settings | 364 |
| 3.15.4 Status..... | 369 |
| 3.16 Wireless LAN(2.4GHz/5GHz) | 371 |
| 3.16.1 Basic Concepts..... | 371 |
| 3.16.2 General Setup..... | 373 |
| 3.16.3 Security | 376 |
| 3.16.4 Access Control..... | 378 |

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| 3.16.5 WPS..... | 379 |
| 3.16.6 WDS..... | 382 |
| 3.16.7 Advanced Setting..... | 385 |
| 3.16.8 WMM Configuration..... | 387 |
| 3.16.9 AP Discovery..... | 389 |
| 3.16.10 Station List..... | 390 |
| 3.16.11 Station Control..... | 391 |
| 3.17 SSL VPN..... | 392 |
| 3.17.1 General Setup..... | 392 |
| 3.17.2 SSL Web Proxy..... | 393 |
| 3.17.3 SSL Application..... | 395 |
| 3.17.4 User Account..... | 397 |
| 3.17.5 User Group..... | 401 |
| 3.17.6 Online User Status..... | 403 |
| 3.18 USB Application..... | 404 |
| 3.18.1 USB General Settings..... | 404 |
| 3.18.2 USB User Management..... | 405 |
| 3.18.3 File Explorer..... | 407 |
| 3.18.4 USB Device Status..... | 408 |
| 3.18.5 Temperature Sensor..... | 409 |
| 3.18.6 Modem Support List..... | 411 |
| 3.19 System Maintenance..... | 412 |
| 3.19.1 System Status..... | 412 |
| 3.19.2 TR-069..... | 414 |
| 3.19.3 Administrator Password..... | 416 |
| 3.19.4 User Password..... | 418 |
| 3.19.5 Login Page Greeting..... | 420 |
| 3.19.6 Configuration Backup..... | 422 |
| 3.19.7 Syslog/Mail Alert..... | 425 |
| 3.19.8 Time and Date..... | 428 |
| 3.19.9 SNMP..... | 429 |
| 3.19.10 Management..... | 431 |
| 3.19.11 Reboot System..... | 434 |
| 3.19.12 Firmware Upgrade..... | 435 |
| 3.19.13 Modem Code Upgrade..... | 436 |
| 3.19.14 Activation..... | 436 |
| 3.20 Diagnostics..... | 437 |
| 3.20.1 Dial-out Triggering..... | 438 |
| 3.20.2 Routing Table..... | 439 |
| 3.20.3 ARP Cache Table..... | 440 |
| 3.20.4 IPv6 Neighbour Table..... | 440 |
| 3.20.5 DHCP Table..... | 441 |
| 3.20.6 NAT Sessions Table..... | 442 |
| 3.20.7 DNS Cache Table..... | 443 |
| 3.20.8 Ping Diagnosis..... | 444 |
| 3.20.9 Data Flow Monitor..... | 445 |
| 3.20.10 Traffic Graph..... | 447 |
| 3.20.11 Trace Route..... | 448 |
| 3.20.12 Syslog Explorer..... | 449 |
| 3.20.13 TSPC Status..... | 450 |
| 3.21 External Devices..... | 451 |
| 3.21.1 All Devices..... | 451 |

4

Tutorials and Applications.....453

| | |
|--|-----|
| 4.1 How to configure settings for IPv6 Service in Vigor2860..... | 453 |
| 4.2 How can I get the files from USB storage device connecting to Vigor router? | 466 |
| 4.3 How to Build a LAN-to-LAN VPN Between Remote Office and Headquarter via IPsec Tunnel (Main Mode) | 469 |
| 4.4 How to Optimize the Bandwidth through QoS Technology | 473 |
| 4.5 QoS Setting Example..... | 478 |
| 4.6 How to Implement the LDAP/AD Authentication for User Management?..... | 483 |
| 4.7 How to use Landing Page Feature | 486 |
| 4.8 How to Send a Notification to Specified Phone Number via SMS Service in WAN Disconnection..... | 490 |
| 4.9 How to Create an Account for MyVigor..... | 494 |
| 4.9.1 Create an Account via Vigor Router | 494 |
| 4.9.2 Create an Account via MyVigor Web Site | 498 |
| 4.10 How to Setup Address Mapping..... | 502 |
| 4.11 How to Configure Certain Computers Accessing to Internet | 506 |
| 4.12 How to Block Facebook Service Accessed by the Users via Web Content Filter / URL Content Filter..... | 510 |
| 4.13 How to use AP Management function (in Vigor2860) to check AP status and deploy WLAN profile..... | 515 |
| 4.14 CVM Application - How to manage the CPE (router) through Vigor2860 series? | 518 |
| 4.15 CVM Application - How to build the VPN between remote devices and Vigor2860 series? | 522 |
| 4.16 CVM Application - How to upgrade CPE firmware through Vigor2860 series? | 524 |
| 4.17 How to setup Load Balance for Packets? | 527 |
| 4.18 How to authenticate clients via User Management..... | 529 |

5

Trouble Shooting.....539

| | |
|---|-----|
| 5.1 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not..... | 539 |
| 5.2 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not | 540 |
| 5.3 Pinging the Router from Your Computer | 543 |
| 5.4 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not..... | 544 |
| 5.5 Problems for 3G Network Connection | 545 |
| 5.6 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary | 546 |
| 5.7 Contacting DrayTek..... | 547 |

Appendix I: VLAN Applications on Vigor Router549

Telnet Command Reference.....557

| | |
|--|-----|
| Accessing Telnet of Vigor2860..... | 557 |
| Telnet Command: adsl txpct /adsl rxpct | 557 |
| Telnet Command: adsl status | 558 |
| Telnet Command: adsl ppp..... | 558 |
| Telnet Command: adsl bridge..... | 560 |
| Telnet Command: adsl idle | 561 |
| Telnet Command: adsl drivemode..... | 561 |
| Telnet Command: adsl reboot | 561 |
| Telnet Command: adsl oamlb..... | 562 |
| Telnet Command: adsl vcilimit..... | 562 |
| Telnet Command: adsl annex..... | 563 |
| Telnet Command: adsl automode | 563 |
| Telnet Command: adsl optn..... | 563 |
| Telnet Command: adsl savecfg | 564 |
| Telnet Command: adsl vendorid..... | 564 |
| Telnet Command: adsl atm..... | 564 |
| Telnet Command: adsl pvcbinding | 565 |
| Telnet Command: adsl snr..... | 566 |
| Telnet Command: bpa | 566 |
| Telnet Command: csm appe prof | 567 |
| Telnet Command: csm appe p2p | 568 |
| Telnet Command: csm appe prot | 569 |
| Telnet Command: csm appe misc | 569 |
| Telnet Command: csm ucf..... | 570 |
| Telnet Command: csm ucf obj INDEX uac | 571 |
| Telnet Command: csm ucf obj INDEX wf | 574 |
| Telnet Command: csm wcf | 575 |
| Telnet Command: ddns log..... | 577 |
| Telnet Command: ddns time..... | 577 |
| Telnet Command: dos | 578 |
| Telnet Command: exit..... | 579 |
| Telnet Command: Internet | 579 |
| Telnet Command: ip 2ndsubnet..... | 580 |
| Telnet Command: ip 2ndaddr | 580 |
| Telnet Command: ip 2ndmask..... | 581 |
| Telnet Command: ip aux..... | 581 |
| Telnet Command: ip addr | 582 |
| Telnet Command: ip nmask..... | 583 |
| Telnet Command: ip arp | 583 |
| Telnet Command: ip dhcpc..... | 584 |
| Telnet Command: ip ping..... | 585 |
| Telnet Command: ip tracert | 585 |
| Telnet Command: ip telnet..... | 586 |
| Telnet Command: ip rip | 586 |
| Telnet Command: ip wanrip..... | 587 |
| Telnet Command: ip route | 588 |
| Telnet Command: ip igmp_proxy..... | 589 |
| Telnet Command: ip wanaddr..... | 590 |
| Telnet Command: ip wanttr..... | 590 |
| Telnet Command: ip dmz..... | 590 |
| Telnet Command: ip session | 591 |
| Telnet Command: ip bandwidth..... | 592 |
| Telnet Command: ip bindmac..... | 593 |
| Telnet Command: ip maxnatuser..... | 594 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 addr | 594 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp req_opt | 594 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp client | 595 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp server | 596 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 internet | 598 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 neigh..... | 599 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Telnet Command: ip6 pneigh..... | 600 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 route | 600 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 ping..... | 601 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 tracert | 602 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 tspec..... | 602 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 radvd | 603 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 mngt | 603 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 online..... | 604 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 aiccu | 605 |
| Telnet Command: ip6 ntp | 606 |
| Telnet Command: ipf view | 606 |
| Telnet Command: ipf set..... | 607 |
| Telnet Command: ipf rule | 608 |
| Telnet Command: ipf flowtrack | 612 |
| Telnet Command: Log | 613 |
| Telnet Command: mngt ftpport..... | 614 |
| Telnet Command: mngt httpport..... | 614 |
| Telnet Command: mngt httpsport | 615 |
| Telnet Command: mngt telnetport | 615 |
| Telnet Command: mngt sshport | 615 |
| Telnet Command: mngt ftpserver | 615 |
| Telnet Command: mngt noping | 616 |
| Telnet Command: mngt defenseworm | 617 |
| Telnet Command: mngt rmtcfg | 617 |
| Telnet Command: mngt lanaccess | 618 |
| Telnet Command: mngt echoicmp..... | 619 |
| Telnet Command: mngt accesslist | 619 |
| Telnet Command: mngt snmp | 620 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet switch | 621 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet addr | 621 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet nmask..... | 622 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet status..... | 622 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet dhcps..... | 623 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet nat | 623 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet gateway | 624 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet ipcnt..... | 624 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet talk..... | 625 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet startip | 626 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet pppip | 626 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet nodetype | 627 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet primWINS | 628 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet secWINS | 628 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet tftp | 630 |
| Telnet Command: msubnet mtu | 630 |
| Telnet Command: object ip obj..... | 631 |
| Telnet Command: object ip grp..... | 632 |
| Telnet Command: object ipv6 obj | 634 |
| Telnet Command: object ipv6 grp..... | 635 |
| Telnet Command: object service obj | 636 |
| Telnet Command: object service grp | 638 |
| Telnet Command: object kw | 639 |
| Telnet Command: object fe..... | 639 |
| Telnet Command: port..... | 642 |
| Telnet Command: portmuptime | 642 |
| Telnet Command: prn | 643 |
| Telnet Command: qos setup..... | 644 |
| Telnet Command: qos class | 646 |
| Telnet Command: qos type..... | 647 |
| Telnet Command: quit | 648 |
| Telnet Command: show lan | 648 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Telnet Command: show dmz | 649 |
| Telnet Command: show dns | 649 |
| Telnet Command: show openport | 649 |
| Telnet Command: show nat..... | 649 |
| Telnet Command: show portmap..... | 650 |
| Telnet Command: show pmtime | 650 |
| Telnet Command: show session..... | 650 |
| Telnet Command: show status | 650 |
| Telnet Command: show adsl | 651 |
| Telnet Command: show statistic..... | 651 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp badip..... | 652 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp public | 652 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp dns1 | 652 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp dns2..... | 653 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp frcdnsmanl..... | 654 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp gateway | 654 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp ipcnt..... | 655 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp off..... | 655 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp on..... | 655 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp relay..... | 655 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp startip..... | 655 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp status | 656 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp leasetime | 657 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp nodetype..... | 657 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp primWINS | 658 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp secWINS | 658 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp expired_RecycleIP | 659 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp tftp..... | 659 |
| Telnet Command: srv dhcp option..... | 659 |
| Telnet Command: srv nat dmz..... | 661 |
| Telnet Command: srv nat ipsecpass | 661 |
| Telnet Command: srv nat openport | 662 |
| Telnet Command: srv nat portmap | 663 |
| Telnet Command: srv nat showall | 665 |
| Telnet Command: switch -i | 665 |
| Telnet Command: switch on | 666 |
| Telnet Command: switch off | 666 |
| Telnet Command: switch list..... | 666 |
| Telnet Command: switch clear | 666 |
| Telnet Command: switch query | 667 |
| Telnet Command: sys admin | 667 |
| Telnet Command: sys adminuser | 667 |
| Telnet Command: sys bonjour..... | 668 |
| Telnet Command: sys cfg | 669 |
| Telnet Command: sys cmdlog | 669 |
| Telnet Command: sys ftpd..... | 669 |
| Telnet Command: sys domainname | 670 |
| Telnet Command: sys iface | 670 |
| Telnet Command: sys name..... | 672 |
| Telnet Command: sys passwd..... | 672 |
| Telnet Command: sys reboot..... | 672 |
| Telnet Command: sys autoreboot | 673 |
| Telnet Command: sys commit | 673 |
| Telnet Command: sys tftp..... | 673 |
| Telnet Command: sys cc | 673 |
| Telnet Command: sys version | 673 |
| Telnet Command: sys qrybuf..... | 674 |
| Telnet Command: sys pollbuf | 674 |
| Telnet Command: sys britask | 675 |
| Telnet Command: sys tr069..... | 675 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Telnet Command: sys sip_alg | 677 |
| Telnet Command: sys license..... | 677 |
| Telnet Command: sys diag_log | 678 |
| Telnet Command: testmail..... | 679 |
| Telnet Command: upnp off | 679 |
| Telnet Command: upnp on | 680 |
| Telnet Command: upnp nat | 680 |
| Telnet Command: upnp service..... | 680 |
| Telnet Command: upnp subscribe..... | 681 |
| Telnet Command: upnp tmpvs..... | 682 |
| Telnet Command: upnp wan..... | 683 |
| Telnet Command: usb list | 683 |
| Telnet Command: vigbrg on | 684 |
| Telnet Command: vigbrg off | 684 |
| Telnet Command: vigbrg status..... | 684 |
| Telnet Command: vigbrg cfgip..... | 685 |
| Telnet Command: vigbrg wan1on..... | 685 |
| Telnet Command: vigbrg wan1off..... | 685 |
| Telnet Command: vpn l2lset | 685 |
| Telnet Command: vpn l2lDrop | 686 |
| Telnet Command: vpn dinset..... | 686 |
| Telnet Command: vpn subnet..... | 687 |
| Telnet Command: vpn setup..... | 688 |
| Telnet Command: vpn option..... | 690 |
| Telnet Command: vpn mroute | 693 |
| Telnet Command: vpn list | 693 |
| Telnet Command: vpn remote | 695 |
| Telnet Command: vpn 2ndsubnet | 695 |
| Telnet Command: vpn NetBios..... | 695 |
| Telnet Command: vpn mss..... | 696 |
| Telnet Command: vpn ike..... | 697 |
| Telnet Command: vpn Multicast | 697 |
| Telnet Command: vpn pass2nd..... | 697 |
| Telnet Command: vpn pass2nat..... | 698 |
| Telnet Command: wan ppp_mru | 698 |
| Telnet Command: wan mtu..... | 699 |
| Telnet Command: wan DF_check | 699 |
| Telnet Command: wan disable | 700 |
| Telnet Command: wan enable..... | 700 |
| Telnet Command: wan forward..... | 700 |
| Telnet Command: wan status | 700 |
| Telnet Command: wan vdsl | 701 |
| Telnet Command: wan detect..... | 701 |
| Telnet Command: wan lb..... | 702 |
| Telnet Command: wan mvlan | 703 |
| Telnet Command: wan multifno | 704 |
| Telnet Command: wl acl | 705 |
| Telnet Command: wl config | 706 |
| Telnet Command: wl set | 708 |
| Telnet Command: wl act | 709 |
| Telnet Command: wl scan | 709 |
| Telnet Command: wl stamgt..... | 710 |
| Telnet Command: wl iso_vpn | 711 |
| Telnet Command: wl wpa | 711 |
| Telnet Command: wl wmm | 711 |
| Telnet Command: wl ht..... | 713 |
| Telnet Command: wl restart..... | 714 |
| Telnet Command: wl btnctl | 714 |
| Telnet Command: wl iwpriv & wl wlanconfig..... | 714 |
| Telnet Command: wl efuse | 714 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Telnet Command: wan vlan | 715 |
| Telnet Command: wol..... | 715 |
| Telnet Command: user | 716 |
| Telnet Command: nand bad /nand usage | 718 |
| Telnet Command: apm show /clear/discover/query | 719 |
| Telnet Command: apm profile | 719 |
| Telnet Command: apm cache..... | 720 |
| Telnet Command: apm lbcfg..... | 721 |
| Telnet Command: apm napdetect | 722 |

1

Introduction



Note: This is a generic International version of the user guide. Specification, compatibility and features vary by region. For specific user guides suitable for your region or product, please contact local distributor.

Vigor2860 series is a VDSL2 router. It integrates IP layer QoS, NAT session/bandwidth management to help users control works well with large bandwidth.

By adopting hardware-based VPN platform and hardware encryption of AES/DES/3DES, the router increases the performance of VPN greatly, and offers several protocols (such as IPsec/PPTP/L2TP) with up to **32** VPN tunnels.

The object-based design used in SPI (Stateful Packet Inspection) firewall allows users to set firewall policy with ease. CSM (Content Security Management) provides users control and management in IM (Instant Messenger) and P2P (Peer to Peer) more efficiency than before. By the way, DoS/DDoS prevention and URL/Web content filter strengthen the security outside and control inside. Object-based firewall is flexible and allows your network be safe.

User Management implemented on your router firmware can allow you to prevent any computer from accessing your Internet connection without a username or password. You can also allocate time budgets to your employees within office network.

With the 6-port Gigabit switch on the LAN side provides extremely high speed connectivity for the highest speed local data transfer of any server or local PCs. The tagged VLANs (IEEE802.1Q) can mark data with a VLAN identifier. This identifier can be carried through an onward Ethernet switch to specific ports. The specific VLAN clients can also pick up this identifier as it is just passed to the LAN. You can set the priorities for LAN-side QoS. You can assign each of VLANs to each of the different IP subnets that the router may also be operating, to provide even more isolation. The said functionality is tag-based Multi-subnet (Multiple-Private LAN Subnets).

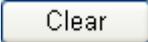
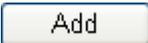
On the Wireless-equipped models (Vigor2860n/n plus/Vn/Vn plus) each of the wireless SSIDs can also be grouped within one of the VLANs.

In addition, Vigor2860 series supports USB interface for connecting USB printer to share printing function or 3G USB modem for network connection.

Vigor2860 series provides two-level management to simplify the configuration of network connection. The user mode allows user accessing into WEB interface via simple configuration. However, if users want to have advanced configurations, they can access into WEB interface through admin mode.

1.1 Web Configuration Buttons Explanation

Several main buttons appeared on the web pages are defined as the following:

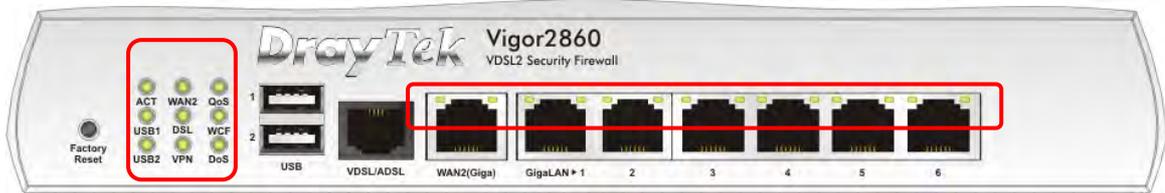
| | |
|---|--|
|  | Save and apply current settings. |
|  | Cancel current settings and recover to the previous saved settings. |
|  | Clear all the selections and parameters settings, including selection from drop-down list. All the values must be reset with factory default settings. |
|  | Add new settings for specified item. |
|  | Edit the settings for the selected item. |
|  | Delete the selected item with the corresponding settings. |

Note: For the other buttons shown on the web pages, please refer to Chapter 3, 4 for detailed explanation.

1.2 LED Indicators and Connectors

Before you use the Vigor router, please get acquainted with the LED indicators and connectors first.

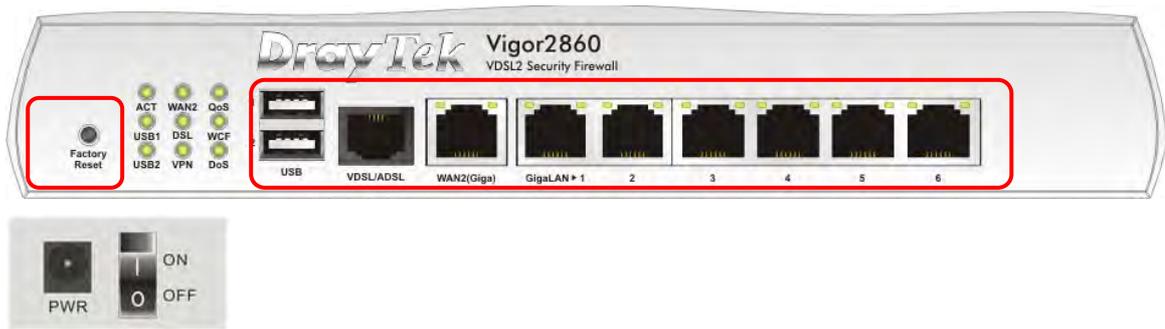
1.2.1 For Vigor2860



| LED | Status | Explanation |
|----------------|----------|---|
| ACT (Activity) | Blinking | The router is powered on and running normally. |
| | Off | The router is powered off. |
| USB1~2 | On | USB device is connected and ready for use. |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| WAN2 | On | Internet connection is ready. |
| | Off | Internet connection is not ready. |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| DSL | On | The router is ready to access Internet through DSL link. |
| | Blinking | Slowly: The DSL connection is ready. Quickly: The connection is training. |
| VPN | On | The VPN tunnel is active. |
| QoS | On | The QoS function is active. |
| WCF | On | The Web Content Filter is active. (It is enabled from Firewall >> General Setup). |
| DoS | On | The DoS function is active. |
| | Blinking | It will blink while detecting an attack. |

LED on Connector

| | | | |
|----------------|--------------|----------|---------------------------------------|
| WAN2 (Giga) | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Right LED | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |
| | | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Right LED | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |
| | | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |



| Interface | Description |
|---------------|---|
| Factory Reset | Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration. |
| USB | Connector for a USB device (for 3G USB Modem or printer). |
| VDSL/ADSL | Connector for accessing the Internet. |
| WAN2 | Connector for local network devices or modem for accessing Internet. |
| GigaLAN (1-6) | Connectors for local network devices. |
| PWR | Connector for a power adapter. |
| ON/OFF | Power Switch. |

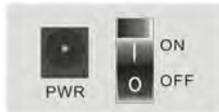
1.2.2 For Vigor2860n



| LED | Status | Explanation |
|----------------|----------|--|
| ACT (Activity) | Blinking | The router is powered on and running normally. |
| | Off | The router is powered off. |
| USB | On | USB device is connected and ready for use. |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| WLAN | On | Wireless access point is ready. |
| | Blinking | It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.) |
| WAN2 | On | Internet connection is ready. |
| | Off | Internet connection is not ready. |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| DSL | On | The router is ready to access Internet through DSL link. |
| | Blinking | Slowly: The DSL connection is ready. Quickly: The connection is training. |
| VPN | On | The VPN tunnel is active. |
| QoS | On | The QoS function is active. |
| WCF | On | The Web Content Filter is active. (It is enabled from Firewall >> General Setup). |
| DoS | On | The DoS function is active. |
| | Blinking | It will blink while detecting an attack. |

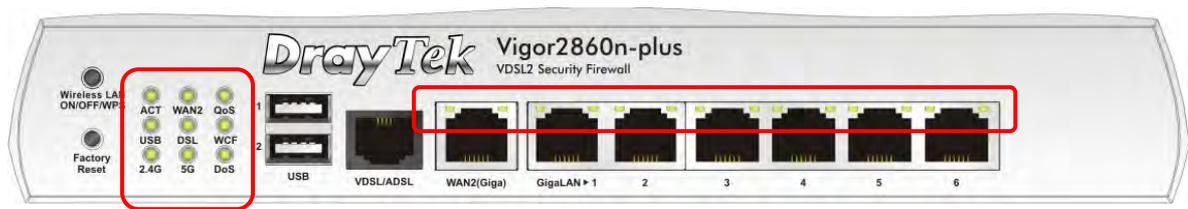
LED on Connector

| | | | |
|----------------|--------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| WAN2 (Giga) | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| Right LED | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. | |
| | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps | |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| | Right LED | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |
| | | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |



| Interface | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS | Press "Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS" button once to wait for client device making network connection through WPS. Press "Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS" button twice to enable (WLAN LED on) or disable (WLAN LED off) wireless connection. |
| Factory Reset | Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration. |
| USB | Connector for a USB device (for 3G USB Modem or printer). |
| VDSL/ADSL | Connector for accessing the Internet. |
| WAN2 (Giga) | Connector for local network devices or modem for accessing Internet. |
| GigaLAN (1-6) | Connectors for local network devices. |
| PWR | Connector for a power adapter. |
| ON/OFF | Power Switch. |

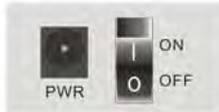
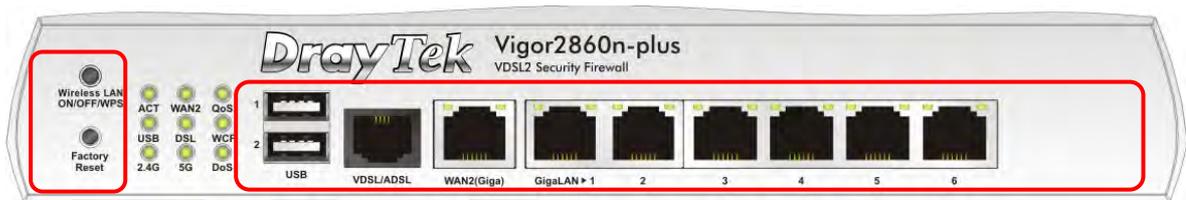
1.2.3 For Vigor2860n-plus



| LED | Status | Explanation |
|----------------|----------|--|
| ACT (Activity) | Blinking | The router is powered on and running normally. |
| | Off | The router is powered off. |
| USB | On | USB device is connected and ready for use. |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| 2.4G | On | Wireless access point with bandwidth of 2.4GHz is ready. |
| | Blinking | It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.) |
| WAN2 | On | Internet connection is ready. |
| | Off | Internet connection is not ready. |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| DSL | On | The router is ready to access Internet through DSL link. |
| | Blinking | Slowly: The DSL connection is ready. Quickly: The connection is training. |
| 5G | On | Wireless access point with bandwidth of 5GHz is ready. |
| | Blinking | It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.) |
| QoS | On | The QoS function is active. |
| WCF | On | The Web Content Filter is active. (It is enabled from Firewall >> General Setup). |
| DoS | On | The DoS function is active. |
| | Blinking | It will blink while detecting an attack. |

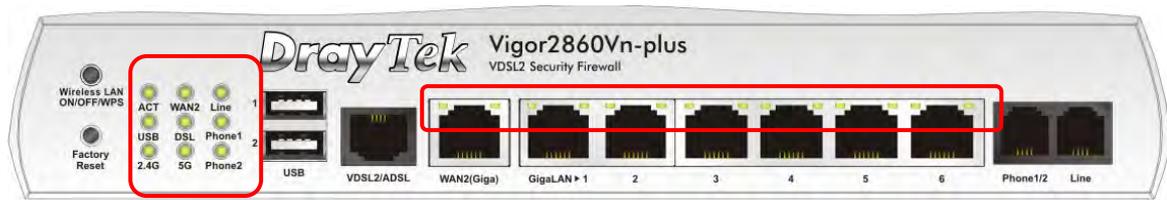
LED on Connector

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------|---------------------------------------|
| WAN2 (Giga) | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Right LED | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |
| | | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Right LED | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |
| | | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |



| Interface | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS | Press "Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS" button once to wait for client device making network connection through WPS. Press "Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS" button twice to enable (WLAN LED on) or disable (WLAN LED off) wireless connection. |
| Factory Reset | Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration. |
| USB | Connector for a USB device (for 3G USB Modem or printer). |
| VDSL/ADSL | Connector for accessing the Internet. |
| WAN2 (Giga) | Connector for local network devices or modem for accessing Internet. |
| GigaLAN (1-6) | Connectors for local network devices. |
| PWR | Connector for a power adapter. |
| ON/OFF | Power Switch. |

1.2.4 For Vigor2860Vn-plus

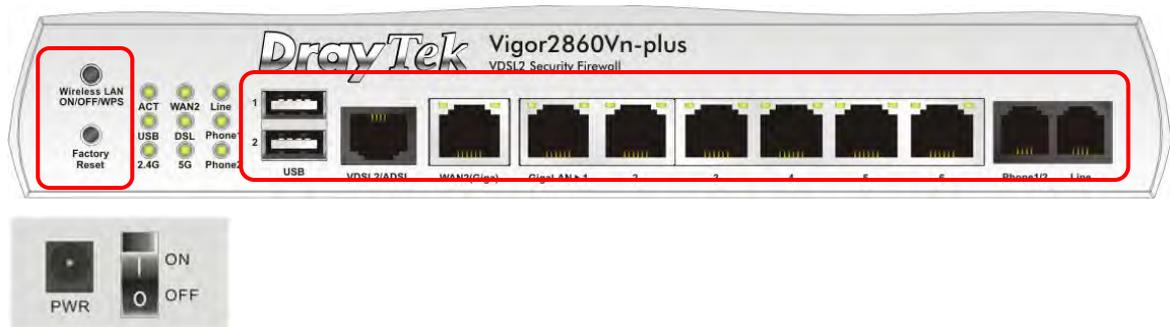


| LED | Status | Explanation |
|----------------|----------|--|
| ACT (Activity) | Blinking | The router is powered on and running normally. |
| | Off | The router is powered off. |
| USB | On | USB device is connected and ready for use. |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| 2.4G | On | Wireless access point with bandwidth of 2.4GHz is ready. |
| | Blinking | It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.) |
| WAN2 | On | Internet connection is ready. |
| | Off | Internet connection is not ready. |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| DSL | On | The router is ready to access Internet through DSL link. |
| | Blinking | Slowly: The DSL connection is ready. Quickly: The connection is training. |
| 5G | On | Wireless access point with bandwidth of 5GHz is ready. |
| | Blinking | It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.) |
| Line | On | A PSTN phone call comes (in and out). However, when the phone call is disconnected, the LED will be off. |
| | Off | There is no PSTN phone call. |
| Phone (1-2) | On | The phone connected to this port is off-hook. |
| | Off | The phone connected to this port is on-hook. |
| | Blinking | A phone call comes. |

LED on Connector

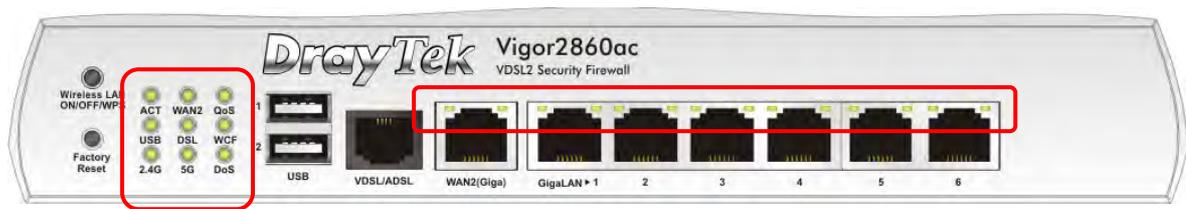
| | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------|---------------------------------------|
| WAN2 (Giga) | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Right LED | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |
| | | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| | Right | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |

| | | |
|-----|-----|---------------------------------------|
| LED | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |
|-----|-----|---------------------------------------|

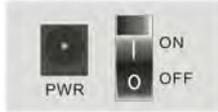


| Interface | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS | Press "Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS" button once to wait for client device making network connection through WPS. Press "Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS" button twice to enable (WLAN LED on) or disable (WLAN LED off) wireless connection. |
| Factory Reset | Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration. |
| USB | Connector for a USB device (for 3G USB Modem or printer). |
| VDSL2/ADSL | Connector for accessing the Internet. |
| WAN2 (Giga) | Connector for local network devices or modem for accessing Internet. |
| GigaLAN (1-6) | Connectors for local network devices. |
| Phone 1/2 | Connector for analog phone(s). |
| Line | Connector for PSTN life line. |
| PWR | Connector for a power adapter. |

1.2.5 For Vigor2860ac

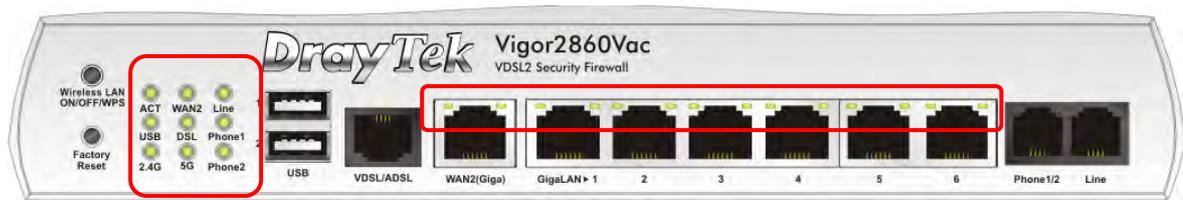


| LED | Status | Explanation | |
|-------------------------|-----------|--|---------------------------------------|
| ACT (Activity) | Blinking | The router is powered on and running normally. | |
| | Off | The router is powered off. | |
| USB | On | USB device is connected and ready for use. | |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. | |
| 2.4G | On | Wireless access point with bandwidth of 2.4GHz is ready. | |
| | Blinking | It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.) | |
| WAN2 | On | Internet connection is ready. | |
| | Off | Internet connection is not ready. | |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. | |
| DSL | On | The router is ready to access Internet through DSL link. | |
| | Blinking | Slowly: The DSL connection is ready. Quickly: The connection is training. | |
| 5G | On | Wireless access point with bandwidth of 5GHz is ready. | |
| | Blinking | It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.) | |
| QoS | On | The QoS function is active. | |
| WCF | On | The Web Content Filter is active. (It is enabled from Firewall >> General Setup). | |
| DoS | On | The DoS function is active. | |
| | Blinking | It will blink while detecting an attack. | |
| LED on Connector | | | |
| WAN2 (Giga) | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| | Right LED | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |
| | | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| | Right LED | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |
| | | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |



| Interface | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS | Press "Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS" button once to wait for client device making network connection through WPS. Press "Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS" button twice to enable (WLAN LED on) or disable (WLAN LED off) wireless connection. |
| Factory Reset | Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration. |
| USB | Connector for a USB device (for 3G USB Modem or printer). |
| VDSL/ADSL | Connector for accessing the Internet. |
| WAN2 (Giga) | Connector for local network devices or modem for accessing Internet. |
| GigaLAN (1-6) | Connectors for local network devices. |
| PWR | Connector for a power adapter. |
| ON/OFF | Power Switch. |

1.2.6 For Vigor2860Vac

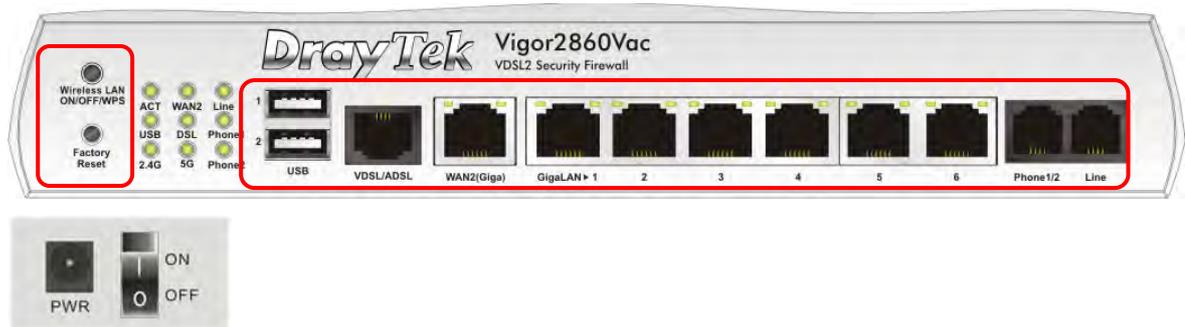


| LED | Status | Explanation |
|----------------|----------|--|
| ACT (Activity) | Blinking | The router is powered on and running normally. |
| | Off | The router is powered off. |
| USB | On | USB device is connected and ready for use. |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| 2.4G | On | Wireless access point with bandwidth of 2.4GHz is ready. |
| | Blinking | It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.) |
| WAN2 | On | Internet connection is ready. |
| | Off | Internet connection is not ready. |
| | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| DSL | On | The router is ready to access Internet through DSL link. |
| | Blinking | Slowly: The DSL connection is ready. Quickly: The connection is training. |
| 5G | On | Wireless access point with bandwidth of 5GHz is ready. |
| | Blinking | It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.) |
| Line | On | A PSTN phone call comes (in and out). However, when the phone call is disconnected, the LED will be off. |
| | Off | There is no PSTN phone call. |
| Phone (1-2) | On | The phone connected to this port is off-hook. |
| | Off | The phone connected to this port is on-hook. |
| | Blinking | A phone call comes. |

LED on Connector

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------|---------------------------------------|
| WAN2 (Giga) | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Right LED | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |
| | | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |
| GigaLAN 1~6 | Left LED | On | The port is connected. |
| | | Off | The port is disconnected. |
| | | Blinking | The data is transmitting. |
| | Right | On | The port is connected with 1000Mbps. |

| | | |
|-----|-----|---------------------------------------|
| LED | Off | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps |
|-----|-----|---------------------------------------|



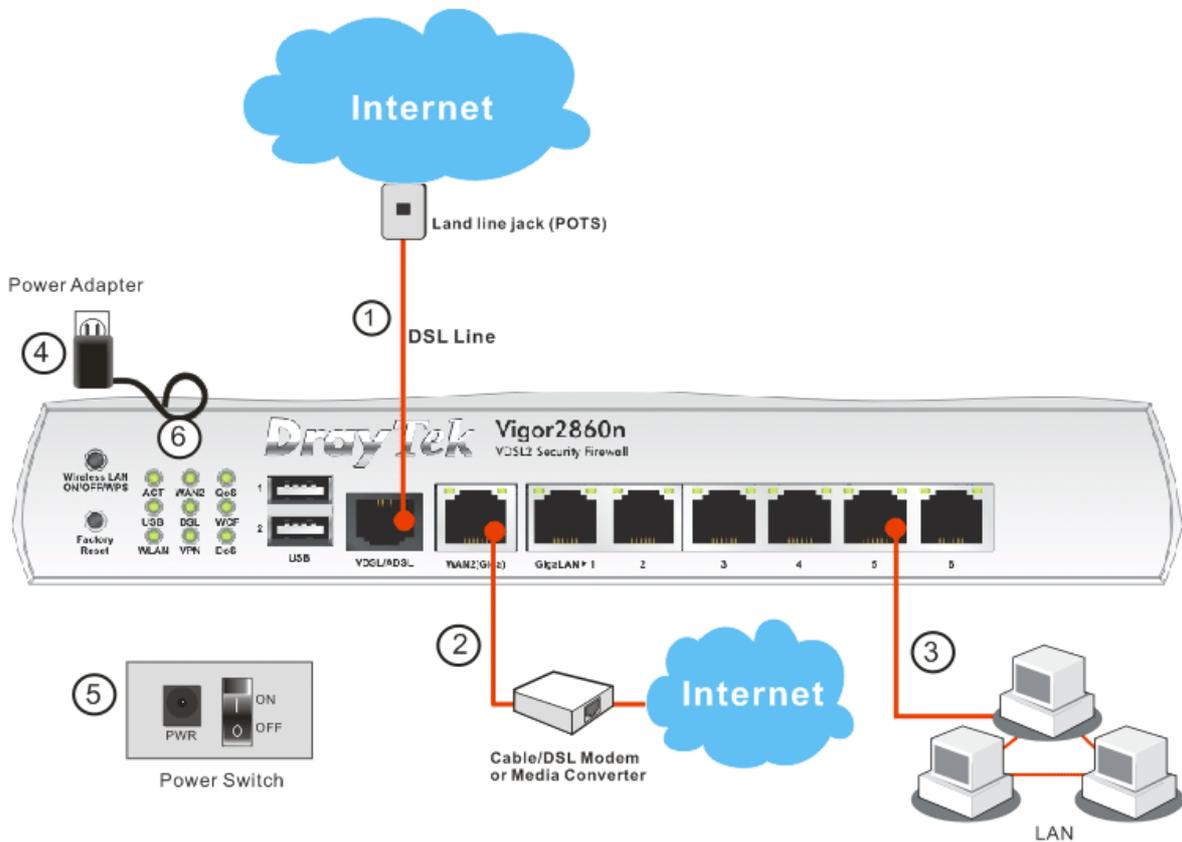
| Interface | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS | Press "Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS" button once to wait for client device making network connection through WPS. Press "Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS" button twice to enable (WLAN LED on) or disable (WLAN LED off) wireless connection. |
| Factory Reset | Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration. |
| USB | Connector for a USB device (for 3G USB Modem or printer). |
| VDSL/ADSL | Connector for accessing the Internet. |
| WAN2 (Giga) | Connector for local network devices or modem for accessing Internet. |
| GigaLAN (1-6) | Connectors for local network devices. |
| Phone 1/2 | Connector for analog phone(s). |
| Line | Connector for PSTN life line. |
| PWR | Connector for a power adapter. |
| ON/OFF | Power Switch. |

1.3 Hardware Installation

Before starting to configure the router, you have to connect your devices correctly.

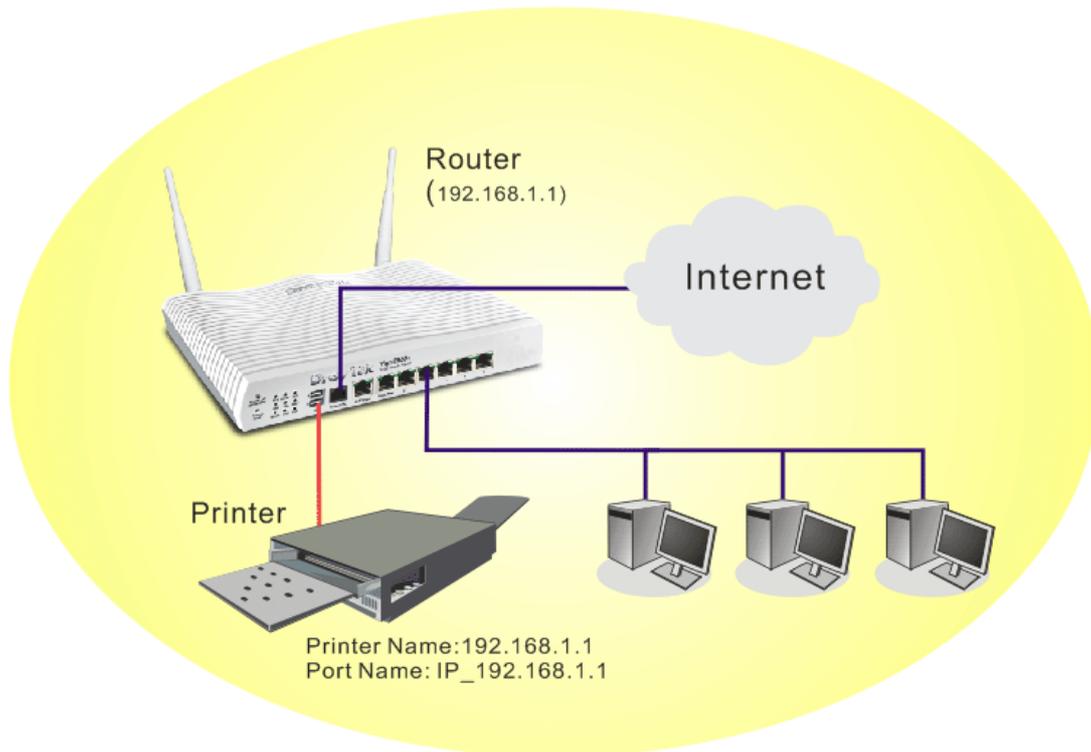
1. Connect the DSL interface to the land line jack with a DSL line cable.
2. Connect the cable Modem/DSL Modem/Media Converter to the WAN port of router with Ethernet cable (RJ-45).
3. Connect one end of an Ethernet cable (RJ-45) to one of the **LAN** ports of the router and the other end of the cable (RJ-45) into the Ethernet port on your computer.
4. Connect one end of the power adapter to the router's power port on the rear panel, and the other side into a wall outlet.
5. Power on the device by pressing down the power switch on the rear panel.
6. The system starts to initiate. After completing the system test, the **ACT** LED will light up and start blinking.

(For the hardware connection, we take “n” model as an example.)



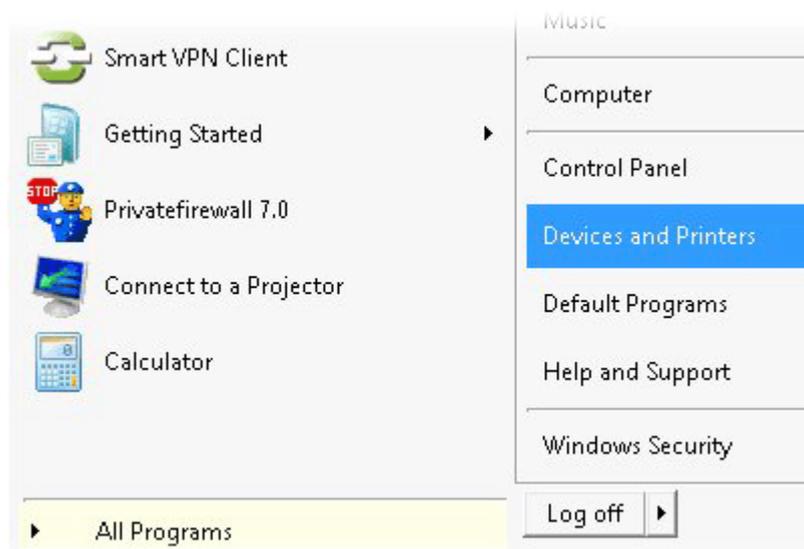
1.4 Printer Installation

You can install a printer onto the router for sharing printing. All the PCs connected this router can print documents via the router. The example provided here is made based on Windows 7. For other Windows system, please visit www.DrayTek.com.

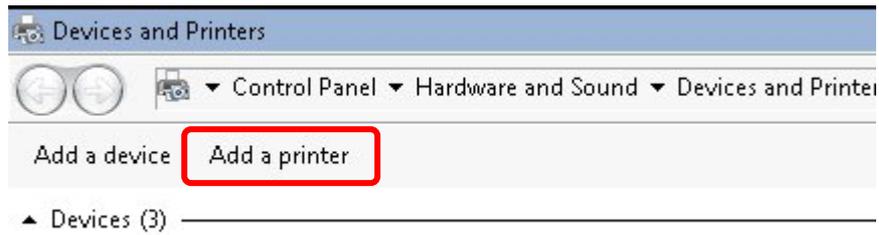


Before using it, please follow the steps below to configure settings for connected computers (or wireless clients).

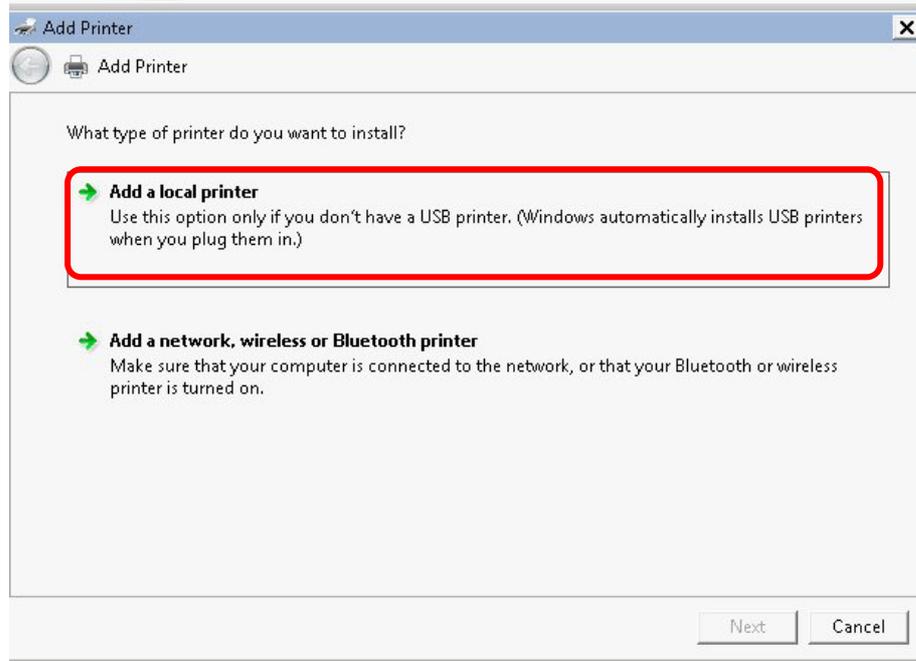
1. Connect the printer with the router through USB/parallel port.
2. Open **All Programs>>Getting Started>>Devices and Printers**.



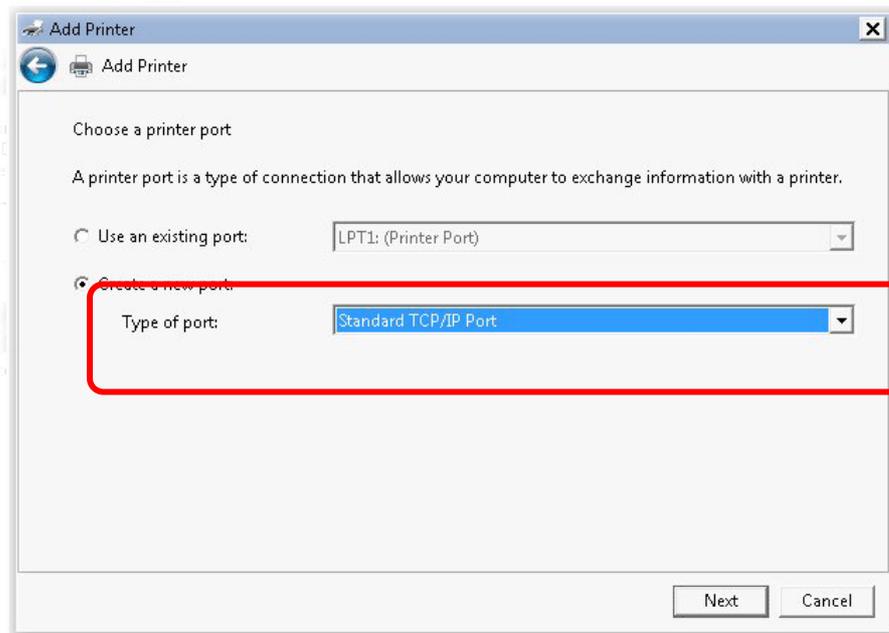
3. Click **Add a printer**.



4. A dialog will appear. Click **Add a local printer** and click **Next**.



5. In this dialog, choose **Create a new port**. In the field of **Type of port**, use the drop down list to select **Standard TCP/IP Port**. Then, click **Next**.



6. In the following dialog, type **192.168.1.1** (router's LAN IP) in the field of **Hostname or IP Address** and type **192.168.1.1** as the **Port name**. Then, click **Next**.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Printer' dialog box with the following fields and values:

- Device type: TCP/IP Device
- Hostname or IP address: 192.168.1.1
- Port name: 192.168.1.1
- Query the printer and automatically select the driver to use:

Buttons: Next, Cancel

7. Click **Standard** and choose **Generic Network Card**.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Printer' dialog box with the following content:

Additional port information required

The device is not found on the network. Be sure that:

1. The device is turned on.
2. The network is connected.
3. The device is properly configured.
4. The address on the previous page is correct.

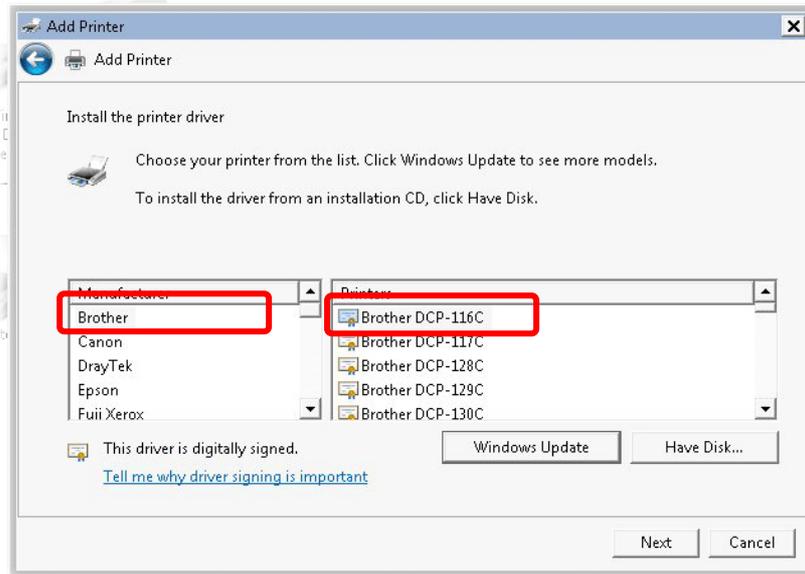
If you think the address is not correct, click Back to return to the previous page. Then correct the address and perform another search on the network. If you are sure the address is correct, select the device type below.

Device Type

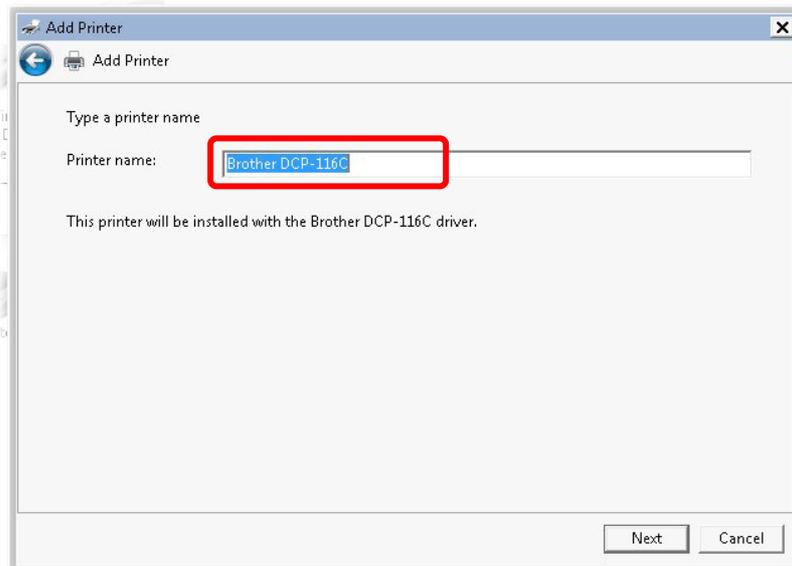
- Standard: Generic Network Card
- Custom: Settings...

Buttons: Next, Cancel

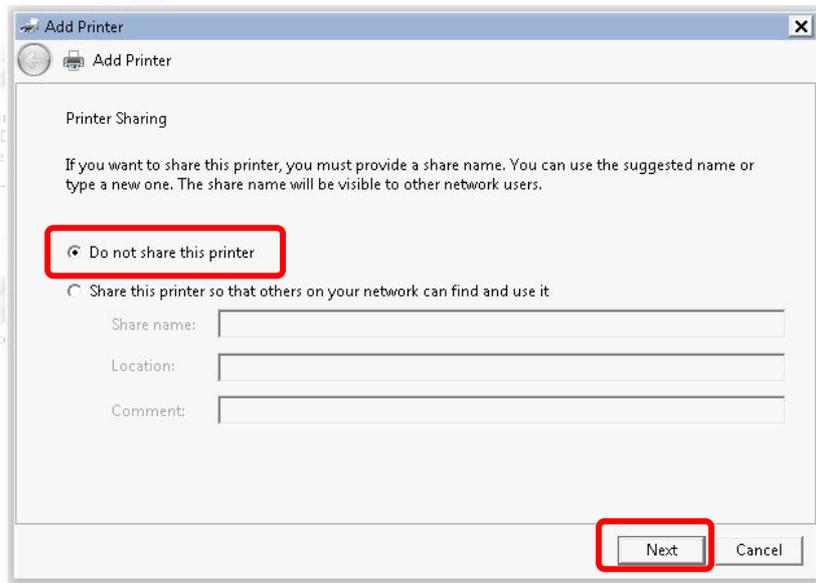
8. Now, your system will ask you to choose right name of the printer that you installed onto the router. Such step can make correct driver loaded onto your PC. When you finish the selection, click **Next**.



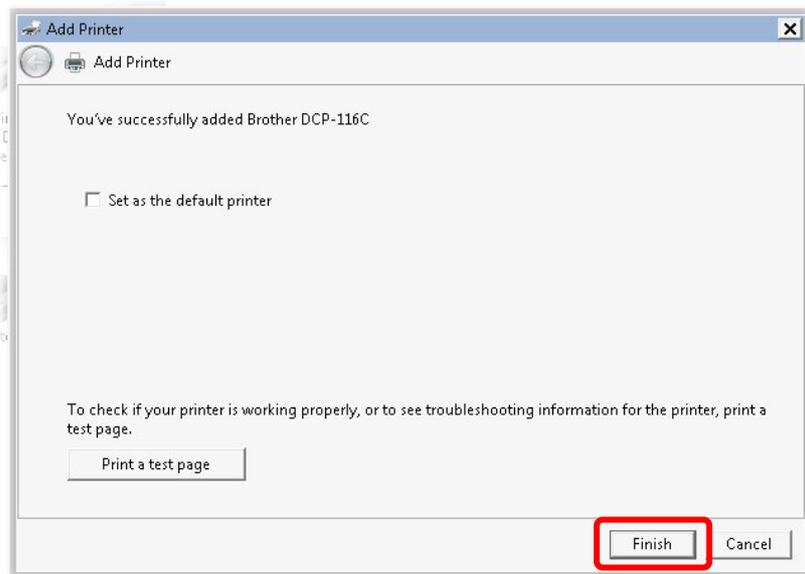
9. Type a name for the chosen printer. Click **Next**.



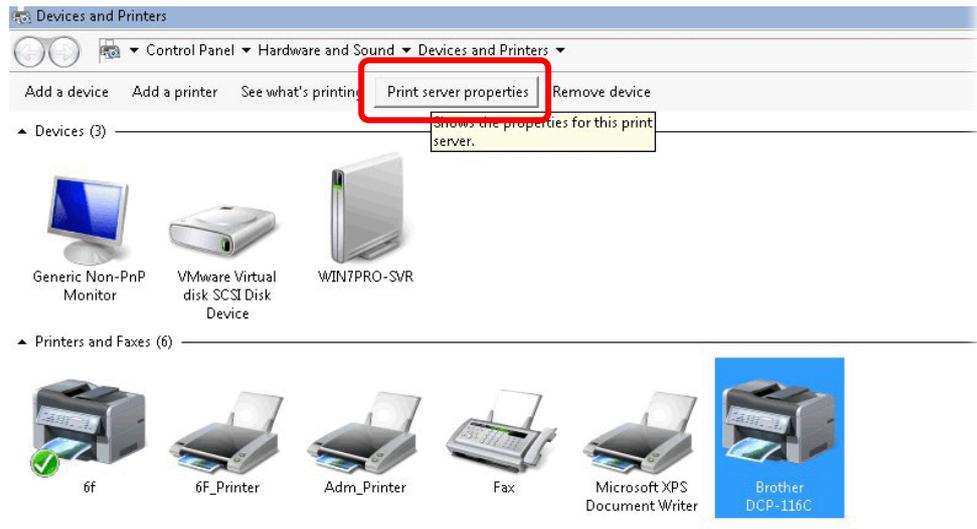
10. Choose **Do not share this printer** and click **Next**.



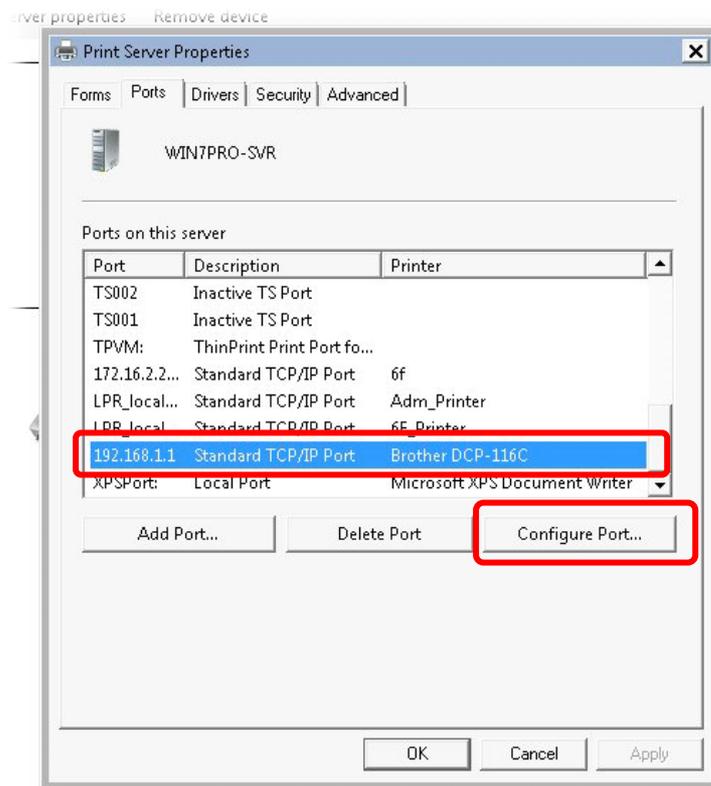
11. Then, in the following dialog, click **Finish**.



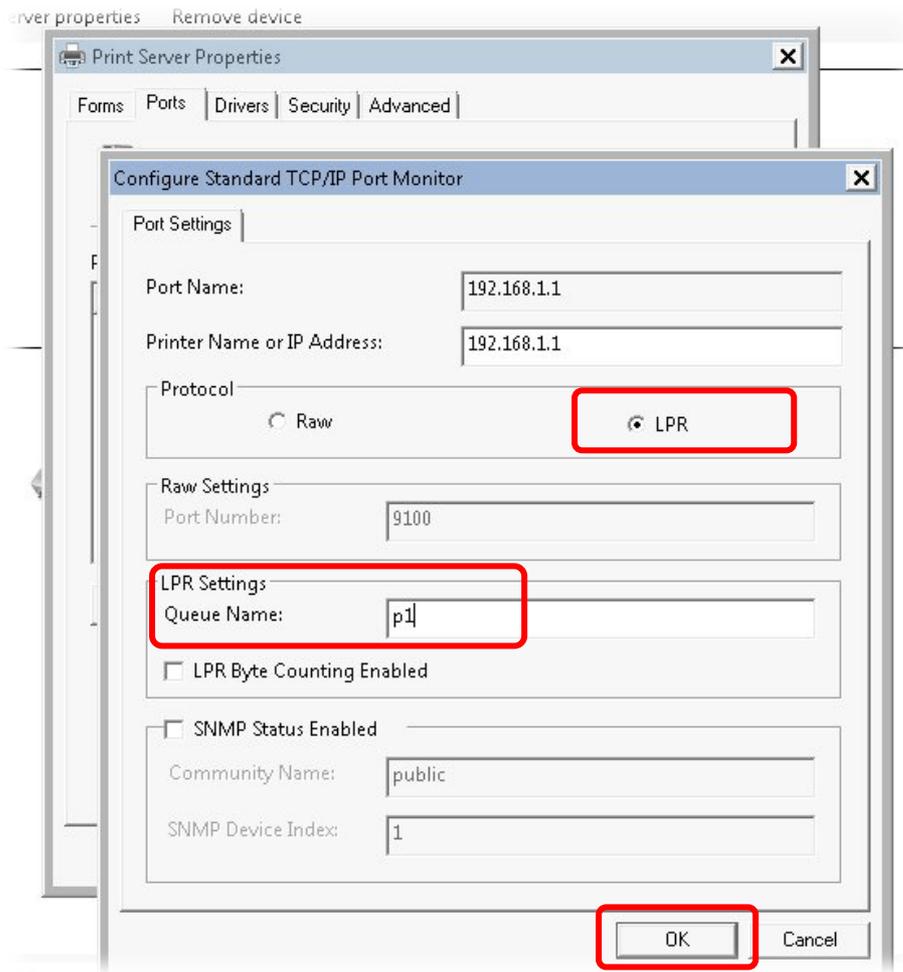
12. The new printer has been added and displayed under **Printers and Faxes**. Click the new printer icon and click **Printer server properties**.



13. Edit the property of the new printer you have added by clicking **Configure Port**.

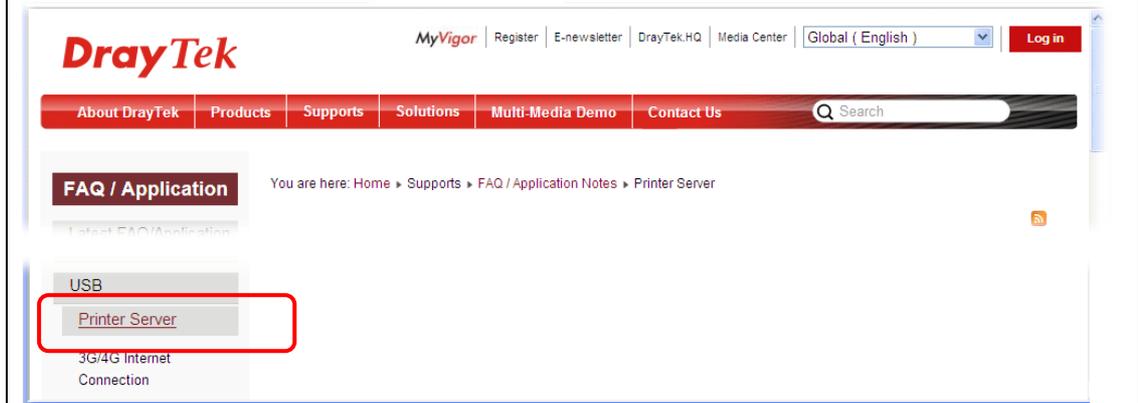


14. Select "LPR" on Protocol, type **p1** (number 1) as **Queue Name**. Then click **OK**. Next please refer to the red rectangle for choosing the correct protocol and LPR name.



The printer can be used for printing now. Most of the printers with different manufacturers are compatible with vigor router.

Note 1: Some printers with the fax/scanning or other additional functions are not supported. If you do not know whether your printer is supported or not, please visit www.draytek.com to find out the printer list. Open **Support >FAQ/Application Notes**; find out the link of **USB>>Printer Server** and click it.



Then, click the **What types of printers are compatible with Vigor router?** link.

The screenshot shows a support page titled "Printer Server". On the left is a navigation menu with categories: "FAQ / Application", "Latest FAQ/Application", "Basic" (with sub-item "Firmware Upgrade"), "WAN" (with sub-items "IPv6", "Triple-Play", "Dual WAN"), and "WAN". The breadcrumb trail reads "You are here: Home > Supports > FAQ / Application Notes > Printer Server". The main content area lists several FAQ items:

| Question | Date |
|--|------------|
| What types of printers are compatible with Vigor router? | 2012/01/12 |
| How do I configure LPR printing on Windows7? | 2012/08/20 |
| How do I configure LPR printing on My Windows Vista ? | 2009/01/20 |
| How do I configure LPR printing on Linux based ? | 2009/01/20 |

The link "How do I configure LPR printing on Windows7?" is highlighted with a red rectangular box.

Note 2: Vigor router supports printing request from computers via LAN ports but not WAN port.

1.5 Accessing Web Page

1. Make sure your PC connects to the router correctly.

You may either simply set up your computer to get IP dynamically from the router or set up the IP address of the computer to be the same subnet as **the default IP address of Vigor router 192.168.1.1**. For the detailed information, please refer to the later section - Trouble Shooting of the guide.

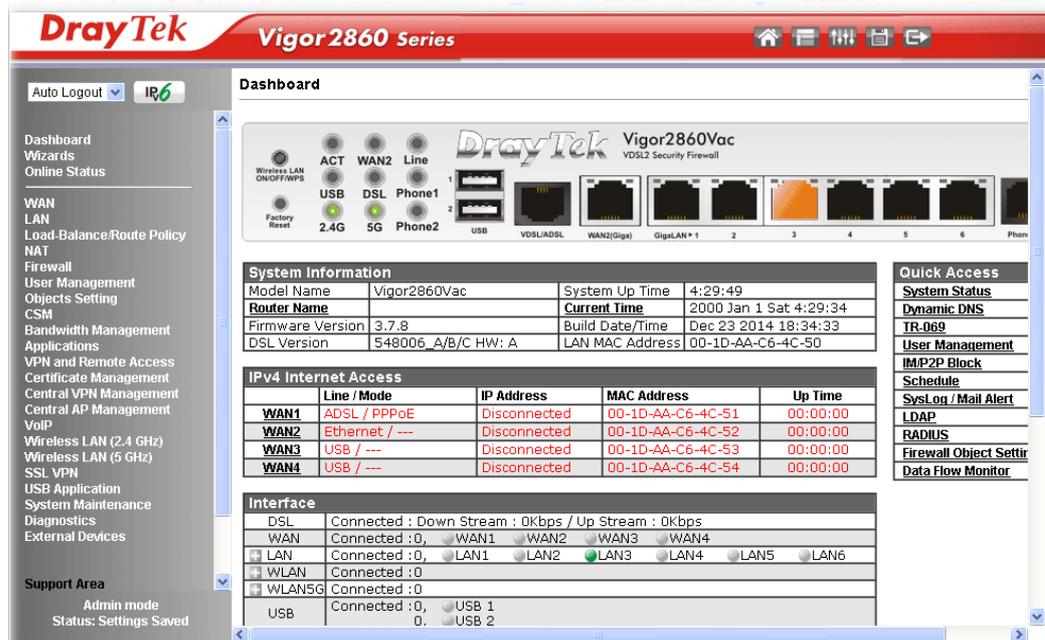
2. Open a web browser on your PC and type **http://192.168.1.1**. The following window will be open to ask for username and password.



3. Please type “admin/admin” as the Username/Password and click **Login**.

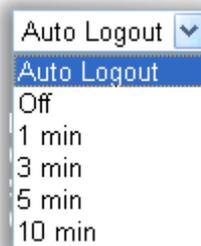
Notice: If you fail to access to the web configuration, please go to “Trouble Shooting” for detecting and solving your problem.

- Now, the **Main Screen** will appear.



Note: The home page will be different slightly in accordance with the type of the router you have.

- The web page can be logged out according to the chosen condition. The default setting is **Auto Logout**, which means the web configuration system will logout after 5 minutes without any operation. Change the setting for your necessity.



1.6 Changing Password

Please change the password for the original security of the router.

- Open a web browser on your PC and type **http://192.168.1.1**. A pop-up window will open to ask for username and password.
- Please type “admin/admin” as Username/Password for accessing into the web user interface with admin mode.
- Go to **System Maintenance** page and choose **Administrator Password**.

Administrator Password

| | | |
|------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Old Password | <input type="text"/> | |
| New Password | <input type="text"/> | (Max. 23 characters allowed) |
| Confirm Password | <input type="text"/> | (Max. 23 characters allowed) |

Note: Password can contain only a-z A-Z 0-9 , ; : . " < > * + = \ | ? @ # ^ ! ()

Administrator Local User

Local User

Local User List

| Index | User Name |
|-------|-----------|
| | |

Specific User

User Name:

Password: Confirm Password:

Enable 'Admin' Login From Wan

4. Enter the login password (the default is “admin”) on the field of **Old Password**. Type **New Password** and **Confirm Password**. Then click **OK** to continue.

Note: The maximum length of the password you can set is 23 characters.

5. Now, the password has been changed. Next time, use the new password to access the Web user interface for this router.

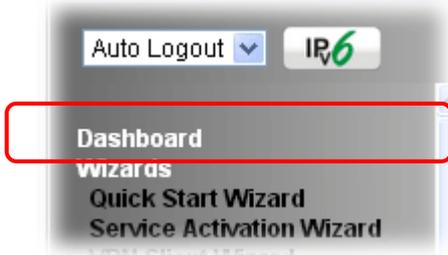


Note: Even the password is changed, the Username for logging onto the web user interface is still “admin”.

1.7 Introducing Dashboard

Dashboard shows the connection status including System Information, IPv4 Internet Access, IPv6 Internet Access, Interface (physical connection), Security and Quick Access.

Click **Dashboard** from the main menu on the left side of the main page.



A web page with default selections will be displayed on the screen. Refer to the following figure:

The screenshot displays the 'Dashboard' for a DrayTek Vigor2860Vac VDSL2 Security Firewall. At the top, there is a virtual panel with various status indicators for ACT, WAN2, Line, USB, DSL, Phone1, Phone2, and Factory Reset. Below this, the dashboard is divided into several sections:

- System Information:** A table with fields like Model Name (Vigor2860vac), Router Name, Firmware Version (3.7.8), DSL Version, System Up Time (0:11:7), Current Time (2000 Jan 1 Sat 0:11:3), Build Date/Time (Dec 11 2014 17:31:30), and LAN MAC Address (00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50).
- IPv4 Internet Access:** A table with columns for Line / Mode, IP Address, MAC Address, and Up Time. It lists WAN1 (ADSL / PPPoE), WAN2 (Ethernet / ---), WAN3 (USB / ---), and WAN4 (USB / ---), all showing as 'Disconnected'.
- Interface:** A table showing connection status for DSL, WAN (WAN1-WAN4), LAN (LAN1-LAN6), WLAN, WLAN5G, and USB (USB 1, USB 2).
- Quick Access:** A vertical list of links for System Status, Dynamic DNS, TR-069, User Management, IM/P2P Block, Schedule, SysLog / Mail Alert, LDAP, RADIUS, Firewall Object Setting, and Data Flow Monitor.

1.7.1 Virtual Panel

On the top of the Dashboard, a virtual panel (simulating the physical panel of the router) displays the physical interface connection. It will be refreshed every five seconds. When you move and click the mouse cursor on LEDs (except ACT), USB ports, VDSL/ADSL, WAN2, or LAN1 – LAN6, related web setting page will be open for you to configure if required.

Dashboard



| Port | Color Displayed | Explanation |
|-----------------|-----------------|--|
| LED (left side) | Black | It means the router or the function is not working. |
| | Green | It means the router or the function is working. |
| USB | Black | It means no USB device is connected. |
| | Green | It means a USB device is connected. |
| VDSL/ADSL | Black | xDSL connection is not ready. |
| | Green | It means WAN1 VDSL broadband access is available. |
| | Orange | It means WAN1 ADSL broadband access is available. |
| WAN2(Giga) | Black | No Ethernet connection. |
| | Orange | It means WAN2 broadband access is available and port link rate does not reach 1Gbps. |
| | Green | It means WAN2 broadband access is available and port link rate reaches 1Gbps. |
| GigaLAN1~6 | Black | It means such port is disconnected. |
| | Green | It means such port is connected physically. |

For detailed information about the LED display, refer to **1.2 LED Indicators and Connectors**.

1.7.2 Name with a Link

A name with a link (e.g., [Router Name](#), [Current Time](#), [WAN1~4](#) and etc.) below means you can click it to open the configuration page for modification.

| System Information | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Model Name | Vigor2860Vac | System Up Time | 0:11:7 |
| Router Name | | Current Time | 2000 Jan 1 Sat 0:11:3 |
| Firmware Version | 3.7.8_RC6a | Build Date/Time | Dec 11 2014 17:31:30 |
| DSL Version | 548006_A/B/C HW: A | LAN MAC Address | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50 |

| IPv4 Internet Access | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|----------|
| | Line / Mode | IP Address | MAC Address | Up Time |
| WAN1 | ADSL / PPPoE | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-51 | 00:00:00 |
| WAN2 | Ethernet / --- | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-52 | 00:00:00 |
| WAN3 | USB / --- | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-53 | 00:00:00 |
| WAN4 | USB / --- | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-54 | 00:00:00 |

1.7.3 Quick Access for Common Used Menu

All the menu items can be accessed and arranged orderly on the left side of the main page for your request. However, some **important** and **common** used menu items which can be accessed in a quick way just for convenience.

Look at the right side of the Dashboard. You will find a group of common used functions grouped under **Quick Access**.

| Quick Access |
|---|
| System Status |
| Dynamic DNS |
| TR-069 |
| User Management |
| IM/P2P Block |
| Schedule |
| SysLog / Mail Alert |
| LDAP |
| RADIUS |
| Firewall Object Setting |
| Data Flow Monitor |

The function links of System Status, Dynamic DDNS, TR-069, User Management, IM/P2P Block, Schedule, Syslog/Mail Alert, LDAP, RADIUS, Firewall Object Setting and Data Flow Monitor are displayed here. Move your mouse cursor on any one of the links and click on it. The corresponding setting page will be open immediately.

In addition, quick access for VPN security settings such as **Remote Dial-in User** and **LAN to LAN** are located on the bottom of this page. Scroll down the page to find them and use them if required.

| Interface | |
|---|---|
| DSL | Connected : Down Stream : 101060Kbps / Up Stream : 96772Kbps |
| WAN | Connected : 2, <input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN1 <input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN2 <input type="radio"/> WAN3 |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN | Connected : 2, <input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN1 <input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN2 <input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN3 <input type="radio"/> LAN4 <input type="radio"/> LAN5 <input type="radio"/> LAN6 |
| USB | Connected : 0, <input type="radio"/> USB 1 0, <input type="radio"/> USB 2 |

| Security | |
|---|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN | Connected : 1 Remote Dial-in User / LAN to LAN |

User Mode is OFF now.

Note that there is a plus () icon located on the left side of VPN/LAN. Click it to review the VPN connection(s) used presently.

| Security | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|--|---------|--------------------------------------|
| VPN | Connected : 1 | Remote Dial-in User / LAN to LAN | | |
| Current Page: 1 | | Page No. | 1 | <input type="button" value="Go To"/> |
| Name / User | Type / Security | Host IP | Up Time | |
| V2920 | IPsec/3DES | 172.16.2.145 | 0:0:20 | |

User Mode is OFF now.

| WAN | Connected : 2,  WAN1  WAN2  WAN3 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|--|-------------------|------------|-----|----------|-------------|-------------------|--|-------------|-------------------|--|-------------|-------------------|
| LAN | Connected : 3,  LAN1  LAN2  LAN3  LAN4  LAN5  LAN6 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Host ID</th> <th>IP Address</th> <th>MAC</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ALPHA-NB</td> <td>10.28.60.13</td> <td>1C-4B-D6-D2-D7-DB</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>10.28.60.14</td> <td>00-15-AF-09-7E-FA</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>10.28.60.11</td> <td>00-50-7F-C9-76-45</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Host ID | IP Address | MAC | ALPHA-NB | 10.28.60.13 | 1C-4B-D6-D2-D7-DB | | 10.28.60.14 | 00-15-AF-09-7E-FA | | 10.28.60.11 | 00-50-7F-C9-76-45 |
| Host ID | IP Address | MAC | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ALPHA-NB | 10.28.60.13 | 1C-4B-D6-D2-D7-DB | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 10.28.60.14 | 00-15-AF-09-7E-FA | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 10.28.60.11 | 00-50-7F-C9-76-45 | | | | | | | | | | | |

Host connected physically to the router via LAN port(s) will be displayed with green circles in the field of Connected.

All of the hosts (including wireless clients) displayed with Host ID, IP Address and MAC address indicates that the traffic would be transmitted through LAN port(s) and then the WAN port. The purpose is to perform the traffic monitor of the host(s).

1.7.4 GUI Map



All the functions the router supports are listed with table clearly in this page. Users can click the function link to access into the setting page of the function for detailed configuration. Click the icon on the top of the main screen to display all the functions.

GUI Map

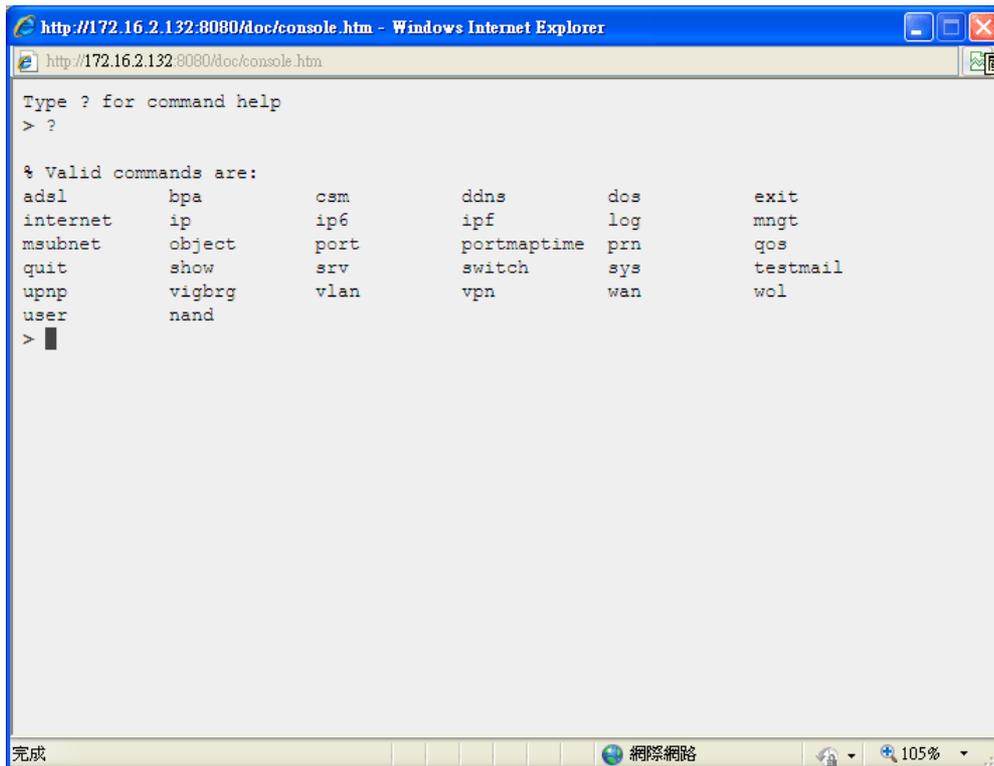
| | | | |
|----------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|--|
| Dashboard Wizards | Quick Start Wizard Service Activation Wizard VPN Client Wizard VPN Server Wizard Wireless Wizard VoIP Wizard | VPN and Remote Access | Remote Access Control PPP General Setup IPsec General Setup IPsec Peer Identity Remote Dial-in User LAN to LAN VPN TRUNK Management Connection Management |
| Online Status | Physical Connection Virtual WAN | Certificate Management | Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Backup |
| WAN | General Setup Internet Access Multi-PVC/VLAN | Central VPN Management | General Setup CPE Management VPN Management Log & Alert |
| LAN | General Setup Static Route VLAN Bind IP to MAC LAN Port Mirror Wired 802.1x Web Portal Setup | Central AP Management | Status WLAN Profile AP Maintenance AP Map Traffic Graph Rogue AP Detection Load Balance |
| Load-Balance/Route Policy | | | |
| NAT | Port Redirection DMZ Host Open Ports | | |

1.7.5 Web Console



It is not necessary to use the telnet command via DOS prompt. The changes made by using web console have the same effects as modified through web user interface. The functions/settings modified under Web Console also can be reviewed on the web user interface.

Click the **Web Console** icon on the top of the main screen to open the following screen.

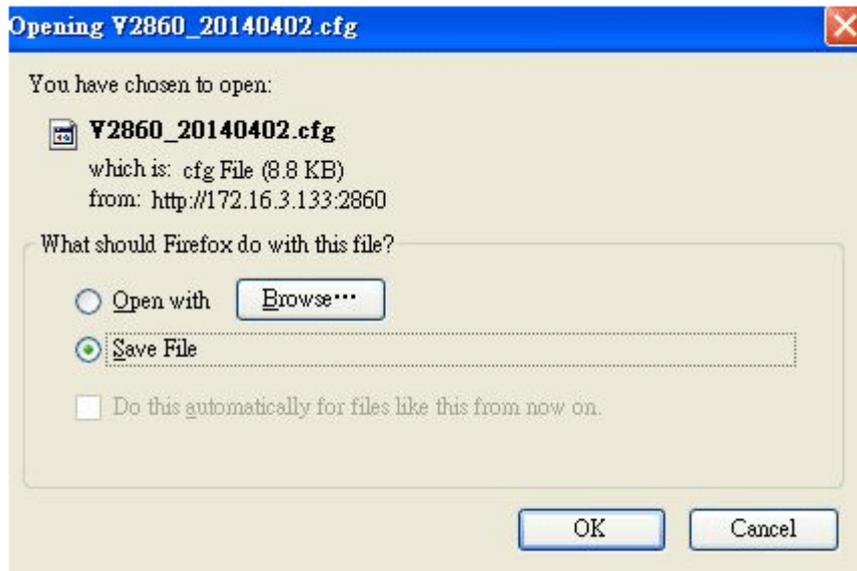


1.7.6 Config Backup



There is one way to store current used settings quickly by clicking the **Config Backup** icon. It allows you to backup current settings as a file. Such configuration file can be restored by using **System Maintenance>>Configuration Backup**.

Simply click the icon on the top of the main screen and a pop up dialog will appear.



Click **Save** to store the setting.

1.7.7 Logout



Click this icon to exit the web user interface.

1.8 Online Status



1.8.1 Physical Connection

Such page displays the physical connection status such as LAN connection status, WAN connection status, ADSL information, and so on.

Physical Connection for IPv4 Protocol

Online Status

| Physical Connection | | | | | | System Uptime: 9days 0:24:15 |
|--|------------|------------------------|--------------|------------------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| IPv4 | | | IPv6 | | | |
| LAN Status | | Primary DNS: 10.39.0.1 | | Secondary DNS: 8.8.4.4 | | |
| IP Address | TX Packets | RX Packets | | | | |
| 10.28.60.1 | 2100092 | 2482777 | | | | |
| WAN 1 Status >> Dial PPPoE | | | | | | |
| Enable | Line | Name | Mode | Up Time | | |
| Yes | ADSL | | PPPoE | 00:00:00 | | |
| IP | GW IP | TX Packets | TX Rate(Bps) | RX Packets | RX Rate(Bps) | |
| --- | --- | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| WAN 2 Status >> Release | | | | | | |
| Enable | Line | Name | Mode | Up Time | | |
| Yes | Ethernet | | DHCP Client | 216:24:07 | | |
| IP | GW IP | TX Packets | TX Rate(Bps) | RX Packets | RX Rate(Bps) | |
| 10.39.0.10 | 10.39.0.1 | 1174358 | 9696 | 1531576 | 1247 | |
| WAN 3 Status | | | | | | |
| Enable | Line | Name | Mode | Up Time | Signal | |
| Yes | USB | | --- | 00:00:00 | - | |
| IP | GW IP | TX Packets | TX Rate(Bps) | RX Packets | RX Rate(Bps) | |
| --- | --- | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| WAN 4 Status | | | | | | |
| Enable | Line | Name | Mode | Up Time | Signal | |
| Yes | USB | | --- | 00:00:00 | - | |
| IP | GW IP | TX Packets | TX Rate(Bps) | RX Packets | RX Rate(Bps) | |
| --- | --- | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| ADSL Information (ADSL Firmware Version: 05-04-04-04-00-01) | | | | | | |
| ATM Statistics | TX Cells | RX Cells | TX CRC errs | RX CRC errs | | |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| ADSL Status | Mode | State | Up Speed | Down Speed | SNR Margin | Loop Att. |
| | | TRAINING | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Physical Connection for IPv6 Protocol

Online Status

| Physical Connection | | | | System Uptime: 0:1:18 |
|---|------------|----------|------------|-----------------------|
| IPv4 | | IPv6 | | |
| LAN Status | | | | |
| IP Address | | | | |
| 2001:4DD0:FF00:83E4:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global) | | | | |
| FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link) | | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes | |
| 147 | 187 | 34205 | 19176 | |
| WAN2 IPv6 Status | | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | | |
| Yes | AICCU | 0:00:48 | | |
| IP | | | Gateway IP | |
| 2001:4DD0:FF00:3E4::2/64 (Global) | | --- | | |
| FE80::4CD0:FF00:3E4:2/64 (Link) | | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes | |
| 186 | 137 | 16438 | 33093 | |

Detailed explanation (for IPv4) is shown below:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| LAN Status | <p>Primary DNS-Displays the primary DNS server address for WAN interface.</p> <p>Secondary DNS -Displays the secondary DNS server address for WAN interface.</p> <p>IP Address-Displays the IP address of the LAN interface.</p> <p>TX Packets-Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface.</p> <p>RX Packets-Displays the total received packets at the LAN interface.</p> |
| WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 /WAN4 Status | <p>Enable – Yes in red means such interface is available but not enabled. Yes in green means such interface is enabled.</p> <p>Line – Displays the physical connection (VDSL, ADSL, Ethernet, or USB) of this interface.</p> <p>Name – Display the name of the router.</p> <p>Mode - Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., PPPoE).</p> <p>Up Time - Displays the total uptime of the interface.</p> <p>IP - Displays the IP address of the WAN interface.</p> <p>GW IP - Displays the IP address of the default gateway.</p> <p>TX Packets - Displays the total transmitted packets at the WAN interface.</p> <p>TX Rate - Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the WAN interface.</p> <p>RX Packets - Displays the total number of received packets at the WAN interface.</p> <p>RX Rate - Displays the speed of received octets at the WAN interface.</p> |

Detailed explanation (for IPv6) is shown below:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| LAN Status | <p>IP Address- Displays the IPv6 address of the LAN interface..</p> <p>TX Packets-Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface.</p> <p>RX Packets-Displays the total received packets at the LAN interface.</p> <p>TX Bytes - Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the LAN interface.</p> <p>RX Bytes - Displays the speed of received octets at the LAN interface.</p> |
| WAN IPv6 Status | <p>Enable – No in red means such interface is available but not enabled. Yes in green means such interface is enabled. No in red means such interface is not available.</p> |

| Item | Description |
|------|--|
| | <p>Mode - Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., TSPC).</p> <p>Up Time - Displays the total uptime of the interface.</p> <p>IP - Displays the IP address of the WAN interface.</p> <p>Gateway IP - Displays the IP address of the default gateway.</p> |

Note: The words in green mean that the WAN connection of that interface is ready for accessing Internet; the words in red mean that the WAN connection of that interface is not ready for accessing Internet.

1.8.2 Virtual WAN

Such page displays the virtual WAN connection information.

Virtual WAN are used by TR-069 management, VoIP service and so on.

The field of Application will list the purpose of such WAN connection.

1.9 Saving Configuration

Each time you click **OK** on the web page for saving the configuration, you can find messages showing the system interaction with you.



Ready indicates the system is ready for you to input settings.

Settings Saved means your settings are saved once you click **Finish** or **OK** button.

This page is left blank.

2

Quick Setup

There are several setup wizards offered for you to configure the router simply and quickly.



- **Quick Start Wizard** – used for building network connection, Internet access.
- **Service Activation Wizard** – used for activating the web content filter service.
- **VPN Client Wizard** – used for establishing VPN tunnel; the router is treated as a VPN client.
- **VPN Server Wizard** – used for establishing VPN tunnel; the router is treated as a VPN server.
- **Wireless Wizard** – used for building wireless LAN connection.
- **VoIP Wizard** – used for establishing VoIP profile.

2.1 Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard can help you to deploy and use the router easily and quickly. The first screen of **Quick Start Wizard** is entering login password. After typing the password, please click **Next**.

Quick Start Wizard

Enter login password

Please enter an alpha-numeric string as your **Password** (Max 23 characters).

| | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| Old Password | <input type="password"/> |
| New Password | <input type="password"/> |
| Confirm Password | <input type="password"/> |

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

On the next page as shown below, please select the WAN interface that you use. If DSL interface is used, please choose WAN1; if Ethernet interface is used, please choose WAN2; if 3G USB modem is used, please choose WAN3 or WAN4. Then click **Next** for next step.

Quick Start Wizard

WAN Interface

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| WAN Interface: | <input type="text" value="WAN1"/> |
| Display Name: | <input type="text"/> |
| Physical Mode: | ADSL / VDSL2 |
| DSL Mode: | <input type="text" value="Auto"/> |
| Physical Type: | <input type="text" value="Auto negotiation"/> |
| VLAN Tag insertion (ADSL): | <input type="text" value="Disable"/> |
| VLAN Tag insertion (VDSL2): | <input type="text" value="Enable"/> |
| Tag value | <input type="text" value="0"/> (0~4095) |
| Priority | <input type="text" value="0"/> (0~7) |

WAN1, WAN2, WAN3 and WAN4 will bring up different configuration page. Refer to the following sections for detailed information.

2.1.1 For WAN1 (ADSL/VDSL2)

WAN1 is specified for ADSL or VDSL2 connection.

Quick Start Wizard

WAN Interface

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| WAN Interface: | WAN1 |
| Display Name: | |
| Physical Mode: | ADSL / VDSL2 |
| DSL Mode: | VDSL2 only |
| Physical Type: | Auto negotiation |
| VLAN Tag insertion (VDSL2): | Enable |
| Tag value | 0 (0~4095) |
| Priority | 0 (0~7) |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|---|
| Display Name | Type a name to identify such WAN. |
| DSL Mode | Specify the physical mode (VDSL2 only or ADSL only) for such router manually. |
| VLAN Tag insertion (VDSL2)/(ADSL) | <p>The settings configured in this field are available for WAN1 and WAN2.</p> <p>Enable – Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <p>Disable – Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>Tag value – Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p>Priority – Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p> |

You have to select the appropriate Internet access type **according to the information from your ISP**. For example, you should select PPPoE mode if the ISP provides you PPPoE interface. In addition, the field of **For ADSL Only** will be available only when ADSL is detected. Then click **Next** for next step.

PPPoE/PPPoA

1. Choose **WAN1** as WAN Interface and click the **Next** button; you will get the following page.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 1

Protocol PPPoE / PPPoA ▼

For ADSL Only:

Encapsulation PPPoE LLC/SNAP ▼

VPI Auto detect

VCI

Fixed IP Yes No(Dynamic IP)

IP Address

Subnet Mask

Default Gateway

Primary DNS

Second DNS

< Back
Next >
Finish
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Protocol | <p>There are two modes offered for you to choose for WAN1 interface.</p> <div style="text-align: center; border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> PPPoE / PPPoA ▼ PPPoE / PPPoA MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP </div> <p>Choose PPPoE/PPPoA as the protocol.</p> |
| For ADSL Only | <p>Such field is provided for ADSL only. You have to choose encapsulation and type the values for VPI and VCI. Or, click Auto detect to find out the best values.</p> <div style="text-align: center; border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> PPPoE LLC/SNAP ▼ PPPoE LLC/SNAP PPPoE VC MUX PPPoA LLC/SNAP PPPoA VC MUX </div> |
| Fixed IP | Click Yes to enable Fixed IP feature. |
| IP Address | Type the IP address if Fixed IP is enabled. |
| Subnet Mask | Type the subnet mask. |
| Default Gateway | Type the IP address as the default gateway. |
| Primary DNS | Type in the primary IP address for the router. |

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Secondary DNS | Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future. |
| Back | Click it to return to previous setting page. |
| Next | Click it to get into the next setting page. |
| Cancel | Click it to give up the quick start wizard. |

2. After finished the above settings, simply click **Next**. Manually enter the Username/Password provided by your ISP

Quick Start Wizard

Set PPPoE / PPPoA

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| WAN 1 | |
| Service Name (Optional) | <input type="text" value="CHT"/> |
| Username | <input type="text" value="84005755@hinet.net"/> |
| Password | <input type="password" value="*****"/> |
| Confirm Password | <input type="password" value="*****"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Service Name (Optional) | Enter the description of the specific network service. |
| Username | Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP. Note: The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. |
| Password | Assign a valid password provided by the ISP. Note: The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. |
| Confirm Password | Retype the password. |
| Back | Click it to return to previous setting page. |
| Next | Click it to get into the next setting page. |
| Cancel | Click it to give up the quick start wizard. |

3. After finished the above settings, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| WAN Interface: | WAN1 |
| Physical Mode: | ADSL |
| VPI: | 8 |
| VCI: | 35 |
| Protocol / Encapsulation: | PPPoE / LLC |
| Fixed IP: | No |
| Primary DNS: | 8.8.8.8 |
| Secondary DNS: | 8.8.4.4 |

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP

1. Choose **WAN1** as WAN Interface and click the **Next** button; you will get the following page.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 1

Protocol MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP ▼

For ADSL Only:

Encapsulation 1483 Bridged IP LLC ▼

VPI Auto detect

VCI

Fixed IP Yes No(Dynamic IP)

IP Address

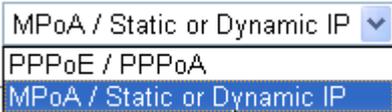
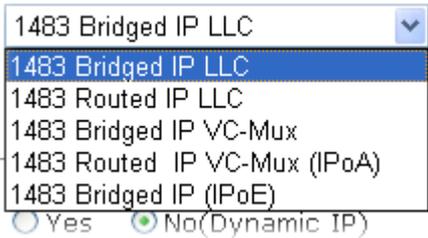
Subnet Mask

Default Gateway

Primary DNS

Second DNS

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Protocol | <p>There are two modes offered for you to choose for WAN1 interface.</p>  <p>Choose MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP as the protocol.</p> |
| For ADSL Only | <p>Such field is provided for ADSL only. You have to choose encapsulation and type the values for VPI and VCI. Or, click Auto detect to find out the best values.</p>  |
| Fixed IP | Click Yes to enable Fixed IP feature. |
| IP Address | Type the IP address if Fixed IP is enabled. |
| Subnet Mask | Type the subnet mask. |

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Default Gateway | Type the IP address as the default gateway. |
| Primary DNS | Type in the primary IP address for the router. |
| Secondary DNS | Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future. |
| Back | Click it to return to previous setting page. |
| Next | Click it to get into the next setting page. |
| Cancel | Click it to give up the quick start wizard. |

2. Please type in the IP address/mask/gateway information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| WAN Interface: | WAN1 |
| Physical Mode: | ADSL |
| VPI: | 8 |
| VCI: | 35 |
| Protocol / Encapsulation: | 1483 Bridge LLC |
| Fixed IP: | No |
| Primary DNS: | 8.8.8.8 |
| Secondary DNS: | 8.8.4.4 |

3. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

4. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

2.1.2 For WAN2 (Ethernet)

WAN2 is dedicated to physical mode in Ethernet. If you choose WAN2, please specify physical type. Then, click **Next**.

Quick Start Wizard

WAN Interface

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| WAN Interface: | WAN2 ▾ |
| Display Name: | <input type="text"/> |
| Physical Mode: | Ethernet |
| Physical Type: | Auto negotiation ▾ |
| VLAN Tag insertion | Disable ▾ |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Display Name | Type a name for the router. |
| VLAN Tag insertion | <p>The settings configured in this field are available for WAN1 and WAN2.</p> <p>Enable – Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <p>Disable – Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>Tag value – Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p>Priority – Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p> |

On the next page as shown below, please select the appropriate Internet access type according to the information from your ISP. For example, you should select PPPoE mode if the ISP provides you PPPoE interface. Then click **Next** for next step.

PPPoE

1. Choose **WAN2** as the WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 2
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

- PPPoE
- PPTP
- L2TP
- Static IP
- DHCP

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

2. Click **PPPoE** as the Internet Access Type. Then click **Next** to continue.

Quick Start Wizard

PPPoE Client Mode

WAN 2
Enter the user name and password provided by your ISP.

Service Name (Optional)

Username

Password

Confirm Password

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Service Name (Optional) | Enter the description of the specific network service. |
| Username | Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP. Note: The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. |
| Password | Assign a valid password provided by the ISP. Note: The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 |

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| | characters. |
| Confirm Password | Retype the password. |
| Back | Click it to return to previous setting page. |
| Next | Click it to get into the next setting page. |
| Cancel | Click it to give up the quick start wizard. |

- Please manually enter the Username/Password provided by your ISP. Click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

| | |
|------------------|------------------|
| WAN Interface: | WAN2 |
| Physical Mode: | Ethernet |
| Physical Type: | Auto negotiation |
| Internet Access: | PPPoE |

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

- Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

- Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

PPTP/L2TP

1. Choose **WAN2** as the WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 2
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

PPPoE
 PPTP
 L2TP
 Static IP
 DHCP

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

2. Click **PPTP/L2TP** as the Internet Access Type. Then click **Next** to continue.

Quick Start Wizard

PPTP Client Mode

WAN 2
Enter the user name, password, WAN IP configuration and PPTP server IP provided by your ISP.

User Name:

Password:

Confirm Password:

WAN IP Configuration

Obtain an IP address automatically
 Specify an IP address

IP Address:

Subnet Mask:

Gateway:

Primary DNS:

Second DNS:

PPTP Server:

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------|--|
| User Name | Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP. Note: The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. |
| Password | Assign a valid password provided by the ISP. |

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| | Note: The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. |
| Confirm Password | Retype the password. |
| WAN IP Configuration | <p>Obtain an IP address automatically – the router will get an IP address automatically from DHCP server.</p> <p>Specify an IP address – you have to type relational settings manually.</p> <p>IP Address - Type the IP address.</p> <p>Subnet Mask –Type the subnet mask.</p> <p>Gateway – Type the IP address of the gateway.</p> <p>Primary DNS –Type in the primary IP address for the router.</p> <p>Second DNS –Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.</p> |
| PPTP Server / L2TP Server | Type the IP address of the server. |
| Back | Click it to return to previous setting page. |
| Next | Click it to get into the next setting page. |
| Cancel | Click it to give up the quick start wizard. |

3. Please type in the IP address/mask/gateway information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

| | |
|------------------|------------------|
| WAN Interface: | WAN2 |
| Physical Mode: | Ethernet |
| Physical Type: | Auto negotiation |
| Internet Access: | PPTP |

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

Static IP

1. Choose **WAN2** as the WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 2
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

PPPoE
 PPTP
 L2TP
 Static IP
 DHCP

2. Click **Static IP** as the Internet Access type. Simply click **Next** to continue.

Quick Start Wizard

Static IP Client Mode

WAN 2
Enter the Static IP configuration provided by your ISP.

WAN IP
Subnet Mask
Gateway
Primary DNS
Secondary DNS (optional)

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| WAN IP | Type the IP address. |
| Subnet Mask | Type the subnet mask. |
| Gateway | Type the IP address of gateway. |
| Primary DNS | Type in the primary IP address for the router. |
| Secondary DNS | Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future. |
| Back | Click it to return to previous setting page. |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Next | Click it to get into the next setting page. |
| Cancel | Click it to give up the quick start wizard. |

- Please type in the IP address information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for next step.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

| | |
|------------------|------------------|
| WAN Interface: | WAN2 |
| Physical Mode: | Ethernet |
| Physical Type: | Auto negotiation |
| Internet Access: | Static IP |

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

- Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

- Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

DHCP

- Choose **WAN2** as WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

WAN 2
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

- PPPoE
- PPTP
- L2TP
- Static IP
- DHCP

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

- Click **DHCP** as the Internet Access type. Simply click **Next** to continue.

Quick Start Wizard

DHCP Client Mode

WAN 2
If your ISP requires you to enter a specific host name or specific MAC address, please enter it in.

Host Name (optional)

MAC - - - - - (optional)

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Host Name | Type the name of the host. Note: The maximum length of the host name you can set is 39 characters. |
| MAC | Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to enter the MAC address. |
| Back | Click it to return to previous setting page. |
| Next | Click it to get into the next setting page. |
| Cancel | Click it to give up the quick start wizard. |

- After finished the settings above, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface: WAN2

Physical Mode: Ethernet

Physical Type: Auto negotiation

Internet Access: DHCP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

2.1.3 For WAN3/WAN4 (USB)

WAN3/WAN4 is dedicated to physical mode in USB.

1. Choose **WAN3/WAN4** as WAN Interface.

Quick Start Wizard

WAN Interface

| | |
|----------------|------|
| WAN Interface: | WAN3 |
| Display Name: | |
| Physical Mode: | USB |

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

2. Then, click **Next** for getting the following page.

Quick Start Wizard

Connect to Internet

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| WAN 3 | |
| Internet Access : | 3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode) |
| 3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode) | 3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode) |
| SIM PIN code | |
| Modem Initial String | AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0 (Default:AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0) |
| APN Name | |
| | Apply |

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Internet Access | Choose one of the selections as the protocol of accessing the internet. |
| 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) | SIM Pin code –Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the pin code you can set is 15 characters. Modem Initial String – Such value is used to initialize USB modem. Please use the default value. If you have any |

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| | <p>question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of the string you can set is 47 characters.</p> <p>APN Name – APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Type the name and click Apply.</p> |
| 4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) | <p>SIM Pin code –Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet.</p> <p>Network Mode – Force Vigor router to connect Internet with the mode specified here. If you choose 4G/3G/2G as network mode, the router will choose a suitable one according to the actual wireless signal automatically.</p> <p>APN Name – APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>Note: Such mode is supported by WAN3 only.</p> </div> |

- Then, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

| | |
|--|------|
| WAN Interface: | WAN3 |
| Physical Mode: | USB |
| Internet Access: | DHCP |
| <p>Click Back to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click Finish to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.</p> | |

- Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

- Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

2.2 Service Activation Wizard

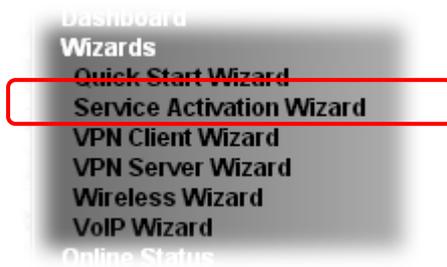
Service Activation Wizard can guide you to activate WCF service (Web Content Filter) with a quick and easy way. **For the Service Activation Wizard is only available for admin operation, therefore, please type “admin/admin” on Username/Password while Logging into the web user interface.**

Service Activation Wizard is a tool which allows you to use trial version of WCF directly without accessing into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. For using Web Content Filter Profile, please refer to later section **Web Content Filter Profile** for detailed information.

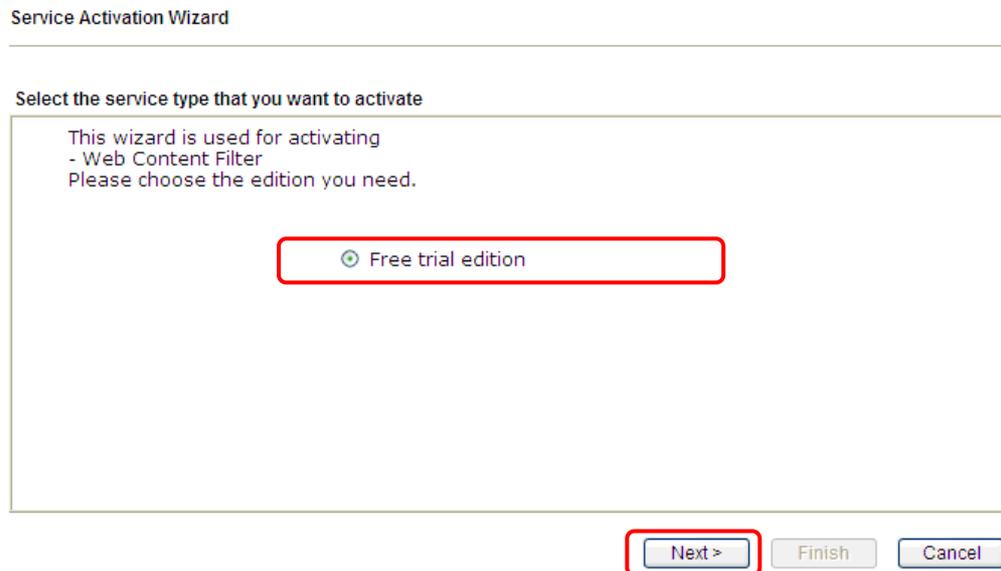
Now, follow the steps listed below to activate WCF feature for your router.

Note: Such function is available only for **Admin Mode**.

1. Open **Wizards>>Service Activation Wizard**.



2. The screen of **Service Activation Wizard** will be shown as follows. Click **Next** to activate free trial edition.



Free trial edition: it offers a period of trial for you to get acquainted with WCF function.

3. In the following page, you can activate the Web content filter services at the same time or individually. When you finish the selection, please click **Next**.

Service Activation Wizard

Select the service type that you want to activate

This product provides 30 days of free trial, please choose the item(s) you want to use.

WCF service:

Web Content Filter (BPjM)
BPjM is the web content filter based on service operated in Germany. We recommend only users live in Germany to try the BPjM WCF service. This is a free service without guarantee.
Activation Date : 2013-02-18

Web Content Filter (Commtouch) [License Agreement](#)
Commtouch is the web content filter based on Commtouch operated in the worldwide. There is a 30-day trial period. After trial, you can purchase DrayTek's prepared Commtouch GlobalView WCF package from retailing outlets.
Activation Date : 2013-02-18

Web Content Filter (fragFINN) [License Agreement](#) Activation Date : 2013-02-18

I have read and accept the above Agreement. (Please check this box).

Note: The activation date is brought out by the server automatically and cannot be changed.

Commtouch is the web content filter based on Commtouch operated in the worldwide. There is a 30-day trial period. After trial, you can purchase DrayTek's prepared Commtouch GlobalView WCF package from retailing outlets.

BPjM is WCF for German Speaking users. The fragFINN is whitelist for German Speaking users. The BPjM is ideal for your family to provide more Internet security for youngsters.

Web Content Filter (fragFINN) service will not be supported since January 1, 2015.

4. Setting confirmation page will be displayed as follows, please click **Next**.

Service Activation Wizard

Please confirm your settings

Service Type : Trial version
Service Activated : Web Content Filter (Commtouch)

Please click **Back** to re-select service type you to activate.

5. Wait for a moment till the following page appears.

Service Activation Wizard

Connection Succeeded!

Please check the following item(s) to enable services on your router.

Enable Web Content Filter

Next >

Finish

When such page appears, you can enable or disable these services for your necessity. Then, click **Finish**.

Note: The service will be activated and applied as the default rule configured in **Firewall>>General Setup**.

6. Now, the web page will display the service that you have activated according to your selection(s). The valid time for the free trial of these services is one month.

Service Activation Wizard

Server Enabled!

DrayTek Service Activation

| Service Name | Start Date | Expire Date | Status |
|--------------------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| Web Content filter | 2013-02-18 | 2013-03-21 | Commtouch |

Please check if the license fits with the service provider of your signature. To ensure normal operation for your router, update your signature again is recommended.

Copyright © DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.

When all the trial editions for various web content filters had been enabled, the configuration page of Service Activation Wizard will be invalid as shown below.

Service Activation Wizard

Select the service type that you want to activate

This wizard is used for activating
- N/A

Please choose the edition you need.

Free trial edition

<https://myvigor.draytek.com/>

Next >

Finish

Cancel

2.3 VPN Client Wizard

Such wizard is used to configure VPN settings for VPN client. Such wizard will guide to set the LAN-to-LAN profile for VPN dial out connection (from server to client) step by step.

1. Open **VPN and Remote Access>>VPN Client Wizard**. The following page will appear.

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

Choose VPN Establishment Environment

LAN-to-LAN VPN Client Mode Selection: Route Mode ▾

Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile: [Index] [Status] [Name] ▾

Note: For a typical LAN-to-LAN tunnel, please select Route Mode.
 If the remote network is expecting only a single client or ip and is not configured to route the subnet and then select NAT mode.
 If in doubt then select Route Mode

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---|--|
| LAN-to-LAN Client Mode Selection | Choose the client mode. Route Mode/NAT Mode – If the remote network only allows you to dial in with single IP, please choose this mode, otherwise please choose Route Mode. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;"> Route Mode ▾ Route Mode NAT Mode </div> |
| Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile | There are 32 VPN profiles for users to set. |

| [Index] | [Status] | [Name] |
|---------|----------|--------|
| 1 | x | ??? |
| 2 | x | ??? |
| 3 | x | ??? |
| 4 | x | ??? |
| 5 | x | ??? |
| 6 | x | ??? |
| 7 | x | ??? |
| 8 | x | ??? |
| 9 | x | ??? |
| 10 | x | ??? |
| 11 | x | ??? |
| 12 | x | ??? |
| 13 | x | ??? |
| 14 | x | ??? |
| 15 | x | ??? |
| 16 | x | ??? |
| 17 | x | ??? |
| 18 | x | ??? |
| 19 | x | ??? |
| 20 | x | ??? |
| 21 | x | ??? |
| 22 | x | ??? |
| 23 | x | ??? |
| 24 | x | ??? |
| 25 | x | ??? |
| 26 | x | ??? |
| 27 | x | ??? |
| 28 | x | ??? |
| 29 | x | ??? |

2. When you finish the mode and profile selection, please click **Next** to open the following page.

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

VPN Connection Setting

| Security ranking (1 is the highest; 5 is the lowest) | Throughput ranking (1 is the highest; 5 is the lowest) |
|--|--|
| 1. L2TP over IPsec | 1. PPTP (None Encryption) |
| 2. IPsec | 2. L2TP |
| 3. PPTP (Encryption) | 3. IPsec |
| 4. L2TP | 4. L2TP over IPsec |
| 5. PPTP (None Encryption) | 5. PPTP (Encryption) |

Select VPN Type:

- PPTP (None Encryption)
- PPTP (Encryption)
- IPsec
- L2TP
- L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have)
- L2TP over IPsec (Must)

In this page, you have to select suitable VPN type for the VPN client profile. There are six types provided here. Different type will lead to different configuration page. After making the choices for the client profile, please click **Next**. You will see different configurations based on the selection(s) you made.

Note: The following descriptions for VPN Type are based on the **Route Mode** specified in **LAN-to-LAN Client Mode Selection**.

- When you choose **PPTP (None Encryption)** or **PPTP (Encryption)**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

VPN Client PPTP Encryption Settings

| | |
|---|---------------|
| Profile Name | ??? |
| VPN Dial-Out Through | WAN1 First |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Always on | |
| Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) | draytek.com |
| Username | marketing |
| Password | ●●●●●● |
| Remote Network IP | 192.168.1.6 |
| Remote Network Mask | 255.255.255.0 |

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

- When you choose **IPsec**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

VPN Client IPsec Settings

| | |
|---|----------------------------|
| Profile Name | ??? |
| VPN Dial-Out Through | WAN1 First |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Always on | |
| Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) | |
| IKE Authentication Method | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key | |
| Confirm Pre-Shared Key | |
| <input type="radio"/> Digital Signature (X.509) | |
| Peer ID | None |
| Local ID | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First | |
| <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First | |
| Local Certificate | None |
| IPsec Security Method | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium (AH) | |
| <input type="radio"/> High (ESP) | DES without Authentication |
| Remote Network IP | 0.0.0.0 |
| Remote Network Mask | 255.255.255.0 |

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

- When you choose **L2TP**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN Client L2TP Settings

| | |
|---|---------------|
| Profile Name | ??? |
| VPN Dial-Out Through | WAN1 First |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Always on | |
| Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) | |
| Username | ??? |
| Password | |
| Remote Network IP | 0.0.0.0 |
| Remote Network Mask | 255.255.255.0 |

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

- When you choose **L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have)** or **L2TP over IPsec (Must)**, you will see the following graphic:

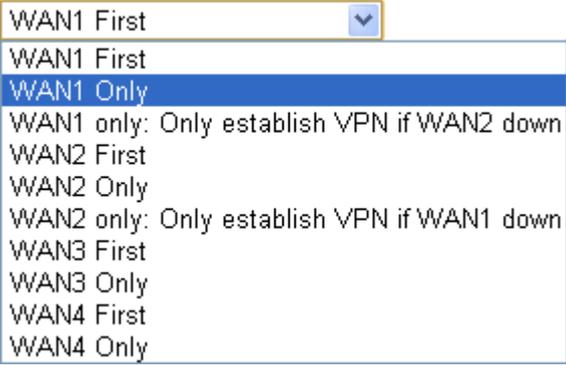
VPN Client L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have) Settings

| | |
|---|----------------------------|
| Profile Name | VPN-2 |
| VPN Dial-Out Through | WAN1 First |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Always on | |
| Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) | |
| IKE Authentication Method | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key | •••••• |
| Confirm Pre-Shared Key | •••••• |
| <input type="radio"/> Digital Signature (X.509) | |
| Peer ID | None |
| Local ID | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First | |
| <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First | |
| Local Certificate | None |
| IPsec Security Method | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium (AH) | |
| <input type="radio"/> High (ESP) | DES without Authentication |
| Username | ??? |
| Password | |
| Remote Network IP | 0.0.0.0 |
| Remote Network Mask | 255.255.255.0 |

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Profile Name | Type a name for such profile. The length of the file is limited to 10 characters. |

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| VPN Dial-Out Through | <p>Use the drop down menu to choose a proper WAN interface for this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only.</p>  <p>WAN1 First/ WAN2 First /WAN3 First/WAN4 First- While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.</p> <p>WAN1 Only /WAN2 Only/WAN3 Only/WAN4 Only - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 as the only channel for VPN connection.</p> <p>WAN1 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN2 down - If WAN2 failed, the router will use WAN1 for VPN connection.</p> <p>WAN2 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN1 down - If WAN1 failed, the router will use WAN2 for VPN connection.</p> |
| Always On | Check to enable router always keep VPN connection. |
| Server IP/Host Name for VPN | Type the IP address of the server or type the host name for such VPN profile. |
| IKE Authentication Method | <p>IKE Authentication Method usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node (LAN to LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and IPsec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPsec and IPsec tunnel.</p> <p>Pre-Shared Key- Specify a key for IKE authentication.</p> <p>Confirm Pre-Shared Key-Confirm the pre-shared key.</p> |
| Digital Signature (X.509) | <p>Click Digital Signature to invoke this function.</p> <p>Peer ID – Choose the peer ID selection from the drop down list.</p> <p>Local ID – Choose Alternative Subject Name First or Subject Name First.</p> <p>Local Certificate – Use the drop down list to choose one of the certificates for using. You have to configure one certificate at least previously in Certificate Management >> Local Certificate. Otherwise, the setting you choose here will not be effective.</p> |
| IPsec Security Method | Medium - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option |

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| | is active. High - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES. |
| User Name | This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the use name is limited to 11 characters. |
| Password | This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters. |
| Remote Network IP | Please type one LAN IP address (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection. |
| Remote Network Mask | Please type the network mask (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection. |

- After finishing the configuration, please click **Next**. The confirmation page will be shown as follows. If there is no problem, you can click one of the radio buttons listed on the page and click **Finish** to execute the next action.

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

Please confirm your settings

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| LAN-to-LAN Index: | 20 |
| Profile Name: | VPN-2 |
| VPN Connection Type: | L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have) |
| VPN Dial-Out Through: | WAN1 First |
| Always on: | No |
| Server IP/Host Name: | 172.16.3.8 |
| IKE Authentication Method: | Pre-Shared Key |
| IPsec Security Method: | AH-SHA1 |
| Remote Network IP: | 0.0.0.0 |
| Remote Network Mask: | 255.255.255.0 |

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and proceed to the following action:

- Go to the VPN Connection Management.
- Do another VPN Client Wizard setup.
- View more detailed configurations.

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Go to the VPN Connection Management | Click this radio button to access VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management for viewing VPN Connection status. |
| Do another VPN Server Wizard Setup | Click this radio button to set another profile of VPN Server through VPN Server Wizard. |
| View more detailed configuration | Click this radio button to access VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN for viewing detailed configuration. |

2.4 VPN Server Wizard

Such wizard is used to configure VPN settings for VPN server. Such wizard will guide to set the LAN-to-LAN profile for VPN dial in connection (from client to server) step by step.

1. Open **VPN and Remote Access>>VPN Server Wizard**. The following page will appear.

VPN Server Wizard

Choose VPN Establishment Environment

VPN Server Mode Selection: Remote Dial-in User (Teleworker) ▾

Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile: 1 x ??? ▾

Please choose a Dial-in User Accounts: 8 x ??? ▾

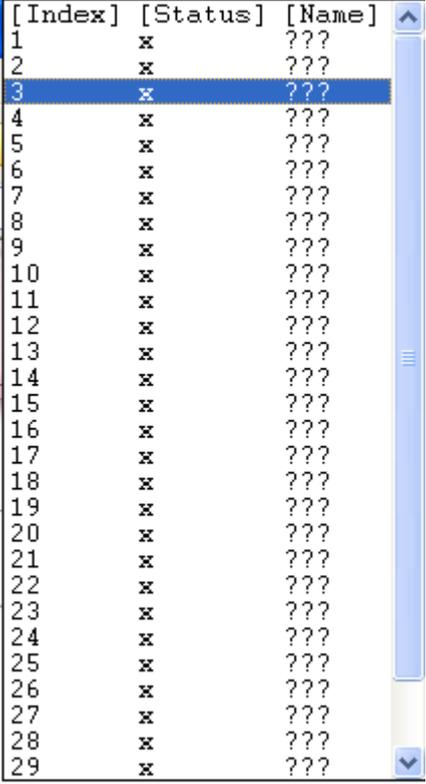
Allowed Dial-in Type:

- PPTP
- IPsec
- L2TP with IPsec Policy None ▾
- SSL Tunnel

< Back
Next >
Finish
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| VPN Server Mode Selection | <p>Choose the direction for the VPN server.</p> <p>Site to Site VPN – To set a LAN-to-LAN profile automatically, please choose Site to Site VPN.</p> <p>Remote Dial-in User –You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profile, so that users can be authenticated to dial-in via VPN connection.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin-top: 5px;"> ▾ <p>Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN)</p> <p style="background-color: #0056b3; color: white;">Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN)</p> <p>Remote Dial-in User (Teleworker)</p> </div> |
| Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile | <p>This item is available when you choose Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN) as VPN server mode. There are 32 VPN profiles for users to set.</p> |

| |  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>[Index]</th> <th>[Status]</th> <th>[Name]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr style="background-color: #0056b3; color: white;"><td>3</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>13</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>14</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>15</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>16</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>17</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>18</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>19</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>20</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>21</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>22</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>23</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>24</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>25</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>26</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>27</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>28</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> <tr><td>29</td><td>x</td><td>???</td></tr> </tbody> </table> | [Index] | [Status] | [Name] | 1 | x | ??? | 2 | x | ??? | 3 | x | ??? | 4 | x | ??? | 5 | x | ??? | 6 | x | ??? | 7 | x | ??? | 8 | x | ??? | 9 | x | ??? | 10 | x | ??? | 11 | x | ??? | 12 | x | ??? | 13 | x | ??? | 14 | x | ??? | 15 | x | ??? | 16 | x | ??? | 17 | x | ??? | 18 | x | ??? | 19 | x | ??? | 20 | x | ??? | 21 | x | ??? | 22 | x | ??? | 23 | x | ??? | 24 | x | ??? | 25 | x | ??? | 26 | x | ??? | 27 | x | ??? | 28 | x | ??? | 29 | x | ??? |
|---|---|---------|----------|--------|---|---|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|-----|
| [Index] | [Status] | [Name] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 13 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 16 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 17 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 18 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 19 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 21 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 22 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 23 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 24 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 25 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 26 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 27 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 28 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 29 | x | ??? | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>Please choose a Dial-in User Accounts</p> | <p>This item is available when you choose Remote Dial-in User (Teleworker) as VPN server mode. There are 32 VPN tunnels for users to set.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>Allowed Dial-in Type</p> | <p>This item is available after you choose any one of dial-in user account profiles. Next, you have to select suitable dial-in type for the VPN server profile. There are several types provided here (similar to VPN Client Wizard).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> None ▼ None Nice to Have Must </div> <p>Different Dial-in Type will lead to different configuration page. In addition, adjustable items for each dial-in type will be changed according to the VPN Server Mode (Site to Site VPN and Remote Dial-in User) selected.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

- After making the choices for the server profile, please click **Next**. You will see different configurations based on the selection you made.

Here we take the examples of choosing **Site-to-Site VPN** as the **VPN Server Mode**.

- When you check **PPTP**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN Server Wizard

VPN Authentication Setting

| | |
|--|---------------|
| Profile Name | ??? |
| PPTP / L2TP / L2TP over IPsec Authentication | |
| Username | ??? |
| Password | |
| Peer IP/VPN Client IP | |
| Site to Site Information | |
| Remote Network IP | 0.0.0.0 |
| Remote Network Mask | 255.255.255.0 |

- When you check **PPTP & IPsec & L2TP** (three types) or **PPTP & IPsec** (two types) or **L2TP with Policy (Nice to Have/Must)**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN Server Wizard

VPN Authentication Setting

| | |
|--|---------------|
| Profile Name | ??? |
| PPTP / L2TP / L2TP over IPsec Authentication | |
| Username | ??? |
| Password | |
| IPsec / L2TP over IPsec Authentication | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key | |
| Confirm Pre-Shared Key | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509) | |
| Peer ID | None |
| Local ID | |
| <input type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First | |
| <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First | |
| Peer IP/VPN Client IP | |
| Peer ID | |
| Site to Site Information | |
| Remote Network IP | 0.0.0.0 |
| Remote Network Mask | 255.255.255.0 |

- When you check **IPsec**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN Server Wizard

VPN Authentication Setting

| | |
|--|---------------|
| Profile Name | ??? |
| IPsec / L2TP over IPsec Authentication | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key | |
| Confirm Pre-Shared Key | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509) | |
| Peer ID | None |
| Local ID | |
| <input type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First | |
| <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First | |
| Peer IP/VPN Client IP | |
| Peer ID | |
| Site to Site Information | |
| Remote Network IP | 0.0.0.0 |
| Remote Network Mask | 255.255.255.0 |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Profile Name | Type a name for such profile. The length of the file is limited to 10 characters. |
| User Name | This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters. |
| Password | This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters. |
| Pre-Shared Key | For IPsec/L2TP IPsec authentication, you have to type a pre-shared key. The length of the name is limited to 64 characters. |
| Confirm Pre-Shared Key | Type the pre-shared key again for confirmation. |
| Digital Signature (X.509) | Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function. Peer ID – Choose the peer ID selection from the drop down list. Local ID – Choose Alternative Subject Name First or Subject Name First . |
| Peer IP/VPN Client IP | Type the WAN IP address or VPN client IP address for the remote client. |
| Peer ID | Type the ID name for the remote client. The length of the name is limited to 47 characters. |

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Remote Network IP | Please type one LAN IP address (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection. |
| Remote Network Mask | Please type the network mask (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection. |

3. After finishing the configuration, please click **Next**. The confirmation page will be shown as follows. If there is no problem, you can click one of the radio buttons listed on the page and click **Finish** to execute the next action.

VPN Server Wizard

Please Confirm Your Settings

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| VPN Environment: | Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN) |
| Index: | 2 |
| Profile Name: | ??? |
| Username: | ??? |
| Allowed Service: | PPTP+L2TP with IPsec Policy |
| Peer IP/VPN Client IP: | |
| Peer ID: | 456 |
| Remote Network IP: | 172.16.3.56 |
| Remote Network Mask: | 255.255.255.0 |

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and proceed to the following action:

- Go to the VPN Connection Management.
- Do another VPN Server Wizard setup.
- View more detailed configurations.

Available settings are explained as follows:

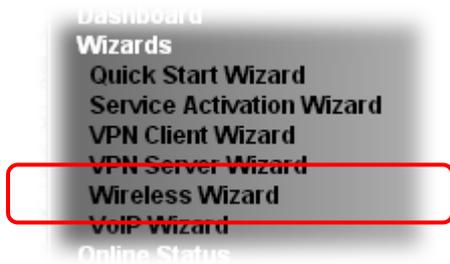
| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Go to the VPN Connection Management | Click this radio button to access VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management for viewing VPN Connection status. |
| Do another VPN Server Wizard Setup | Click this radio button to set another profile of VPN Server through VPN Server Wizard. |
| View more detailed configuration | Click this radio button to access VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN for viewing detailed configuration. |

2.5 Wireless Wizard

The wireless wizard allows you to configure settings specified for a host AP (for home use or internal use for a company) and specified for a guest AP (for any wireless clients accessing into Internet).

Follow the steps listed below:

1. Open **Wireless Wizard**.



2. The screen of wireless wizard will be shown as follows. This page will be used for internal users in a company or your home.

Wireless Wizard

Host AP Configuration

Wireless 2.4GHz Settings

Name:

Mode:

Channel:

Security Key:

Wireless 5GHz Settings

Use the same SSID and Security Key as above

Name:

Mode:

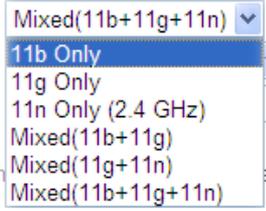
Channel:

Security Key:

Note: The host AP configured here will be used for home or internal company use.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Wireless 2.4GHz Settings | |
| Name | Type the SSID name of this router for wireless 2.4GHz. The default name is defined with DrayTek. Change the name if required. |
| Mode | At present, the router can connect to 11n Only, 11g Only, Mixed (11b+11g), Mixed (11a+11n), Mixed (11g+11n), and Mixed (11b+11g+11n) stations simultaneously. Simply choose Mix (11b+11g+11n) mode. |

| | |
|--|---|
| |  |
| Channel | Means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The default channel is 6. You may switch channel if the selected channel is under serious interference. If you have no idea of choosing the frequency, please select Auto to let system determine for you. |
| Security Key | <p>The wireless mode offered by this wizard is WPA2/PSK. The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication.</p> <p>Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").</p> |
| Use the same SSID and Security Key as above | Check the box to use the same settings configured above. |
| Wireless 5GHz Settings | |
| Name | Type the SSID name of this router for wireless 5GHz.. |
| Mode | At present, the router can connect to 11a Only, 11n Only (5GHz), Mixed (11a+11n) and Mixed (11a+11n+11ac) stations simultaneously. |
| Channel | Means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The default channel is 36. You may switch channel if the selected channel is under serious interference. If you have no idea of choosing the frequency, please select Auto to let system determine for you. |
| Security Key | <p>The wireless mode offered by this wizard is WPA2/PSK. The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication.</p> <p>Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").</p> |
| Next | Click it to get into the next setting page. |
| Cancel | Exit the wireless wizard without saving any changes. |

- After typing the required information, click **Next**. The settings in the page limit the wireless station (guest) accessing into Internet but not being allowed to share the LAN network and VPN connection.

Wireless Wizard

Guest AP Configuration

Wireless 2.4GHz Settings

Enable Disable

SSID:

Security Key:

Rate Control: Enable Upload kbps Download kbps

Wireless 5GHz Settings

Enable Disable

Use the same SSID and Security Key as above

SSID:

Security Key:

Rate Control: Enable Upload kbps Download kbps

Note: The configured guest AP will not be able to access the LAN network, VPN connections, or communicate with wireless devices connecting to the router's other APs. This AP interface shall be used for Internet access only.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|---|
| Wireless 2.4GHz Settings | |
| Enable/Disable | Click it to enable or disable settings in this page. |
| SSID | Type the SSID name of this router. (SSID1) |
| Security Key | <p>The wireless mode offered by this wizard is WPA2/PSK. The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication.</p> <p>Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").</p> |
| Rate Control | <p>It controls the data transmission rate through wireless connection.</p> <p>Upload – Check Enable and type the transmitting rate for data upload. Default value is 30,000 kbps.</p> <p>Download – Type the transmitting rate for data download. Default value is 30,000 kbps.</p> |
| Wireless 5GHz Settings | |
| Enable/Disable | Click it to enable or disable settings in this page. |
| Use the same SSID and Security Key as above | Check the box to use the same settings configured above. |
| SSID | Type the SSID name of this router. (SSID2) |

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| Security Key | The wireless mode offered by this wizard is WPA2/PSK. The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication. Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde..."). |
| Rate Control | It controls the data transmission rate through wireless connection. Upload – Check Enable and type the transmitting rate for data upload. Default value is 30,000 kbps. Download – Type the transmitting rate for data download. Default value is 30,000 kbps. |
| Next | Click it to get into the next setting page. |
| Cancel | Exit the wireless wizard without saving any changes. |

4. After typing the required information, click **Next**.
5. The following page will display the configuration summary for wireless setting.

Wireless Wizard

Configuration Summary

| Wireless 2.4GHz Settings | Wireless 5GHz Settings |
|--|---|
| Mode: Mixed(11g+11n) Channel: Channel 8, 2447MHz | Mode: Mixed (11a+11n) Channel: Channel 60, 5300MHz |
| Host AP SSID Name: 2860-marketing Security Key: ***** | Host AP SSID Name: DrayTek2860_5Gmarketing Security Key: ***** |
| Guest AP Status: Enabled SSID Name: DrayTek_Guest Security Key: ***** Rate Control: Disabled | Guest AP Status: Enabled SSID Name: DrayTek_5G_Guest Security Key: ***** Rate Control: Disabled |

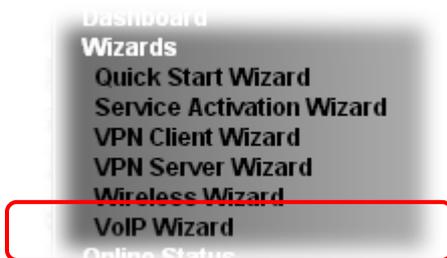
6. Click **Finish** to complete the wireless settings configuration.

2.6 VoIP Wizard

Vigor router offers a quick method to configure settings for VoIP application. Follow the steps listed below.

Note: This wizard is available for “V” model only.

1. Open **Wizards>>VoIP Wizard**.



2. The screen of **VoIP Wizard** will be shown as follows.

VoIP Wizard

Set VoIP service provider domain

VoIP service provider (63 char max).
 SIP Port

Set Account quickly

Phone 1 (default mapping to Account 1)
 Account Number/Name (63 char max).
 Password (63 char max).

Phone 2 (default mapping to Account 2)
 use the same Account as phone1
 Account Number/Name (63 char max).
 Password (63 char max).

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---|--|
| Set VoIP service provider domain | VoIP service provider - Use the drop down list to choose the ISP which offers the VoIP service for your router. SIP Port – Use the default setting (5060). |
| Set Account quickly | Account Number/Name – Type the account number/name registered to your ISP. Password – Type the password for the account registered to your ISP. Use the same Account as phone 1 – If you don't need to configure Phone 2 settings, simply check this box. |
| Next | Click it to get into the next setting page. |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Cancel | Click it to give up the quick start wizard. |
|---------------|---|

3. After finished the settings above, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

VoIP Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| VoIP Service Provider | draytel.org |
| SIP Port | 5060 |
| Phone 1 Account | 5633s |
| Phone 2 Account | 5633s |

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save current settings.

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **VoIP Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear.

VoIP Wizard Setup OK!

2.7 Registering Vigor Router

You have finished the configuration of Quick Start Wizard and you can surf the Internet at any time. Now it is the time to register your Vigor router to MyVigor website for getting more service. Please follow the steps below to finish the router registration.

- 1 Please login the web configuration interface of Vigor router by typing “**admin/admin**” as User Name / Password.

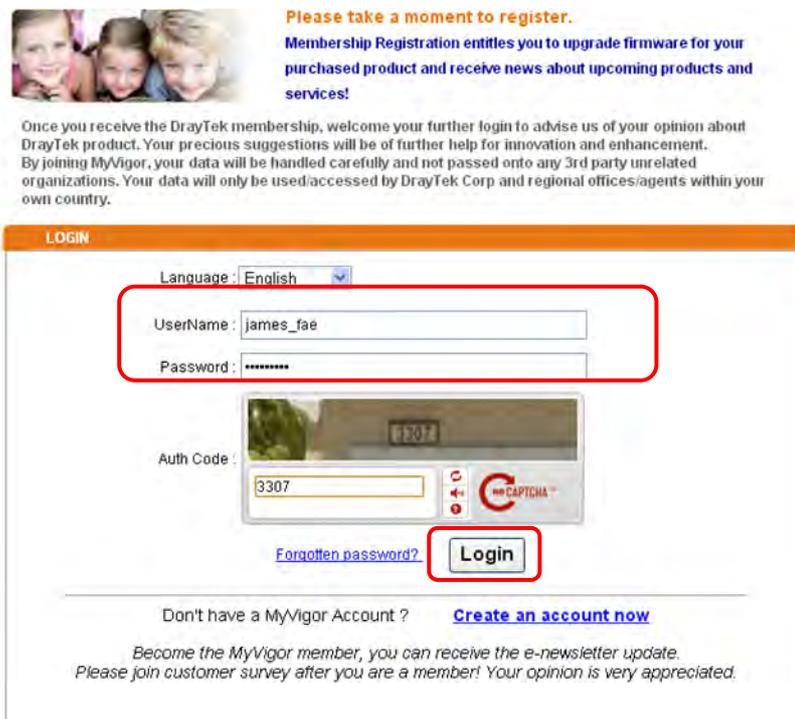


- 2 Click **Support Area>>Production Registration** from the home page.



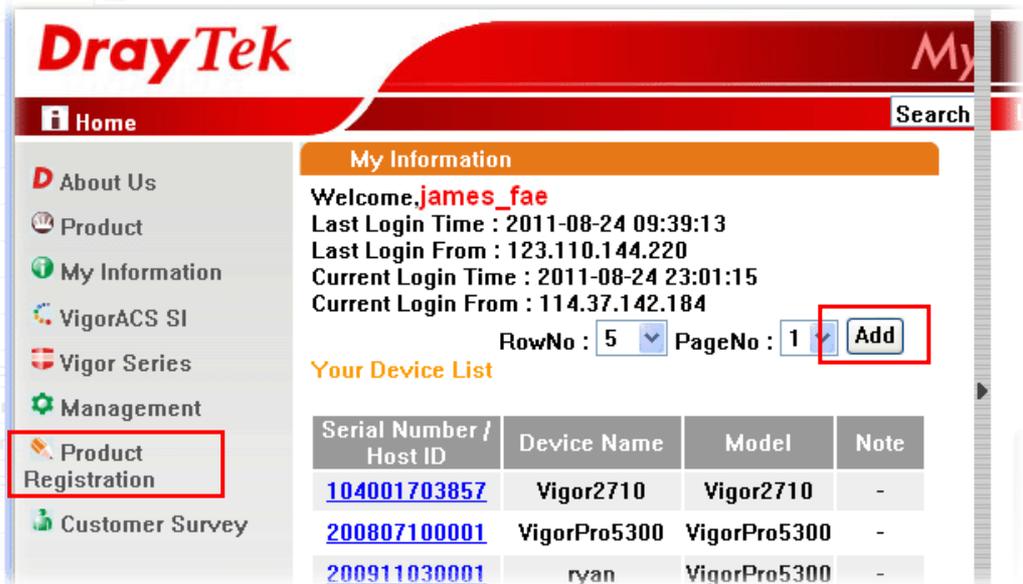
Support Area
Product Registration

- 3 A **Login** page will be shown on the screen. Please type the account and password that you created previously. And click **Login**.

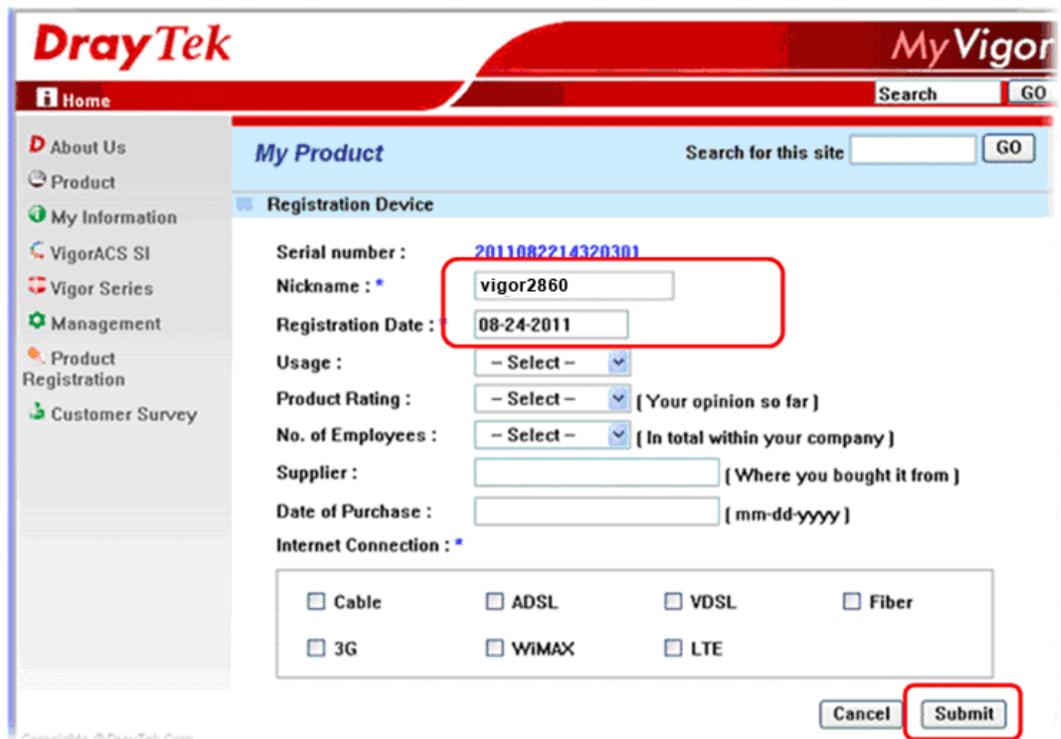


Notice: If you haven't an accessing account, please refer to section 4.9 Creating an Account for MyVigor on User's Guide to create your own one. Please **read the articles on the Agreement regarding user rights** carefully while creating a user account.

- The following page will be displayed after you logging in MyVigor. From this page, please click **Add** or **Product Registration**.



- When the following page appears, please type in Nickname (for the router) and choose the right registration date from the popup calendar (it appears when you click on the box of Registration Date). After adding the basic information for the router, please click **Submit**.



- 6 When the following page appears, your router information has been added to the database.

Your device has been successfully added to the database.



- 7 After clicking **OK**, you will see the following page. Your router has been registered to *myvigor* website successfully.



The screenshot shows the 'My Information' page of the myvigor website. The page has a red header with 'Home' and a search bar. A left sidebar contains navigation links: About Us, Product, My Information, VigorACS SI, Vigor Series, Management, and Customer Survey. The main content area displays 'Welcome, james_fae' and login details: Last Login Time (2011-03-16 01:45:09), Last Login From (172.16.2.180), Current Login Time (2011-03-16 18:20:31), and Current Login From (172.16.3.148). Below this is a 'Your Device List' section with a table. The table has columns for Serial Number / Host ID, Device Name, Model, and Note. A single row is visible, with the Serial Number / Host ID cell highlighted by a red box.

| Serial Number / Host ID | Device Name | Model | Note |
|----------------------------------|-------------|-----------|------|
| 2011031609200201 | Vigor2860 | Vigor2860 | - |

3

Advanced Configuration

This chapter will guide users to execute web configuration.

1. Open a web browser on your PC and type **http://192.168.1.1**. The window will ask for typing username and password.
2. Please type “admin/admin” on Username/Password for administration operation.

Now, the **Main Screen** will appear. Note that different model will have different web pages.

The screenshot displays the DrayTek Vigor2860 Series web configuration interface. The main content area is titled "Dashboard" and includes a "System Information" table, an "IPv4 Internet Access" table, and an "Interface" table. The "System Information" table shows the model name as Vigor2860Vac, system up time as 4:29:49, router name as 2000 Jan 1 Sat 4:29:34, firmware version as 3.7.8, build date/time as Dec 23 2014 18:34:33, DSL version as 548006_A/B/C HW: A, and LAN MAC address as 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-5D. The "IPv4 Internet Access" table shows four WAN interfaces (WAN1, WAN2, WAN3, WAN4) all in a "Disconnected" state. The "Interface" table shows the DSL interface as "Connected" and the LAN interface as "Connected".

| System Information | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| Model Name | Vigor2860Vac | System Up Time | 4:29:49 |
| Router Name | | Current Time | 2000 Jan 1 Sat 4:29:34 |
| Firmware Version | 3.7.8 | Build Date/Time | Dec 23 2014 18:34:33 |
| DSL Version | 548006_A/B/C HW: A | LAN MAC Address | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-5D |

| IPv4 Internet Access | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|----------|
| | Line / Mode | IP Address | MAC Address | Up Time |
| WAN1 | ADSL / PPPoE | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-51 | 00:00:00 |
| WAN2 | Ethernet / --- | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-52 | 00:00:00 |
| WAN3 | USB / --- | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-53 | 00:00:00 |
| WAN4 | USB / --- | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-54 | 00:00:00 |

| Interface | |
|-----------|---|
| DSL | Connected : Down Stream : 0Kbps / Up Stream : 0Kbps |
| WAN | Connected : 0, WAN1 WAN2 WAN3 WAN4 |
| LAN | Connected : 0, LAN1 LAN2 LAN3 LAN4 LAN5 LAN6 |
| WLAN | Connected : 0 |
| WLAN5G | Connected : 0 |
| USB | Connected : 0, USB 1 USB 2 |

3.1 WAN

Quick Start Wizard offers user an easy method to quick setup the connection mode for the router. Moreover, if you want to adjust more settings for different WAN modes, please go to WAN group.

3.1.1 Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network

IP means Internet Protocol. Every device in an IP-based Network including routers, print server, and host PCs, needs an IP address to identify its location on the network. To avoid address conflicts, IP addresses are publicly registered with the Network Information Centre (NIC). Having a unique IP address is mandatory for those devices participated in the public network but not in the private TCP/IP local area networks (LANs), such as host PCs under the management of a router since they do not need to be accessed by the public. Hence, the NIC has reserved certain addresses that will never be registered publicly. These are known as *private* IP addresses, and are listed in the following ranges:

From 10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255

From 172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255

From 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255

What are Public IP Address and Private IP Address

As the router plays a role to manage and further protect its LAN, it interconnects groups of host PCs. Each of them has a private IP address assigned by the built-in DHCP server of the Vigor router. The router itself will also use the default **private IP** address: 192.168.1.1 to communicate with the local hosts. Meanwhile, Vigor router will communicate with other network devices through a **public IP** address. When the data flow passing through, the Network Address Translation (NAT) function of the router will dedicate to translate public/private addresses, and the packets will be delivered to the correct host PC in the local area network. Thus, all the host PCs can share a common Internet connection.

Get Your Public IP Address from ISP

In ADSL deployment, the PPP (Point to Point)-style authentication and authorization is required for bridging customer premises equipment (CPE). Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) connects a network of hosts via an access device to a remote access concentrator or aggregation concentrator. This implementation provides users with significant ease of use. Meanwhile it provides access control, billing, and type of service according to user requirement.

When a router begins to connect to your ISP, a serial of discovery process will occur to ask for a connection. Then a session will be created. Your user ID and password is authenticated via **PAP** or **CHAP** with **RADIUS** authentication system. And your IP address, DNS server, and other related information will usually be assigned by your ISP.

Network Connection by 3G/4G USB Modem

For 3G/4G mobile communication through Access Point is popular more and more, Vigor2860 adds the function of 3G network connection for such purpose. By connecting 3G USB Modem to the USB port of Vigor2860, it can support HSDPA/UMTS/EDGE/GPRS/GSM and the future 3G standard (HSUPA, etc). Vigor2860n with 3G/4G USB Modem allows you to receive 3G signals at any place such as your car or certain location holding outdoor activity and share the bandwidth for using by more people. Users can use four LAN ports on the router to access Internet. Also, they can access Internet via 802.11n wireless function of Vigor2860n, and enjoy the powerful firewall, bandwidth management, VPN features of Vigor2860n series.



After connecting into the router, 3G/4G USB Modem will be regarded as the WAN3/WAN4 port. However, the original WAN1 and WAN2 still can be used and Load-Balance can be done in the router. Besides, 3G/4G USB Modem in WAN3/WAN4 also can be used as backup device. Therefore, when WAN1 and WAN2 are not available, the router will use 3.5G for supporting automatically. The supported 3G/4G USB Modem will be listed on DrayTek web site. Please visit www.draytek.com for more detailed information.

Below shows the menu items for **WAN**.

3.1.2 General Setup

This section will introduce some general settings of Internet and explain the connection modes for WAN1, WAN2 and WAN3/WAN4 in details.

This router supports multiple-WAN function. It allows users to access Internet and combine the bandwidth of the multiple WANs to speed up the transmission through the network. Each WAN port can connect to different ISPs, Even if the ISPs use different technology to provide telecommunication service (such as DSL, Cable modem, etc.). If any connection problem occurred on one of the ISP connections, all the traffic will be guided and switched to the normal communication port for proper operation. Please configure WAN1, WAN2, WAN3 and WAN4 settings.

This webpage allows you to set general setup for WAN1, WAN2, WAN3 and WAN4 respectively. In default, WAN2 is disabled. If you want to enable it, simply click the WAN2 link and select **Yes** in the field of **Enable**.

WAN >> General Setup

Load Balance Mode:

| Index | Enable | Physical Mode/Type | Line Speed(Kbps) DownLink/UpLink | Active Mode |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------|
| WAN1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | ADSL/- | 0 / 0 | Always On |
| WAN2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Ethernet/Auto negotiation | 0 / 0 | Always On |
| WAN3 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | USB/- | 0 / 0 | Always On |
| WAN4 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | USB/- | 0 / 0 | Always On |

Note: The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| Load Balance Mode | <p>This option is available for multiple-WAN for getting enough bandwidth for each WAN port. If you know the practical bandwidth for your WAN interface, please choose the setting of According to Line Speed. Otherwise, please choose Auto Weigh to let the router reach the best load balance.</p> <p>Load Balance Mode: <input type="text" value="Auto Weight"/></p> |
| Index | Click the WAN interface link under Index to access into the WAN configuration page. |
| Enable | V means such WAN interface is enabled and ready to be used. |

| | |
|---|--|
| Physical Mode / Type | Display the physical mode and physical type of such WAN interface. |
| Line Speed(Kbps) DownLink/UpLink | Display the downstream and upstream rate of such WAN interface. |
| Active Mode | Display whether such WAN interface is Active device or backup device. Backup (WAN#) - Display the backup WAN interface for such WAN when it is disabled. |

Note: In default, each WAN port is enabled.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

WAN1 with ADSL/VDSL

Vigor router will **detect** the physical line is connected by ADSL or VDSL2 **automatically**. Therefore, this page allows you to configure settings for ADSL and VDSL2 at one time. That is, it is not necessary for you to configure different profile settings for ADSL and VDSL2 respectively.

WAN >> General Setup

WAN 1

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Enable: | Yes |
| Display Name: | |
| Physical Mode: | VDSL2 |
| DSL Mode: | VDSL2 only |
| Physical Type: | Auto negotiation |
| DSL Modem Code: | Default |
| Line Speed(Kbps): | |
| DownLink | 0 |
| UpLink | 0 |
| VLAN Tag insertion (ADSL): | Disable |
| Tag value: | 0 (0~4095) |
| Priority: | 0 (0~7) |
| VLAN Tag insertion (VDSL2): | Disable |
| Tag value: | 0 (0~4095) |
| Priority: | 0 (0~7) |
| Active Mode: | Always On |
| Load Balance: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |

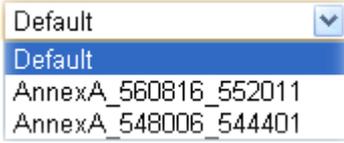
Note:

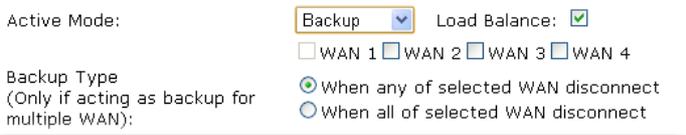
1. The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.
2. In DSL auto mode, the router will reboot automatically while switching between VDSL2 and ADSL lines.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Enable | Choose Yes to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose No to disable the settings for this WAN interface. |
| Display Name | Type the description for such interface. |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Physical Mode | Display the physical mode of such interface. If VDSL2 is detected, this field will display “ VDSL2 ”; if ADSL is detected, it will display “ ADSL ”. |
| DSL Mode | Specify the physical mode (VDSL or ADSL) for such router manually. |
| Physical Type | For such interface, no type can be selected. |
| DSL Modem Code | <p>Choose the correct DSL modem code for ensuring the network connection.</p>  <p>If you have no idea about the selection, simply choose Default or contact the dealer for assistance.</p> |
| Line Speed (Kpbs) | If your choose According to Line Speed as the Load Balance Mode in previous page, please type the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps. |
| VLAN Tag insertion (ADSL) | <p>The settings configured in this field are available for ADSL.</p> <p>Enable – Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <p>Disable – Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>Tag value – Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p>Priority – Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p> |
| VLAN Tag insertion (VDSL2) | <p>The settings configured in this field are available for VDSL2.</p> <p>Enable – Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <p>Disable – Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>Tag value – Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p>Priority – Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p> |

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| <p>Active Mode</p> | <p>Choose Always On to make the WAN1 connection being activated always;</p>  <p>Load Balance: Check this box to enable auto load balance function for such WAN interface.</p> <p>When the data traffic is large, the WAN interface with the function enabled will balance the data transmission automatically among all of the WAN interfaces in connection status.</p> |
| <p>Backup Type</p> | <p>If you choose Backup as the Active Mode, Backup Type will appear. Please specify which WAN will be the Backup interface.</p>  <p>When any of WAN disconnect – Such backup WAN will be activated when any master WAN interface disconnects.</p> <p>When all of selected WAN disconnect – Such backup WAN will be activated only when all master WAN interfaces disconnect.</p> |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

WAN2 with Ethernet

WAN2 is fixed with physical mode of Ethernet.

WAN >> General Setup

WAN 2

| | |
|---|---|
| Enable: | <input type="text" value="Yes"/> |
| Display Name: | <input type="text"/> |
| Physical Mode: | Ethernet |
| Physical Type: | <input type="text" value="Auto negotiation"/> |
| Line Speed(Kbps): | |
| DownLink | <input type="text" value="0"/> |
| UpLink | <input type="text" value="0"/> |
| VLAN Tag insertion : | <input type="text" value="Disable"/> |
| Tag value: | <input type="text" value="0"/> (0~4095) |
| Priority: | <input type="text" value="0"/> (0~7) |
| Active Mode: | <input type="text" value="Backup"/> Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4 |
| Backup Type (Only if acting as backup for multiple WAN): | <input checked="" type="radio"/> When any of selected WAN disconnect <input type="radio"/> When all of selected WAN disconnect |

Note:

The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Enable | Choose Yes to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose No to disable the settings for this WAN interface. |
| Display Name | Type the description for such WAN interface. |
| Physical Mode | Display the physical mode of such WAN interface. |
| Physical Type | <p>You can change the physical type for WAN2 or choose Auto negotiation for determined by the system.</p>  |
| Line Speed | If your choose According to Line Speed as the Load Balance Mode , please type the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps. |
| VLAN Tag insertion | <p>Enable – Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <p>Disable – Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>Tag value – Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p>Priority – Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p> |
| Active Mode | <p>Choose Always On to make the WAN2 connection being activated always.</p>  <p>Load Balance: Check this box to enable auto load balance function for such WAN interface. When the data traffic is large, the WAN interface with the function enabled will balance the data transmission automatically among all of the WAN interfaces in connection status.</p> |

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Backup Type | <p>If you choose Backup as the Active Mode, Backup Type will appear. Please specify which WAN will be treated as the Backup WAN.</p> <p>Active Mode: <input type="text" value="Backup"/> Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4</p> <p>Backup Type (Only if acting as backup for multiple WAN):</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> When any of selected WAN disconnect</p> <p><input type="radio"/> When all of selected WAN disconnect</p> <hr/> <p>When any of selected WAN disconnect – Such backup WAN will be activated when any master WAN interface disconnects.</p> <p>When all of selected WAN disconnect – Such backup WAN will be activated only when all master WAN interfaces disconnect.</p> |
|--------------------|--|

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

WAN3/WAN4 with USB

To use 3G/4G network connection through 3G/4G USB Modem, please configure **WAN3** or **WAN4** interface.

WAN >> General Setup

WAN 3

| | |
|--|---|
| Enable: | <input type="text" value="Yes"/> |
| Display Name: | <input type="text"/> |
| Physical Mode: | USB |
| Line Speed(Kbps): | |
| DownLink | <input type="text" value="0"/> |
| UpLink | <input type="text" value="0"/> |
| Active Mode: | <input type="text" value="Backup"/> Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4 |
| Backup Type (Only if acting as backup for multiple WAN): | <input checked="" type="radio"/> When any of selected WAN disconnect |
| | <input type="radio"/> When all of selected WAN disconnect |

Note:

The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Enable | Choose Yes to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose No to disable the settings for this WAN interface. |
| Display Name | Type the description for such WAN interface. |
| Physical Mode | Display the physical mode of such WAN interface. |
| Line Speed | If your choose According to Line Speed as the Load Balance Mode , please type the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps. |

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| <p>Active Mode</p> | <p>Choose Always On to make the WAN3 connection being activated always.</p> <div> <p>Always On ▾ Always On Backup</p> </div> <p>Load Balance: Check this box to enable auto load balance function for such WAN interface.</p> <p>When the data traffic is large, the WAN interface with the function enabled will balance the data transmission automatically among all of the WAN interfaces in connection status.</p> |
| <p>Backup Type</p> | <p>If you choose Backup as the Active Mode, Backup Type will appear. Please specify which WAN will be treated as the Backup WAN.</p> <div> <p>Active Mode: Backup ▾ Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4</p> <p>Backup Type (Only if acting as backup for multiple WAN):</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> When any of selected WAN disconnect <input type="radio"/> When all of selected WAN disconnect</p> </div> <p>When any of selected WAN disconnect – Such backup WAN will be activated when any master WAN interface disconnects.</p> <p>When all of selected WAN disconnect – Such backup WAN will be activated only when all master WAN interfaces disconnect.</p> |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

3.1.3 Internet Access

For the router supports multi-WAN function, the users can set different WAN settings (for WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4) for Internet Access. Due to different Physical Mode for WAN interface, the Access Mode for these connections also varies. Refer to the following figures.

WAN >> Internet Access

Internet Access

| Index | Display Name | Physical Mode | Access Mode | | |
|-------|--------------|---------------|-----------------------------|--------------|------|
| WAN1 | | ADSL / VDSL2 | PPPoE / PPPoA | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN2 | | Ethernet | None | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN3 | | USB | PPPoE / PPPoA | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN4 | | USB | MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP | Details Page | IPv6 |

Note: 1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.
Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.
2. Only one WAN can support IPv6.

[Advanced](#) You can configure DHCP client options here.

WAN >> Internet Access

Internet Access

| Index | Display Name | Physical Mode | Access Mode | | |
|-------|--------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|------|
| WAN1 | | ADSL / VDSL2 | PPPoE / PPPoA | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN2 | | Ethernet | None | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN3 | | USB | None | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN4 | | USB | PPPoE | Details Page | IPv6 |

Note: 1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.
Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.
2. Only one WAN can support IPv6.

[Advanced](#) You can configure DHCP client options here.

WAN >> Internet Access

Internet Access

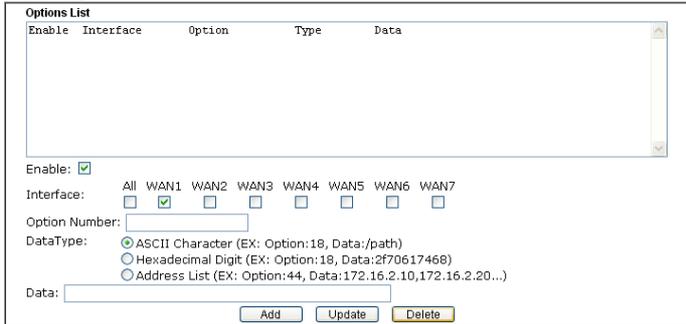
| Index | Display Name | Physical Mode | Access Mode | | |
|-------|--------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|------|
| WAN1 | | ADSL / VDSL2 | PPPoE / PPPoA | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN2 | | Ethernet | None | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN3 | | USB | None | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN4 | | USB | None | Details Page | IPv6 |

Note: 1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.
Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.
2. Only one WAN can support IPv6.

[Advanced](#) You can configure DHCP client options here.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------|---|
| Index | Display the WAN interface. |
| Display Name | It shows the name of the WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 that entered in general setup. |
| Physical Mode | It shows the physical connection for WAN1(ADSL/VDSL2) /WAN2 (Ethernet) /WAN3/WAN4 |

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| | (3G/4G USB Modem) according to the real network connection. |
| Access Mode | Use the drop down list to choose a proper access mode. The details page of that mode will be popped up. If not, click Details Page for accessing the page to configure the settings. |
| Details Page | This button will open different web page (based on IPv4) according to the access mode that you choose in WAN interface. Note that Details Page will be changed slightly based on ADSL/VDSL2 physical mode specified on WAN>>General Setup . |
| IPv6 | This button will open different web page (based on Physical Mode) to setup IPv6 Internet Access Mode for WAN interface. If IPv6 service is active on this WAN interface, the color of “IPv6” will become green. |
| Advanced | <p>This button allows you to configure DHCP client options. DHCP packets can be processed by adding option number and data information when such function is enabled and configured.</p> <p>WAN >> Internet Access</p> <hr/> <p>DHCP Client Options Status</p>  <p>Note: Option 61 has been given a default value. You can configure option 61(Client Identifier) in "WAN >> Interface Access" page. If you choose to configure option 61 here, the settings in "WAN >> Interface Access,Details Page" will be overwritten. Option 12 is reserved, you cannot configure it here but you can configure it in "Router Name" field of "WAN >> Interface Access".</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OK</p> <p>Enable/Disable – Enable/Disable the function of DHCP Option. Each DHCP option is composed by an option number with data. For example, Option number: 100 Data: abcd</p> <p>When such function is enabled, the specified values for DHCP option will be seen in DHCP reply packets.</p> <p>Interface – Specify the WAN interface(s) that will be overwritten by such function. WAN5 ~ WAN7 can be located under WAN>>Multi-PVC/VLAN.</p> <p>Option Number – Type a number for such function.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note: If you choose to configure option 61 here, the detailed settings in WAN>>Interface Access will be</p> </div> |

overwritten.

Data Type – Choose the type (ASCII or Hex) for the data to be stored.

Data – Type the content of the data to be processed by the function of DHCP option.

Details Page for PPPoE in WAN1 (Physical Mode: VDSL2)

To choose PPPoE as the accessing protocol of the Internet, please select **PPPoE** from the **WAN>>Internet Access >>WAN1** page. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

| PPPoE / PPPoA | MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP | IPv6 |
|---|-----------------------------|------|
| <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | |
| Modem Settings (for ADSL only) | | |
| Multi-PVC channel | Channel 1 | |
| VPI | 8 | |
| VCI | 35 | |
| Encapsulating Type | VC MUX | |
| Protocol | PPPoA | |
| Modulation | Multimode | |
| PPPoE Pass-through | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> For Wired LAN | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> For Wireless LAN | | |
| WAN Connection Detection | | |
| Mode | Ping Detect | |
| Ping IP | | |
| TTL: | | |
| MTU | | |
| 1492 (Max:1492) | | |
| ISP Access Setup | | |
| Service Name (Optional) * | | |
| Username | | |
| Password | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Separate Account for ADSL | | |
| PPP Authentication PAP or CHAP | | |
| Idle Timeout -1 second(s) | | |
| IP Address From ISP WAN IP Alias | | |
| Fixed IP <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) | | |
| Fixed IP Address | | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address | | |
| <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address | | |
| MAC Address: 00 · 1D · AA · 85 · BA · D5 | | |
| Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: | | |
| => , , , | | |

*: Required for some ISPs

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Enable/Disable | Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid. |
| Modem Setting (for ADSL only) | It is not necessary to configure settings in these fields for modem settings are prepared for ADSL only. |
| PPPoE Pass-through | The router offers PPPoE dial-up connection. Besides, you also can establish the PPPoE connection directly from local clients to your ISP via the Vigor router. When PPPoA protocol is selected, the PPPoE package transmitted by PC will be transformed into PPPoA package and sent to WAN server. Thus, the PC can access Internet through such direction. |

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| | <p>For Wired LAN – If you check this box, PCs on the same network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.</p> <p>For Wireless LAN – It is available for <i>n</i> model. If you check this box, PCs on the same wireless network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.</p> <p>Note: To have PPPoA Pass-through, please choose PPPoA protocol and check the box(es) here. The router will behave like a modem which only serves the PPPoE client on the LAN. That's, the router will offer PPPoA dial-up connection.</p> |
| WAN Connection Detection | <p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode – Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p>Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <p>TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.</p> |
| MTU | It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. |
| ISP Access Setup | <p>Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP.</p> <p>Username – Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.</p> <p>Password – Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.</p> <p>Separate Account for ADSL – In default, WAN1 supports VDSL2/ADSL and uses the same PPPoE account and password for connection. If required, you can configure another account and password for ADSL connection by checking this box. If it is checked, the system will ask you to type another group of account and password additionally.</p> <p>PPP Authentication – Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP.</p> <p>Idle Timeout – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p> |
| IP Address From ISP | <p>Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.</p> <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using.</p> |

WAN1 IP Alias (Multi-NAT)

| Index | Enable | Aux. WAN IP | Join NAT IP Pool |
|-------|-------------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | --- | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |

<< 1.8 | 9-16 | 17-24 | 25-32 >> Next >>

Fixed IP – Click **Yes** to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of **Fixed IP Address**.

Default MAC Address – You can use **Default MAC Address** or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.

Specify a MAC Address – Type the MAC address for the router manually.

Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Applications >> Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

Details Page for MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP in WAN1 (Physical Mode: VDSL2)

MPoA is a specification that enables ATM services to be integrated with existing LANs, which use either Ethernet, token-ring or TCP/IP protocols. The goal of MPoA is to allow different LANs to send packets to each other via an ATM backbone.

To use **Static or Dynamic IP** as the accessing protocol of the Internet, select **Static or Dynamic IP** from the **WAN>>Internet Access >>WAN1** page. The following web page will appear.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

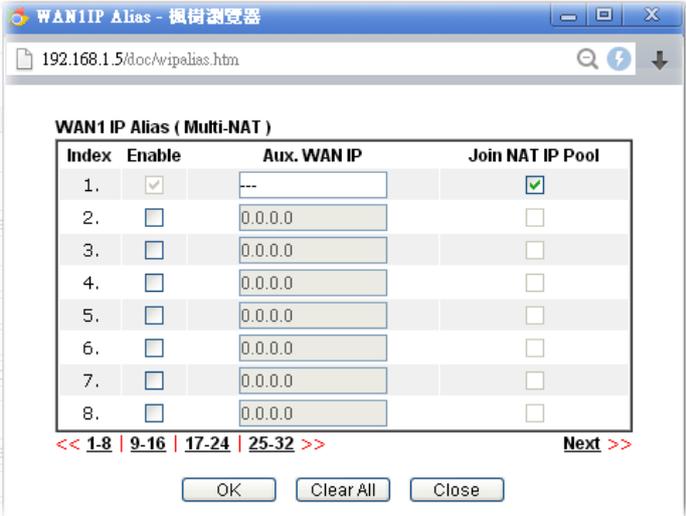
| PPPoE / PPPoA | MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP | IPv6 |
|---|-----------------------------|---|
| <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | |
| Modem Settings (for ADSL only) Multi-PVC channel: Channel 2 Encapsulation: 1483 Bridged IP LLC VPI: 8 VCI: 88 Modulation: Multimode | | |
| WAN Connection Detection Mode: ARP Detect | | |
| MTU : 1500 (Max:1500) | | |
| RIP Protocol <input type="checkbox"/> Enable RIP | | |
| Bridge Mode <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Bridge Mode | | |
| WAN IP Network Settings WAN IP Alias <input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically Router Name: Vigor* Domain Name: * <input type="checkbox"/> DHCP Client Identifier * Username: <input type="text"/> Password: <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address IP Address: <input type="text"/> Subnet Mask: <input type="text"/> Gateway IP Address: <input type="text"/> | | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address MAC Address: 00 1D AA 85 BA D5 |
| DNS Server IP Address Primary IP Address: 8.8.8.8 Secondary IP Address: 8.8.4.4 | | |

*: Required for some ISPs

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Enable/Disable | Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid. |
| Modem Setting (for ADSL only) | It is not necessary to configure settings in these fields for modem settings are prepared for ADSL only. |
| WAN Connection Detection | Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. Mode – Choose ARP Detect , Ping Detect or Always On for the system to execute for WAN detection. Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. |

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| | TTL value is set by telnet command. |
| MTU | It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. |
| RIP Protocol | Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click Enable RIP for activating this function. |
| Bridge Mode | If you choose Bridged IP as the protocol, you can check this box to invoke the function. The router will work as a bridge modem. |
| WAN IP Network Settings | <p>This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.</p> <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.</p>  <p>Obtain an IP address automatically – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Router Name – Type in the router name provided by ISP. ● Domain Name – Type in the domain name that you have assigned. <p>DHCP Client Identifier for some ISP</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enable: Check the box to specify username and password as the DHCP client identifier for some ISP. ● Username: Type a name as username. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. ● Password: Type a password. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. |

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| | <p>Specify an IP address – Click this radio button to specify some data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Address – Type in the private IP address. ● Subnet Mask – Type in the subnet mask. ● Gateway IP Address – Type in gateway IP address. <p>Default MAC Address – Type in MAC address for the router. You can use Default MAC Address or specify another MAC address for your necessity.</p> <p>Specify a MAC Address – Type in the MAC address for the router manually.</p> |
| DNS Server IP Address | Type in the primary IP address for the router. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

Details Page for PPPoE/PPPoA in WAN1 (Physical Mode: ADSL)

WAN >> Internet Access

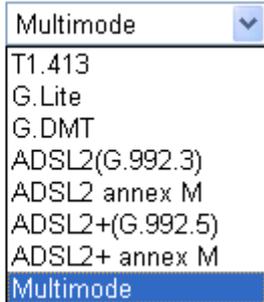
WAN 1

| PPPoE / PPPoA | MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP | IPv6 |
|--|--|------|
| <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | ISP Access Setup Service Name (Optional) <input type="text"/> * Username <input type="text"/> Password <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Separate Account for ADSL PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/> Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s) | |
| Modem Settings (for ADSL only) Multi-PVC channel <input type="text" value="Channel 1"/> VPI <input type="text" value="8"/> VCI <input type="text" value="35"/> Encapsulating Type <input type="text" value="VC MUX"/> Protocol <input type="text" value="PPPoA"/> Modulation <input type="text" value="Multimode"/> | IP Address From ISP <input type="text" value="WAN IP Alias"/> Fixed IP <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/> | |
| PPPoE Pass-through <input type="checkbox"/> For Wired LAN <input type="checkbox"/> For Wireless LAN | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address MAC Address: <input type="text" value="00"/> <input type="text" value="1D"/> <input type="text" value="AA"/> <input type="text" value="85"/> <input type="text" value="BA"/> <input type="text" value="D5"/> | |
| WAN Connection Detection Mode <input type="text" value="ARP Detect"/> | Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: => <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> | |
| MTU <input type="text" value="1492"/> (Max:1492) | | |

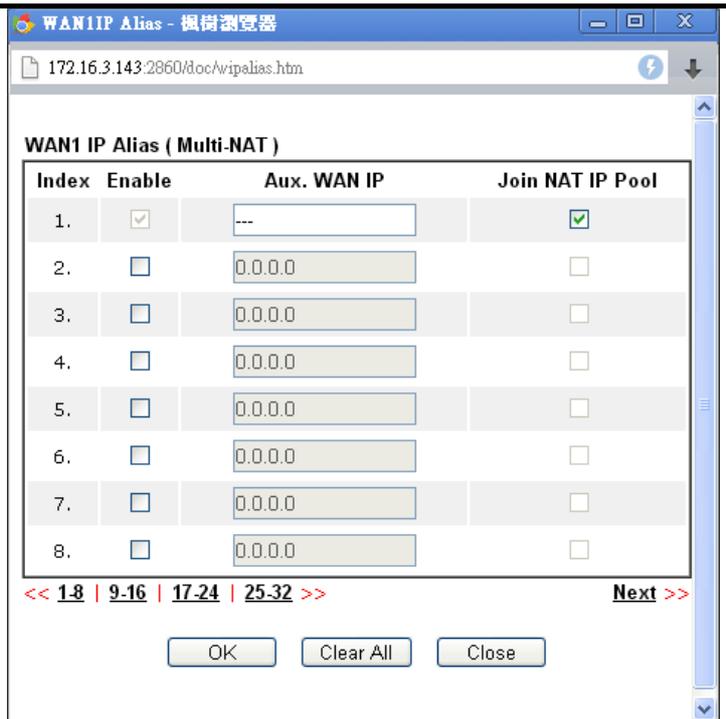
*: Required for some ISPs

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Enable/Disable | Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that |

| | |
|---|--|
| | you adjusted in this page will be invalid. |
| Modem Settings (for ADSL only) | <p>Set up the DSL parameters required by your ISP. These settings configured here are specified for ADSL only.</p> <p>Multi-PVC channel - The selections displayed here are determined by the page of Internet Access >> Multi PVCs. Select M-PVCs Channel means no selection will be chosen.</p> <p>VPI - Type in the value provided by ISP.</p> <p>VCI - Type in the value provided by ISP.</p> <p>Encapsulating Type - Drop down the list to choose the type provided by ISP.</p> <p>Protocol - Drop down the list to choose the one (PPPoE or PPPoA) provided by ISP.</p> <p>If you have already used Quick Start Wizard to set the protocol, then it is not necessary for you to change any settings in this group.</p> <p>Modulation –Default setting is Multimode. Choose the one that fits the requirement of your router.</p> <p>Modulation </p> |
| PPPoE Pass-through | <p>The router offers PPPoE dial-up connection. Besides, you also can establish the PPPoE connection directly from local clients to your ISP via the Vigor router. When PPPoA protocol is selected, the PPPoE package transmitted by PC will be transformed into PPPoA package and sent to WAN server. Thus, the PC can access Internet through such direction.</p> <p>For Wired LAN – If you check this box, PCs on the same network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.</p> <p>For Wireless LAN – It is available for <i>n</i> model. If you check this box, PCs on the same wireless network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.</p> <p>Note: To have PPPoA Pass-through, please choose PPPoA protocol and check the box(es) here. The router will behave like a modem which only serves the PPPoE client on the LAN. That's, the router will offer PPPoA dial-up connection.</p> |
| WAN Connection Detection | <p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode – Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system</p> |

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| | <p>to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p>Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <p>TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.</p> |
| MTU | It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. |
| RIP Protocol | Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click Enable RIP for activating this function. |
| ISP Access Setup | <p>Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP.</p> <p>Username – Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.</p> <p>Password – Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.</p> <p>Separate Account for ADSL – In default, WAN1 supports VDSL2/ADSL and uses the same PPPoE account and password for connection. If required, you can configure another account and password for ADSL connection by checking this box. If it is checked, the system will ask you to type another group of account and password additionally.</p> <p>PPP Authentication – Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP.</p> <p>Idle Timeout – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p> |
| IP Address From ISP | <p>Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.</p> <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using.</p> |



Fixed IP – Click **Yes** to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of **Fixed IP Address**.

Default MAC Address – You can use **Default MAC Address** or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.

Specify a MAC Address – Type the MAC address for the router manually.

Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Applications >> Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

Details Page for MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP in WAN1 (Physical Mode: ADSL)

MPoA is a specification that enables ATM services to be integrated with existing LANs, which use either Ethernet, token-ring or TCP/IP protocols. The goal of MPoA is to allow different LANs to send packets to each other via an ATM backbone.

To use **MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP** as the accessing protocol of the Internet, select **MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP** from the **WAN>>Internet Access >>WAN1** page. The following web page will appear.

WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA
 MPOA / Static or Dynamic IP
 IPv6

Enable
 Disable

Modem Settings (for ADSL only)

Multi-PVC channel: Channel 2

Encapsulation: 1483 Bridged IP LLC

VPI: 8

VCI: 88

Modulation: Multimode

WAN Connection Detection

Mode: ARP Detect

MTU: 1500 (Max:1500)

RIP Protocol

Enable RIP

Bridge Mode

Enable Bridge Mode

WAN IP Network Settings WAN IP Alias

Obtain an IP address automatically

Router Name: Vigor*

Domain Name: *

DHCP Client Identifier *

Username: []

Password: []

Specify an IP address

IP Address: []

Subnet Mask: []

Gateway IP Address: []

Default MAC Address

Specify a MAC Address

MAC Address: 00 · 1D · AA · 85 · BA · D5

DNS Server IP Address

Primary IP Address: 8.8.8.8

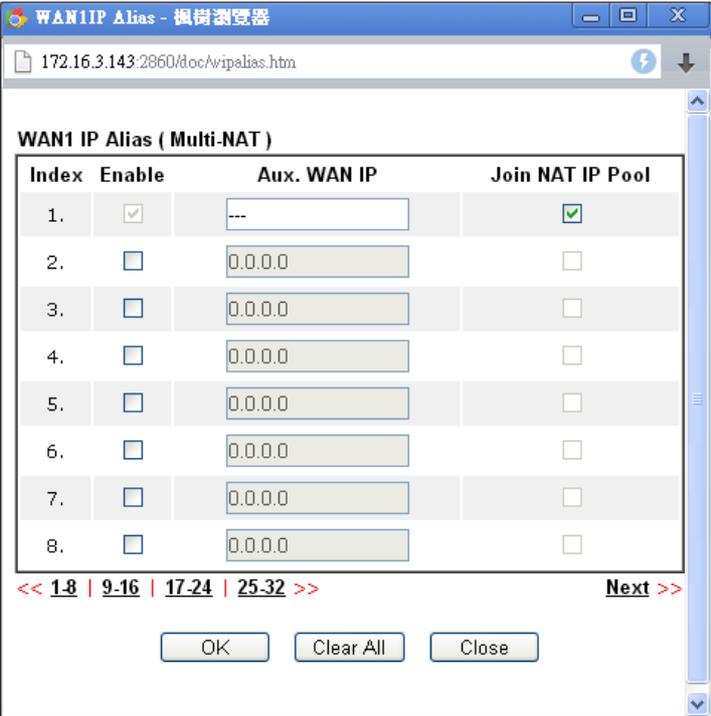
Secondary IP Address: 8.8.4.4

*: Required for some ISPs

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Enable/Disable | Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid. |
| Modem Settings (for ADSL only) | Set up the DSL parameters required by your ISP. These settings configured here are specified for ADSL only. Multi-PVC channel - The selections displayed here are determined by the page of Internet Access >>Multi PVCs. Select M-PVCs Channel means no selection will be chosen. Encapsulating - Drop down the list to choose the type provided by ISP. VPI - Type in the value provided by ISP. VCI - Type in the value provided by ISP. Modulation –Default setting is Multimode. Choose the one that fits the requirement of your router. |
| WAN Connection Detection | Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. Mode – Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. |

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| | TTL value is set by telnet command. |
| MTU | It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. The default setting is 1492. |
| RIP Protocol | Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click Enable RIP for activating this function. |
| Bridge Mode | If you choose Bridged IP as the protocol, you can check this box to invoke the function. The router will work as a bridge modem. |
| WAN IP Network Settings | <p>This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.</p> <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.</p>  <p>Obtain an IP address automatically – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Router Name – Type in the router name provided by ISP. ● Domain Name – Type in the domain name that you have assigned. <p>DHCP Client Identifier for some ISP -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enable: Check the box to specify username and password as the DHCP client identifier for some ISP. |

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Username: Type a name as username. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. ● Password: Type a password. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. <p>Specify an IP address – Click this radio button to specify some data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Address – Type in the private IP address. ● Subnet Mask – Type in the subnet mask. ● Gateway IP Address – Type in gateway IP address. <p>Default MAC Address – Type in MAC address for the router. You can use Default MAC Address or specify another MAC address for your necessity.</p> <p>Specify a MAC Address – Type in the MAC address for the router manually.</p> |
| DNS Server IP Address | Type in the primary IP address for the router. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

Details Page for PPPoE in WAN2

To choose PPPoE as the accessing protocol of the Internet, please select **PPPoE** from the **WAN>>Internet Access >>WAN2** page. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|---|--|--|---|
| <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | ISP Access Setup Service Name (Optional) <input type="text"/> Username <input type="text"/> Password <input type="text"/> Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: => <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> | PPP/MP Setup PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/> Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s) IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) <input type="text" value="WAN IP Alias"/> Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address MAC Address: <input type="text" value="00"/> <input type="text" value="1D"/> <input type="text" value="AA"/> <input type="text" value="85"/> <input type="text" value="BA"/> <input type="text" value="D6"/> |
| WAN Connection Detection Mode <input type="text" value="ARP Detect"/> | | MTU <input type="text" value="1492"/> (Max:1492) | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Enable/Disable | Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid. |

| | |
|--|--|
| ISP Access Setup | <p>Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP.</p> <p>Service Name (Optional) - Enter the description of the specific network service.</p> <p>Username – Type in the username provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.</p> <p>Password – Type in the password provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.</p> <p>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p> |
| WAN Connection Detection | <p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode – Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p>Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for ping.</p> <p>TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.</p> |
| MTU | It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. |
| PPP/MP Setup | <p>PPP Authentication – Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP.</p> <p>Idle Timeout – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p> |
| IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) | <p>Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.</p> <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.</p> <p>Fixed IP – Click Yes to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of Fixed IP Address.</p> <p>Default MAC Address – You can use Default MAC Address or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.</p> <p>Specify a MAC Address – Type the MAC address for the</p> |

router manually.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

Details Page for Static or Dynamic IP in WAN2

For static IP mode, you usually receive a fixed public IP address or a public subnet, namely multiple public IP addresses from your DSL or Cable ISP service providers. In most cases, a Cable service provider will offer a fixed public IP, while a DSL service provider will offer a public subnet. If you have a public subnet, you could assign an IP address or many IP address to the WAN interface.

To use **Static or Dynamic IP** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please click the **Static or Dynamic IP** tab. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|--|----------------------|-----------|------|
| <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | | |
| Keep WAN Connection | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive | | | |
| PING to the IP <input type="text"/> | | | |
| PING Interval <input type="text"/> minute(s) | | | |
| WAN Connection Detection | | | |
| Mode <input type="text" value="ARP Detect"/> | | | |
| MTU <input type="text" value="1500"/> (Max: 1500) | | | |
| RIP Protocol | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable RIP | | | |
| WAN IP Network Settings <input type="text" value="WAN IP Alias"/> | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically | | | |
| Router Name <input type="text"/> * | | | |
| Domain Name <input type="text"/> * | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> DHCP Client Identifier * | | | |
| Username <input type="text"/> | | | |
| Password <input type="text"/> | | | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address | | | |
| IP Address <input type="text"/> | | | |
| Subnet Mask <input type="text"/> | | | |
| Gateway IP Address <input type="text"/> | | | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address | | | |
| MAC Address: <input type="text" value="00"/> · <input type="text" value="1D"/> · <input type="text" value="AA"/> : <input type="text" value="85"/> · <input type="text" value="BA"/> · <input type="text" value="D6"/> | | | |
| DNS Server IP Address | | | |
| Primary IP Address <input type="text" value="8.8.8.8"/> | | | |
| Secondary IP Address <input type="text" value="8.8.4.4"/> | | | |

*: Required for some ISPs

OK

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| Enable / Disable | Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid. |
| Keep WAN Connection | Normally, this function is designed for Dynamic IP environments because some ISPs will drop connections if there is no traffic within certain periods of time. Check Enable PING to keep alive box to activate this function. PING to the IP - If you enable the PING function, please specify the IP address for the system to PING it for keeping alive. PING Interval - Enter the interval for the system to |

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| | execute the PING operation. |
| WAN Connection Detection | <p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode – Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p>Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <p>TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.</p> |
| MTU | It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. |
| RIP Protocol | Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click Enable RIP for activating this function. |
| WAN IP Network Settings | <p>This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.</p> <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using.</p> <p>Obtain an IP address automatically – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically if you want to use Dynamic IP mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Router Name: Type in the router name provided by ISP. ● Domain Name: Type in the domain name that you have assigned. <p>DHCP Client Identifier for some ISP</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enable: Check the box to specify username and password as the DHCP client identifier for some ISP. ● Username: Type a name as username. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. ● Password: Type a password. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. <p>Specify an IP address – Click this radio button to specify some data if you want to use Static IP mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Address: Type the IP address. ● Subnet Mask: Type the subnet mask. ● Gateway IP Address: Type the gateway IP address. <p>Default MAC Address: Click this radio button to use default MAC address for the router.</p> <p>Specify a MAC Address: Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication.</p> |

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| | In such cases you need to click the Specify a MAC Address and enter the MAC address in the MAC Address field. |
| DNS Server IP Address | Type in the primary IP address for the router if you want to use Static IP mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

Details Page for PPTP/L2TP in WAN2

To use **PPTP/L2TP** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please click the **PPTP/L2TP** tab. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|--|----------------------|---|------|
| <input type="radio"/> Enable PPTP <input type="radio"/> Enable L2TP <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable Server Address <input type="text"/> Specify Gateway IP Address <input type="text"/> | | PPP Setup PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/> Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s) | |
| ISP Access Setup Username <input type="text"/> Password <input type="text"/> Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: => <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> | | IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) <input type="text" value="WAN IP Alias"/> Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/> | |
| MTU <input type="text" value="1460"/> (Max:1460) | | WAN IP Network Settings <input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically <input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address IP Address <input type="text"/> Subnet Mask <input type="text"/> | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| PPTP/L2TP | <p>Enable PPTP- Click this radio button to enable a PPTP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface.</p> <p>Enable L2TP - Click this radio button to enable a L2TP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface.</p> <p>Disable – Click this radio button to close the connection through PPTP or L2TP.</p> <p>Server Address - Specify the IP address of the PPTP/L2TP server if you enable PPTP/L2TP client mode.</p> <p>Specify Gateway IP Address – Specify the gateway IP address for DHCP server.</p> |
| ISP Access Setup | <p>Username -Type in the username provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.</p> <p>Password -Type in the password provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the password you can set is</p> |

| | |
|---|--|
| | <p>62 characters.</p> <p>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p> |
| MTU | It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. |
| PPP Setup | <p>PPP Authentication - Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP.</p> <p>Idle Timeout - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p> |
| IP Address Assignment Method(IPCP) | <p>WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using.</p> <p>Fixed IP - Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function. Click Yes to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box.</p> <p>Fixed IP Address -Type a fixed IP address.</p> |
| WAN IP Network Settings | <p>Obtain an IP address automatically – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.</p> <p>Specify an IP address – Click this radio button to specify some data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Address – Type the IP address. ● Subnet Mask – Type the subnet mask. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) in WAN3/WAN4

To use **3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode)** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode)** for WAN3. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access i

WAN 3 | **Modem Support List** |

3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode) Enable Disable

SIM PIN code

Modem Initial String
(Default:AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0)

APN Name

Modem Initial String2

Modem Dial String
(Default:ATDT*99#, CDMA:ATDT#777, TD-SCDMA:ATDT*98*1#)

Service Name (Optional)

PPP Username (Optional)

PPP Password (Optional)

PPP Authentication

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup:
=> , , ,

WAN Connection Detection

Mode

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Modem Support List | It lists all of the modems supported by such router.  |
| 3G /4G USB Modem (PPP mode) | Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid. |
| SIM PIN code | Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the PIN code you can set is 15 characters. |
| Modem Initial String | Such value is used to initialize USB modem. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of the string you can set is 47 characters. |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| APN Name | APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Type the name and click Apply . The maximum length of the name you can set is 43 characters. |
| Modem Initial String2 | The initial string 1 is shared with APN. In some cases, user may need another initial AT command to restrict 3G band or do any special settings. The maximum length of the string you can set is 47 characters. |
| Modem Dial String | Such value is used to dial through USB mode. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of the string you can set is 31 characters. |
| Service Name | Enter the description of the specific network service. |
| PPP Username | Type the PPP username (optional). The maximum length of the name you can set is 63 characters. |
| PPP Password | Type the PPP password (optional). The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. |
| PPP Authentication | Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP. |
| Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup | You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page |
| WAN Connection Detection | Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. Mode – Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) in WAN3/WAN4

To use **3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode)** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode)** for WAN3/WAN4. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 3 | **Modem Support List** |

3G/4G USB Modem(DHCP mode) Enable Disable

SIM PIN code

Network Mode 4G/3G/2G (Default: 4G/3G/2G)

APN Name

MTU (Default: 1380)

LTE software version

LTE hardware version

WAN Connection Detection

Mode ARP Detect

Note: Please note that in some case USB port connection will be terminated temporarily to activate the new configuration.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Modem Support List | It lists all of the modems supported by such router.  |
| 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) | Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid. |
| SIM PIN code | Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the PIN code you can set is 19 characters. |
| Network Mode | Force Vigor router to connect Internet with the mode specified here. If you choose 4G/3G/2G as network mode, the router will choose a suitable one according to the actual wireless signal automatically. |
| APN Name | APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Type the name and click Apply . The maximum length of the name you can set is 47 characters. |
| MTU | It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. |

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| WAN Connection Detection | <p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode – Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p>Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <p>TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.</p> |
|---------------------------------|--|

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

Details Page for IPv6 – Offline in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4

When Offline is selected, the IPv6 connection will be disabled.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP | IPv6 |
|---|----------------------|------|------|
| <p>Internet Access Mode</p> <p>Connection Type Offline ▼</p> | | | |

Details Page for IPv6 – PPP in WAN1/WAN2

During the procedure of IPv4 PPPoE connection, we can get the IPv6 Link Local Address between the gateway and Vigor router through IPv6CP. Later, use DHCPv6 or Accept RA to acquire the IPv6 prefix address (such as: 2001:B010:7300:200::/64) offered by the ISP. In addition, PCs under LAN also can have the public IPv6 address for Internet access by means of the generated prefix.

No need to type any other information for PPP mode.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP | IPv6 |
|--|----------------------|------|------|
| <p>Internet Access Mode</p> <p>Connection Type PPP ▼</p> <p>Note : IPv4 WAN setting should be PPPoE client.</p> | | | |

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on PPP mode.

Online Status

| Physical Connection | | System Uptime: 0:2:32 | |
|---|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| IPv4 | IPv6 | | |
| LAN Status | | | |
| IP Address | | | |
| 2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global) | | | |
| FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 7 | 4 | 690 | 328 |
| WAN2 IPv6 Status >> Drop PPP | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | |
| Yes | PPP | 0:02:08 | |
| IP | | Gateway IP | |
| 2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Global) | | FE80::90:1A00:242:AD52 | |
| FE80::1D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Link) | | | |
| DNS IP | | | |
| 2001:8000:168::1 | | | |
| 2001:8000:168::2 | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 7 | 9 | 544 | 1126 |

Note: At present, the **IPv6 prefix** can be acquired via the PPPoE mode connection which is available for the areas such as Taiwan (hinet), the Netherlands, Australia and UK.

Details Page for IPv6 – TSPC in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4

Tunnel setup protocol client (TSPC) is an application which could help you to connect to IPv6 network easily.

Please make sure your IPv4 WAN connection is OK and apply one free account from hexago (<http://gogonet.gogo6.com/page/freenet6-account>) before you try to use TSPC for network connection. TSPC would connect to tunnel broker and requests a tunnel according to the specifications inside the configuration file. It gets a public IPv6 IP address and an IPv6 prefix from the tunnel broker and then monitors the state of the tunnel in background.

After getting the IPv6 prefix and starting router advertisement daemon (RADVD), the PC behind this router can directly connect to IPv6 the Internet.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP | IPv6 |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------|
| Internet Access Mode | | | |
| Connection Type | | TSPC | |
| TSPC Configuration | | | |
| Username | | <input type="text"/> | |
| Password | | <input type="text"/> | |
| Confirm Password | | <input type="text"/> | |
| Tunnel Broker | | <input type="text"/> | |

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Username | Type the name obtained from the broker. It is suggested for you to apply another username and password for http://gogonet.gogo6.com/page/freenet6-account . The maximum length of the name you can set is 63 characters. |
| Password | Type the password assigned with the user name. The maximum length of the name you can set is 19 characters. |
| Confirm Password | Type the password again to make the confirmation. |
| Tunnel Broker | Type the address for the tunnel broker IP, FQDN or an optional port number. |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

Details Page for IPv6 – AICCU in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 1

| PPPoE / PPPoA | MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP | IPv6 |
|---|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| Internet Access Mode | | |
| Connection Type | | AICCU |
| AICCU Configuration | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Always On | | |
| Username | <input type="text"/> | |
| Password | <input type="text"/> | |
| Confirm Password | <input type="text"/> | |
| Tunnel Broker | tic.sixxs.net | |
| Subnet Prefix | <input type="text"/> | / <input type="text"/> |
| <p>Note: If "Always On" is not enabled, AICCU connection would only retry three times.</p> | | |
| OK | | Cancel |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Always On | Check this box to keep the network connection always. |
| Username | Type the name obtained from the broker. Please apply new account at http://www.sixxs.net/ . It is suggested for you to apply another username and password. The maximum length of the name you can set is 19 characters. |
| Password | Type the password assigned with the user name. The maximum length of the password you can set is 19 characters. |
| Confirm Password | Type the password again to make the confirmation. |

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Tunnel Broker | Type the address for the tunnel broker IP, FQDN or an optional port number. |
| Subnet Prefix | Type the subnet prefix address getting from service provider. The maximum length of the prefix you can set is 128 characters. |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

Details Page for IPv6 – DHCPv6 Client in WAN1/WAN2

DHCPv6 client mode would use DHCPv6 protocol to obtain IPv6 address from server.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP | IPv6 |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|--|------|
| Internet Access Mode | | | |
| Connection Type | | DHCPv6 Client ▼ | |
| DHCPv6 Client Configuration | | | |
| Identity Association | | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Prefix Delegation <input type="radio"/> Non-temporary Address | |
| IAID (Identity Association ID) | | 4230640032 | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Identify Association | Choose Prefix Delegation or Non-temporary Address as the identify association. |
| IAID | Type a number as IAID. |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

Details Page for IPv6 – Static IPv6 in WAN1/WAN2

This type allows you to setup static IPv6 address for WAN interface.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP | IPv6 | | | | | | |
|--|----------------------------|-------|------|-------|----------------------------|-------|--|--|--|
| <p>Internet Access Mode</p> <p>Connection Type: Static IPv6</p> <p>Static IPv6 Address configuration</p> <p>IPv6 Address: <input type="text"/> / Prefix Length: <input type="text"/> Add Delete</p> <p>Current IPv6 Address Table</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>IPv6 Address/Prefix Length</th> <th>Scope</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> </td> <td> </td> <td> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Static IPv6 Gateway configuration</p> <p>IPv6 Gateway Address: <input type="text"/></p> | | | | Index | IPv6 Address/Prefix Length | Scope | | | |
| Index | IPv6 Address/Prefix Length | Scope | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| OK Cancel | | | | | | | | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Static IPv6 Address configuration | <p>IPv6 Address – Type the IPv6 Static IP Address.</p> <p>Prefix Length – Type the fixed value for prefix length.</p> <p>Add – Click it to add a new entry.</p> <p>Delete – Click it to remove an existed entry.</p> |
| Current IPv6 Address Table | Display current interface IPv6 address. |
| Static IPv6 Gateway Configuration | IPv6 Gateway Address - Type your IPv6 gateway address here. |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

Details Page for IPv6 – 6in4 Static Tunnel in WAN1/WAN2

This type allows you to setup 6in4 Static Tunnel for WAN interface.

Such mode allows the router to access IPv6 network through IPv4 network.

However, 6in4 offers a prefix outside of 2002::0/16. So, you can use a fixed endpoint rather than any cast endpoint. The mode has more reliability.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 1

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|--|----------------------|-----------|------|
| Internet Access Mode | | | |
| Connection Type 6in4 Static Tunnel ▼ | | | |
| 6in4 Static Tunnel | | | |
| Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address <input type="text"/> | | | |
| 6in4 IPv6 Address <input type="text"/> / <input type="text"/> (default:64) | | | |
| LAN Routed Prefix <input type="text"/> / <input type="text"/> (default:64) | | | |
| Tunnel TTL <input type="text"/> (default:255) | | | |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address | Type the static IPv4 address for the remote server. |
| 6in4 IPv6 Address | Type the static IPv6 address for IPv4 tunnel with the value for prefix length. |
| LAN Routed Prefix | Type the static IPv6 address for LAN routing with the value for prefix length. |
| Tunnel TTL | Type the number for the data lifetime in tunnel. |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on 6in4 Static Tunnel mode.

Online Status

| Physical Connection | | System Uptime: 0day 0:4:16 | |
|--|--------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| IPv4 | IPv6 | | |
| LAN Status | | | |
| IP Address | | | |
| 2001:4DD0:FF00:83E4:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global) | | | |
| FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 14 | 80 | 1244 | 6815 |
| WAN1 IPv6 Status | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | |
| Yes | 6in4 Static Tunnel | 0:04:07 | |
| IP | | Gateway IP | |
| 2001:4DD0:FF10:83E4::2131/64 (Global) | | --- | |
| FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 3 | 26 | 211 | 2302 |

Details Page for IPv6 – 6rd in WAN1/WAN2

This type allows you to setup 6rd for WAN interface.

WAN 1

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|--|------|
| Internet Access Mode | | | |
| Connection Type | | 6rd | |
| 6rd Settings | | | |
| 6rd Mode | | <input type="radio"/> Auto 6rd <input checked="" type="radio"/> Static 6rd | |
| Static 6rd Settings | | | |
| IPv4 Border Relay: | 192.168.101.111 | | |
| IPv4 Mask Length: | 0 | | |
| 6rd Prefix: | 2001:E41:: | | |
| 6rd Prefix Length: | 32 | | |
| | | <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| 6rd Mode | Auto 6rd – Retrieve 6rd prefix automatically from 6rd service provider. The IPv4 WAN must be set as "DHCP". Static 6rd - Set 6rd options manually. |
| IPv4 Border Relay | Type the IPv4 addresses of the 6rd Border Relay for a given 6rd domain. |
| IPv4 Mask Length | Type a number of high-order bits that are identical across all CE IPv4 addresses within a given 6rd domain. It may be any value between 0 and 32. |

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 6rd Prefix | Type the 6rd IPv6 address. |
| 6rd Prefix Length | Type the IPv6 prefix length for the 6rd IPv6 prefix in number of bits. |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on 6rd mode.

Online Status

| Physical Connection | | System Uptime: 0day 0:9:15 | |
|--|-------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| IPv4 | IPv6 | | |
| LAN Status | | | |
| IP Address | | | |
| 2001:E41:A865:1D00:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global) | | | |
| FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 15 | 113 | 1354 | 18040 |
| WAN1 IPv6 Status | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | |
| Yes | 6rd | 0:09:06 | |
| IP | | Gateway IP | |
| 2001:E41:A865:1D01:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B5/128 (Global) | | --- | |
| FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 13 | 29 | 967 | 2620 |

3.1.4 Multi-PVC/VLAN

This router allows you to create multi-PVC for different data transferring for using. Simply go to **Internet Access** and select **Multi-PVC/VLAN** page.

General

The system allows you to set up to eight channels which are ready for choosing as the first PVC line that will be used as multi-PVC.

WAN >> Multi-PVC/VLAN

Multi-PVC/VLAN

| General | | Advanced | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|--------|----------------|---------|----------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Channel | Enable | WAN Type | VPI/VCI | VLAN Tag | Port-based Bridge | | | | | | |
| 1 | Yes | ADSL | 0/33 | None | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Yes | Ethernet(WAN2) | | None | | | | | | | |
| 5. WAN5 | No | ADSL | 1/45 | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | <input type="checkbox"/> P1 | <input type="checkbox"/> P2 | <input type="checkbox"/> P3 | <input type="checkbox"/> P4 | <input type="checkbox"/> P5 | <input type="checkbox"/> P6 |
| 6. WAN6 | No | ADSL | 1/46 | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | <input type="checkbox"/> P1 | <input type="checkbox"/> P2 | <input type="checkbox"/> P3 | <input type="checkbox"/> P4 | <input type="checkbox"/> P5 | <input type="checkbox"/> P6 |
| 7. WAN7 | No | ADSL | 1/47 | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | <input type="checkbox"/> P1 | <input type="checkbox"/> P2 | <input type="checkbox"/> P3 | <input type="checkbox"/> P4 | <input type="checkbox"/> P5 | <input type="checkbox"/> P6 |
| 8. | No | ADSL | 1/48 | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | <input type="checkbox"/> P1 | <input type="checkbox"/> P2 | <input type="checkbox"/> P3 | <input type="checkbox"/> P4 | <input type="checkbox"/> P5 | <input type="checkbox"/> P6 |
| 9. | No | ADSL | 0/0 | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | <input type="checkbox"/> P1 | <input type="checkbox"/> P2 | <input type="checkbox"/> P3 | <input type="checkbox"/> P4 | <input type="checkbox"/> P5 | <input type="checkbox"/> P6 |
| 10. | No | ADSL | 0/0 | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | <input type="checkbox"/> P1 | <input type="checkbox"/> P2 | <input type="checkbox"/> P3 | <input type="checkbox"/> P4 | <input type="checkbox"/> P5 | <input type="checkbox"/> P6 |

Note:

Channel 3 and channel 4 are reserved for USB WAN.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| Channel | Display the number of each channel. Channels 1 and 2 are used by the Internet Access web user interface and can not be configured here. Channels 5 ~ 10 are configurable. |
| Enable | Display whether the settings in this channel are enabled (Yes) or not (No). |
| WAN Type | Displays the physical medium that the channel will use. |
| VPI/VCI | Display the value for VPI and VCI. |
| VLAN Tag | Displays the VLAN tag value that will be used for the packets traveling on this channel. |
| Port-based Bridge | The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value. Enable - Check this box to enable the port-based bridge function on this channel. P1 ~ P6 – Check the box(es) to build bridge connection on LAN. |

Click any index (8~10) to get the following web page:

WAN >> Multi-PVC/LAN >> Channel 8

Multi-PVC/LAN Channel 8: Enable Disable

WAN Type : ADSL

| | |
|--|--|
| General Settings | ATM QoS |
| VPI <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="1"/> | QoS Type UBR |
| VCI <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="48"/> | PCR <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/> |
| Protocol PPPoA | SCR <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/> |
| Encapsulation VC MUX | MBS <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Add VLAN Header | |
| VLAN Tag <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/> | |
| Priority <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/> | |

Bridge mode

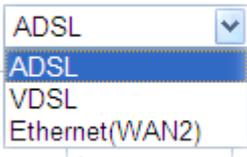
Enable

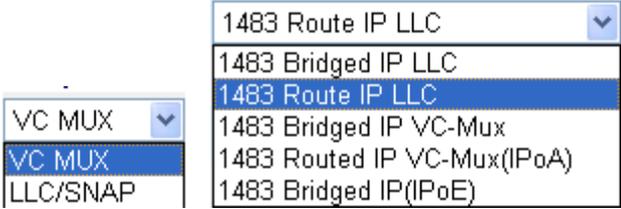
Physical Members

P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6

OK
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Multi-VLAN Channel 8/9/10 | <p>Enable – Click it to enable the configuration of this channel.</p> <p>Disable –Click it to disable the configuration of this channel.</p> |
| WAN Type | <p>The connections and interfaces created in every channel may select a specific WAN type to be built upon. In the Multi-PVC application, only the Ethernet WAN type is available. The user will be able to select the physical WAN interface the channel shall use here.</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;">  </div> |
| General Settings | <p>VPI - Type in the value provided by your ISP.</p> <p>VCI - Type in the value provided by your ISP.</p> <p>Protocol - Select a proper protocol for this channel.</p> <p>Encapsulation - Choose a proper type for this channel. The types will be different according to the protocol setting that you choose.</p> |

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| |  <p>Add VLAN Header – Check the box to enable the following two options.</p> <p>VLAN Tag – Type the value as the VLAN ID number. Valid settings are in the range from 1 to 4095. The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value.</p> <p>Priority – Choose the number to determine the packet priority for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p> |
| <p>ATM OoS</p> | <p>QoS Type - Select a proper QoS type for the channel.</p>  <p>Type the values for PCR, SCR and MBS respectively.</p> |
| <p>Bridge mode</p> | <p>Enable – Click it to enable Bridge mode for such channel.</p> <p>Physical Members – Group the physical ports by checking the corresponding check box(es) for applying the bridge connection.</p> |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

WAN links for Channel 5, 6 and 7 are provided for router-borne application such as **TR-069**. The settings must be applied and obtained from your ISP. For your special request, please contact with your ISP and then click WAN link of Channel 5, 6 or 7 to configure your router.

WAN >> Multi-PVCs >> Channel 5

Multi-PVC Channel 5: Enable Disable
WAN Type : ADSL

| | |
|---|----------------|
| General Settings | ATM QoS |
| VPI: 1 | QoS Type: UBR |
| VCI: 45 | PCR: 0 |
| Protocol: PPPoA | SCR: 0 |
| Encapsulation: VC MUX | MBS: 0 |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add VLAN Header | |
| VLAN Tag: 0 | |
| Priority: 0 | |

Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel
Physical Members
 P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6

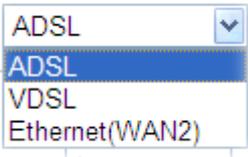
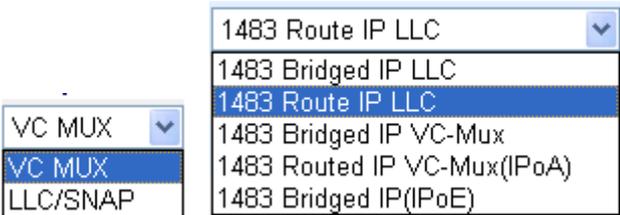
Open WAN Interface for this Channel
WAN Application: Management
WAN Connection Detection
Mode: ARP Detect
Ping IP:

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| PPPoE/PPPoA Client | MPoA (RFC1483/2684) | |
| ISP Access Setup | <input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically | |
| ISP Name: <input type="text"/> | Router Name: Vigor * | |
| Username: <input type="text"/> | Domain Name: <input type="text"/> * | |
| Password: <input type="text"/> | *: Required for some ISPs | |
| PPP Authentication: PAP or CHAP | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always On | IP Address: <input type="text"/> | |
| Idle Timeout: -1 second(s) | Subnet Mask: <input type="text"/> | |
| IP Address From ISP | Gateway IP Address: <input type="text"/> | |
| Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) | DNS Server IP Address | |
| Fixed IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Primary IP Address: 8.8.8.8 | |
| | Secondary IP Address: 8.8.4.4 | |

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Multi-VLAN Channel 5/6/7 | Enable – Click it to enable the configuration of this channel. Disable –Click it to disable the configuration of this channel. |
| WAN Type | The connections and interfaces created in every channel may select a specific WAN type to be built upon. In the Multi-PVC application, only the Ethernet WAN type is available. The user will be able to select the physical WAN interface the channel shall use here. |

| | |
|---|---|
| |  |
| General Settings | <p>VPI - Type in the value provided by your ISP.</p> <p>VCI - Type in the value provided by your ISP.</p> <p>Protocol - Select a proper protocol for this channel.</p> <p>Encapsulation - Choose a proper type for this channel. The types will be different according to the protocol setting that you choose.</p>  <p>Add VLAN Header – Check the box to enable the following two options.</p> <p>VLAN Tag – Type the value as the VLAN ID number. Valid settings are in the range from 1 to 4095. The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value.</p> <p>Priority – Choose the number to determine the packet priority for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p> |
| ATM OoS | <p>QoS Type - Select a proper QoS type for the channel. Type the values for PCR, SCR and MBS respectively.</p> |
| Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel | <p>The settings here will create a bridge between the LAN ports selected and the WAN. The WAN interface of the bridge connection will be built upon the WAN type selected using the VLAN tag configured.</p> <p>Physical Members – Group the physical ports by checking the corresponding check box(es) for applying the port-based bridge connection.</p> |
| Open WAN Interface for this Channel | <p>Check the box to enable relating function.</p> <p>WAN Application –</p> <p>Management – It can be specified for general management (Web configuration/telnet/TR069). If you choose Management, the configuration for this VLAN will be effective for Web configuration/telnet/TR069.</p> <p>IPTV - The IPTV configuration will allow the WAN interface to send IGMP packets to IPTV servers.</p> |
| WAN Connection Detection | <p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p>Mode – Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system</p> |

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| | <p>to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p>Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <p>TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.</p> |
| PPPoE/PPPoA Client | <p>Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP.</p> <p>ISP Name – Type in the name of your ISP.</p> <p>Username – Type in the username provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the name you can set is 80 characters.</p> <p>Password – Type in the password provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the password you can set is 48 characters.</p> <p>PPP Authentication – Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP.</p> <p>Always On – Check it to keep the network connection always.</p> <p>Idle Timeout – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p> <p>Fixed IP – Click Yes to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of Fixed IP Address.</p> |
| MPoA (RFC1483/2684) | <p>Obtain an IP address automatically – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Router Name – Type in the router name provided by ISP. ● Domain Name – Type in the domain name that you have assigned. <p>Specify an IP address – Click this radio button to specify some data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Address – Type in the private IP address. ● Subnet Mask – Type in the subnet mask. ● Gateway IP Address – Type in gateway IP address. <p>DNS Server IP Address - Type in the primary IP address for the router if you want to use Static IP mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.</p> |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings and return to previous page.

Advanced

Such configuration is applied to upstream packets. Such information will be provided by ISP. Please contact with your ISP for detailed information.

Multi-PVC/LAN

| General | | Advanced | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|-----|-----|--------------------|
| ATM QoS | | | | | |
| Channel | QoS Type | PCR | SCR | MBS | PVC to PVC Binding |
| 1. | UBR | 0 | 0 | 0 | Disable |
| 2. | UBR | 0 | 0 | 0 | Disable |
| 5. | UBR | 0 | 0 | 0 | Disable |
| 6. | UBR | 0 | 0 | 0 | Disable |
| 7. | UBR | 0 | 0 | 0 | Disable |
| 8. | UBR | 0 | 0 | 0 | Disable |
| 9. | UBR | 0 | 0 | 0 | Disable |
| 10. | UBR | 0 | 0 | 0 | Disable |

Note:

1. If the parameters in the ATM QoS settings are set to zero, then their default settings will be used. Also, $PCR(max)=ADSL\ Up\ Speed / 53/8$.
2. Multiple channels may use the same ADSL channel link through the PVC Binding configuration. The PVC Binding configuration is only supported for channels using ADSL, please make sure the channel that you are binding to is using ADSL as its WAN type. The binding will work only under PPPoE and MPoA 1483 Bridge mode.
3. Channel 3 and channel 4 are reserved for USB WAN.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| QoS Type | Select a proper QoS type for the channel according to the information that your ISP provides. |
| PCR | It represents Peak Cell Rate. The default setting is "0". |
| SCR | It represents Sustainable Cell Rate. The value of SCR must be smaller than PCR. |
| MBS | It represents Maximum Burst Size. The range of the value is 10 to 50. |
| PVC to PVC Binding | It allows the enabled PVC channel to use the same ADSL connection settings of another PVC channel. Please choose the PVC channel via the drop down list. |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

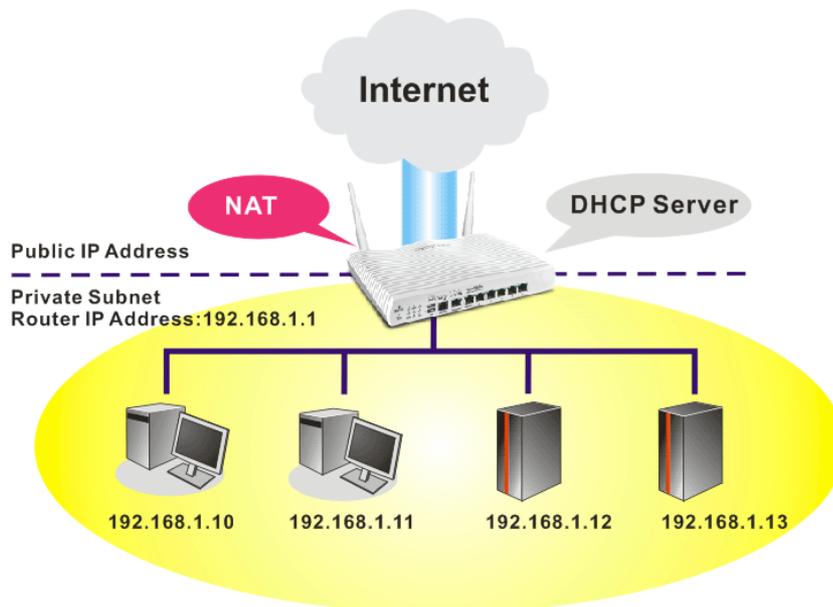
3.2 LAN

Local Area Network (LAN) is a group of subnets regulated and ruled by router. The design of network structure is related to what type of public IP addresses coming from your ISP.

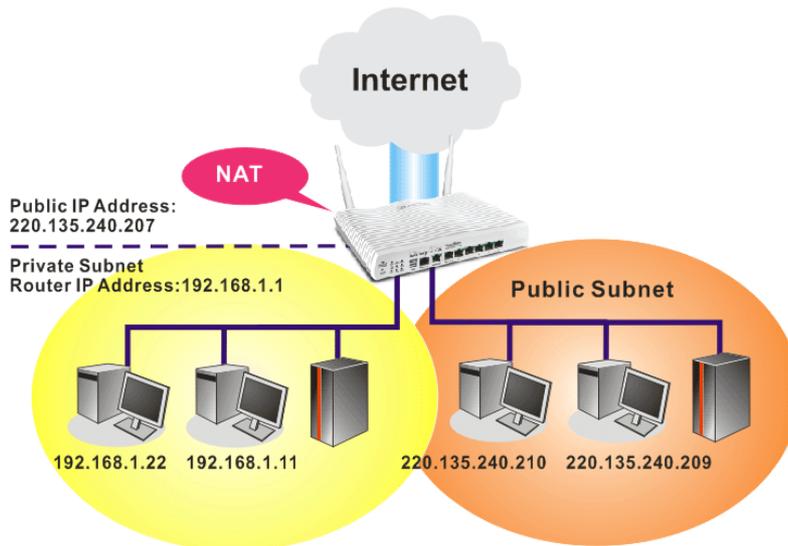


3.2.1 Basics of LAN

The most generic function of Vigor router is NAT. It creates a private subnet of your own. As mentioned previously, the router will talk to other public hosts on the Internet by using public IP address and talking to local hosts by using its private IP address. What NAT does is to translate the packets from public IP address to private IP address to forward the right packets to the right host and vice versa. Besides, Vigor router has a built-in DHCP server that assigns private IP address to each local host. See the following diagram for a briefly understanding.



In some special case, you may have a public IP subnet from your ISP such as 220.135.240.0/24. This means that you can set up a public subnet or call second subnet that each host is equipped with a public IP address. As a part of the public subnet, the Vigor router will serve for IP routing to help hosts in the public subnet to communicate with other public hosts or servers outside. Therefore, the router should be set as the gateway for public hosts.



What is Routing Information Protocol (RIP)

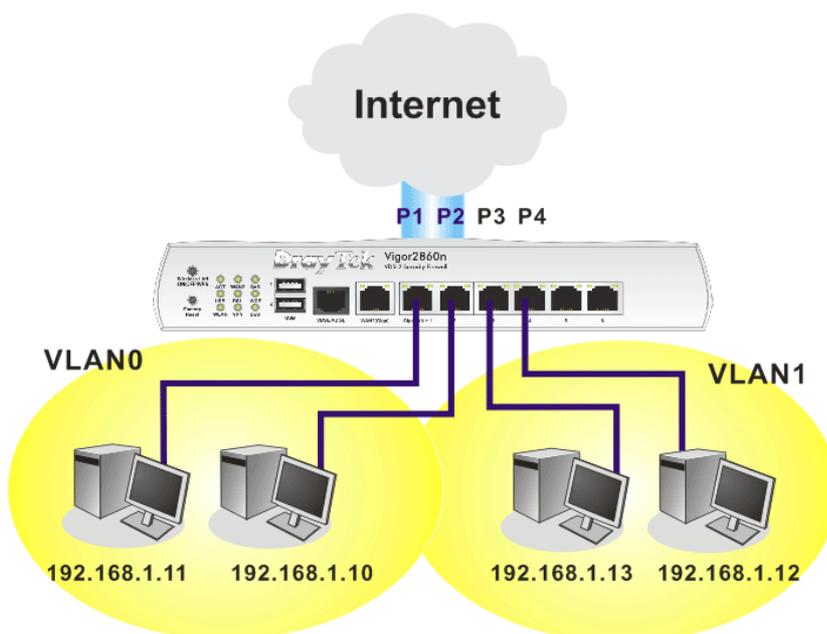
Vigor router will exchange routing information with neighboring routers using the RIP to accomplish IP routing. This allows users to change the information of the router such as IP address and the routers will automatically inform for each other.

What is Static Route

When you have several subnets in your LAN, sometimes a more effective and quicker way for connection is the **Static routes** function rather than other method. You may simply set rules to forward data from one specified subnet to another specified subnet without the presence of RIP.

What are Virtual LANs and Rate Control

You can group local hosts by physical ports and create up to 8 virtual LANs. To manage the communication between different groups, please set up rules in Virtual LAN (VLAN) function and the rate of each.



3.2.2 General Setup

This page provides you the general settings for LAN. Click **LAN** to open the LAN settings page and choose **General Setup**.

There are six subnets provided by the router which allow users to divide groups into different subnets (LAN1 – LAN6). In addition, different subnets can link for each other by configuring **Inter-LAN Routing**. At present, LAN1 setting is fixed with NAT mode only. LAN2 – LAN6 can be operated under **NAT** or **Route** mode. IP Routed Subnet can be operated under Route mode.

LAN >> General Setup

General Setup

| Index | Status | DHCP | IP Address | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| LAN 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 10.28.60.1 | Details Page | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.2.1 | Details Page | |
| LAN 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.3.1 | Details Page | |
| LAN 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.4.1 | Details Page | |
| LAN 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.5.1 | Details Page | |
| LAN 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.6.1 | Details Page | |
| DMZ Port | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.7.1 | Details Page | |
| IP Routed Subnet | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.0.1 | Details Page | |

[Advanced](#) You can configure DHCP server options here.

Force router to use "DNS server IP address" settings specified in LAN1

Inter-LAN Routing

| Subnet | LAN 1 | LAN 2 | LAN 3 | LAN 4 | LAN 5 | LAN 6 | DMZ Port |
|----------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| LAN 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| DMZ Port | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |

Note: LAN 2/3/4/5/6 are available when VLAN is enabled.
DMZ subnet is default bound to P1, and will overwrite the settings of P1 at LAN>>VLAN page.

[OK](#)

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| General Setup | <p>Allow to configure settings for each subnet respectively.</p> <p>Index - Display all of the LAN items.</p> <p>Status- Basically, LAN1 status is enabled in default. LAN2 –LAN6 and IP Routed Subnet can be observed by checking the box of Status.</p> <p>DHCP- LAN1 is configured with DHCP in default. If required, please check the DHCP box for each LAN.</p> <p>IP Address - Display the IP address for each LAN item. Such information is set in default and you can not modify it.</p> <p>Details Page - Click it to access into the setting page. Each</p> |

| | <p>LAN will have different LAN configuration page. Each LAN must be configured in different subnet.</p> <p>IPv6 – Click it to access into the settings page of IPv6.</p> | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--------|-----------|--------|------|------|--------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| <p>Advanced</p> | <p>DHCP packets can be processed by adding option number and data information when such function is enabled.</p> <p>LAN >> General Setup</p> <hr/> <p>DHCP Server Options Status</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Options List</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Enable</th> <th>Interface</th> <th>Option</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Data</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Enable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Interface: <input type="checkbox"/> All <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN1 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN2 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN3 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN4 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN5 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN6 <input type="checkbox"/> DMZ <input type="checkbox"/> IP Routed Subnet</p> <p>Option Number: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Data Type: <input checked="" type="radio"/> ASCII Character (EX :Option:18, Data:/path) <input type="radio"/> Hexadecimal Digit (EX : Option:18, Data:2f70617468) <input type="radio"/> Address List (EX :Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)</p> <p>Data: <input type="text"/></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/></p> </div> <p>Enable/Disable – Enable/Disable the function of DHCP Option. Each DHCP option is composed by an option number with data. For example,</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Option number: 100</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Data: abcd</p> <p>When such function is enabled, the specified values for DHCP option will be seen in DHCP reply packets.</p> <p>Interface – Choose the interface for such option.</p> <p>Option Number – Type a number for such function.</p> <p>Data Type – Choose the type (ASCII or Hex) for the data to be stored.</p> <p>Data – Type the content of the data to be processed by the function of DHCP option.</p> | Enable | Interface | Option | Type | Data | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | |
| Enable | Interface | Option | Type | Data | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>Force router to use DNS server IP address</p> | <p>Force Vigor router to use DNS servers configured in LAN1/LAN2/LAN3/LAN4/LAN5/LAN6 instead of DNS servers given by the Internet Access server (PPPoE, PPTP, L2TP or DHCP server).</p> | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>Inter-LAN Routing</p> | <p>Check the box to link two or more different subnets (LAN and LAN).</p> | | | | | | | | | | |

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

Details Page for LAN1 – Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup

There are two configuration pages for LAN1, Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup (based on IPv4) and IPv6 Setup. Click the tab for each type and refer to the following explanations for detailed information.

LAN >> General Setup

| LAN 1 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup | LAN 1 IPv6 Setup |
|---|--|
| Network Configuration For NAT Usage IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.5"/> Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> RIP Protocol Control <input type="button" value="Disable"/> | DHCP Server Configuration <input type="radio"/> Enable Server <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable Server <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Relay Agent Start IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.10"/> IP Pool Counts <input type="text" value="200"/> Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.5"/> Lease Time <input type="text" value="86400"/> (s) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Retrieve IPs from inactive clients periodically DNS Server IP Address Primary IP Address <input type="text"/> Secondary IP Address <input type="text"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Network Configuration | <p>For NAT Usage,</p> <p>IP Address - Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).</p> <p>Subnet Mask - Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)</p> <p>RIP Protocol Control,</p> <p>Disable - deactivate the RIP protocol. It will lead to a stoppage of the exchange of routing information between routers. (Default)</p> <p>Enable – activate the RIP protocol.</p> |
| DHCP Server Configuration | <p>DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.</p> <p>If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.</p> <p>Enable Server - Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <p>Disable Server – Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <p>Enable Relay Agent –Specify which subnet that DHCP server is located the relay agent should redirect the DHCP request to.</p> |

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● DHCP Server IP Address – It is available when Enable Relay Agent is checked. Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help to forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server. <p>Start IP Address - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254.</p> <p>IP Pool Counts - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253.</p> <p>Gateway IP Address - Enter a value of the gateway IP address for the DHCP server. The value is usually as same as the 1st IP address of the router, which means the router is the default gateway.</p> <p>Lease Time - Enter the time to determine how long the IP address assigned by DHCP server can be used.</p> <p>Retrieve IPs from inactive clients periodically - Whenever a DHCP client requests an IP address from the LAN DHCP server, the server will give out an IP to this client for a certain amount of time (e.g., 1 day). However, even if this client only uses the IP for say 5 minutes, the server still "reserves" 1 day for that client. Because a DHCP server only has a limited number of IPs to lease to its DHCP clients, soon enough all the IPs will be used out and then no one will be able to get any IPs from this server anymore. Therefore, this feature is used to get the IP back from inactive clients (i.e. doesn't use the IP but the server still reserves the IP for him).</p> |
| DNS Server IP Address | <p>DNS stands for Domain Name System. Every Internet host must have a unique IP address, also they may have a human-friendly, easy to remember name such as www.yahoo.com. The DNS server converts the user-friendly name into its equivalent IP address.</p> <p>Primary IP Address - You must specify a DNS server IP address here because your ISP should provide you with usually more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default DNS Server IP address: 194.109.6.66 to this field.</p> <p>Secondary IP Address - You can specify secondary DNS server IP address here because your ISP often provides you more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default secondary DNS Server IP address: 194.98.0.1 to this field.</p> <p>The default DNS Server IP address can be found via Online Status:</p> |

| Physical Connection | | | | System Uptime: 22:22:45 |
|---------------------|------------|------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| LAN Status | IP4 | IPV6 | Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8 | Secondary DNS: 8.8.4.4 |
| IP Address | TX Packets | RX Packets | | |
| 192.168.1.1 | 0 | 41533 | | |

If both the Primary IP and Secondary IP Address fields are left empty, the router will assign its own IP address to local users as a DNS proxy server and maintain a DNS cache.

If the IP address of a domain name is already in the DNS cache, the router will resolve the domain name immediately. Otherwise, the router forwards the DNS query packet to the external DNS server by establishing a WAN (e.g. DSL/Cable) connection.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

Details Page for LAN1 – IPv6 Setup

There are two configuration pages for LAN1, Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup (based on IPv4) and IPv6 Setup. Click the tab for each type and refer to the following explanations for detailed information. Below shows the settings page for IPv6.

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 1 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup
LAN 1 IPv6 Setup

Router Advertisement Server

Enable Disable

Advertisement Lifetime Seconds (Range : 600 - 9000)

DHCPv6 Server

Enable Server Disable Server

Start IPv6 Address

End IPv6 Address

DNS Server IPv6 Address

Primary DNS Server

Secondary DNS Server

Static IPv6 Address

IPv6 Address / Prefix Length

Current IPv6 Address Table

| Index | IPv6 Address/Prefix Length | Scope |
|-------|-----------------------------|-------|
| 1 | FE80::21D:AAFF:FEB6:1BB8/64 | Link |

It provides 2 daemons for LAN side IPv6 address configuration. One is **RADVD**(stateless) and the other is **DHCPv6 Server** (Stateful).

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Router Advertisement Server | <p>Enable – Click it to enable the router advertisement daemon. The router advertisement daemon (radvd) sends Router Advertisement messages, specified by RFC 2461, to a local Ethernet LAN periodically and when requested by a node sending a Router Solicitation message. These messages are required for IPv6 stateless auto-configuration.</p> <p>Disable – Click it to disable RADVD server.</p> <p>Advertisement Lifetime - The lifetime associated with the default router in units of seconds. It's used to control the lifetime of the prefix. The maximum value corresponds to 18.2 hours. A lifetime of 0 indicates that the router is not a default router and should not appear on the default router list.</p> |
| DHCPv6 Server Configuration | <p>Enable Server –Click it to enable DHCPv6 server. DHCPv6 Server could assign IPv6 address to PC according to the Start/End IPv6 address configuration.</p> <p>Disable Server –Click it to disable DHCPv6 server.</p> <p>Start IPv6 Address / End IPv6 Address –Type the start and end address for IPv6 server.</p> |
| DNS Server IPv6 Address | <p>Primary DNS Sever – Type the IPv6 address for Primary DNS server.</p> <p>Secondary DNS Server –Type another IPv6 address for DNS server if required.</p> |
| Static IPv6 Address configuration | <p>IPv6 Address –Type static IPv6 address for LAN.</p> <p>Prefix Length – Type the fixed value for prefix length.</p> <p>Add – Click it to add a new entry.</p> <p>Delete – Click it to remove an existed entry.</p> |
| Current IPv6 Address Table | Display current used IPv6 addresses. |

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

Details Page for LAN2 ~ LAN6 and DMZ

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 2 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Network Configuration</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable</p> <p><input type="radio"/> For NAT Usage <input checked="" type="radio"/> For Routing Usage</p> <p>IP Address <input type="text" value="10.39.0.86"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p>Note: Disable LAN & Enable LAN shouldn't be in the same subnet.</p> | <p>DHCP Server Configuration</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Enable Server <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable Server</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Relay Agent</p> <p>DHCP Server IP Address <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Start IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.2.10"/></p> <p>IP Pool Counts <input type="text" value="0"/></p> <p>Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.2.1"/></p> <p>Lease Time <input type="text" value="259200"/> (s)</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Retrieve IPs from inactive clients periodically</p> <p>DNS Server IP Address</p> <p>Primary IP Address <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Secondary IP Address <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> |
|---|--|

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Network Configuration | <p>Enable/Disable - Click Enable to enable such configuration; click Disable to disable such configuration.</p> <p>For NAT Usage - Click this radio button to invoke NAT function.</p> <p>For Routing Usage - Click this radio button to invoke this function.</p> <p>IP Address - Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).</p> <p>Subnet Mask - Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)</p> |
| DHCP Server Configuration | <p>DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.</p> <p>Enable Server - Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <p>Disable Server - Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <p>Enable Relay Agent - If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.</p> <p>DHCP Server IP Address - It is available when Enable Relay Agent is checked. Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help to</p> |

forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server.

Start IP Address - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254.

IP Pool Counts - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253.

Gateway IP Address - Enter a value of the gateway IP address for the DHCP server. The value is usually as same as the 1st IP address of the router, which means the router is the default gateway.

Lease Time - Enter the time to determine how long the IP address assigned by DHCP server can be used.

Retrieve IPs from inactive clients periodically - Whenever a DHCP client requests an IP address from the LAN DHCP server, the server will give out an IP to this client for a certain amount of time (e.g., 1 day). However, even if this client only uses the IP for say 5 minutes, the server still "reserves" 1 day for that client. Because a DHCP server only has a limited number of IPs to lease to its DHCP clients, soon enough all the IPs will be used out and then no one will be able to get any IPs from this server anymore. Therefore, this feature is used to get the IP back from inactive clients (i.e. doesn't use the IP but the server still reserves the IP for him).

DNS Server IP Address

DNS stands for Domain Name System. Every Internet host must have a unique IP address, also they may have a human-friendly, easy to remember name such as www.yahoo.com. The DNS server converts the user-friendly name into its equivalent IP address.

Primary IP Address - You must specify a DNS server IP address here because your ISP should provide you with usually more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default DNS Server IP address: 194.109.6.66 to this field.

Secondary IP Address - You can specify secondary DNS server IP address here because your ISP often provides you more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default secondary DNS Server IP address: 194.98.0.1 to this field.

The default DNS Server IP address can be found via Online Status:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 22:22:45

| IPv4 | | IPv6 | |
|-------------|----------------------|------------------------|--|
| LAN Status | Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8 | Secondary DNS: 8.8.4.4 | |
| IP Address | TX Packets | RX Packets | |
| 192.168.1.1 | 0 | 41533 | |

If both the Primary IP and Secondary IP Address fields are left empty, the router will assign its own IP address to local

users as a DNS proxy server and maintain a DNS cache.
 If the IP address of a domain name is already in the DNS cache, the router will resolve the domain name immediately. Otherwise, the router forwards the DNS query packet to the external DNS server by establishing a WAN (e.g. DSL/Cable) connection.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

Details Page for IP Routed Subnet

LAN >> General Setup

TCP/IP and DHCP Setup for IP Routed Subnet

| <p>Network Configuration</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable</p> <p>For Routing Usage</p> <p>IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.0.1"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <hr/> <p>RIP Protocol Control <input type="text" value="Disable"/></p> | <p>DHCP Server Configuration</p> <p>Start IP Address <input type="text"/></p> <p>IP Pool Counts <input type="text" value="0"/> (max. 32)</p> <p>Lease Time <input type="text" value="259200"/> (s)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Use LAN Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use MAC Address</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>Matched MAC Address</th> <th>given IP Address</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="height: 50px;"></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>MAC Address : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="button" value="OK"/></p> | Index | Matched MAC Address | given IP Address | | | |
|---|---|------------------|---------------------|------------------|--|--|--|
| Index | Matched MAC Address | given IP Address | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Network Configuration | <p>Enable/Disable - Click Enable to enable such configuration; click Disable to disable such configuration.</p> <p>For Routing Usage,</p> <p>IP Address - Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).</p> <p>Subnet Mask - Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)</p> <p>RIP Protocol Control,</p> <p>Disable - deactivate the RIP protocol. It will lead to a stoppage of the exchange of routing information between routers. (Default)</p> <p>Enable – activate the RIP protocol.</p> |
| DHCP Server Configuration | <p>DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP</p> |

server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.

If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.

Start IP Address - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254.

IP Pool Counts - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253.

Lease Time - Enter the time to determine how long the IP address assigned by DHCP server can be used.

Use LAN Port – Specify an IP for IP Route Subnet. If it is enabled, DHCP server will assign IP address automatically for the clients coming from P1 and/or P2. Please check the box of P1 and P2.

Use MAC Address - Check such box to specify MAC address.

MAC Address: Enter the MAC Address of the host one by one and click **Add** to create a list of hosts to be assigned, deleted or edited IP address from above pool. Set a list of MAC Address for 2nd DHCP server will help router to assign the correct IP address of the correct subnet to the correct host. So those hosts in 2nd subnet won't get an IP address belonging to 1st subnet.

Add – Type the MAC address in the boxes and click this button to add.

Delete – Click it to delete the selected MAC address.

Edit – Click it to edit the selected MAC address.

Cancel – Click it to cancel the job of adding, deleting and editing.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

3.2.3 Static Route

Go to **LAN** to open setting page and choose **Static Route**. The router offers IPv4 and IPv6 for you to configure the static route. Both protocols bring different web pages.

Static Route for IPv4

LAN >> Static Route Setup

| IPv4 | | | IPv6 | | | Set to Factory Default | View Routing Table |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------|---------------------|---------------------|--------|--|------------------------------------|
| Index | Destination Address | Status | Index | Destination Address | Status | | |
| 1. | ??? | ? | 6. | ??? | ? | | |
| 2. | ??? | ? | 7. | ??? | ? | | |
| 3. | ??? | ? | 8. | ??? | ? | | |
| 4. | ??? | ? | 9. | ??? | ? | | |
| 5. | ??? | ? | 10. | ??? | ? | | |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive, ? --- Empty

Available settings are explained as follows:

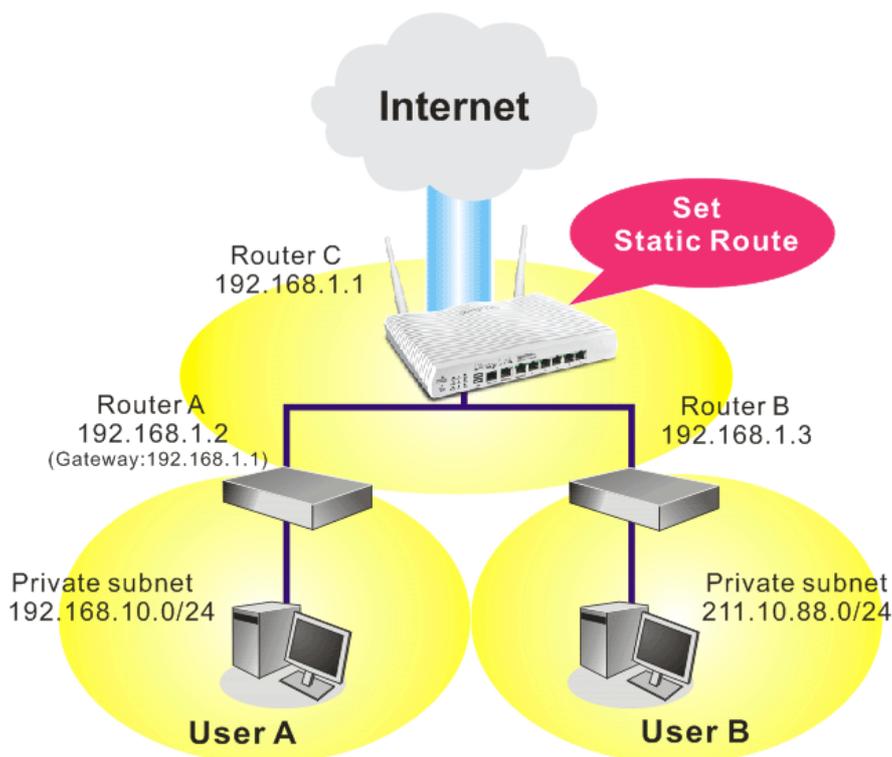
| Item | Description | | | | | | |
|--|---|-------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|--|--|--|
| Index | The number (1 to 30) under Index allows you to open next page to set up static route. | | | | | | |
| Destination Address | Displays the destination address of the static route. | | | | | | |
| Status | Displays the status of the static route. | | | | | | |
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings. | | | | | | |
| Viewing Routing Table | Displays the routing table for your reference. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Diagnostics >> View Routing Table</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Current Running Routing Table</th> <th>IPv6 Routing Table</th> <th>Refresh</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3"> Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private C~ 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 directly connected LAN1 </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | Current Running Routing Table | IPv6 Routing Table | Refresh | Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private C~ 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 directly connected LAN1 | | |
| Current Running Routing Table | IPv6 Routing Table | Refresh | | | | | |
| Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private C~ 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 directly connected LAN1 | | | | | | | |

Add Static Routes to Private and Public Networks

Here is an example (based on IPv4) of setting Static Route in Main Router so that user A and B locating in different subnet can talk to each other via the router. Assuming the Internet access has been configured and the router works properly:

- use the Main Router to surf the Internet.
- create a private subnet 192.168.10.0 using an internal Router A (192.168.1.2)
- create a public subnet 211.100.88.0 via an internal Router B (192.168.1.3).
- have set Main Router 192.168.1.1 as the default gateway for the Router A 192.168.1.2.

Before setting Static Route, user A cannot talk to user B for Router A can only forward recognized packets to its default gateway Main Router.



1. Go to **LAN** page and click **General Setup**, select 1st Subnet as the **RIP Protocol Control**. Then click the **OK** button.

Note: There are two reasons that we have to apply RIP Protocol Control on 1st Subnet. The first is that the LAN interface can exchange RIP packets with the neighboring routers via the 1st subnet (192.168.1.0/24). The second is that those hosts on the internal private subnets (ex. 192.168.10.0/24) can access the Internet via the router, and continuously exchange of IP routing information with different subnets.

- Click the **LAN >> Static Route** and click on the **Index Number 1**. Check the **Enable** box. Please add a static route as shown below, which regulates all packets destined to 192.168.10.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.2. Click **OK**.

LAN >> Static Route Setup

Index No. 1

| | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|--------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | Destination IP Address | ??? |
| | Subnet Mask | |
| | Gateway IP Address | |
| | Network Interface | LAN1 ▼ |

Note: WAN5, WAN6, WAN7 are router-borne WANs.

OK Cancel Delete

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Enable | Click it to enable this profile. |
| Destination IP Address | Type an IP address as the destination of such static route. |
| Subnet Mask | Type the subnet mask for such static route. |
| Network Interface | Use the drop down list to specify an interface for such static route. |

- Return to **Static Route Setup** page. Click on another **Index Number** to add another static route as show below, which regulates all packets destined to 211.100.88.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.3. Click **OK**.

LAN >> Static Route Setup

Index No. 1

| | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | Destination IP Address | 211.100.88.0 |
| | Subnet Mask | 255.255.255.0 |
| | Gateway IP Address | 192.168.1.3 |
| | Network Interface | LAN1 ▼ |

Note: WAN5, WAN6, WAN7 are router-borne WANs.

OK Cancel Delete

4. Go to **Diagnostics** and choose **Routing Table** to verify current routing table.

Diagnostics >> View Routing Table

| Current Running Routing Table | | IPv6 Routing Table | | Refresh |
|---|-----------------------------|--------------------|------|---------|
| Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private | | | | |
| S~ | 192.168.10.0/ 255.255.255.0 | via 192.168.1.2 | LAN1 | |
| C~ | 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 | directly connected | LAN1 | |
| S~ | 211.100.88.0/ 255.255.255.0 | via 192.168.1.3 | LAN1 | |

Static Route for IPv6

You can set up to 40 profiles for IPv6 static route. Click the IPv6 tab to open the following page:

LAN >> Static Route Setup

| IPv4 | | IPv6 | | Set to Factory Default | View IPv6 Routing Table |
|------------|---------------------|--------|------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| Index | Destination Address | Status | Index | Destination Address | Status |
| <u>1.</u> | ::/0 | x | <u>11.</u> | ::/0 | x |
| <u>2.</u> | ::/0 | x | <u>12.</u> | ::/0 | x |
| <u>3.</u> | ::/0 | x | <u>13.</u> | ::/0 | x |
| <u>4.</u> | ::/0 | x | <u>14.</u> | ::/0 | x |
| <u>5.</u> | ::/0 | x | <u>15.</u> | ::/0 | x |
| <u>6.</u> | ::/0 | x | <u>16.</u> | ::/0 | x |
| <u>7.</u> | ::/0 | x | <u>17.</u> | ::/0 | x |
| <u>8.</u> | ::/0 | x | <u>18.</u> | ::/0 | x |
| <u>9.</u> | ::/0 | x | <u>19.</u> | ::/0 | x |
| <u>10.</u> | ::/0 | x | <u>20.</u> | ::/0 | x |

<< 1 - 20 | 21 - 40 >> Next >>

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive, ? --- Empty

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Index | The number (1 to 40) under Index allows you to open next page to set up static route. |
| Destination Address | Displays the destination address of the static route. |
| Status | Displays the status of the static route. |
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings. |
| Viewing IPv6 Routing Table | Displays the routing table for your reference. |

Click any underline of index number to get the following page.

LAN >> Static Route Setup

Index No. 1

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | |
| Destination IPv6 Address / Prefix Len | :: / 0 |
| Gateway IPv6 Address | |
| Network Interface | LAN |

OK Cancel Delete

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|---|
| Enable | Click it to enable this profile. |
| Destination IPv6 Address / Prefix Len | Type the IP address with the prefix length for this entry. |
| Gateway IPv6 Address | Type the gateway address for this entry. |
| Network Interface | Use the drop down list to specify an interface for this static route.  |

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

3.2.4 VLAN

With the 6-port Gigabit switch on the LAN side, Vigor router provides extremely high speed connectivity for the highest speed local data transfer of any server or local PCs. On the Wireless-equipped models (Vigor2860n/Vigor2860n-plus/Vigor2860Vn-plus/Vigor2860ac/Vigor2860Vac), each of the wireless SSIDs can also be grouped within one of the VLANs.

Tagged VLAN

The tagged VLANs (802.1q) can mark data with a VLAN identifier. This identifier can be carried through an onward Ethernet switch to specific ports. The specific VLAN clients can also pick up this identifier as it is just passed to the LAN. You can set the priorities for LAN-side QoS. You can assign each of VLANs to each of the different IP subnets that the router may also be operating, to provide even more isolation. The said functionality is **tag-based multi-subnet**.

Port-Based VLAN

Relative to tag-based VLAN which groups clients with an identifier, port-based VLAN uses physical ports (P1 ~ P6) to separate the clients into different VLAN group.

Virtual LAN function provides you a very convenient way to manage hosts by grouping them based on the physical port. The multi-subnet can let a small businesses have much better isolation for multi-occupancy applications. Go to **LAN** page and select **VLAN**. The following page will appear. Click **Enable** to invoke VLAN function.

Below is an example page in Vigor2860n:

LAN >> VLAN Configuration

VLAN Configuration

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|-----|----------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | LAN | | | | | | Wireless LAN | | | | VLAN Tag | | | |
| | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | P5 | P6 | SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 | Subnet | Enable | VID | Priority |
| VLAN0 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |

Permit untagged device in P1 to access router

1. Tag based VLAN only applied for LAN Ports;
2. The checked Wireless LAN SSID will not has VLAN tagging function but regarded as joining VLAN group;
3. The set VLAN ID (VID) must be unique and not duplicate.

OK Clear Cancel

For Vigor2860n-plus series, the web page will be shown as follows:

LAN >> VLAN Configuration

VLAN Configuration

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|-----|----------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | LAN | | | | | | Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) | | | | Wireless LAN(5GHz) | | | | VLAN Tag | | | |
| | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | P5 | P6 | SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 | SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 | Subnet | Enable | VID | Priority |
| VLAN0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 3 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 172 | 0 |
| VLAN3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |

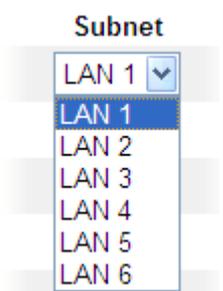
Permit untagged device in P1 to access router

1. For each VLAN row, if enable is checked for the VLAN Tag then the corresponding VID will be applied to wired LAN traffic.
2. Wireless LAN traffic is always untagged, but will still be a member of the VLAN group selected.
3. Each VID must be unique.

OK Clear Cancel

Note: Settings in this page only applied to LAN port but not WAN port.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Enable | Click it to enable VLAN configuration. |
| LAN | P1 – P6 – Check the LAN port(s) to group them under the selected VLAN. |
| Wireless LAN (2.4GHz) | SSID1 – SSID4 – Check the SSID boxes to group them under the selected VLAN. |
| Wireless LAN (5GHz) | SSID1 – SSID4 – Check the SSID boxes to group them under the selected VLAN. |
| Subnet | Choose one of them to make the selected VLAN mapping to the specified subnet only. For example, LAN1 is specified for VLAN0. It means that PCs grouped under VLAN0 can get the IP address(es) that specified by the subnet.  |

| | |
|--|--|
| VLAN Tag | <p>Enable – Check the box to enable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the LAN while sending them out.</p> <p>Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by LAN.</p> <p>VID – Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p>Priority – Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p> |
| Permit untagged device in P1 to access router | <p>It can help users to communicate with the router still even though configuring wrong VLAN tag setting. It is recommended to enable the management port (LAN 1) to ensure the data transmission is unimpeded.</p> |

Note: Leave one VLAN untagged at least to prevent from not connecting to Vigor router due to unexpected error.

Vigor2860 series features a hugely flexible VLAN system. In its simplest form, each of the Gigabit LAN ports can be isolated from each other, for example to feed different companies or departments but keeping their local traffic completely separated.

Configuring port-based VLAN for wireless and non-wireless clients

1. All the wire network clients are categorized to group VLAN0 in subnet 192.168.1.0/24 (LAN1).
2. All the wireless network clients are categorized to group VLAN1 in subnet 192.168.2.0/24 (LAN2).
3. Open **LAN>>VLAN Configuration**. Check the boxes according to the statement in step 1 and Step 2.

LAN >> VLAN Configuration

| VLAN Configuration | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------|-----|----------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable | LAN | | | | | | Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) | | | | Wireless LAN(5GHz) | | | | VLAN Tag | | |
| P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | P5 | P6 | SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 | SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 | Subnet | Enable | VID | Priority |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LAN 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |

Permit untagged device in P1 to access router

1. For each VLAN row, if enable is checked for the VLAN Tag then the corresponding VID will be applied to wired LAN traffic.
2. Wireless LAN traffic is always untagged, but will still be a member of the VLAN group selected.
3. Each VID must be unique.

OK Clear Cancel

4. Click **OK**.

- Open **LAN>>General Setup**. If you want to let the clients in both groups communicate with each other, simply activate **Inter-LAN Routing** by checking the box between **LAN1** and **LAN2**.

LAN >> General Setup

General Setup

| Index | Status | DHCP | IP Address | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|------|
| LAN 1 | V | V | 192.168.1.1 | Details Page | IPv6 |
| LAN 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.2.1 | Details Page | |
| LAN 3 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.3.1 | Details Page | |
| LAN 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.4.1 | Details Page | |
| LAN 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.5.1 | Details Page | |
| LAN 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.6.1 | Details Page | |
| DMZ Port | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.7.1 | Details Page | |
| IP Routed Subnet | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.0.1 | Details Page | |

[Advanced](#) You can configure DHCP server options here.

Force router to use "DNS server IP address" settings specified in LAN1

Inter-LAN Routing

| Subnet | LAN 1 | LAN 2 | LAN 3 | LAN 4 | LAN 5 | LAN 6 | DMZ Port |
|----------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| LAN 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| LAN 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| DMZ Port | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |

Note: LAN 2/3/4/5/6 are available when VLAN is enabled.
DMZ subnet is default bound to P1, and will overwrite the settings of P1 at LAN>>VLAN page.

Vigor router supports up to six private IP subnets on LAN. Each can be independent (isolated) or common (able to communicate with each other). This is ideal for departmental or multi-occupancy applications.

Note: As for the VLAN applications, refer to “Appendix I: VLAN Application on Vigor Router” for more detailed information.

3.2.5 Bind IP to MAC

This function is used to bind the IP and MAC address in LAN to have a strengthening control in network. When this function is enabled, all the assigned IP and MAC address binding together cannot be changed. If you modified the binding IP or MAC address, it might cause you not access into the Internet.

Click **LAN** and click **Bind IP to MAC** to open the setup page.

LAN >> Bind IP to MAC

Bind IP to MAC

Enable
 Disable
 Strict Bind

| ARP Table | | IP Bind List (Limit: 300 entries) | | |
|-------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|------------|-------------|
| IP Address | Mac Address | Index | IP Address | Mac Address |
| 10.28.60.12 | 00-50-7F-22-33-43 | | | |

Show Comment

Note: IP-MAC binding presets DHCP Allocations.
If you select Strict Bind, unspecified LAN clients cannot access the Internet.

| | |
|--|---|
| Backup IP Bind List : <input type="button" value="Backup"/> | Upload From File: <input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇檔案 <input type="button" value="Restore"/> |
|--|---|

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Enable | Click this radio button to invoke this function. However, IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List also can connect to Internet. |
| Disable | Click this radio button to disable this function. All the settings on this page will be invalid. |
| Strict Bind | Click this radio button to block the connection of the IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List. |
| ARP Table | This table is the LAN ARP table of this router. The information for IP and MAC will be displayed in this field. Each pair of IP and MAC address listed in ARP table can be selected and added to IP Bind List by clicking Add below. |
| Select All | Click this link to select all the items in the ARP table. |
| Sort | Reorder the table based on the IP address. |

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Refresh | Refresh the ARP table listed below to obtain the newest ARP table information. |
| Add or Update | <p>IP Address – Type the IP address that will be used for the specified MAC address.</p> <p>Mac Address – Type the MAC address that is used to bind with the assigned IP address.</p> <p>Comment – Type a brief description for the entry.</p> <p>Show Comment – Check this box to display the comment on IP Bind List box.</p> |
| IP Bind List | It displays a list for the IP bind to MAC information. |
| Add | It allows you to add the one you choose from the ARP table or the IP/MAC address typed in Add and Edit to the table of IP Bind List . |
| Update | It allows you to edit and modify the selected IP address and MAC address that you create before. |
| Delete | You can remove any item listed in IP Bind List . Simply click and select the one, and click Delete . The selected item will be removed from the IP Bind List . |
| Backup | Store the configuration for Bind IP to MAC as a file. |
| Restore | Restore the previously stored configuration file and apply to such page. |

Note: Before you select **Strict Bind**, you have to bind one set of IP/MAC address for one PC. If not, no one of the PCs can access into Internet. And the web user interface of the router might not be accessed.

When you finish the configuration, click **OK** to save the settings.

3.2.6 LAN Port Mirror

LAN port mirror can be applied for the users in LAN. Generally speaking, this function copies traffic from one or more specific ports to a target port. This mechanism helps manager track the network errors or abnormal packets transmission without interrupting the flow of data access the network. By the way, user can apply this function to monitor all traffics which user needs to check.

There are some advantages supported in this feature. First, it is more economical without other detecting equipments to be set up. Second, it may be able to view traffic on one or more ports within a VLAN at the same time. Third, it can transfer all data traffics to be mirrored to one analyzer connect to the mirroring port. Last, it is more convenient and easy to configure in user's interface.

LAN >> LAN Port Mirror

LAN Port Mirror

Port Mirror:
 Enable Disable

| | Port1 | Port2 | Port3 | Port4 | Port5 | Port6 | WAN1 | WAN2 |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Mirror Port | | <input type="radio"/> | | |
| Mirrored Tx Port | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Mirrored Rx Port | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Note: The mirrored WAN1 is a software mirror, it will lead to a substantial decline in performance.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Port Mirror | Check Enable to activate this function. Or, check Disable to close this function. |
| Mirror Port | Select a port to view traffic sent from mirrored ports. |
| Mirrored Tx Port | Select which ports are necessary to be mirrored for transmitting the packets. |
| Mirrored Rx Port | Select which ports are necessary to be mirrored for receiving the packets. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.2.7 Wired 802.1x

IEEE 802.1x is an IEEE Standard for port-based Network Access Control (PNAC). It is part of the IEEE 802.1 group of networking protocols. It provides an authentication mechanism for the device that is attached to a LAN or WLAN.

Wired 802.1x provides authentication for one network device on each LAN port. The RADIUS Server settings must be configured before enabling 802.1x because the EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) Authenticator relies on the RADIUS Server in its authentication process. Each LAN port with Wired 802.1x configured will only forward 802.1x packets and block all other packets until the authentication has successfully completed.

LAN >> Wired 802.1x

Wired 802.1x

LAN 802.1x:

Enable

802.1x ports:

P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6

Please note that 802.1x enabled LAN ports will support EAPOL authentication for one network device only. Therefore, 802.1x enabled LAN ports will have issues when connecting to a L2 switch. If you want 802.1x support for multiple network devices, please disable 802.1x here and configure 802.1x on the connecting switch. This feature supports PEAP and EAP-TLS.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------|---|
| Enable | Check the box to enable LAN 802.1x function. |
| 802.1x ports | After enabling the function, simply specify the LAN port(s) to apply such function. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.2.8 Web Portal Setup

This page allows you to configure a profile with specified URL for accessing into or display a message when a wireless/LAN user connects to Internet through this router. No matter what the purpose of the wireless/LAN client is, he/she will be forced into the URL configured here while trying to access into the Internet or the desired web page through this router. That is, a company which wants to have an advertisement for its products to users can specify the URL in this page to reach its goal.

LAN >> Web Portal Setup

Web Portal Table:

| Profile | Status | Interface | |
|--------------------|---------|-----------|--|
| 1. | Disable | None | <input type="button" value="Preview"/> |
| 2. | Disable | None | <input type="button" value="Preview"/> |
| 3. | Disable | None | <input type="button" value="Preview"/> |
| 4. | Disable | None | <input type="button" value="Preview"/> |

Each item is explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------|--|
| Profile | Display the number link which allows you to configure the profile. |
| Status | Display the content (Disable, URL Redirect or Message) of the profile. |
| Interface | Display the applied interfaced of the profile. |
| Preview | Open a preview window according to the configured settings. |

To configure the profile, click any index number link to open the following page.

LAN >> Web Portal Setup

Profile Index: 2

Disable
 URL Redirect
 Message

Note : If the User Management application is enabled, it will override the Web Portal settings seen here.

```
<h1><font color="red">Vigor</font></h1><h2> - Reliable connectivity</h2><h2> - Robust firewall protection</h2><h2> - Multi-site secure communication</h2>
```

(Max 511 characters)

Applied Interfaces

LAN1 LAN2 LAN3 LAN4 LAN5 LAN6
 SSID1 SSID2 SSID3 SSID4
 SSID1 SSID2 SSID3 SSID4

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Disable | Click this button to close this function. |
| URL Redirect | Any user who wants to access into Internet through this router will be redirected to the URL specified here first. It is a useful method for the purpose of advertisement. For example, force the wireless user(s) in hotel to access into the web page that the hotel wants the user(s) to visit. |
| Message | Type words or sentences here. The message will be displayed on the screen for several seconds when the wireless users access into the web page through the router. Preview – Display a preview window base on the web portal setting. Default Message – Click it to restore the default content. |
| Applied Interfaces | Check the box(es) representing different interfaces to be applied by such profile. The advantage is that each SSID (1/2/3/4) for wireless network can be applied with different web portal separately. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.3 Load-Balance /Route Policy

Route Policy (also well known as PBR, policy-based routing) is a feature where you may need to get a strategy for routing. The packets will be directed to the specified interface if they match one of the policies. You can setup route policies in various reasons such as load balance, security, routing decision, and etc.

Through protocol, IP address, port number and interface configuration, Route Policy can be used to configure any routing rules to fit actual request. In general, Route Policy can easily reach the following purposes:

- **Load Balance**

You may manually create polices to balance the traffic across network interface.

- **Specify Interface**

Through dedicated interface (WAN/LAN/VPN), the data can be sent from the source IP to the destination IP.

- **Address Mapping.**

Allows you specify the outgoing WAN IP address (es) for an internal private IP address or a range of internal private IP addresses.

- **Priority.**

The router will determine which policy will be adopted for transmitting the packet according to the priority of Static Route and Route Policy.

- **Failover to/Failback**

Packets will be sent through another Interface or follow another Policy when the original interface goes down (**Failover to**). Once the original interface resumes service (**Failback**), the packets will be returned to it immediately.

- **Other routing.**

Specify routing policy to determine the direction of the data transmission.

| |
|---|
| <p>Note: For more detailed information about using policy route, refer to Support >>FAQ/Application Notes on www.draytek.com.</p> |
|---|



Load-Balance/Route Policy | [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Enable | Protocol | Interface | Interface Address | Src IP Start | Src IP End | Dest IP Start | Dest IP End | Dest Port Start | Dest Port End | Move Up | Move Down |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|----------|-----------|-------------------|--------------|------------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN2 | 172.16.3.133 | Any | Any | 172.16.0.1 | 172.17.5.255 | Any | Any | | Down |
| 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | --- | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >> [Next](#) >>

- Wizard Mode: most frequently used settings in three pages
 Advance Mode: all settings in one page

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| Index | Click the number of index to access into the configuration web page. |
| Enable | Check this box to enable this policy. |
| Protocol | Display the protocol used for this policy. |
| Interface | Display the interface to send packets to once the policy is matched. |
| Interface Address | Display the WAN IP or WAN IP alias address which is used as source IP of the outgoing packets. |
| Src IP Start | Displays the IP address for the start of the source IP. |
| Src IP End | Displays the IP address for the end of the source IP. |
| Dest IP Start | Displays the IP address for the start of the destination IP. |
| Dest IP End | Displays the IP address for the end of the destination IP. |
| Dest Port Start | Displays the IP address for the start of the destination port. |
| Dest Port End | Displays the IP address for the end of the destination port. |
| Move UP/Move Down | Use Up or Down link to move the order of the policy. |
| Wizard Mode | Allows to configure frequently used settings of route policy via three setting pages |
| Advance Mode | Allows to configure detailed settings of route policy. |

To use Wizard Mode, simple do the following steps:

1. Click the **Wizard Mode** radio button.
2. Click **Index 1**. The setting page will appear as follows:

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1 criteria

Load-Balance/Route Policy applies to packets that meet the following criteria

Source IP Any
 Src IP Start Src IP End
 ~

Destination IP Any
 Dest IP Start Dest IP End
 192.168.1.6 ~ 192.168.1.66

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Source IP | <p>Any – Any IP can be treated as the source IP.</p> <p>Src IP Start - Type the source IP start for the specified WAN interface.</p> <p>Src IP End - Type the source IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the source IPs inside the LAN will be passed through the WAN interface.</p> |
| Destination IP | <p>Any – Any IP can be treated as the destination IP.</p> <p>Dest IP Start- Type the destination IP start for the specified WAN interface.</p> <p>Dest IP End - Type the destination IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination IPs will be passed through the WAN interface.</p> |

- Click **Next** to get the following page.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1 Interface

Load-Balance/Route Policy directs the packets to the interface below

Interface

WAN1
 LAN1
 LAN2
 LAN3
 LAN4
 LAN5

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Interface | Use the drop down list to choose a WAN or LAN interface or VPN profile. Packets match with the above criteria will be transferred to the interface chosen here. |

- After specifying the interface, click **Next** to get the following page.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1 NAT or Routing

Based on the settings in the previous pages, we guess you want to have: Force NAT

The current setting is:

Force NAT

Force Routing

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Force NAT /Force Routing | It determines which mechanism that the router will use to forward the packet to WAN. |

- After choosing the mechanism, click **Next** to get the summary page for reference.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1 Configuration Summary

Criteria

Source IP Any

Destination IP 192.168.1.6 ~ 192.168.1.66

Interface

WAN1

More options

Force NAT

- If there is no error, click **Finish** to complete wizard setting.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Load-Balance/Route Policy [Set to Factory](#)

| Index | Enable | Protocol | Interface | Interface Address | Src IP Start | Src IP End | Dest IP Start | Dest IP End | Dest Port Start | Dest Port End | Mov Up |
|-------|--------------------------|----------|-----------|-------------------|--------------|------------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|--------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 172.16.3.130 | Any | Any | 192.168.1.6 | 192.168.1.66 | Any | Any | |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 172.16.3.130 | | | | | | | |

To use Advance Mode, do the following steps:

1. Click the **Advance Mode** radio button.
2. Click **Index 1** to access into the following page.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 5

Enable

Criteria

Protocol: Any

Source IP: Any
 Src IP Range
 Src IP Subnet

Destination IP: Any
 Dest IP Range
 Dest IP Subnet

Destination Port: Any
 Dest Port Start: ~ Dest Port End:

Send via if Criteria Matched

Interface: WAN/LAN WAN1
 VPN VPN 1.???

Gateway: Default Gateway
 Specific Gateway

Priority

Priority: 200

Low
250
150
High

Default Route
Routes in Routing Table

More Options

Packet Forwarding to WAN via: Force NAT
 Force Routing

Failover to:

WAN/LAN Default WAN
 VPN VPN 1.???
 Route Policy Index 1

Gateway: Default Gateway
 Specific Gateway 0.0.0.0

OK
Clear
Cancel

Note: 1. Force NAT(Routing): NAT(Routing) will be performed on outgoing packets, regardless of which type of subnet (NAT or IP Routing) they originate from.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| Enable | Check this box to enable this policy. |
| Protocol | Use the drop-down menu to choose a proper protocol for the WAN interface. <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;"> any <ul style="list-style-type: none"> any TCP UDP TCP/UDP ICMP </div> |

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Source IP | <p>Any – Any IP can be treated as the source IP.</p> <p>Src IP Start - Type the source IP start for the specified WAN interface.</p> <p>Src IP End - Type the source IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the source IPs inside the LAN will be passed through the WAN interface.</p> |
| Destination IP | <p>Any – Any IP can be treated as the destination IP.</p> <p>Dest IP Start- Type the destination IP start for the specified WAN interface.</p> <p>Dest IP End - Type the destination IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination IPs will be passed through the WAN interface.</p> |
| Destination Port | <p>Any – Any port number can be treated as the destination port.</p> <p>Dest Port Start - Type the destination port start for the destination IP.</p> <p>Dest Port End - Type the destination port end for the destination IP. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination ports will be passed through the WAN interface.</p> |
| Send to if criteria matched | <p>Interface – Use the drop down list to choose a WAN or LAN interface or VPN profile. Packets match with the above criteria will be transferred to the interface chosen here.</p> <p>Gateway IP – Specific gateway is used only when you want to forward the packets to the desired gateway. Usually, Default Gateway is selected in default.</p> |
| Priority | <p>Packets will be transmitted based on all routes or Route Policy. Vigor router will determine which rule will be adopted for transmitting the packet according to the priority of Static Route and Route Policy.</p> <p>The greater the value is, the lower the priority is. Default value for route policy is “200” which means it has higher priority than the default route.</p> |
| More options | <p>Packet Forwarding to WAN via – When you choose WAN (e.g., WAN1) as the Interface for packet transmission, you have to specify the way the packet forwarded to. Choose Force NAT or Force Routing.</p> <p>Failover to – Check this button to lead the data passing through specific interface (WAN/LAN/VPN/Route Policy) automatically when the selected interface (defined in Send via if criteria matched) is down.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● WAN/LAN – Use the drop down list to choose an interface as an auto failover interface. ● VPN – Use the drop down list to choose a VPN tunnel as a failover tunnel. ● Route Policy – Use the drop down list to choose an existed route policy profile. |

Gateway IP – Specific gateway is used only when you want to forward the packets to the desired gateway. Usually, Default Gateway is selected in default.

- When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Load-Balance/Route Policy

[Set to Factory](#)

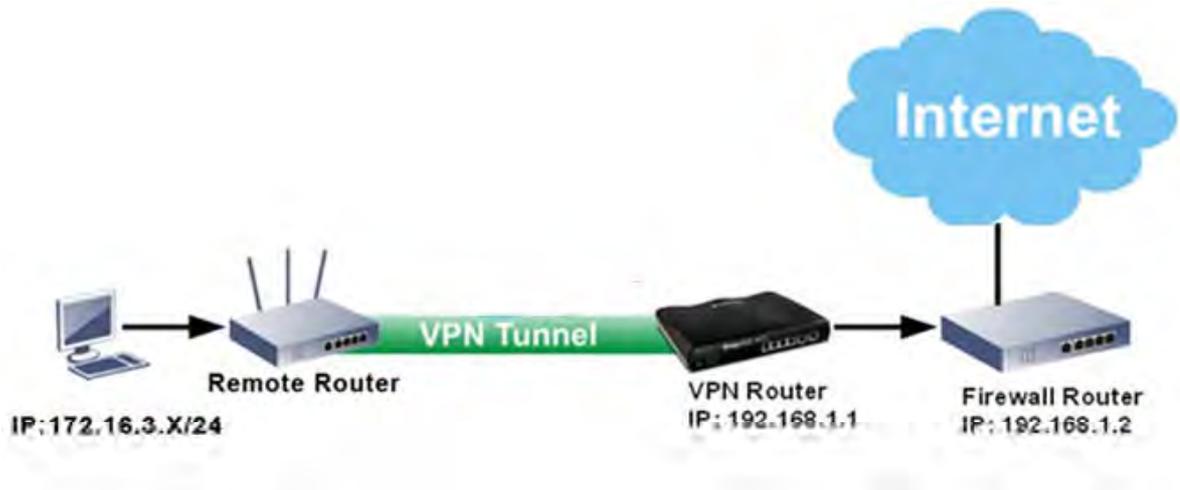
| Index | Enable | Protocol | Interface | Interface Address | Src IP Start | Src IP End | Dest IP Start | Dest IP End | Dest Port Start | Dest Port End | Mov Up |
|-------|--------------------------|----------|-----------|-------------------|--------------|------------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|--------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 172.16.3.130 | Any | Any | 192.168.1.6 | 192.168.1.66 | Any | Any | |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 172.16.3.130 | | | | | | | |

How to Customize a Secure Route between VPN Router and Remote Router by Using Route Policy

Note: The web user interface will be revised later.

Example 1:

In the following figure, a LAN to LAN VPN tunnel is built between DrayTek VPN router (e.g., Vigor2860 series) and the remote router. Firewall Router can receive all of the traffic coming from remote PC which wants to access into Internet; and send back the packets to Remote Router through VPN Router.



- Establish a **VPN tunnel** between VPN Router and the Remote Router.
- Change to default route for the router located in Remote Router.
- Access into the web user interface of the router in VPN Router. Then, open **Load-Balance / Route Policy** and click **Advance Mode**.



Load-Balance/Route Policy 10 rules per page | [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Enable | Protocol | Interface | Priority | Src IP Start | Src IP End | Dest IP Start | Dest IP End | Dest Port Start | Dest Port End | Move Up | Move Down |
|-------|--------------------------|----------|-----------|----------|--------------|------------|---------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|---------|-----------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | | Down |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |

<< 1-10 | 11-20 | 21-30 | 31-40 | 41-50 >>
Next >>

Wizard Mode: most frequently used settings in three pages
 Advance Mode: all settings in one page

- Click any **Index** number link (e.g., 1 in this case). Configure the settings as follows.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1

Enable

Criteria

Protocol: Any

Source IP: Any Src IP Range Src IP Subnet
 Network: 172.16.3.0 Mask: 255.255.255.0 / 24

Destination IP: Any Dest IP Range Dest IP Subnet

Destination Port: Any Dest Port Start ~ Dest Port End

Send via if Criteria Matched

Interface: WAN/LAN LAN1 VPN VPN 1.???

Gateway: Default Gateway Specific Gateway 192.168.1.2

Priority: 100

Low 250 150 High
 Default Route Routes in Routing Table

Now, if you want such route policy will be applied by Vigor router with higher priority, please adjust the value of **Priority** for such route policy. In general, default route is specified with the lowest priority for it value is fixed as “250”. And Routes in Routing Table are fixed as “150”. You can adjust the value for such route policy with lower value, e.g., 100 to ensure it will be applied to packets transmission with the highest priority.

- After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.



Load-Balance/Route Policy

10

rules per page

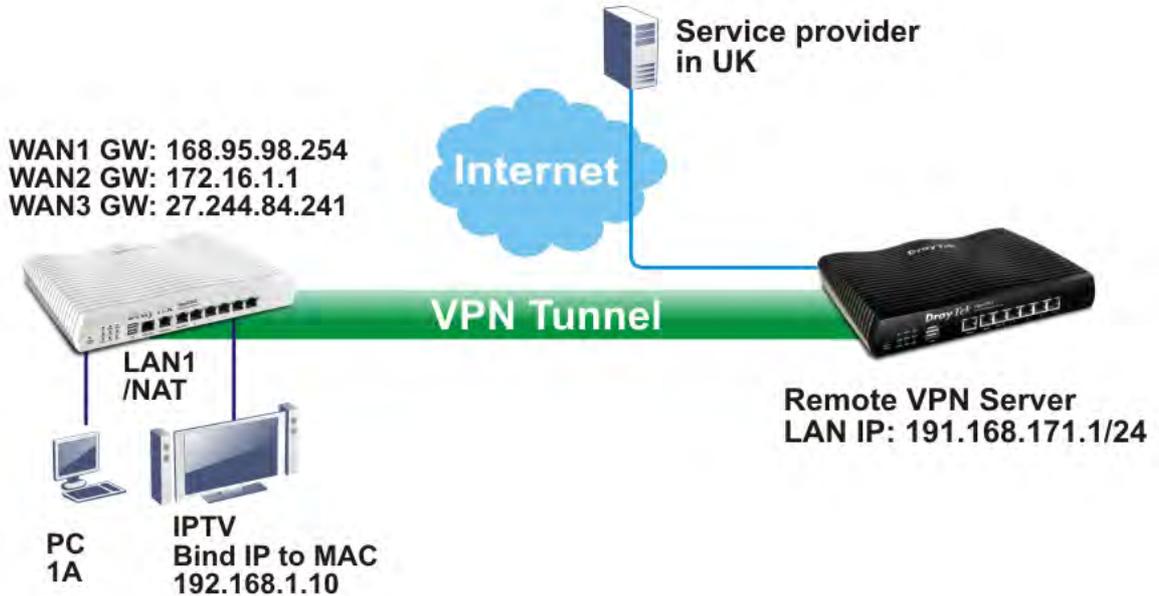
[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Enable | Protocol | Interface | Priority | Src IP Start | Src IP End | Dest IP Start | Dest IP End | Dest Port Start | Dest Port End | Move Up | Move Down |
|-------|-------------------------------------|----------|-----------|----------|--------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Any | LAN1 | 100 | 172.16.3.2 | 172.16.3.25 | Any | Any | Any | Any | | Down |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Any | WAN1 | 200 | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |

- To route the packets coming from the Firewall Router back to the remote router, access into the web user interface of the Firewall Router. Then, set “192.168.1.1/24” as the gateway IP address and set “172.16.3.0/24” as the destination IP address.

Example 2:

Below shows a scenario that local users behind Vigor router A want to access into a remote service (e.g., YouTube) which is blocked or restricted by local Service Provider in their country (e.g., UK in this case). A policy route can be created by the side of Router A to break through the Internet censorship circumvention.



A VPN tunnel has been established between Router A and router B.

1. Access into the web user interface of Router A.
2. Open **Load-Balance/Route Policy**.
3. Click any index number (e.g., #1 in this case).
4. In the following web page, check **Enable**; type “192.168.1.10” as **Src IP Range**; type “213.57.89.100” as the **Destination IP** for the remote VPN server; and choose VPN as the **Interface** setting.

Index: 1

Enable

Criteria

Protocol: Any

Source IP: Any
 Src IP Range
Start: 192.168.1.10 End: 192.168.1.10

Destination IP: Any
 Dest IP Range
Start: 213.57.89.100 End: 213.57.89.100

Destination Port: Any
 Dest Port Start ~ Dest Port End
 ~

Send via if Criteria Matched

Interface: WAN/LAN WAN1
 VPN VPN 1.For Branch

Gateway: Default Gateway
 Specific Gateway

More Options ▼

Priority: 200

Low
High

250
150
0

Default Route
Routes in Routing Table

5. Click **OK** to save the settings.

3.4 NAT

Usually, the router serves as an NAT (Network Address Translation) router. NAT is a mechanism that one or more private IP addresses can be mapped into a single public one. Public IP address is usually assigned by your ISP, for which you may get charged. Private IP addresses are recognized only among internal hosts.

When the outgoing packets destined to some public server on the Internet reach the NAT router, the router will change its source address into the public IP address of the router, select the available public port, and then forward it. At the same time, the router shall list an entry in a table to memorize this address/port-mapping relationship. When the public server response, the incoming traffic, of course, is destined to the router's public IP address and the router will do the inversion based on its table. Therefore, the internal host can communicate with external host smoothly.

The benefit of the NAT includes:

- **Save cost on applying public IP address and apply efficient usage of IP address.** NAT allows the internal IP addresses of local hosts to be translated into one public IP address, thus you can have only one IP address on behalf of the entire internal hosts.
- **Enhance security of the internal network by obscuring the IP address.** There are many attacks aiming victims based on the IP address. Since the attacker cannot be aware of any private IP addresses, the NAT function can protect the internal network.

Note: On NAT page, you will see the private IP address defined in RFC-1918. Usually we use the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet for the router. As stated before, the NAT facility can map one

or more IP addresses and/or service ports into different specified services. In other words, the NAT function can be achieved by using port mapping methods.

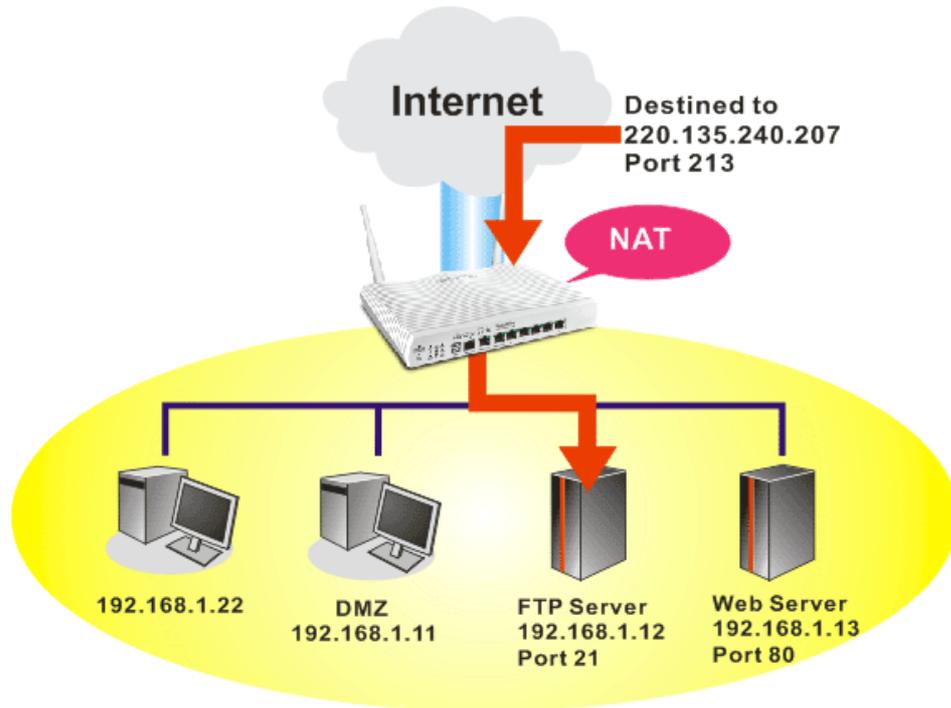
Below shows the menu items for NAT.



- Load-Balance/Route Pol
- NAT**
- Port Redirection
- DMZ Host
- Open Ports
- Port Triggering
- Firewall

3.4.1 Port Redirection

Port Redirection is usually set up for server related service inside the local network (LAN), such as web servers, FTP servers, E-mail servers etc. Most of the case, you need a public IP address for each server and this public IP address/domain name are recognized by all users. Since the server is actually located inside the LAN, the network well protected by NAT of the router, and identified by its private IP address/port, the goal of Port Redirection function is to forward all access request with public IP address from external users to the mapping private IP address/port of the server.



The port redirection can only apply to incoming traffic.

To use this function, please go to **NAT** page and choose **Port Redirection** web page. The **Port Redirection Table** provides 40 port-mapping entries for the internal hosts.

NAT >> Port Redirection

| Port Redirection | | | | | | Set to Factory Default |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------|----------|-------------|------------|--|
| Index | Service Name | WAN Interface | Protocol | Public Port | Private IP | Status |
| 1. | | All | | | | x |
| 2. | | All | | | | x |
| 3. | | All | | | | x |
| 4. | | All | | | | x |
| 5. | | All | | | | x |
| 6. | | All | | | | x |
| 7. | | All | | | | x |
| 8. | | All | | | | x |
| 9. | | All | | | | x |
| 10. | | All | | | | x |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

Note:The configured ports in the **Management** and **SSL VPN** webUIs will be used by the router and not be sent to the local computer defined here.

Each item is explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Index | Display the number of the profile. |
| Service Name | Display the description of the specific network service. |
| WAN Interface | Display the WAN IP address used by the profile. |
| Protocol | Display the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP). |
| Public Port | Display the port number which will be redirected to the specified Private IP and Port of the internal host. |
| Private IP | Display the IP address of the internal host providing the service. |
| Status | Display if the profile is enabled (v) or not (x). |

Press any number under Index to access into next page for configuring port redirection.

NAT >> Port Redirection

Index No. 1

Enable

Mode Range ▾

Service Name Single

Protocol Range

WAN IP --- ▾

Public Port 1.All ▾

Private IP 0 -

Private Port -

Private Port 0

Note: In "Range" Mode the End IP will be calculated automatically once the Public Port and Start IP have been entered.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Enable | Check this box to enable such port redirection setting. |
| Mode | Two options (Single and Range) are provided here for you to choose. To set a range for the specific service, select Range . In Range mode, if the public port (start port and end port) and the starting IP of private IP had been entered, the system will calculate and display the ending IP of private IP automatically. |
| Service Name | Enter the description of the specific network service. |
| Protocol | Select the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP). |

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| WAN IP | Select the WAN IP used for port redirection. There are eight WAN IP alias that can be selected and used for port redirection. The default setting is All which means all the incoming data from any port will be redirected to specified range of IP address and port. |
| Public Port | Specify which port can be redirected to the specified Private IP and Port of the internal host. If you choose Range as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Type the required number on the first box (as the starting port) and the second box (as the ending port). |
| Private IP | Specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service. If you choose Range as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Type a complete IP address in the first box (as the starting point). The second one will be assigned automatically later. |
| Private Port | Specify the private port number of the service offered by the internal host. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Note that the router has its own built-in services (servers) such as Telnet, HTTP and FTP etc. Since the common port numbers of these services (servers) are all the same, you may need to reset the router in order to avoid confliction.

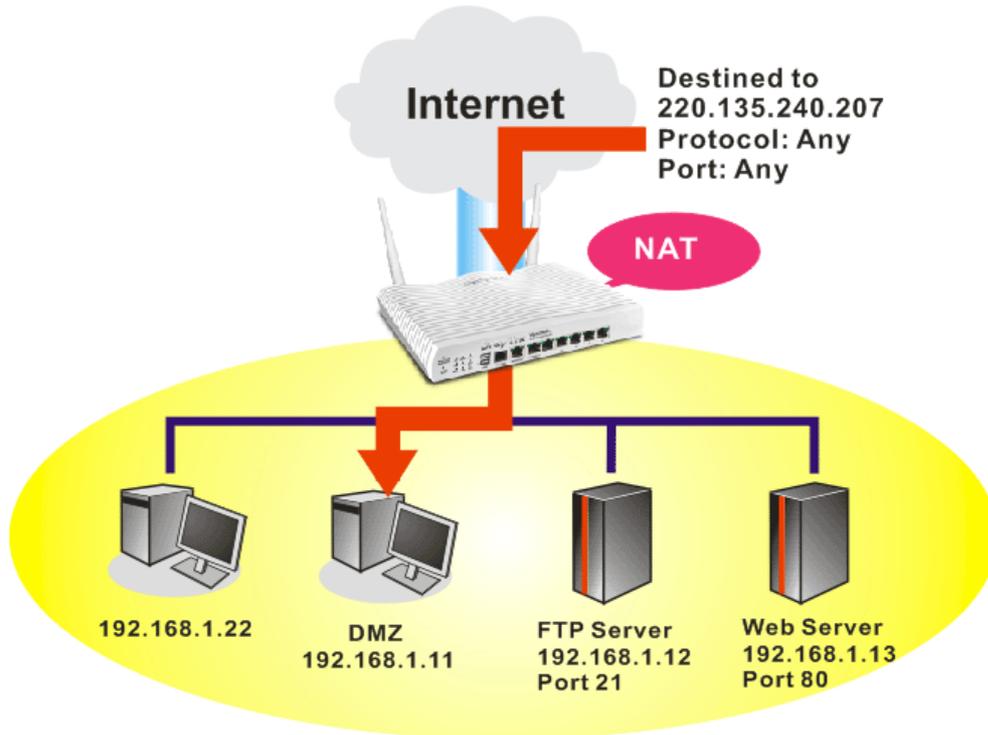
For example, the built-in web user interface in the router is with default port 80, which may conflict with the web server in the local network, <http://192.168.1.13:80>. Therefore, you need to **change the router's http port to any one other than the default port 80** to avoid conflict, such as 8080. This can be set in the **System Maintenance >>Management Setup**. You then will access the admin screen of by suffixing the IP address with 8080, e.g., <http://192.168.1.1:8080> instead of port 80.

| IPv4 Management Setup | IPv6 Management Setup | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------------|---|-------------|---|----------------------|---|---|----------------------|---|---|----------------------|---|---|
| Router Name <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Default:Disable Auto-Logout Internet Access Control <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow management from the Internet <input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server <input type="checkbox"/> TR069 Server <input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable PING from the Internet LAN Access Control <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow management from LAN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSH Server Apply To <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DMZ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IP Routed Subnet Access List from the Internet <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>List</th> <th>IP</th> <th>Subnet Mask</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | List | IP | Subnet Mask | 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | Management Port Setup <input checked="" type="radio"/> User Define Ports <input type="radio"/> Default Ports Telnet Port <input type="text" value="23"/> (Default: 23) HTTP Port <input type="text" value="2860"/> (Default: 80) HTTPS Port <input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443) FTP Port <input type="text" value="21"/> (Default: 21) TR069 Port <input type="text" value="8069"/> (Default: 8069) SSH Port <input type="text" value="22"/> (Default: 22) CVM Access Control <input type="checkbox"/> CVM Port <input type="text" value="8000"/> (Default: 8000) <input type="checkbox"/> CVM SSL Port <input type="text" value="8443"/> (Default: 8443) |
| List | IP | Subnet Mask | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | | | | | | | | | | | |

Note: LAN1 is always allowed to access all the router services regardless of "LAN Access Control" settings.

3.4.2 DMZ Host

As mentioned above, **Port Redirection** can redirect incoming TCP/UDP or other traffic on particular ports to the specific private IP address/port of host in the LAN. However, other IP protocols, for example Protocols 50 (ESP) and 51 (AH), do not travel on a fixed port. Vigor router provides a facility **DMZ Host** that maps ALL unsolicited data on any protocol to a single host in the LAN. Regular web surfing and other such Internet activities from other clients will continue to work without inappropriate interruption. **DMZ Host** allows a defined internal user to be totally exposed to the Internet, which usually helps some special applications such as Netmeeting or Internet Games etc.



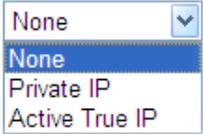
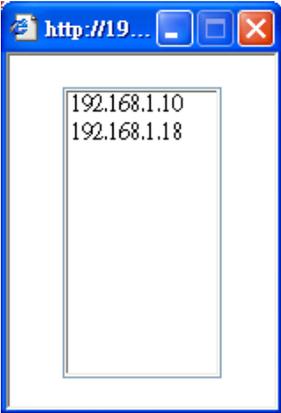
The security properties of NAT are somewhat bypassed if you set up DMZ host. We suggest you to add additional filter rules or a secondary firewall.

Click **DMZ Host** to open the following page. You can set different DMZ host for each WAN interface. Click the WAN tab to switch into the configuration page for that WAN.

NAT >> DMZ Host Setup

| DMZ Host Setup | | | |
|---|------|------|------|
| WAN1 | WAN2 | WAN3 | WAN4 |
| WAN 1 None <input type="button" value="v"/> Private IP <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Choose IP"/> MAC Address of the True IP DMZ Host <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Note: When a True-IP DMZ host is turned on, it will force the router's WAN connection to be always on. | | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| <p>WAN 1</p>  | <p>Choose Private IP or Active True IP first. Active True IP selection is available for WAN1 only.</p> |
| <p>Private IP</p> | <p>Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose PC to select one.</p> |
| <p>Choose PC</p> | <p>Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.</p>  <p>When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the following screen. Click OK to save the setting.</p>  |

DMZ Host for WAN2, WAN3 or WAN4 is slightly different with WAN1. **Active True IP** selection is available for WAN1 only.

See the following figure.

NAT >> DMZ Host Setup

DMZ Host Setup

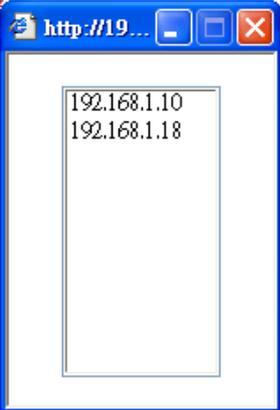
| WAN1 | WAN2 | WAN3 | WAN4 |
|---|------|------|------|
| <p>WAN 2</p> <p>Enable <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Private IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> <input type="button" value="Choose IP"/></p> | | | |

If you previously have set up **WAN Alias** for **PPPoE** or **Static or Dynamic IP** mode in WAN2 interface, you will find them in **Aux. WAN IP** for your selection.

NAT >> DMZ Host Setup

| DMZ Host Setup | | | |
|----------------|--------------------------|-------------|--|
| WAN1 | WAN2 | WAN3 | WAN4 |
| WAN 2 | | | |
| Index | Enable | Aux. WAN IP | Private IP |
| 1. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 10.39.0.10 | 0.0.0.0 <input type="button" value="Choose IP"/> |
| 2. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 10.39.0.150 | 0.0.0.0 <input type="button" value="Choose IP"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| Enable | Check to enable the DMZ Host function. |
| Private IP | Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose PC to select one. |
| Choose PC | <p>Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.</p>  <p>When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the screen. Click OK to save the setting.</p> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.4.3 Open Ports

Open Ports allows you to open a range of ports for the traffic of special applications.

Common application of Open Ports includes P2P application (e.g., BT, KaZaA, Gnutella, WinMX, eMule and others), Internet Camera etc. Ensure that you keep the application involved up-to-date to avoid falling victim to any security exploits.

Click **Open Ports** to open the following page:

NAT >> Open Ports

| Open Ports Setup | | | | | | Set to Factory Default |
|---------------------|---------|---------------|-------------|------------------|--------|--|
| Index | Comment | WAN Interface | Aux. WAN IP | Local IP Address | Status | |
| 1. | | | | | X | |
| 2. | | | | | X | |
| 3. | | | | | X | |
| 4. | | | | | X | |
| 5. | | | | | X | |
| 6. | | | | | X | |
| 7. | | | | | X | |
| 8. | | | | | X | |
| 9. | | | | | X | |
| 10. | | | | | X | |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

Note:The configured ports in the **Management** and **SSL VPN** webUIs will be used by the router and not be sent to the local computer defined here.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Index | Indicate the relative number for the particular entry that you want to offer service in a local host. You should click the appropriate index number to edit or clear the corresponding entry. |
| Comment | Specify the name for the defined network service. |
| WAN Interface | Display the WAN interface used by such index. |
| Aux. WAN IP | Display the IP alias setting used by such index. If no IP alias setting exists, such field will not appear. |
| Local IP Address | Display the private IP address of the local host offering the service. |
| Status | Display the state for the corresponding entry. X or V is to represent the Inactive or Active state. |

To add or edit port settings, click one index number on the page. The index entry setup page will pop up. In each index entry, you can specify **10** port ranges for diverse services.

Index No. 10

| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Open Ports | | | | | | | |
|---|--|------------------------|------------------------|-----|--|--|------------------------|
| Comment | <input type="text"/> | | | | | | |
| WAN Interface | WAN1 <input type="button" value="v"/> | | | | | | |
| Private IP | <input type="text"/> | | | | | <input type="button" value="Choose IP"/> | |
| | Protocol | Start Port | End Port | | Protocol | Start Port | End Port |
| 1. | ----- <input type="button" value="v"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 2. | ----- <input type="button" value="v"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> |
| 3. | ----- <input type="button" value="v"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 4. | ----- <input type="button" value="v"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> |
| 5. | ----- <input type="button" value="v"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 6. | ----- <input type="button" value="v"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> |
| 7. | ----- <input type="button" value="v"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 8. | ----- <input type="button" value="v"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> |
| 9. | ----- <input type="button" value="v"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 10. | ----- <input type="button" value="v"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> | 0 <input type="text"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| Enable Open Ports | Check to enable this entry. |
| Comment | Make a name for the defined network application/service. |
| WAN Interface | Specify the WAN interface that will be used for this entry. |
| WAN IP | Specify the WAN IP address that will be used for this entry. This setting is available when WAN IP Alias is configured. |
| Private IP | Enter the private IP address of the local host or click Choose PC to select one. Choose PC - Click this button and, subsequently, a window having a list of private IP addresses of local hosts will automatically pop up. Select the appropriate IP address of the local host in the list. |
| Protocol | Specify the transport layer protocol. It could be TCP , UDP , or ----- (none) for selection. |
| Start Port | Specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host. |
| End Port | Specify the ending port number of the service offered by the local host. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

NAT >> Open Ports

| Open Ports Setup | | | | Set to Factory Default |
|------------------|---------|---------------|------------------|--|
| Index | Comment | WAN Interface | Local IP Address | Status |
| 1. | P2261 | WAN1 | 192.168.1.49 | v |
| 2. | | | | x |
| 3. | | | | x |
| 4. | | | | x |
| 5. | | | | x |
| 6. | | | | x |
| 7. | | | | x |

3.4.4 Port Triggering

Port Triggering is a variation of open ports function.

The key difference between "open port" and "port triggering" is:

- Once the OK button is clicked and the configuration has taken effect, "open port" keeps the ports opened forever.
- Once the OK button is clicked and the configuration has taken effect, "port triggering" will only attempt to open the ports once the triggering conditions are met.
- The duration that these ports are opened depends on the type of protocol used. The "default" durations are shown below and these duration values can be modified via telnet commands.

TCP: 86400 sec.

UDP: 180 sec.

IGMP: 10 sec.

TCP WWW: 60 sec.

TCP SYN: 60 sec.

NAT >> Port Triggering

| Port Triggering | | | | | | Set to Factory Default |
|-----------------|---------|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------|--|
| Index | Comment | Triggering Protocol | Triggering Port | Incoming Protocol | Incoming Port | Status |
| 1. | | | | | | x |
| 2. | | | | | | x |
| 3. | | | | | | x |
| 4. | | | | | | x |
| 5. | | | | | | x |
| 6. | | | | | | x |
| 7. | | | | | | x |
| 8. | | | | | | x |
| 9. | | | | | | x |
| 10. | | | | | | x |

<< 1-10 | 11-20 >>

[Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------|--|
| Comment | Display the text which memorizes the application of this rule. |

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Triggering Protocol | Display the protocol of the triggering packets. |
| Triggering Port | Display the port of the triggering packets. |
| Incoming Protocol | Display the protocol for the incoming data of such triggering profile. |
| Incoming Port | Display the port for the incoming data of such triggering profile. |
| Status | Display if the rule is active or de-active. |

Click the index number link to open the configuration page.

NAT >> Port Triggering

No. 1

Enable

Service User Defined ▾

Comment

Triggering Protocol TCP ▾

Triggering Port

Incoming Protocol UDP ▾

Incoming Port

Note: The Triggering Port and Incoming Port should be input like this :
123-456,777-789 (legal),123-456,789 (legal), but 123-456-789 (illegal).

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| Enable | Check to enable this entry. |
| Service | Choose the predefined service to apply for such trigger profile. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;"> User Defined ▾ User Defined Real Player QuickTime WMP IRC AIM Talk ICQ PalTalk BitTorrent </div> |
| Comment | Type the text to memorize the application of this rule. |
| Triggering Protocol | Select the protocol (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for such triggering profile. |

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| |  |
| Triggering Port | Type the port or port range for such triggering profile. |
| Incoming Protocol | <p>When the triggering packets received, it is expected the incoming packets will use the selected protocol. Select the protocol (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for the incoming data of such triggering profile.</p>  |
| Incoming Port | Type the port or port range for the incoming packets. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.5 Firewall

3.5.1 Basics for Firewall

While the broadband users demand more bandwidth for multimedia, interactive applications, or distance learning, security has been always the most concerned. The firewall of the Vigor router helps to protect your local network against attack from unauthorized outsiders. It also restricts users in the local network from accessing the Internet. Furthermore, it can filter out specific packets that trigger the router to build an unwanted outgoing connection.

Firewall Facilities

The users on the LAN are provided with secured protection by the following firewall facilities:

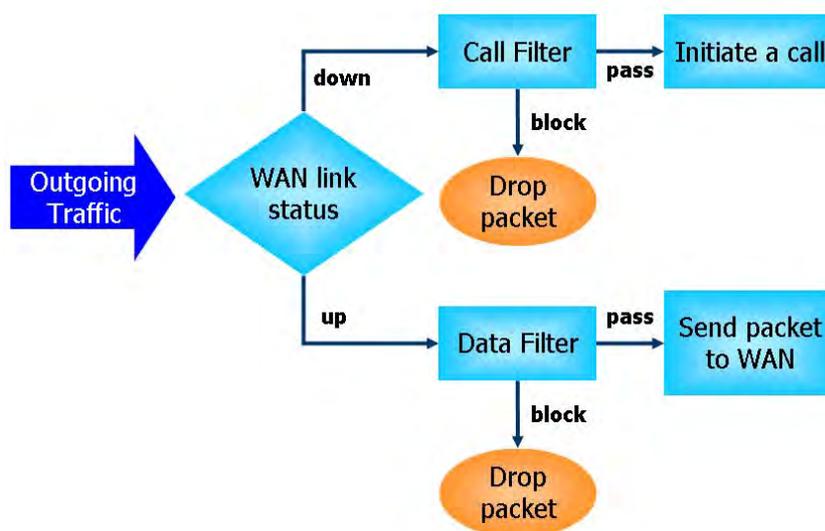
- User-configurable IP filter (Call Filter/ Data Filter).
- Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI): tracks packets and denies unsolicited incoming data
- Selectable Denial of Service (DoS) /Distributed DoS (DDoS) attacks protection

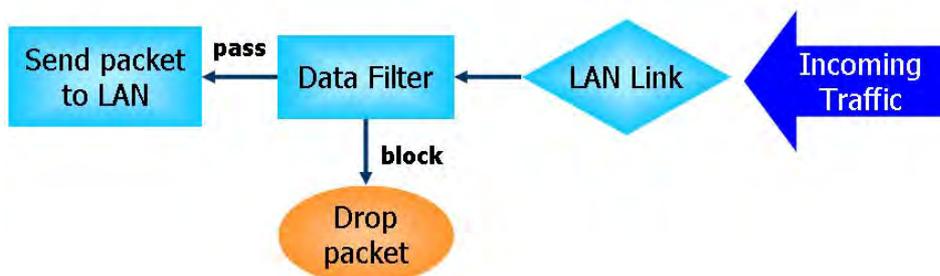
IP Filters

Depending on whether there is an existing Internet connection, or in other words “the WAN link status is up or down”, the IP filter architecture categorizes traffic into two: **Call Filter** and **Data Filter**.

- **Call Filter** - When there is no existing Internet connection, **Call Filter** is applied to all traffic, all of which should be outgoing. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass. Then the router shall “**initiate a call**” to build the Internet connection and send the packet to Internet.
- **Data Filter** - When there is an existing Internet connection, **Data Filter** is applied to incoming and outgoing traffic. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass the router.

The following illustrations are flow charts explaining how router will treat incoming traffic and outgoing traffic respectively.





Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI)

Stateful inspection is a firewall architecture that works at the network layer. Unlike legacy static packet filtering, which examines a packet based on the information in its header, stateful inspection builds up a state machine to track each connection traversing all interfaces of the firewall and makes sure they are valid. The stateful firewall of Vigor router not just examine the header information also monitor the state of the connection.

Denial of Service (DoS) Defense

The **DoS Defense** functionality helps you to detect and mitigate the DoS attack. The attacks are usually categorized into two types, the flooding-type attacks and the vulnerability attacks. The flooding-type attacks will attempt to exhaust all your system's resource while the vulnerability attacks will try to paralyze the system by offending the vulnerabilities of the protocol or operation system.

The **DoS Defense** function enables the Vigor router to inspect every incoming packet based on the attack signature database. Any malicious packet that might duplicate itself to paralyze the host in the secure LAN will be strictly blocked and a Syslog message will be sent as warning, if you set up Syslog server.

Also the Vigor router monitors the traffic. Any abnormal traffic flow violating the pre-defined parameter, such as the number of thresholds, is identified as an attack and the Vigor router will activate its defense mechanism to mitigate in a real-time manner.

The below shows the attack types that DoS/DDoS defense function can detect:

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. SYN flood attack | 9. SYN fragment |
| 2. UDP flood attack | 10. Fraggle attack |
| 3. ICMP flood attack | 11. TCP flag scan |
| 4. Port Scan attack | 12. Tear drop attack |
| 5. IP options | 13. Ping of Death attack |
| 6. Land attack | 14. ICMP fragment |
| 7. Smurf attack | 15. Unassigned Numbers |
| 8. Trace route | |

Below shows the menu items for Firewall.

```

NAT
Firewall
  General Setup
  Filter Setup
  DoS Defense
  User Management
  
```

3.5.2 General Setup

General Setup allows you to adjust settings of IP Filter and common options. Here you can enable or disable the **Call Filter** or **Data Filter**. Under some circumstance, your filter set can be linked to work in a serial manner. So here you assign the **Start Filter Set** only. Also you can configure the **Log Flag** settings, **Apply IP filter to VPN incoming packets**, and **Accept incoming fragmented UDP packets**.

Click **Firewall** and click **General Setup** to open the general setup page.

General Setup Page

Such page allows you to enable / disable Call Filter and Data Filter, determine general rule for filtering the incoming and outgoing data.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

General Setup
Default Rule

Call Filter Enable Disable

Data Filter Enable Disable

Start Filter Set: ▼

Start Filter Set: ▼

Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets (for some games, ex. CS)

Enable Strict Security Firewall

Block routing packet from WAN

IPv4 IPv6

Note: The packets will be filtered by the following firewall functions sequentially:

1. Data Filter Sets and Rules
2. Block routing packets from WAN
3. Default Rule

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| Call Filter | Check Enable to activate the Call Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Call Filter. |
| Data Filter | Check Enable to activate the Data Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Data Filter. |

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Accept large incoming...</p> | <p>Some on-line games (for example: Half Life) will use lots of fragmented UDP packets to transfer game data. Instinctively as a secure firewall, Vigor router will reject these fragmented packets to prevent attack unless you enable “Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP Packets”. By checking this box, you can play these kinds of on-line games. If security concern is in higher priority, you cannot enable “Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP Packets”.</p> |
| <p>Enable Strict Security Firewall</p> | <p>For the sake of security, the router will execute strict security checking for data transmission. Such feature is enabled in default. All the packets, while transmitting through Vigor router, will be filtered by firewall. If the firewall system (e.g., content filter server) does not make any response (pass or block) for these packets, then the router’s firewall will block the packets directly.</p> |
| <p>Block routing packet from WAN</p> | <p>Usually, IPv6 network sessions/traffic from WAN to LAN will be accepted by IPv6 firewall in default.</p> <p>IPv6 - To prevent remote client accessing into the PCs on LAN, check the box to make the packets (routed from WAN to LAN) via IPv6 being blocked by such router. It is effective only for the packets routed but not for packets translated by NAT.</p> <p>IPv4 - To prevent remote client accessing into the PCs on LAN, check the box to make the incoming packets via IPv4 being blocked by such router. It is effective only for the packets routed but not for packets translated by NAT.</p> |

Default Rule Page

Such page allows you to choose filtering profiles including QoS, Load-Balance policy, WCF, APP Enforcement, URL Content Filter, for data transmission via Vigor router.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

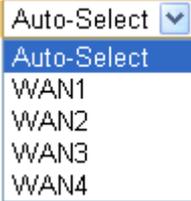
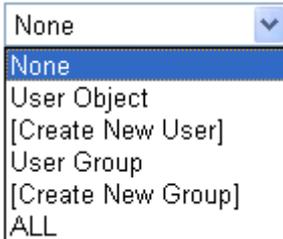
General Setup
Default Rule

| Actions for default rule: | Action/Profile | Syslog |
|---------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Application | | |
| Filter | Pass <input type="button" value="v"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Sessions Control | 2 / 60000 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Quality of Service | None <input type="button" value="v"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Load-Balance policy | Auto-Select <input type="button" value="v"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| User Management | None <input type="button" value="v"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| APP Enforcement | None <input type="button" value="v"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| URL Content Filter | None <input type="button" value="v"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Web Content Filter | None <input type="button" value="v"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| DNS Filter | None <input type="button" value="v"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Advance Setting

Available settings are explained as follows:

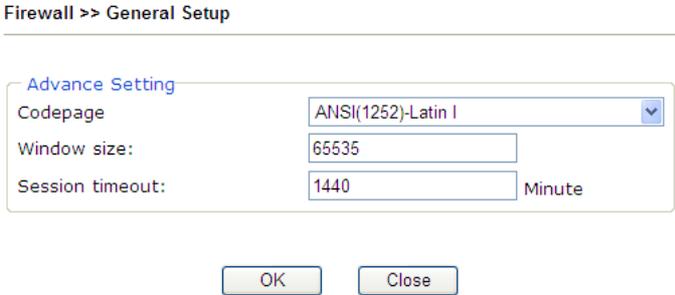
| Item | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| Filter | <p>Select Pass or Block for the packets that do not match with the filter rules.</p> <p>Filter <input style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="Pass"/> <input type="button" value="v"/></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Pass Block </div> |
| Sessions Control | <p>The number typed here is the total sessions of the packets that do not match the filter rule configured in this page. The default setting is 60000.</p> |
| Quality of Service | <p>Choose one of the QoS rules to be applied as firewall rule. For detailed information of setting QoS, please refer to the related section later.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> None <input type="button" value="v"/> None Class 1 Class 2 Class 3 Default </div> |
| Load-Balance Policy | <p>Choose the WAN interface for applying Load-Balance Policy.</p> |

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| |  |
| User Management | <p>Such item is available only when Rule-Based is selected in User Management>>General Setup. The general firewall rule will be applied to the user/user group/all users specified here.</p>  <p>Note: When there is no user profile or group profile existed, Create New User or Create New Group item will appear for you to click to create a new one.</p> |
| APP Enforcement | <p>Select an APP Enforcement profile for global IM/P2P application blocking. If there is no profile for you to select, please choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. All the hosts in LAN must follow the standard configured in the APP Enforcement profile selected here. For detailed information, refer to the section of APP Enforcement profile setup. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for IM/P2P by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.</p> |
| URL Content Filter | <p>Select one of the URL Content Filter profile settings (created in CSM>> URL Content Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in CSM>> URL Content Filter web page first. Or choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for URL Content Filter by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.</p> |
| Web Content Filter | <p>Select one of the Web Content Filter profile settings (created in CSM>> Web Content Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for anti-virus in CSM>> Web Content Filter web page first. Or choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for Web Content Filter by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.</p> |
| DNS Filter | <p>Select one of the DNS Filter profile settings (created in CSM>>DNS Filter) for applying with this router. Please set</p> |

at least one profile in **CSM>> Web Content Filter** web page first. Or click the DNS Filter link in this page to create a new profile.

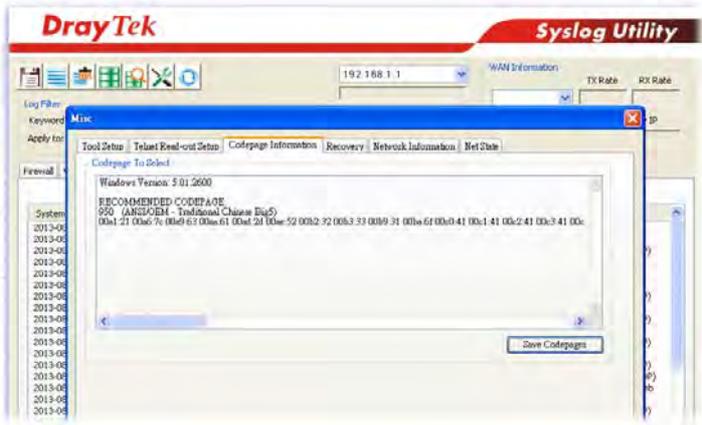
Advance Setting

Click **Edit** to open the following window. However, it is **strongly recommended** to use the default settings here.



Codepage - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtaining correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage.

If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.



Window size – It determines the size of TCP protocol (0~65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

Session timeout – Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.5.3 Filter Setup

Click **Firewall** and click **Filter Setup** to open the setup page.

Firewall >> Filter Setup

| Filter Setup | | Set to Factory Default | |
|--------------------|---------------------|--|----------|
| Set | Comments | Set | Comments |
| 1. | Default Call Filter | 7. | |
| 2. | Default Data Filter | 8. | |
| 3. | | 9. | |
| 4. | | 10. | |
| 5. | | 11. | |
| 6. | | 12. | |

To edit or add a filter, click on the set number to edit the individual set. The following page will be shown. Each filter set contains up to 7 rules. Click on the rule number button to edit each rule. Check **Active** to enable the rule.

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set

Filter Set 1

Comments :

| Filter Rule | Active | Comments | Move Up | Move Down |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| <input type="button" value="1"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Block NetBios | | Down |
| <input type="button" value="2"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | UP | Down |
| <input type="button" value="3"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | UP | Down |
| <input type="button" value="4"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | UP | Down |
| <input type="button" value="5"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | UP | Down |
| <input type="button" value="6"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | UP | Down |
| <input type="button" value="7"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | UP | |

Next Filter Set

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Filter Rule | Click a button numbered (1 ~ 7) to edit the filter rule. Click the button will open Edit Filter Rule web page. For the detailed information, refer to the following page. |
| Active | Enable or disable the filter rule. |
| Comment | Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 23-character long. |
| Move Up/Down | Use Up or Down link to move the order of the filter rules. |
| Next Filter Set | Set the link to the next filter set to be executed after the current filter run. Do not make a loop with many filter sets. |

To edit **Filter Rule**, click the **Filter Rule** index button to enter the **Filter Rule** setup page.

Filter Set 1 Rule 1

Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments:

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup: , , ,

Clear sessions when schedule ON: Enable

Direction:

Source IP:

Destination IP:

Service Type:

Fragments:

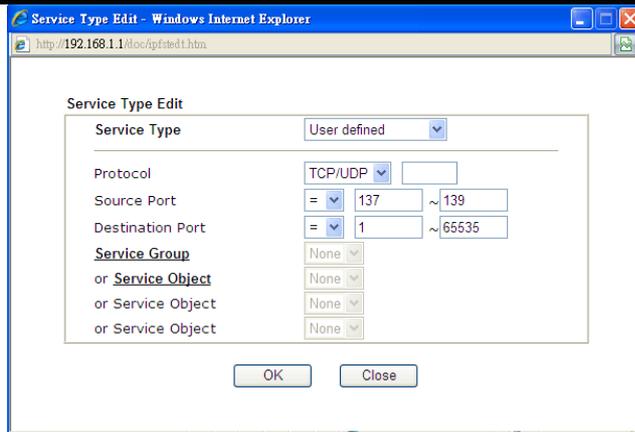
| Application | Action/Profile | Syslog |
|-----------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Filter: | <input type="text" value="Block Immediately"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Branch to Other Filter Set: | <input type="text" value="None"/> | |
| Sessions Control | 0 / <input type="text" value="60000"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| MAC Bind IP | <input type="text" value="Non-Strict"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Quality of Service | <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Load-Balance policy | <input type="text" value="Auto-Select"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| User Management | <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| APP Enforcement: | <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| URL Content Filter: | <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Web Content Filter: | <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| DNS Filter | <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Advance Setting

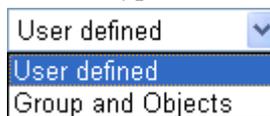
Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Check to enable the Filter Rule | Check this box to enable the filter rule. |
| Comments | Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 14- character long. |
| Index(1-15) | Set PCs on LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in Applications >> Schedule setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work. |
| Clear sessions when schedule ON | Check this box to clear the sessions when the above schedule profiles are applied. |
| Direction | Set the direction of packet flow. It is for Data Filter only. For the Call Filter , this setting is not available since Call Filter is only applied to outgoing traffic. |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN</p> <p>LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN</p> <p>WAN -> LAN/RT/VPN</p> <p>LAN/RT/VPN -> LAN/RT/VPN</p> </div> <p>Note: RT means routing domain for 2nd subnet or other LAN.</p> |
| <p>Source/Destination IP</p> | <p>Click Edit to access into the following dialog to choose the source/destination IP or IP ranges.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> </div> <p>To set the IP address manually, please choose Any Address/Single Address/Range Address/Subnet Address as the Address Type and type them in this dialog. In addition, if you want to use the IP range from defined groups or objects, please choose Group and Objects as the Address Type.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>Group and Objects</p> <p>Any Address</p> <p>Single Address</p> <p>Range Address</p> <p>Subnet Address</p> <p>Group and Objects</p> </div> <p>From the IP Group drop down list, choose the one that you want to apply. Or use the IP Object drop down list to choose the object that you want.</p> |
| <p>Service Type</p> | <p>Click Edit to access into the following dialog to choose a suitable service type.</p> |



To set the service type manually, please choose **User defined** as the Service Type and type them in this dialog. In addition, if you want to use the service type from defined groups or objects, please choose **Group and Objects** as the Service Type.



Protocol - Specify the protocol(s) which this filter rule will apply to.

Source/Destination Port –

(=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type.

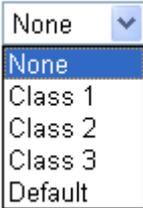
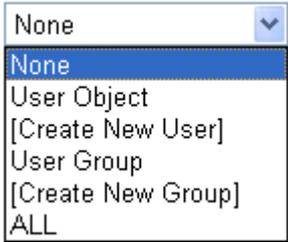
(!=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.

(>) – the port number greater than this value is available.

(<) – the port number less than this value is available for this profile.

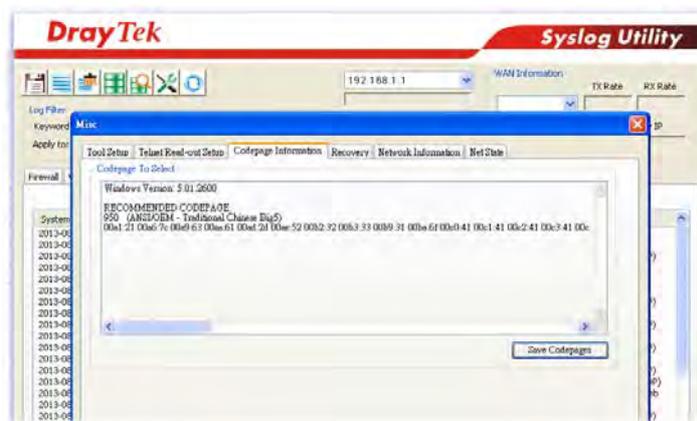
Service Group/Object - Use the drop down list to choose the one that you want.

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <p>Fragments</p> | <p>Specify the action for fragmented packets. And it is used for Data Filter only.</p> <p>Don't care -No action will be taken towards fragmented packets.</p> <p>Unfragmented -Apply the rule to unfragmented packets.</p> <p>Fragmented - Apply the rule to fragmented packets.</p> <p>Too Short - Apply the rule only to packets that are too short to contain a complete header.</p> |
| <p>Filter</p> | <p>Specifies the action to be taken when packets match the rule.</p> <p>Block Immediately - Packets matching the rule will be dropped immediately.</p> <p>Pass Immediately - Packets matching the rule will be</p> |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| | <p>passed immediately.</p> <p>Block If No Further Match - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be dropped.</p> <p>Pass If No Further Match - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be passed through.</p> |
| Branch to other Filter Set | <p>If the packet matches the filter rule, the next filter rule will branch to the specified filter set. Select next filter rule to branch from the drop-down menu. Be aware that the router will apply the specified filter rule for ever and will not return to previous filter rule any more.</p> |
| Sessions Control | <p>The number typed here is the total sessions of the packets that do not match the filter rule configured in this page. The default setting is 60000.</p> |
| MAC Bind IP | <p>Strict - Make the MAC address and IP address settings configured in IP Object for Source IP and Destination IP be bound for applying such filter rule.</p> <p>No-Strict - no limitation.</p> |
| Quality of Service | <p>Choose one of the QoS rules to be applied as firewall rule. For detailed information of setting QoS, please refer to the related section later.</p>  |
| Load-Balance policy | <p>Choose the WAN interface for applying Load-Balance Policy.</p> |
| User Management | <p>Such item is available only when Rule-Based is selected in User Management>>General Setup. The general firewall rule will be applied to the user/user group/all users specified here.</p>  <p>Note: When there is no user profile or group profile existed, Create New User or Create New Group item will appear for you to click to create a new one.</p> |
| APP Enforcement | <p>Select an APP Enforcement profile for global IM/P2P application blocking. If there is no profile for you to select, please choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. All the hosts in LAN must follow the standard configured in the APP Enforcement profile selected here. For detailed information, refer to the</p> |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|----------|--------------------|--------------|-------|------------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| | <p>section of APP Enforcement profile setup. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for IM/P2P by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.</p> | | | | | | | | |
| <p>URL Content Filter</p> | <p>Select one of the URL Content Filter profile settings (created in CSM>> URL Content Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in CSM>> URL Content Filter web page first. Or choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for URL Content Filter by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.</p> | | | | | | | | |
| <p>Web Content Filter</p> | <p>Select one of the Web Content Filter profile settings (created in CSM>> Web Content Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for anti-virus in CSM>> Web Content Filter web page first. Or choose [Create New] from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for Web Content Filter by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.</p> | | | | | | | | |
| <p>DNS Filter</p> | <p>Select one of the DNS Filter profile settings (created in CSM>>DNS Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile in CSM>> Web Content Filter web page first. Or click the DNS Filter link from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile.</p> | | | | | | | | |
| <p>Advance Setting</p> | <p>Click Edit to open the following window. However, it is strongly recommended to use the default settings here.</p> <p>Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule</p> <hr/> <p>Filter Set 1 Rule 1</p> <p>Advance Setting</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Codepage</td> <td>ANSI(1252)-Latin I</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Window size:</td> <td>65535</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Session timeout:</td> <td>1440 Minute</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DrayTek Banner:</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> </table> <p>Strict Security Checking</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> APP Enforcement</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/> </p> <p>Codepage - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtaining correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage.</p> <p>If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage,</p> | Codepage | ANSI(1252)-Latin I | Window size: | 65535 | Session timeout: | 1440 Minute | DrayTek Banner: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Codepage | ANSI(1252)-Latin I | | | | | | | | |
| Window size: | 65535 | | | | | | | | |
| Session timeout: | 1440 Minute | | | | | | | | |
| DrayTek Banner: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | | | | | | | |

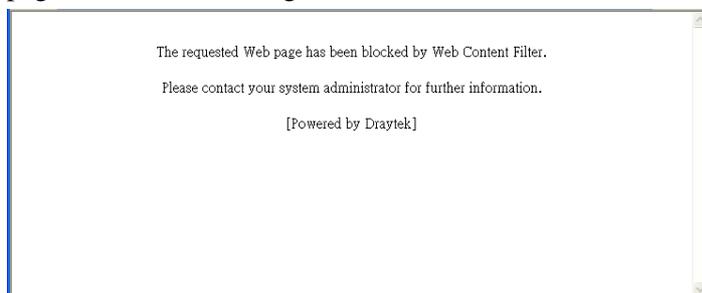
please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.



Window size – It determines the size of TCP protocol (0~65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

Session timeout–Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources. However, Queue timeout is configured for TCP protocol only; session timeout is configured for the data flow which matched with the firewall rule.

DrayTek Banner – Please uncheck this box and the following screen will not be shown for the unreachable web page. The default setting is Enabled.



Strict Security Checking - All the packets, while transmitting through Vigor router, will be filtered by firewall settings configured by Vigor router. When the resource is inadequate, the packets will be blocked if Strict Security Checking is enabled. If Strict Security Checking is not enabled, then the packets will pass through the router.

Example

As stated before, all the traffic will be separated and arbitrated using on of two IP filters: call filter or data filter. You may preset 12 call filters and data filters in **Filter Setup** and even link them in a serial manner. Each filter set is composed by 7 filter rules, which can be further defined. After that, in **General Setup** you may specify one set for call filter and one set for data filter to execute first.

General Setup

General Setup Default Rule

Call Filter Enable Start Filter Set: Set#1

Disable

Data Filter Enable Start Filter Set: Set#2

Disable

Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets (for some g...

Enable Strict Security Firewall

OK Cancel

Filter Setup [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Set | Comments | Set | Comments |
|-----|---------------------|-----|----------|
| 1. | Default Call Filter | 7. | |
| 2. | Default Data Filter | 8. | |
| 3. | | 9. | |
| 4. | | 10. | |
| 5. | | 11. | |
| 6. | | 12. | |

Filter Set 1

Comments: Default Call Filter

| Filter Rule | Active | Comments |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Block NetBios |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | |

OK Clear Cancel

Filter Set 1 Rule 1

Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments: Block NetBios

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup:

Clear sessions when schedule ON: Enable

Direction: LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN

Source IP: Any Edit

Destination IP: Any Edit

Service Type: TCP/UDP, Port: from 137-139 to any Edit

Fragments: Don't Care

Application Action/Profile Syslog

Filter: Pass Immediately

Branch to Other Filter Set: Name

Sessions Control: 0 / 60000

MAC Bind IP: Non-Strict

Quality of Service: None

Load-Balance policy: Auto-Select

User Management: None

APP Enforcement: None

URL Content Filter: None

Web Content Filter: Name

Advance Setting Edit

OK Clear Cancel

3.5.4 DoS Defense

As a sub-functionality of IP Filter/Firewall, there are 15 types of detect/ defense function in the **DoS Defense** setup. The DoS Defense functionality is disabled for default.

Click **Firewall** and click **DoS Defense** to open the setup page.

Firewall >> DoS defense Setup

DoS defense Setup

Enable DoS Defense

| | | | |
|---|---|-----------------------------------|---------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable SYN flood defense | Threshold | <input type="text" value="2000"/> | packets / sec |
| | Timeout | <input type="text" value="10"/> | sec |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable UDP flood defense | Threshold | <input type="text" value="2000"/> | packets / sec |
| | Timeout | <input type="text" value="10"/> | sec |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable ICMP flood defense | Threshold | <input type="text" value="250"/> | packets / sec |
| | Timeout | <input type="text" value="10"/> | sec |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Port Scan detection | Threshold | <input type="text" value="2000"/> | packets / sec |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Block IP options | <input type="checkbox"/> Block TCP flag scan | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Block Land | <input type="checkbox"/> Block Tear Drop | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Block Smurf | <input type="checkbox"/> Block Ping of Death | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Block trace route | <input type="checkbox"/> Block ICMP fragment | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Block SYN fragment | <input type="checkbox"/> Block Unassigned Numbers | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Block Fraggle Attack | | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Enable Dos Defense | Check the box to activate the DoS Defense Functionality. |
| Select All | Click this button to select all the items listed below. |
| Enable SYN flood defense | <p>Check the box to activate the SYN flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the TCP SYN packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent TCP SYN packets for a period defined in Timeout. The goal for this is prevent the TCP SYN packets' attempt to exhaust the limited-resource of Vigor router.</p> <p>By default, the threshold and timeout values are set to 2000 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively. That means, when 2000 packets per second received, they will be regarded as "attack event" and the session will be paused for 10 seconds.</p> |
| Enable UDP flood defense | Check the box to activate the UDP flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the UDP packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent UDP packets for a period defined in Timeout. |

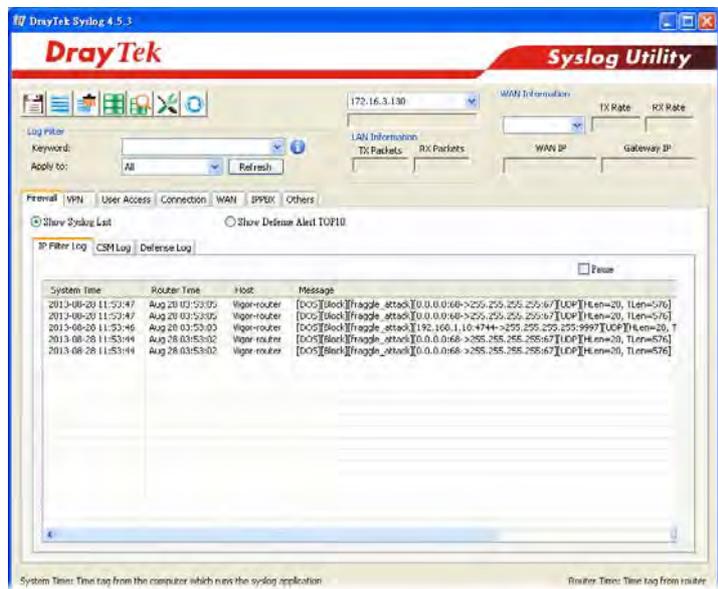
| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| | <p>The default setting for threshold and timeout are 2000 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively. That means, when 2000 packets per second received, they will be regarded as “attack event” and the session will be paused for 10 seconds.</p> |
| Enable ICMP flood defense | <p>Check the box to activate the ICMP flood defense function. Similar to the UDP flood defense function, once if the Threshold of ICMP packets from Internet has exceeded the defined value, the router will discard the ICMP echo requests coming from the Internet.</p> <p>The default setting for threshold and timeout are 250 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively. That means, when 250 packets per second received, they will be regarded as “attack event” and the session will be paused for 10 seconds.</p> |
| Enable PortScan detection | <p>Port Scan attacks the Vigor router by sending lots of packets to many ports in an attempt to find ignorant services would respond. Check the box to activate the Port Scan detection. Whenever detecting this malicious exploration behavior by monitoring the port-scanning Threshold rate, the Vigor router will send out a warning.</p> <p>By default, the Vigor router sets the threshold as 2000 packets per second. That means, when 2000 packets per second received, they will be regarded as “attack event”.</p> |
| Block IP options | <p>Check the box to activate the Block IP options function. The Vigor router will ignore any IP packets with IP option field in the datagram header. The reason for limitation is IP option appears to be a vulnerability of the security for the LAN because it will carry significant information, such as security, TCC (closed user group) parameters, a series of Internet addresses, routing messages...etc. An eavesdropper outside might learn the details of your private networks.</p> |
| Block Land | <p>Check the box to enforce the Vigor router to defense the Land attacks. The Land attack combines the SYN attack technology with IP spoofing. A Land attack occurs when an attacker sends spoofed SYN packets with the identical source and destination addresses, as well as the port number to victims.</p> |
| Block Smurf | <p>Check the box to activate the Block Smurf function. The Vigor router will ignore any broadcasting ICMP echo request.</p> |
| Block trace router | <p>Check the box to enforce the Vigor router not to forward any trace route packets.</p> |
| Block SYN fragment | <p>Check the box to activate the Block SYN fragment function. The Vigor router will drop any packets having SYN flag and more fragment bit set.</p> |
| Block Fraggle Attack | <p>Check the box to activate the Block fraggle Attack function. Any broadcast UDP packets received from the Internet is blocked.</p> |

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| | Activating the DoS/DDoS defense functionality might block some legal packets. For example, when you activate the fraggle attack defense, all broadcast UDP packets coming from the Internet are blocked. Therefore, the RIP packets from the Internet might be dropped. |
| Block TCP flag scan | Check the box to activate the Block TCP flag scan function. Any TCP packet with anomaly flag setting is dropped. Those scanning activities include <i>no flag scan</i> , <i>FIN without ACK scan</i> , <i>SYN FINscan</i> , <i>Xmas scan</i> and <i>full Xmas scan</i> . |
| Block Tear Drop | Check the box to activate the Block Tear Drop function. Many machines may crash when receiving ICMP datagrams (packets) that exceed the maximum length. To avoid this type of attack, the Vigor router is designed to be capable of discarding any fragmented ICMP packets with a length greater than 1024 octets. |
| Block Ping of Death | Check the box to activate the Block Ping of Death function. This attack involves the perpetrator sending overlapping packets to the target hosts so that those target hosts will hang once they re-construct the packets. The Vigor routers will block any packets realizing this attacking activity. |
| Block ICMP Fragment | Check the box to activate the Block ICMP fragment function. Any ICMP packets with more fragment bit set are dropped. |
| Block Unassigned Numbers | Check the box to activate the Block Unknown Protocol function. Individual IP packet has a protocol field in the datagram header to indicate the protocol type running over the upper layer. However, the protocol types greater than 100 are reserved and undefined at this time. Therefore, the router should have ability to detect and reject this kind of packets. |
| Warning Messages | <p>We provide Syslog function for user to retrieve message from Vigor router. The user, as a Syslog Server, shall receive the report sending from Vigor router which is a Syslog Client.</p> <p>All the warning messages related to DoS Defense will be sent to user and user can review it through Syslog daemon. Look for the keyword DoS in the message, followed by a name to indicate what kind of attacks is detected.</p> |

SysLog / Mail Alert Setup

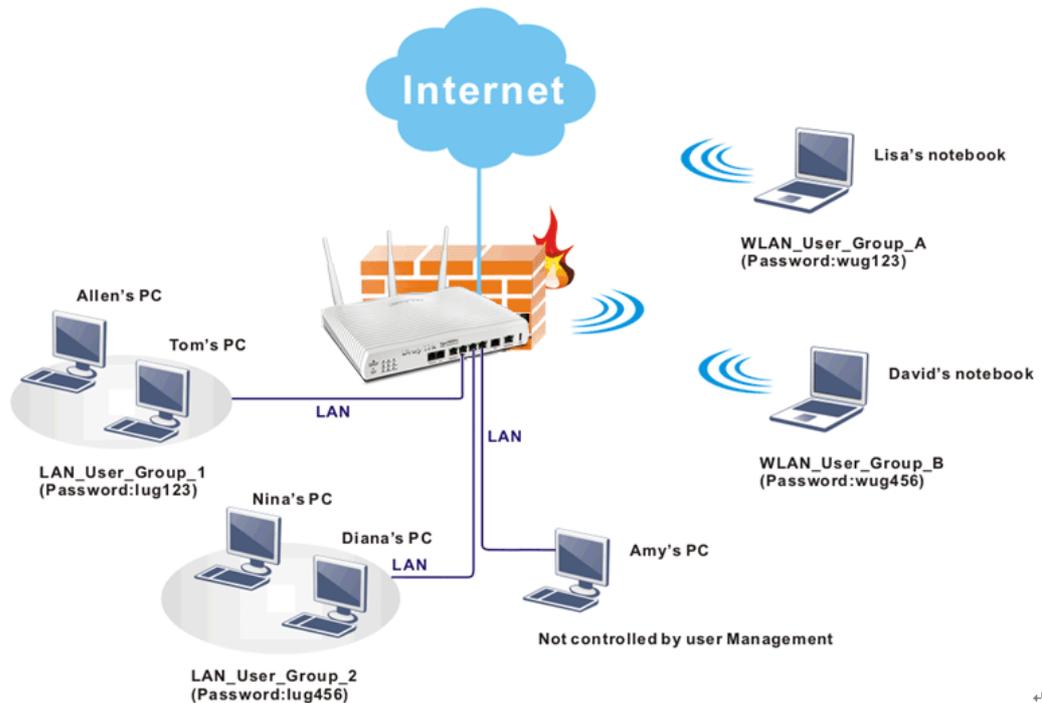
| | | | |
|--|--|---|--|
| SysLog Access Setup <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Syslog Save to: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Syslog Server <input type="checkbox"/> USB Disk Router Name: <input type="text"/> Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> Destination Port: <input type="text" value="514"/> Mail Syslog: <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Enable syslog message: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Firewall Log <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User Access Log <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN Log <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Router/DSL information AlertLog Setup <input type="checkbox"/> Enable AlertLog Port: <input type="text" value="514"/> | | Mail Alert Setup <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/> SMTP Server: <input type="text"/> SMTP Port: <input type="text" value="25"/> Mail To: <input type="text"/> Return-Path: <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Authentication User Name: <input type="text"/> Password: <input type="text"/> Enable E-Mail Alert: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DoS Attack <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IM-P2P <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN LOG | |
|--|--|---|--|

Note: 1. Mail Syslog cannot be activated unless USB Disk is ticked for "Syslog Save to".
 2. Mail Syslog feature sends a Syslog file when its size reaches 1M Bytes.



3.6 User Management

User Management is a security feature which disallows any IP traffic (except DHCP-related packets) from a particular host until that host has correctly supplied a valid username and password. Instead of managing with IP address/MAC address, User Management function manages hosts with user account. Network administrator can give different firewall policies or rules for different hosts with different User Management accounts. This is more flexible and convenient for network management. Not only offering the basic checking for Internet access, User Management also provides additional firewall rules, e.g. CSM checking for protecting hosts.



Note: Filter rules configured under Firewall usually are applied to the host (the one that the router installed) only. With user management, the rules can be applied to every user connected to the router with customized profiles.

Firewall
User Management
General Setup
User Profile
User Group
User Online Status
Objects Setting

3.6.1 General Setup

General Setup can determine the standard (rule-based or user-based) for the users controlled by User Management. The mode (standard) selected here will influence the contents of the filter rule(s) applied to every user.

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

Mode Selection:

- Rule-Based** is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.
- User-Based** is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.

Authentication page:

Web Authentication: HTTPS HTTP

Login Page Logo: Upload a file ▼
Default Blank 擇檔案 (Max 524 × 352 pixel) Upload

Login Page Greeting: Upload a file

Display IP address on the dialog box pops up after successful login.

Landing page:

(Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

```
<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>
window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>
```

OK
Clear
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------|---|
| Mode | <p>There are two modes offered here for you to choose. Each mode will bring different filtering effect to the users involved.</p> <p>User-Based - If you choose such mode, the router will apply the filter rules configured in User Management>>User Profile to the users.</p> <p>Rule-Based -If you choose such mode, the router will apply the filter rules configured in Firewall>>General Setup and Filter Rule to the users.</p> |

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Authentication page | <p>Web Authentication - Choose the protocol for web authentication.</p> <p>Login Page Logo – A logo which can be used as an identification of enterprise can be uploaded and displayed on the login page. You can use the default one, blank page or upload other image files (the size no more than 524 × 352 pixel) to have an image of enterprise or have the effect of advertisement.</p> <p>Login Page Greeting - Such link allows you to access into the setting page for login greeting. For detailed information, refer to System Maintenance>>Login Page Greeting.</p> <p>Display IP Address on tracking window – Check the box to display the IP address of the client on the tracking window.</p> |
| Landing Page | Type the information to be displayed on the first web page when the LAN user accessing into Internet via such router. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.6.2 User Profile

This page allows you to set customized profiles (up to 200) which will be applied for users controlled under **User Management**. Simply open **User Management>>User Profile**.

User Management >> User Profile

User Profile Table | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Profile | Name | Profile | Name |
|---------------------|-------------------|---------------------|------|
| 1. | admin | 17. | |
| 2. | Dial-In User | 18. | |
| 3. | LAN_User_Group_1 | 19. | |
| 4. | WLAN_User_Group_A | 20. | |
| 5. | WLAN_User_Group_B | 21. | |
| 6. | | 22. | |
| 7. | | 23. | |
| 8. | | 24. | |
| 9. | | 25. | |
| 10. | | 26. | |
| 11. | | 27. | |
| 12. | | 28. | |
| 13. | | 29. | |
| 14. | | 30. | |
| 15. | | 31. | |
| 16. | | 32. | |

[<< 1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) | [193-200](#) >>
 [Next >>](#)

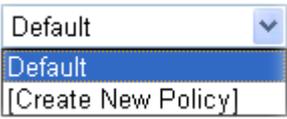
To set the user profile, please click any index number link to open the following page. Notice that profile 1 (**admin**) and profile 2 (**Dial-In User**) are factory default settings. Profile 2 is reserved for future use.

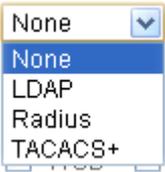
User Management >>User Profile

Profile Index 3

| | | | |
|---|---|--|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account | User Online Status : Block/ Unblock | | |
| Username | <input type="text" value="Tony"/> | | |
| Password | <input type="password" value="*****"/> | | |
| Confirm Password | <input type="password"/> | | |
| Idle Timeout | <input type="text" value="10"/> | min(s) | 0:Unlimited |
| Max User Login | <input type="text" value="1"/> | | 0:Unlimited |
| External Server Authentication | <input type="text" value="None"/> | | |
| Log | <input type="text" value="None"/> | | |
| Pop Browser Tracking Window | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| Authentication | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet |
| Landing Page | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: | <input type="text" value="1"/> , <input type="text" value="2"/> , <input type="text" value=""/> , <input type="text" value=""/> | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota | <input type="text" value="0"/> | min. | <input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/> <input type="text" value="30"/> min. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Data Quota | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text" value="MB"/> | <input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/> <input type="text" value="0"/> MB |
| Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired | | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable | Default Time Quota | <input type="text" value="0"/> min. | Default Data Quota <input type="text" value="30"/> MB |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| Enable this account | Check this box to enable such user profile. |
| User Name | <p>Type a name for such user profile (e.g., <i>LAN_User_Group_1</i>, <i>WLAN_User_Group_A</i>, <i>WLAN_User_Group_B</i>, etc). When a user tries to access Internet through this router, an authentication step must be performed first. The user has to type the User Name specified here to pass the authentication. When the user passes the authentication, he/she can access Internet via this router. However the accessing operation will be restricted with the conditions configured in this user profile.</p> <p>The maximum length of the name you can set is 24 characters.</p> |
| Password | <p>Type a password for such profile (e.g., <i>lug123</i>, <i>wug123</i>, <i>wug456</i>, etc). When a user tries to access Internet through this router, an authentication step must be performed first. The user has to type the password specified here to pass the authentication. When the user passes the authentication, he/she can access Internet via this router with the limitation configured in this user profile.</p> <p>The maximum length of the password you can set is 24 characters.</p> |
| Confirm Password | Type the password again for confirmation. |
| Idle Timeout | If the user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the network connection will be stopped for such user . By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 10 minutes. |
| Max User Login | Such profile can be used by many users. You can set the limitation for the number of users accessing Internet with the conditions of such profile. The default setting is 0 which means no limitation in the number of users. |
| Policy | <p>It is available only when User-Based mode selected in User Management>>General Setup.</p>  <p>Default – If you choose such item, the filter rules pre-configured in Firewall can be adopted for such user profile.</p> <p>Create New Policy – If you choose such item, the following page will be popped up for you to define another filter rule as a new policy.</p> |

| | |
|---|--|
| | <p>Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule</p> <hr/> <p>Filter Set 1 Rule 2</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check to enable the Filter Rule</p> <p>Comments: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup: <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/></p> <p>Clear sessions when schedule ON: <input type="checkbox"/> Enable</p> <hr/> <p>Direction: LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN <input type="button" value="v"/></p> <p>Source IP: <input type="text" value="Any"/></p> <p>Destination IP: <input type="text" value="Any"/></p> <p>Service Type: <input type="text" value="Any"/></p> <p>For the detailed configuration, simply refer to Firewall>>Filter Rule. The firewall filter rules that are not selected in Firewall>>General>>Default rule can be available for use in User Management>>User Profile.</p> |
| <p>External Service Authentication</p> | <p>The router will authenticate the dial-in user by itself or by external service such as LDAP server or Radius server or TACACS+ server. If LDAP, Radius or TACACS+ is selected here, it is not necessary to configure the password setting above.</p>  |
| <p>Log</p> | <p>Time of login/log out, block/unblock for the user(s) can be sent to and displayed in Syslog. Please choose any one of the log items to take down relational records for the user(s).</p>  |
| <p>Pop Browser Tracking Window</p> | <p>If such function is enabled, a pop up window will be displayed on the screen with time remaining for connection if Idle Timeout is set. However, the system will update the time periodically to keep the connection always on. Thus, Idle Timeout will not interrupt the network connection.</p> |
| <p>Authentication</p> | <p>Any user (from LAN side or WLAN side) tries to connect to Internet via Vigor router must be authenticated by the router first. There are three ways offered by the router for the user to choose for authentication.</p> <p>Web – If it is selected, the use can type the URL of the router from any browser. Then, a login window will be popped up and ask the user to type the user name and password for authentication. If succeed, a Welcome Message (configured in User Management >> General Setup) will be displayed. After authentication, the destination URL (if requested by the user) will be guided</p> |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| | <p>automatically by the router.</p> <p>Alert Tool – If it is selected, the user can open Alert Tool and type the user name and password for authentication. A window with remaining time of connection for such user will be displayed. Next, the user can access Internet through any browser on Windows. Note that Alert Tool can be downloaded from DrayTek web site.</p> <p>Telnet – If it is selected, the user can use Telnet command to perform the authentication job.</p> |
| Landing Page | <p>When a user tries to access into the web user interface of Vigor router series with the user name and password specified in this profile, he/she will be lead into the web page configured in Landing Page field in User Management>>General Setup.</p> <p>Check this box to enable such function.</p> |
| Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup | <p>You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p> |
| Enable Time Quota | <p>Time quota means the total connection time allowed by the router for the user with such profile. Check the box to enable the function of time quota. The first box displays the remaining time of the network connection. The second box allows to type the number of time (unit is minute) which is available for the user (using such profile) to access Internet.</p> <p><input type="button" value="+"/> – Click this box to set and increase the time quota for such profile.</p> <p><input type="button" value="-"/> – Click this box to decrease the time quota for such profile.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note: A dialog will be popped up to notify how many time remained when a user accesses into Internet through Vigor router successfully.</p>  <p>When the time is up, all the connection jobs including network, IM, social media, facebook, and etc. will be terminated.</p> </div> |
| Enable Data Quota | <p>Data Quota means the total amount for data transmission allowed for the user. The unit is MB/GB.</p> |

| | |
|---|--|
| | <p><input type="button" value="+"/> – Click this box to set and increase the data quota for such profile.</p> <p><input type="button" value="-"/> – Click this box to decrease the data quota for such profile.</p> |
| <p>Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired</p> | <p>Set default time quota and data quota for such profile. When the scheduling time is up, the router will use the default quota settings automatically.</p> <p>Enable – Check it to use the default setting for time quota and data quota.</p> <p>Default Time Quota – Type the value for the time manually.</p> <p>Default Data Quota – Type the value for the data manually.</p> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.6.3 User Group

This page allows you to bind several user profiles into one group. These groups will be used in **Firewall>>General Setup** as part of filter rules.

User Management >> User Group

User Group Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Name | Index | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1. | | 17. | |
| 2. | | 18. | |
| 3. | | 19. | |
| 4. | | 20. | |
| 5. | | 21. | |
| 6. | | 22. | |
| 7. | | 23. | |
| 8. | | 24. | |
| 9. | | 25. | |
| 10. | | 26. | |
| 11. | | 27. | |
| 12. | | 28. | |
| 13. | | 29. | |
| 14. | | 30. | |
| 15. | | 31. | |
| 16. | | 32. | |

Please click any index number link to open the following page.

User Management >> User Group

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available User Objects

1-admin
 2-Dial-In User
 3-LAN_User_Group_1
 4-WLAN_User_Group_A
 5-WLAN_User_Group_B

Selected User Objects(Max 32 Objects)

(Empty)

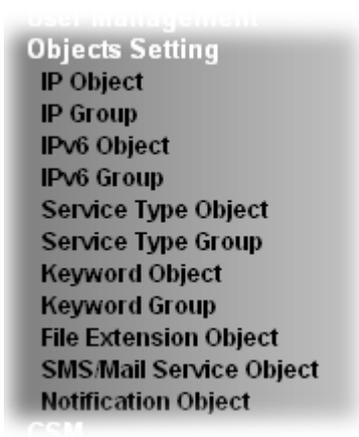
Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Name | Type a name for this user group. |
| Available User Objects | You can gather user profiles (objects) from User Profile page within one user group. All the available user objects that you have created will be shown in this box. Notice that user object, Admin and Dial-In User are factory settings. User defined profiles will be numbered with 3, 4, 5 and so on. |

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Idle Time | Display the idle timeout setting for such profile. |
| Action | Block - can prevent specified user accessing into Internet. Unblock – the user will be blocked. Logout – the user will be logged out forcefully. |

3.7 Objects Settings

For IPs in a range and service ports in a limited range usually will be applied in configuring router's settings, therefore we can define them with *objects* and bind them with *groups* for using conveniently. Later, we can select that object/group that can apply it. For example, all the IPs in the same department can be defined with an IP object (a range of IP address).



3.7.1 IP Object

You can set up to 192 sets of IP Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> IP Object

IP Object Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Name | Index | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1. | | 17. | |
| 2. | | 18. | |
| 3. | | 19. | |
| 4. | | 20. | |
| 5. | | 21. | |
| 6. | | 22. | |
| 7. | | 23. | |
| 8. | | 24. | |
| 9. | | 25. | |
| 10. | | 26. | |
| 11. | | 27. | |
| 12. | | 28. | |
| 13. | | 29. | |
| 14. | | 30. | |
| 15. | | 31. | |
| 16. | | 32. | |

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Name | Display the name of the object profile. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

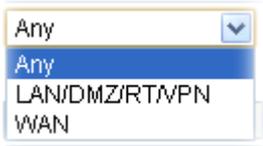
1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> IP Object

Profile Index : 1

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Name: | RD Department |
| Interface: | Any |
| Address Type: | Range Address |
| Mac Address: | 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 |
| Start IP Address: | 192.168.1.59 |
| End IP Address: | 192.168.1.65 |
| Subnet Mask: | 0.0.0.0 |
| Invert Selection: | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Name | Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed. |
| Interface | <p>Choose a proper interface.</p>  <p>For example, the Direction setting in Edit Filter Rule will ask you specify IP or IP range for WAN or LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN or any IP address. If you choose LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN as the Interface here, and choose LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN as the direction setting in Edit Filter Rule, then all the IP addresses specified with LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN interface will be opened for you to choose in Edit Filter Rule page.</p> |
| Address Type | <p>Determine the address type for the IP address.</p> <p>Select Single Address if this object contains one IP address only.</p> <p>Select Range Address if this object contains several IPs within a range.</p> <p>Select Subnet Address if this object contains one subnet for IP address.</p> <p>Select Any Address if this object contains any IP address.</p> <p>Select Mac Address if this object contains Mac address.</p> |

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> Range Address ▾ Any Address Single Address Range Address Subnet Address Mac Address </div> |
| MAC Address | Type the MAC address of the network card which will be controlled. |
| Start IP Address | Type the start IP address for Single Address type. |
| End IP Address | Type the end IP address if the Range Address type is selected. |
| Subnet Mask | Type the subnet mask if the Subnet Address type is selected. |
| Invert Selection | If it is checked, all the IP addresses except the ones listed above will be applied later while it is chosen. |

4. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration. Below is an example of IP objects settings.

Objects Setting >> IP Object

IP Object Profiles:

| Index | Name | Index |
|-----------|----------------|------------|
| <u>1.</u> | RD Department | <u>17.</u> |
| <u>2.</u> | Financial Dept | <u>18.</u> |
| <u>3.</u> | HR Department | <u>19.</u> |
| <u>4.</u> | | <u>20.</u> |
| <u>5.</u> | | <u>21.</u> |
| 6. | | 22. |

3.7.2 IP Group

This page allows you to bind several IP objects into one IP group.

Objects Setting >> IP Group

IP Group Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Name | Index | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1. | | 17. | |
| 2. | | 18. | |
| 3. | | 19. | |
| 4. | | 20. | |
| 5. | | 21. | |
| 6. | | 22. | |
| 7. | | 23. | |
| 8. | | 24. | |
| 9. | | 25. | |
| 10. | | 26. | |
| 11. | | 27. | |
| 12. | | 28. | |
| 13. | | 29. | |
| 14. | | 30. | |
| 15. | | 31. | |
| 16. | | 32. | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Name | Display the name of the group profile. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> IP Group

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Interface:

Available IP Objects

1-RD Department
 2-Financial Dept
 3-HR Department

Selected IP Objects

(Empty)

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Name | Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed. |
| Interface | Choose WAN, LAN or Any to display all the available IP objects with the specified interface. |
| Available IP Objects | All the available IP objects with the specified interface chosen above will be shown in this box. |
| Selected IP Objects | Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box. |

- After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.7.3 IPv6 Object

You can set up to 64 sets of IPv6 Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> IPv6 Object

IPv6 Object Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Name | Index | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1. | | 17. | |
| 2. | | 18. | |
| 3. | | 19. | |
| 4. | | 20. | |
| 5. | | 21. | |
| 6. | | 22. | |
| 7. | | 23. | |
| 8. | | 24. | |
| 9. | | 25. | |
| 10. | | 26. | |
| 11. | | 27. | |
| 12. | | 28. | |
| 13. | | 29. | |
| 14. | | 30. | |
| 15. | | 31. | |
| 16. | | 32. | |

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Name | Display the name of the object profile. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> IPv6 Object

Profile Index : 16

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| Name: | <input type="text"/> |
| Address Type: | Subnet Address <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Mac Address: | 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 |
| Start IP Address: | <input type="text"/> |
| End IP Address: | <input type="text"/> |
| Prefix Length: | <input type="text"/> |
| Invert Selection: | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Name | Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed. |
| Address Type | <p>Determine the address type for the IPv6 address.</p> <p>Select Single Address if this object contains one IPv6 address only.</p> <p>Select Range Address if this object contains several IPv6s within a range.</p> <p>Select Subnet Address if this object contains one subnet for IPv6 address.</p> <p>Select Any Address if this object contains any IPv6 address.</p> <p>Select Mac Address if this object contains Mac address.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin-top: 5px;"> Range Address <input type="button" value="v"/> Any Address Single Address Range Address Subnet Address Mac Address </div> |
| Mac Address | Type the MAC address of the network card which will be controlled. |
| Start IP Address | Type the start IP address for Single Address type. |
| End IP Address | Type the end IP address if the Range Address type is selected. |
| Prefix Length | Type the number (e.g., 64) for the prefix length of IPv6 address. |
| Invert Selection | If it is checked, all the IPv6 addresses except the ones listed above will be applied later while it is chosen. |

- After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.7.4 IPv6 Group

This page allows you to bind several IPv6 objects into one IPv6 group.

Objects Setting >> IPv6 Group

IPv6 Group Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Name | Index | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1. | | 17. | |
| 2. | | 18. | |
| 3. | | 19. | |
| 4. | | 20. | |
| 5. | | 21. | |
| 6. | | 22. | |
| 7. | | 23. | |
| 8. | | 24. | |
| 9. | | 25. | |
| 10. | | 26. | |
| 11. | | 27. | |
| 12. | | 28. | |
| 13. | | 29. | |
| 14. | | 30. | |
| 15. | | 31. | |
| 16. | | 32. | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Name | Display the name of the group profile. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

- Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
- The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> IPv6 Group

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available IPv6 Objects

>>

<<

Selected IPv6 Objects

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Name | Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed. |
| Available IPv6 Objects | All the available IPv6 objects with the specified interface chosen above will be shown in this box. |
| Selected IPv6 Objects | Click >> button to add the selected IPv6 objects in this box. |

3. After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.7.5 Service Type Object

You can set up to 96 sets of Service Type Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object

Service Type Object Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Name | Index | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1. | | 17. | |
| 2. | | 18. | |
| 3. | | 19. | |
| 4. | | 20. | |
| 5. | | 21. | |
| 6. | | 22. | |
| 7. | | 23. | |
| 8. | | 24. | |
| 9. | | 25. | |
| 10. | | 26. | |
| 11. | | 27. | |
| 12. | | 28. | |
| 13. | | 29. | |
| 14. | | 30. | |
| 15. | | 31. | |
| 16. | | 32. | |

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Name | Display the name of the object profile. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object Setup

Profile Index : 1

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Name | <input type="text" value="www"/> |
| Protocol | TCP <input type="text" value="6"/> |
| Source Port | = <input type="text" value="1"/> ~ <input type="text" value="65535"/> |
| Destination Port | = <input type="text" value="1"/> ~ <input type="text" value="65535"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Name | Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed. |
| Protocol | Specify the protocol(s) which this profile will apply to. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">TCP</div> <div style="margin: 0 5px;">▼</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">6</div> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any ICMP IGMP <li style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">TCP UDP TCP/UDP Other </div> |
| Source/Destination Port | <p>Source Port and the Destination Port column are available for TCP/UDP protocol. It can be ignored for other protocols. The filter rule will filter out any port number.</p> <p>(=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this profile.</p> <p>(!=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.</p> <p>(>) – the port number greater than this value is available.</p> <p>(<) – the port number less than this value is available for this profile.</p> |

- After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object

Service Type Object Profiles:

| Index | Name | Index |
|-----------|------|------------|
| <u>1.</u> | www | <u>17.</u> |
| <u>2.</u> | SIP | <u>18.</u> |
| <u>3.</u> | | <u>19.</u> |
| <u>4.</u> | | <u>20.</u> |

3.7.6 Service Type Group

This page allows you to bind several service types into one group.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Group

Service Type Group Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Group | Name | Group | Name |
|------------|------|------------|------|
| <u>1.</u> | | <u>17.</u> | |
| <u>2.</u> | | <u>18.</u> | |
| <u>3.</u> | | <u>19.</u> | |
| <u>4.</u> | | <u>20.</u> | |
| <u>5.</u> | | <u>21.</u> | |
| <u>6.</u> | | <u>22.</u> | |
| <u>7.</u> | | <u>23.</u> | |
| <u>8.</u> | | <u>24.</u> | |
| <u>9.</u> | | <u>25.</u> | |
| <u>10.</u> | | <u>26.</u> | |
| <u>11.</u> | | <u>27.</u> | |
| <u>12.</u> | | <u>28.</u> | |
| <u>13.</u> | | <u>29.</u> | |
| <u>14.</u> | | <u>30.</u> | |
| <u>15.</u> | | <u>31.</u> | |
| <u>16.</u> | | <u>32.</u> | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Name | Display the name of the group profile. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Group column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Service Type Group Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available Service Type Objects

| |
|-------|
| 1-www |
| 2-SIP |

Selected Service Type Objects

>>

<<

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Name | Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed. |
| Available Service Type Objects | All the available service objects that you have added on Objects Setting>>Service Type Object will be shown in this box. |
| Selected Service Type Objects | Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box. |

3. After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.7.7 Keyword Object

You can set 200 keyword object profiles for choosing as black /white list in **CSM >>URL Web Content Filter Profile**.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object

Keyword Object Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Name | Index | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1. | | 17. | |
| 2. | | 18. | |
| 3. | | 19. | |
| 4. | | 20. | |
| 5. | | 21. | |
| 6. | | 22. | |
| 7. | | 23. | |
| 8. | | 24. | |
| 9. | | 25. | |
| 10. | | 26. | |
| 11. | | 27. | |
| 12. | | 28. | |
| 13. | | 29. | |
| 14. | | 30. | |
| 15. | | 31. | |
| 16. | | 32. | |

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) | [193-200](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Name | Display the name of the object profile. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object Setup

Profile Index : 1

| | |
|--|----------------------|
| Name | <input type="text"/> |
| Contents | <input type="text"/> |
| Limit of Contents: Max 3 Words and 63 Characters. Each word should be separated by a single space. | |
| You can replace a character with %HEX. Example: Contents: backdoo%72 virus keep%20out | |
| Result: 1. backdoor 2. virus 3. keep out | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| Name | Type a name for this profile, e.g., game. Maximum 15 characters are allowed. |
| Contents | Type the content for such profile. For example, type <i>gambling</i> as Contents. When you browse the webpage, the page with gambling information will be watched out and be passed/blocked based on the configuration on Firewall settings. |

3. After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.7.8 Keyword Group

This page allows you to bind several keyword objects into one group. The keyword groups set here will be chosen as black /white list in **CSM >>URL /Web Content Filter Profile**.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Group

Keyword Group Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Name | Index | Name |
|------------|------|------------|------|
| <u>1.</u> | | <u>17.</u> | |
| <u>2.</u> | | <u>18.</u> | |
| <u>3.</u> | | <u>19.</u> | |
| <u>4.</u> | | <u>20.</u> | |
| <u>5.</u> | | <u>21.</u> | |
| <u>6.</u> | | <u>22.</u> | |
| <u>7.</u> | | <u>23.</u> | |
| <u>8.</u> | | <u>24.</u> | |
| <u>9.</u> | | <u>25.</u> | |
| <u>10.</u> | | <u>26.</u> | |
| <u>11.</u> | | <u>27.</u> | |
| <u>12.</u> | | <u>28.</u> | |
| <u>13.</u> | | <u>29.</u> | |
| <u>14.</u> | | <u>30.</u> | |
| <u>15.</u> | | <u>31.</u> | |
| <u>16.</u> | | <u>32.</u> | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Name | Display the name of the group profile. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Keyword Group Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available Keyword Objects

1-Key-1

2-Key-2

>>

<<

Selected Keyword Objects(Max 16 Objects)

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Name | Type a name for this group. Maximum 15 characters are allowed. |
| Available Keyword Objects | You can gather keyword objects from Keyword Object page within one keyword group. All the available Keyword objects that you have created will be shown in this box. |
| Selected Keyword Objects | Click <input type="button" value=">>"/> button to add the selected Keyword objects in this box. |

- After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.7.9 File Extension Object

This page allows you to set eight profiles which will be applied in **CSM>>URL Content Filter**. All the files with the extension names specified in these profiles will be processed according to the chosen action.

Objects Setting >> File Extension Object

File Extension Object Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Profile | Name | Profile | Name |
|-----------|------|-----------|------|
| <u>1.</u> | | <u>5.</u> | |
| <u>2.</u> | | <u>6.</u> | |
| <u>3.</u> | | <u>7.</u> | |
| <u>4.</u> | | <u>8.</u> | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Name | Display the name of the object profile. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Profile column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> File Extension Object Setup

Profile Index: 1 Profile Name:

| Categories | File Extensions |
|--|--|
| Image <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> .bmp <input type="checkbox"/> .dib <input type="checkbox"/> .gif <input type="checkbox"/> .jpeg <input type="checkbox"/> .jpg <input type="checkbox"/> .jpg2 <input type="checkbox"/> .jp2 <input type="checkbox"/> .pct <input type="checkbox"/> .pcx <input type="checkbox"/> .pic <input type="checkbox"/> .pict <input type="checkbox"/> .png <input type="checkbox"/> .tif <input type="checkbox"/> .tiff |
| Video <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> .asf <input type="checkbox"/> .avi <input type="checkbox"/> .mov <input type="checkbox"/> .mpe <input type="checkbox"/> .mpeg <input type="checkbox"/> .mpg <input type="checkbox"/> .mp4 <input type="checkbox"/> .qt <input type="checkbox"/> .rm <input type="checkbox"/> .wmv <input type="checkbox"/> .3gp <input type="checkbox"/> .3gpp <input type="checkbox"/> .3gpp2 <input type="checkbox"/> .3g2 |
| Audio <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> .aac <input type="checkbox"/> .aiff <input type="checkbox"/> .au <input type="checkbox"/> .mp3 <input type="checkbox"/> .m4a <input type="checkbox"/> .m4p <input type="checkbox"/> .ogg <input type="checkbox"/> .ra <input type="checkbox"/> .ram <input type="checkbox"/> .vox <input type="checkbox"/> .wav <input type="checkbox"/> .wma |
| Java <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> .class <input type="checkbox"/> .jad <input type="checkbox"/> .jar <input type="checkbox"/> .jav <input type="checkbox"/> .java <input type="checkbox"/> .jcm <input type="checkbox"/> .js <input type="checkbox"/> .jse <input type="checkbox"/> .jsp <input type="checkbox"/> .jtk |
| ActiveX <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> .alx <input type="checkbox"/> .apb <input type="checkbox"/> .axs <input type="checkbox"/> .ocx <input type="checkbox"/> .olb <input type="checkbox"/> .ole <input type="checkbox"/> .tlb <input type="checkbox"/> .viv <input type="checkbox"/> .vrm |
| Compression <input type="checkbox"/> | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Profile Name | Type a name for this profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 7 characters. |

3. Type a name for such profile and check all the items of file extension that will be processed in the router. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

3.7.10 SMS/Mail Service Object

SMS Service Object

This page allows you to set ten profiles which will be applied in **Application>>SMS/Mail Alert Service**.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

| SMS Provider | | Mail Server | Set to Factory Default |
|--------------|--------------|--------------------|--|
| Index | Profile Name | SMS Provider | |
| <u>1.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| <u>2.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| <u>3.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| <u>4.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| <u>5.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| <u>6.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| <u>7.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| <u>8.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| <u>9.</u> | Custom 1 | | |
| <u>10.</u> | Custom 2 | | |

Each item is explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings. |
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Profile | Display the name for such SMS profile. |
| SMS Provider | Display the service provider which offers SMS service. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the **SMS Provider** tab, and click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

| SMS Provider | | Mail Server |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| Index | Profile Name | |
| <u>1.</u> | | |
| <u>2.</u> | | |
| <u>3.</u> | | |
| <u>4.</u> | | |

- The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 1

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Profile Name | <input type="text" value="Line_down"/> |
| Service Provider | <input type="text" value="kotsms.com.tw (TW)"/> |
| Username | <input type="text" value="line1"/> |
| Password | <input type="password" value="••••"/> |
| Quota | <input type="text" value="10"/> |
| Sending Interval | <input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds) |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Profile Name | Type a name for such SMS profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters. |
| Service Provider | Use the drop down list to specify the service provider which offers SMS service. |
| Username | Type a user name that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters. |
| Password | Type a password that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the password you can set is 31 characters. |
| Quota | Type the number of the credit that you purchase from the service provider chosen above. Note that one credit equals to one SMS text message on the standard route. |
| Sending Interval | To avoid quota being exhausted soon, type time interval for sending the SMS. |

- After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

| SMS Provider | Mail Server | Set to Factory Default |
|--------------|---------------------|--|
| Index | Profile Name | SMS Provider |
| 1. | Line_down | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| 2. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| 3. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| 4. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |

Customized SMS Service

Vigor router offers several SMS service provider to offer the SMS service. However, if your service provider cannot be found from the service provider list, simply use Index 9 and Index 10 to make customized SMS service. The profile name for Index 9 and Index 10 are fixed.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

| SMS Provider | Mail Server | | Set to Factory Default |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------------|--|
| Index | Profile Name | SMS Provider | |
| 1. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 2. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 3. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 4. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 5. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 6. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 7. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 8. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 9. | Custom 1 | | |
| 10. | Custom 2 | | |

You can click the number (e.g., #9) under Index column for configuration in details.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 9

| | |
|---|--|
| Profile Name | <input type="text" value="Custom 1"/> |
| Service Provider | <input type="text"/> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid gray; height: 40px; width: 100%;"></div> | |
| <p>Please contact with your SMS provide to get the exact URL String eg:bulksms.vsms.net:5567/eapi/submission/send_sms/2/2.0?username=###txtUser### &password=###txtPwd###&msisdn=###txtDest###&message=###txtMsg###</p> | |
| Username | <input type="text"/> |
| Password | <input type="text"/> |
| Quota | <input type="text" value="10"/> |
| Sending Interval | <input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds) |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Profile Name | Display the name of this profile. It cannot be modified. |
| Service Provider | Type the website of the service provider. Type the URL string in the box under the filed of Service Provider. You have to contact your SMS provider to obtain the exact URL string. |

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Username | Type a user name that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters. |
| Password | Type a password that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the password you can set is 31 characters. |
| Quota | Type the total number of the messages that the router will send out. |
| Sending Interval | Type the shortest time interval for the system to send SMS. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Mail Service Object

This page allows you to set ten profiles which will be applied in **Application>>SMS/Mail Alert Service**.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

| SMS Provider | Mail Server | Set to Factory Default |
|--------------|---------------------|--|
| Index | Profile Name | |
| <u>1.</u> | | |
| <u>2.</u> | | |
| <u>3.</u> | | |
| <u>4.</u> | | |
| <u>5.</u> | | |
| <u>6.</u> | | |
| <u>7.</u> | | |
| <u>8.</u> | | |
| <u>9.</u> | | |
| <u>10.</u> | | |

Each item is explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings. |
| Index | Display the profile number that you can configure. |
| Profile | Display the name for such mail server profile. |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the **Mail Server** tab, and click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

| SMS Provider | Mail Server |
|--------------|-------------|
| Index | |
| <u>1.</u> | |
| <u>2.</u> | |
| <u>3.</u> | |
| <u>4.</u> | |

2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 1

| | |
|--|--|
| Profile Name | <input type="text" value="Mail_Notify"/> |
| SMTP Server | <input type="text" value="192.168.1.98"/> |
| SMTP Port | <input type="text" value="25"/> |
| Sender Address | <input type="text" value="carrie_ni@draytek.com"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use SSL | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication | |
| Username | <input type="text" value="John"/> |
| Password | <input type="password" value="••••"/> |
| Sending Interval | <input type="text" value="0"/> (seconds) |

Note: 1. Only one mail can be sent during the "Sending Interval" time.
 2. If the "Sending Interval" was set to 0, there will be no limitation.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Profile Name | Type a name for such mail service profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters. |
| SMTP Server | Type the IP address of the mail server. The maximum length of the name you can set is 63 characters. |
| SMTP Port | Type the port number for SMTP server. |
| Sender Address | Type the e-mail address of the sender. |
| Use SSL | Check this box to use port 465 for SMTP server for some e-mail server uses https as the transmission method. |
| Authentication | The mail server must be authenticated with the correct username and password to have the right of sending message out. Check the box to enable the function. Username – Type a name for authentication. The |

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| | maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters. Password – Type a password for authentication. The maximum length of the password you can set is 31 characters. |
| Sending Interval | Define the interval for the system to send the SMS out. |

- After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

| SMS Provider | Mail Server | Set to Factory Default |
|--------------|---------------------|--|
| Index | Profile Name | |
| <u>1.</u> | Mail_Notify | |
| <u>2.</u> | | |
| <u>3.</u> | | |

3.7.11 Notification Object

This page allows you to set ten profiles which will be applied in **Application>>SMS/Mail Alert Service**.

You can set an object with different monitoring situation.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

| Index | Profile Name | Settings | Set to Factory Default |
|-----------|--------------|----------|--|
| <u>1.</u> | | | |
| <u>2.</u> | | | |
| <u>3.</u> | | | |
| <u>4.</u> | | | |
| <u>5.</u> | | | |
| <u>6.</u> | | | |
| <u>7.</u> | | | |
| <u>8.</u> | | | |

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

- Open **Object Setting>>Notification Object**, and click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

| Index | Profile Name |
|-----------|--------------|
| <u>1.</u> | |
| <u>2.</u> | |
| <u>3.</u> | |
| <u>4.</u> | |
| <u>5.</u> | |

- The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Object Settings >> Notification Object

Profile Index: 1

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---|
| Profile Name | Notify_attack | |
| Category | Status | |
| WAN | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnected | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reconnected |
| VPN Tunnel | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnected | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reconnected |
| Temperature Alert | <input type="checkbox"/> Out of Range | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Profile Name | Type a name for such notification profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters. |
| Category | Display the types that will be monitored. |
| Status | Display the status for the category. You can check the box you want to be monitored. |

- After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Profile Name | Settings |
|-------|---------------|----------|
| 1. | Notify_attack | WAN VPN |
| 2. | | |
| 3. | | |

3.8 CSM Profile

CSM is an abbreviation of **Content Security Management** which is used to control IM/P2P usage, filter the web content and URL content to reach a goal of security management.

APP Enforcement Filter

As the popularity of all kinds of instant messenger application arises, communication cannot become much easier. Nevertheless, while some industry may leverage this as a great tool to connect with their customers, some industry may take reserve attitude in order to reduce employee misuse during office hour or prevent unknown security leak. It is similar situation for corporation towards peer-to-peer applications since file-sharing can be convenient but insecure at the same time. To address these needs, we provide CSM functionality.

URL Content Filter

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user's access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won't sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It's very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user's system.

Web Content Filter

We all know that the content on the Internet just like other types of media may be inappropriate sometimes. As a responsible parent or employer, you should protect those in your trust against the hazards. With Web filtering service of the Vigor router, you can protect your business from common primary threats, such as productivity, legal liability, network and security threats. For parents, you can protect your children from viewing adult websites or chat rooms.

Once you have activated your Web Filtering service in Vigor router and chosen the categories of website you wish to restrict, each URL address requested (e.g. www.bbc.co.uk) will be checked against our server database. This database is updated as frequent as daily by a global team of Internet researchers. The server will look up the URL and return a category to your router. Your Vigor router will then decide whether to allow access to this site according to the categories you have selected. Please note that this action will not introduce any delay in your Web surfing because each of multiple load balanced database servers can handle millions of requests for categorization.

| |
|--|
| Note: The priority of URL Content Filter is higher than Web Content Filter. |
|--|

Objects Setting
CSM
 APP Enforcement Profile
 APPE Signature Upgrade
 URL Content Filter Profile
 Web Content Filter Profile
 DNS Filter Profile

3.8.1 APP Enforcement Profile

You can define policy profiles for IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer)/Protocol/Misc application. This page allows you to set 32 profiles for different requirements. The APP Enforcement Profile will be applied in **Default Rule of Firewall>>General Setup** for filtering.

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile

APP Enforcement License [Activate](#)
 [Status: Not Activated]

APP Enforcement Profile Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Profile | Name | Profile | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1. | | 17. | |
| 2. | | 18. | |
| 3. | | 19. | |
| 4. | | 20. | |
| 5. | | 21. | |
| 6. | | 22. | |
| 7. | | 23. | |
| 8. | | 24. | |
| 9. | | 25. | |
| 10. | | 26. | |
| 11. | | 27. | |
| 12. | | 28. | |
| 13. | | 29. | |
| 14. | | 30. | |
| 15. | | 31. | |
| 16. | | 32. | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |
| Profile | Display the number of the profile which allows you to click to set different policy. |
| Name | Display the name of the APP Enforcement Profile. |

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

There are four tabs IM, P2P, Protocol and Others displayed on this page. Each tab will bring out different items with supported versions that you can choose to disallow people using.

Below shows the items which are categorized under **IM**.

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile

Profile Index : 1 Profile Name:

| | | | |
|---|--|-----------------|---------------|
| IM | P2P | Protocol | OTHERS |
| <input type="button" value="Select All"/> | <input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | | |

| IM | | | |
|--|-------------------|---------|---|
| Enable | APP Name | Version | Note |
| <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="button" value="Adv"/> | AIM | 5.9 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | AIM | 6/7 | Only block Login. If users have already logged in, AIM services can not be blocked. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | AliWWW | 2008 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Ares | 2.0.9 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | BaiduHi | 37378 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Fetion | 2010 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | GaduGadu Protocol | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Google Chat | | |

In ICQ6, if Videos are blocked, Voices will be blocked at the

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Profile Name | Type a name for the CSM profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters. |
| Select All | Click it to choose all of the items in this page. |
| Clear All | Uncheck all the selected boxes. |
| Enable | Check the box to select the APP to be blocked by Vigor router. |
| Adv | A button under Enable check box allows you to open a pop up window to specify activity for that APP. |

The profiles configured here can be applied in the **Firewall>>General Setup** and **Firewall>>Filter Setup** pages as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

Below shows the items which are categorized under **Protocol**.

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile

Profile Index : 1 Profile Name:

| IM | P2P | Protocol | OTHERS |
|---|--|----------|---|
| <input type="button" value="Select All"/> | <input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | | |
| Protocol | | | |
| Enable | APP Name | Version | Note |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | DB2 | | DB2 is a relational database management system (RDBMS) offered by IBM. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | DNS | | Domain Name System (DNS) protocol is used to translate easily memorized domain names to numerical IP addresses needed for the purpose of locating computer services and devices worldwide. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | FTP | | File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is used to transfer files from one host to another host over networks. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | HTTP | 1.1 | Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) is the data communication protocol for the World Wide Web. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | IMAP | 4.1 | Internet message access protocol (IMAP) is a protocol for e-mail retrieval. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | IRC | 2.4.0 | Internet Relay Chat (IRC) is a protocol for live interactive Internet text messaging (chat), synchronous conferencing and file sharing. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Informix | | Informix is a relational database management system (RDBMS) offered by IBM. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | MSSQL | | Microsoft SQL Server is a relational database management system. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | MySQL | | MySQL is an open source relational database management system. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | NNTP | | The Network News Transfer Protocol (NNTP) is a protocol used for transporting Usenet news articles between news servers and for reading and posting articles by end user client applications. |

The items categorized under **P2P** -----

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile

Profile Index : 1 Profile Name:

| IM | P2P | Protocol | OTHERS |
|---|--|----------|--|
| <input type="button" value="Select All"/> | <input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | | |
| BitTorrent | | | |
| Enable | APP Name | Version | Note |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | BitTorrent | | The encrypted connection can not be 100% blocked. To block BitComet (1.30), BitSpirit (3.2.1), BitTorrent (4.4.1) and UltraTorrent (2.0). |
| FastTrack | | | |
| Enable | APP Name | Version | Note |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | FASTTRACK | | To block BareShare (6.2.0.45), iMesh (9.1), KazaA (1.0.0.3) and Shareaza (4.1.0). |
| Gnutella | | | |
| Enable | APP Name | Version | Note |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | GNUTELLA | | To block BareShare (5.1.0.26), Foxy (1.9.9), LimeWireWin (4.18.3) and Shareaza (2.3.0.0). |
| OpenFT | | | |
| Enable | APP Name | Version | Note |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | OpenFT | | When blocking the connection, it will show "Connected" at first while the connection is not established successfully. After few seconds it will change back to "Connecting" status. KCeasy (0.19) also supports Area |

The items categorized under **OTHERS**-----

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile

Profile Index : 1 Profile Name:

| IM | P2P | Protocol | OTHERS |
|---|--|----------|---|
| <input type="button" value="Select All"/> | <input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | | |
| TUNNEL | | | |
| Enable | APP Name | Version | Note |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | DynaPass | 1.5 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | FreeU | 10 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | HTTP Proxy | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | HTTP Tunnel | 4.4.4000 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Hamachi | 1.0.2.5 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Hotspot Shield | 3.19 | Block Hotspot Shield from establishing VPN connections. Please note that the APP Enforcement needs to be enabled prior than the VPN connections, or the blocking may not be successful. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | MS Teredo | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | PGPNet | 7.0.3 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Ping Tunnel | 0.61 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | RealTunnel | 1.0.1 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Skyfire | 1.5 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Socks 4/5 | | Please note that Radmin will also be blocked by this item. Please set the server port of Radmin within 5001~32767 to avoid being blocked. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | SoftEther | 2.0 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | TinyVPN | 2.9.5 | |

3.8.2 APPE Signature Upgrade

The APPE Enforcement Profile adopted by Vigor router will be treated as the APPE signature. DrayTek will periodically upgrade versions for all of the APPs supported by Vigor router. However, it might be inconvenient for users to upgrade the APP version one by one. This feature is specially designed to offer a quick method to execute APP version upgrade. Users can perform the APPE signature upgrade manually or configure the settings on this page to make Vigor router performing the APPE signature automatically.

CSM >> APPE Signature Upgrade

Upgrade Setting

APPE Module Version: **1.0**

New version from the Internet: --

Upgrade via interface:

(Waiting for WAN connection...)

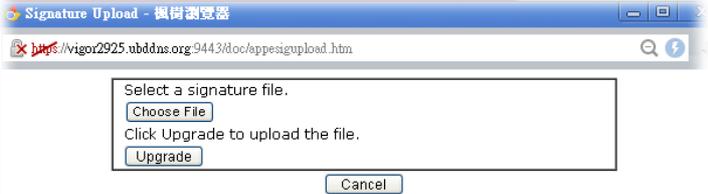
| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Setup Download Server | <input type="text" value="auto-selected"/> | <input type="button" value="Find more"/> |
| Signature authentication / download message | | |
| [2014-07-30 23:42:55] Operation failed. There is no APPE license on router. | | |

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Upgrade Manually | <input type="button" value="Import"/> |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|

| | | | |
|---|---|--|--|
| Upgrade Automatically | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Scheduled Update | | | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Every: | <input type="text" value="1"/> (hour) | <input type="text" value="00"/> (minutes after the hour) | |
| <input type="radio"/> Daily: | <input type="text" value="0"/> (hour) | <input type="text" value="00"/> (minute) | |
| <input type="radio"/> Weekly: | <input type="text" value="Sunday"/> (day) | <input type="text" value="0"/> (hour) | <input type="text" value="00"/> (minute) |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| Upgrade Setting | <p>APPE Module Version – Display current version status of APPE signature.</p> <p>New version from the Internet – Download button is available only when Vigor router detects new APPE version. After clicking it, a dialog will appear with information added to such new version. Click OK to exit the dialog and start the signature upgrade.</p> <p>Upgrade via interface – Choose one of the WAN interfaces as a channel for APPE signature upgrade.</p> |
| Setup Download Server | <p>Specify the download server by typing the URL of the server located. Or you can click Find more link to search the one you want.</p> <p>Signature authentication/download message – Display the status of APPE Signature Upgrade.</p> |
| Upgrade Manually | <p>Import – Click this button to open the following page. Press Choose File to locate the signature file which downloaded from MyVigor portal or FTP server previously.</p> |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| | <p>Then, click Upgrade and wait for the system completing the process.</p>  |
| <p>Upgrade Automatically</p> | <p>Scheduled Update - Check the box to make Vigor router upgrading the APPE signature based on the schedule configured here.</p> |

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.8.3 URL Content Filter Profile

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user's access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won't sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It's very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user's system.

For example, if you add key words such as "sex", Vigor router will limit web access to web sites or web pages such as "www.sex.com", "www.backdoor.net/images/sex/p_386.html". Or you may simply specify the full or partial URL such as "www.sex.com" or "sex.com".

Also the Vigor router will discard any request that tries to retrieve the malicious code.

Click **CSM** and click **URL Content Filter Profile** to open the profile setting page.

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile



URL Content Filter Profile Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Profile | Name | Profile | Name |
|--------------------|------|--------------------|------|
| 1. | | 5. | |
| 2. | | 6. | |
| 3. | | 7. | |
| 4. | | 8. | |

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

Default Message

```
<body><center><br><p>The requested Web page has been blocked by URL Content
Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further
information.</center></body>
```

OK

Each item is explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles. |
| Profile | Display the number of the profile which allows you to click to set different policy. |
| Name | Display the name of the URL Content Filter Profile. |

Administration Message

You can type the message manually for your necessity.

Default Message - You can type the message manually for your necessity or click this button to get the default message which will be displayed on the field of **Administration Message**.

You can set eight profiles as URL content filter. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page.

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name:

Priority: Log:

1.URL Access Control

Enable URL Access Control Prevent web access from IP address

Action: Group/Object Selections:

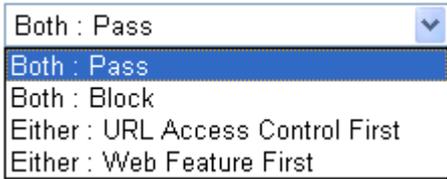
2.Web Feature

Enable Restrict Web Feature

Action: Cookie Proxy Upload File Extension Profile:

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Profile Name | Type a name for the CSM profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters. |
| Priority | <p>It determines the action that this router will apply.</p> <p>Both: Pass – The router will let all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below passing through. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive.</p> <p>Both:Block –The router will block all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive.</p> <p>Either: URL Access Control First – When all the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for URL first, then Web feature second.</p> <p>Either: Web Feature First –When all the packages</p> |

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| | <p>matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for web feature first, then URL second.</p>  |
| <p>Log</p> | <p>None – There is no log file will be recorded for this profile. Pass – Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog. Block – Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog. All – All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.</p>  |
| <p>URL Access Control</p> | <p>Enable URL Access Control - Check the box to activate URL Access Control. Note that the priority for URL Access Control is higher than Restrict Web Feature. If the web content match the setting set in URL Access Control, the router will execute the action specified in this field and ignore the action specified under Restrict Web Feature.</p> <p>Prevent web access from IP address - Check the box to deny any web surfing activity using IP address, such as http://202.6.3.2. The reason for this is to prevent someone dodges the URL Access Control. You must clear your browser cache first so that the URL content filtering facility operates properly on a web page that you visited before.</p> <p>Action – This setting is available only when Either : URL Access Control First or Either : Web Feature First is selected. Pass - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below. Block - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below. If the web pages do not match with the keyword set here, it will be processed with reverse action.</p> <p>Action:</p>  <p>Group/Object Selections – The Vigor router provides several frames for users to define keywords and each frame supports multiple keywords. The keyword could be a noun,</p> |

a partial noun, or a complete URL string. Multiple keywords within a frame are separated by space, comma, or semicolon. In addition, the maximal length of each frame is 32-character long. After specifying keywords, the Vigor router will decline the connection request to the website whose URL string matched to any user-defined keyword. It should be noticed that the more simplified the blocking keyword list is, the more efficiently the Vigor router performs.

Object/Group Edit

| | |
|-------------------------|------|
| <u>Keyword Object</u> | None |
| or Keyword Object | None |
| or <u>Keyword Group</u> | None |
| or Keyword Group | None |

OK Close

Web Feature

Enable Restrict Web Feature - Check this box to make the keyword being blocked or passed.

Action - This setting is available only when **Either: URL Access Control First** or **Either: Web Feature First** is selected. **Pass** allows accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

Pass - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

Block - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

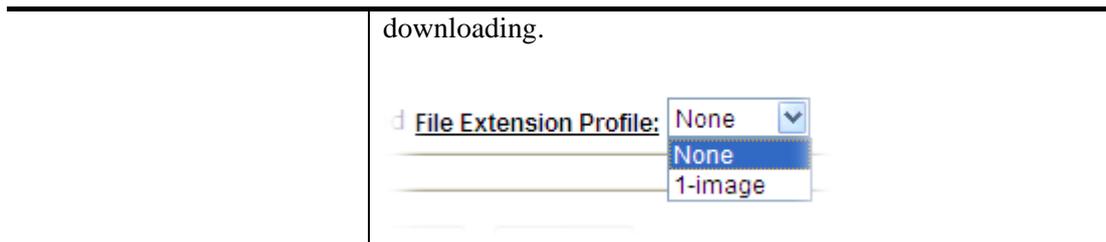
If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

Cookie - Check the box to filter out the cookie transmission from inside to outside world to protect the local user's privacy.

Proxy - Check the box to reject any proxy transmission. To control efficiently the limited-bandwidth usage, it will be of great value to provide the blocking mechanism that filters out the multimedia files downloading from web pages.

Upload - Check the box to block the file upload by way of web page.

File Extension Profile - Choose one of the profiles that you configured in **Object Setting**>> **File Extension Objects** previously for passing or blocking the file



After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.8.4 Web Content Filter Profile

There are three ways to activate WCF on vigor router, using **Service Activation Wizard**, by means of **CSM>>Web Content Filter Profile** or via **System Maintenance>>Activation**.

Service Activation Wizard allows you to use trial version of WCF directly without accessing into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>.

However, if you use the **Web Content Filter Profile** page to activate WCF feature, it is necessary for you to access into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. Therefore, you need to register an account on <http://myvigor.draytek.com> for using corresponding service. Please refer to section of creating MyVigor account.

WCF adopts the mechanism developed and offered by certain service provider (e.g., DrayTek). No matter activating WCF feature or getting a new license for web content filter, you have to click **Activate** to satisfy your request. Be aware that service provider matching with Vigor router currently offers a period of time for trial version for users to experiment. If you want to purchase a formal edition, simply contact with the channel partner or your dealer.

Click **CSM** and click **Web Content Filter Profile** to open the profile setting page. The default setting for Setup Query Server /Setup Test Server is **auto-selected**. You can choose another server for your necessity by clicking **Find more** to open <http://myvigor.draytek.com> for searching another qualified and suitable one.

Note 1: Web Content Filter (WCF) is not a built-in service of Vigor router but a service powered by **Commtouch**. If you want to use such service (trial or formal edition), you have to perform the procedure of activation first. For the service of formal edition, please contact with your dealer/distributor for detailed information.

Note 2: Commtouch is merged by **Cyren**, and **GlobalView** services will be continued to deliver powerful cloud-based information security solutions! Refer to: <http://www.prnewswire.com/news-releases/commtouch-is-now-cyren-239025151.html>

Web-Filter License [Activate](#)
 [Status:Not Activated]

| | | |
|--------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Setup Query Server | <input type="text" value="auto-selected"/> | Find more |
| Setup Test Server | <input type="text" value="auto-selected"/> | Find more |

Web Content Filter Profile Table: [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Profile | Name | Profile | Name |
|---------|---------|---------|------|
| 1. | Default | 5. | |
| 2. | | 6. | |
| 3. | | 7. | |
| 4. | | 8. | |

Administration Message (Max 255 characters) [Default Message](#) Cache :

```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL% <br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% Web Content Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

Legend:
 %SIP% - Source IP , %DIP% - Destination IP , %URL% - URL
 %CL% - Category , %RNAME% - Router Name

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Activate | Click it to access into MyVigor for activating WCF service. |
| Setup Query Server | It is recommended for you to use the default setting, auto-selected. You need to specify a server for categorize searching when you type URL in browser based on the web content filter profile. |
| Setup Test Server | It is recommended for you to use the default setting, auto-selected. |
| Find more | Click it to open http://myvigor.draytek.com for searching another qualified and suitable server. |
| Test a site to verify whether it is categorized | Click this link to do the verification. |
| Set to Factory Default | Click this link to retrieve the factory settings. |
| Default Message | You can type the message manually for your necessity or click this button to get the default message which will be displayed on the field of Administration Message . |

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Cache | <p>None – the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF precisely, however, the processing rate is normal. Such item can provide the most accurate URL matching.</p> <p>L1 – the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF. If the URL has been accessed previously, it will be stored for a short time (about 1 second) in the router to be accessed quickly if required. Such item can provide accurate URL matching with faster rate.</p> <p>L2 – the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF. If the data has been accessed previously, the IP addresses of source and destination IDs will be memorized for a short time (about 1 second) in the router. When the user tries to access the same destination ID, the router will check it by comparing the record stored. If it matches, the page will be retrieved quickly. Such item can provide URL matching with the fastest rate.</p> <p>L1+L2 Cache – the router will check the URL with fast processing rate combining the feature of L1 and L2.</p> |
|--------------|---|

Eight profiles are provided here as Web content filters. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page. The items listed in Categories will be changed according to the different service providers. If you have and activate another web content filter license, the items will be changed simultaneously. All of the configuration made for web content filter will be deleted automatically. Therefore, please backup your data before you change the web content filter license.

CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile

Profile Index: 1
Profile Name: Log:

Black/White List

Enable

Action: Group/Object Selections

Action:

| | | | |
|---|--|---|---|
| Groups | Categories | | |
| Child Protection | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alcohol & Tobacco | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Criminal Activity | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Gambling |
| <input type="button" value="Select All"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hate & Intolerance | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Illegal Drug | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Nudity |
| <input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Porn & Sexually | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Violence | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Weapons |
| | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> School Cheating | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sex Education | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tasteless |

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> News | <input type="checkbox"/> Non-profits & NGOs | <input type="checkbox"/> Personal Sites |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Politics | <input type="checkbox"/> Real Estate | <input type="checkbox"/> Religion |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Restaurants & Dining | <input type="checkbox"/> Shopping | <input type="checkbox"/> Translators |
| <input type="checkbox"/> General | <input type="checkbox"/> Cults | <input type="checkbox"/> Greeting cards |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Image Sharing | <input type="checkbox"/> Network Errors | <input type="checkbox"/> Parked Domains |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Private IP Addresses | <input type="checkbox"/> Uncategorized Sites | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Profile Name | Type a name for the CSM profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters. |
| Black/White List | <p>Enable – Activate white/black list function for such profile.</p> <p>Group/Object Selections – Click Edit to choose the group or object profile as the content of white/black list.</p> <p>Pass - allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the characters listed on Group/Object Selections. If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, they will be processed with the categories listed on the box below.</p> <p>Block - restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the characters listed on Group/Object Selections. If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, they will be processed with the categories listed on the box below.</p> |
| Action | <p>Pass - allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the categories listed on the box below.</p> <p>Block - restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the categories listed on the box below.</p> <p>If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.</p> |
| Log | <p>None – There is no log file will be recorded for this profile.</p> <p>Pass – Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog.</p> <p>Block – Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog.</p> <p>All – All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.</p>  |

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.8.5 DNS Filter Profile

The DNS Filter monitors DNS queries on UDP port 53 and will pass the DNS query information to the WCF to help with categorizing HTTPS URL's.

DNS can be specified in **LAN>>General Setup** by using the server (e.g., 168.95.1.1) on router or external DNS server (e.g., 8.8.8.8). If the router server is used, **DNS Filter General Setting** will be applied to DNS query from clients on LAN. However, if the external DNS server is used, **DNS Filter Profile** will be applied to DNS query coming from clients on LAN.

Note: For DNS filter must use the WCF service profile to filter the packets, therefore WCF license must be activated first. Otherwise, DNS filter does not have any effect on packets.

CSM >> DNS Filter

DNS Filter Profile Table

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Profile | Name | Profile | Name |
|--------------------|------|--------------------|------|
| 1. | | 5. | |
| 2. | | 6. | |
| 3. | | 7. | |
| 4. | | 8. | |

DNS Filter Local Setting

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| DNS Filter | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable |
| Syslog | None <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| WCF | None <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| UCF | None <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Enable Block Page | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable |

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

[Default Message](#)

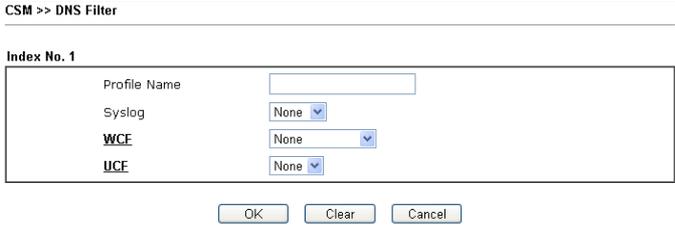
```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL% <br>that
is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% DNS Filter.<p>Please contact
your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

Legend:

%SIP% - Source IP , %URL% - URL
 %CL% - Category , %RNAME% - Router Name

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| DNS Filter Profile Table | It displays a list of different DNS filter profiles (with specified WCF and UCF). Click the profile link to open the following page. Then, type the name of the profile and specify WCF/UCF based on your requirement. |

| | |
|--|--|
| |  |
| <p>DNS Filter Local Setting</p> | <p>DNS Filter Local Setting will be applied to DNS query from clients on LAN when router's DNS server is used.</p> <p>DNS Filter - Check Enable to enable such feature.</p> <p>Syslog - The filtering result can be recorded according to the setting selected for Syslog.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● None – There is no log file will be recorded for this profile. ● Pass – Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog. ● Block – Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog. ● All – All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog. <p>Service (WCF)- Set the filtering conditions.</p> <p>Service (UCF) - Set the filtering conditions.</p> <p>Cache Time (hour) - Set the time for DNS query.</p> <p>Enable Block Page - If such function is enabled, when DNS packets are blocked by DNS filter, a web page containing the description listed on Administration Message will be shown on the screen.</p> |
| <p>Administration Message</p> | <p>Type the words or sentences which will be displayed when a web page is blocked by Vigor router.</p> |

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.9 Bandwidth Management

Below shows the menu items for Bandwidth Management.



3.9.1 Sessions Limit

A PC with private IP address can access to the Internet via NAT router. The router will generate the records of NAT sessions for such connection. The P2P (Peer to Peer) applications (e.g., BitTorrent) always need many sessions for procession and also they will occupy over resources which might result in important accesses impacted. To solve the problem, you can use limit session to limit the session procession for specified Hosts.

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Sessions Limit** to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Sessions Limit

Sessions Limit

Enable
 Disable

Default Max Sessions:

Limitation List

| Index | Start IP | End IP | Max Sessions |
|-------|----------|--------|--------------|
| | | | |

Specific Limitation

Start IP: End IP:

Maximum Sessions:

Administration Message (Max 256 characters) **Preview** |

You have reached the maximum number of permitted Internet sessions.<p>Please close one or more applications to allow further Internet access.<p>Contact your system administrator for further information.

Time Schedule

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup: , , ,

Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

To activate the function of limit session, simply click **Enable** and set the default session limit. Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Session Limit | <p>Enable - Click this button to activate the function of limit session.</p> <p>Disable - Click this button to close the function of limit</p> |

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| | <p>session.</p> <p>Default session limit - Defines the default session number used for each computer in LAN.</p> |
| Limitation List | <p>Displays a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.</p> |
| Specific Limitation | <p>Start IP- Defines the start IP address for limit session.</p> <p>End IP - Defines the end IP address for limit session.</p> <p>Maximum Sessions - Defines the available session number for each host in the specific range of IP addresses. If you do not set the session number in this field, the system will use the default session limit for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p>Add - Adds the specific session limitation onto the list above.</p> <p>Edit - Allows you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.</p> <p>Delete - Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.</p> |
| Administration Message | <p>Type the words which will be displayed when reaches the maximum number of Internet sessions permitted.</p> <p>Default Message - Click this button to apply the default message offered by the router.</p> |
| Time Schedule | <p>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p> |

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.9.2 Bandwidth Limit

The downstream or upstream from FTP, HTTP or some P2P applications will occupy large of bandwidth and affect the applications for other programs. Please use Limit Bandwidth to make the bandwidth usage more efficient.

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Bandwidth Limit** to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Bandwidth Limit

Bandwidth Limit

Enable
 IP Routed Subnet
 Disable

Default TX Limit: Kbps
 Default RX Limit: Kbps

Allow auto adjustment to make the best utilization of available bandwidth.

Limitation List

| Index | Start IP | End IP | TX limit | RX limit | Shared |
|-------|----------|--------|----------|----------|--------|
| | | | | | |

Specific Limitation

Start IP: End IP:

Each
 Shared
 TX Limit: Kbps
 RX Limit: Kbps

Smart Bandwidth Limit
 For any LAN IP Not in Limitation List, when session number exceeds

TX Limit : Kbps
 RX Limit : Kbps

Note : For TX/RX, a setting of "0" means unlimited bandwidth.

Time Schedule

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: , , ,

Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

To activate the function of limit bandwidth, simply click **Enable** and set the default upstream and downstream limit.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Bandwidth Limit | <p>Enable - Click this button to activate the function of limit bandwidth.</p> <p>IP Routed Subnet - Check this box to apply the bandwidth limit to the second subnet specified in LAN>>General Setup.</p> <p>Disable - Click this button to close the function of limit bandwidth.</p> <p>Default TX limit - Define the default speed of the upstream for each computer in LAN.</p> <p>Default RX limit - Define the default speed of the</p> |

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| | <p>downstream for each computer in LAN.</p> <p>Allow auto adjustment...- Check this box to make the best utilization of available bandwidth.</p> |
| Limitation List | <p>Display a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.</p> |
| Specific Limitation | <p>Start IP - Define the start IP address for limit bandwidth.</p> <p>End IP - Define the end IP address for limit bandwidth.</p> <p>Each /Shared - Select Each to make each IP within the range of Start IP and End IP having the same speed defined in TX limit and RX limit fields; select Shared to make all the IPs within the range of Start IP and End IP share the speed defined in TX limit and RX limit fields.</p> <p>TX limit - Define the limitation for the speed of the upstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p>RX limit - Define the limitation for the speed of the downstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p>Add - Add the specific speed limitation onto the list above.</p> <p>Edit - Allow you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.</p> <p>Delete - Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.</p> |
| Smart Bandwidth Limit | <p>Check this box to have the bandwidth limit determined by the system automatically.</p> <p>TX limit - Define the limitation for the speed of the upstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p>RX limit - Define the limitation for the speed of the downstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> |
| Time Schedule | <p>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application >> Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p> |

3.9.3 Quality of Service

Deploying QoS (Quality of Service) management to guarantee that all applications receive the service levels required and sufficient bandwidth to meet performance expectations is indeed one important aspect of modern enterprise network.

One reason for QoS is that numerous TCP-based applications tend to continually increase their transmission rate and consume all available bandwidth, which is called TCP slow start. If other applications are not protected by QoS, it will detract much from their performance in the overcrowded network. This is especially essential to those are low tolerant of loss, delay or jitter (delay variation).

Another reason is due to congestions at network intersections where speeds of interconnected circuits mismatch or traffic aggregates, packets will queue up and traffic can be throttled back to a lower speed. If there's no defined priority to specify which packets should be discarded (or in another term "dropped") from an overflowing queue, packets of sensitive applications mentioned above might be the ones to drop off. How this will affect application performance?

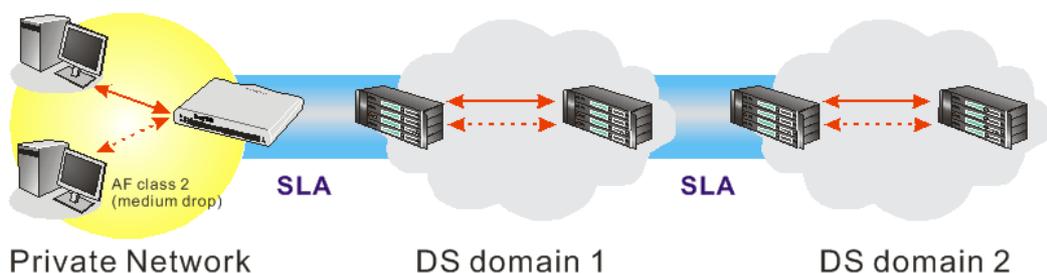
There are two components within Primary configuration of QoS deployment:

- **Classification:** Identifying low-latency or crucial applications and marking them for high-priority service level enforcement throughout the network.
- **Scheduling:** Based on classification of service level to assign packets to queues and associated service types

The basic QoS implementation in Vigor routers is to classify and schedule packets based on the service type information in the IP header. For instance, to ensure the connection with the headquarter, a teleworker may enforce an index of QoS Control to reserve bandwidth for HTTPS connection while using lots of application at the same time.

One more larger-scale implementation of QoS network is to apply DSCP (Differentiated Service Code Point) and IP Precedence disciplines at Layer 3. Compared with legacy IP Precedence that uses Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header to define 8 service classes, DSCP is a successor creating 64 classes possible with backward IP Precedence compatibility. In a QoS-enabled network, or Differentiated Service (DiffServ or DS) framework, a DS domain owner should sign a Service License Agreement (SLA) with other DS domain owners to define the service level provided toward traffic from different domains. Then each DS node in these domains will perform the priority treatment. This is called per-hop-behavior (PHB). The definition of PHB includes Expedited Forwarding (EF), Assured Forwarding (AF), and Best Effort (BE). AF defines the four classes of delivery (or forwarding) classes and three levels of drop precedence in each class.

Vigor routers as edge routers of DS domain shall check the marked DSCP value in the IP header of bypassing traffic, thus to allocate certain amount of resource execute appropriate policing, classification or scheduling. The core routers in the backbone will do the same checking before executing treatments in order to ensure service-level consistency throughout the whole QoS-enabled network.



However, each node may take different attitude toward packets with high priority marking since it may bind with the business deal of SLA among different DS domain owners. It's not easy to achieve deterministic and consistent high-priority QoS traffic throughout the whole network with merely Vigor router's effort.

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Quality of Service** to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| General Setup | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------|---------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Index | Status | Bandwidth | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control | Online Statistics | |
| WAN1 | Disable | --Kbps/--Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN2 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN3 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN4 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |

| Class Rule | | | |
|------------|------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Index | Name | Rule | Service Type |
| Class 1 | | Edit | Edit |
| Class 2 | | Edit | |
| Class 3 | | Edit | |

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:
 SIP UDP Port: (Default: 5060)

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| General Setup | <p>Index - Display the WAN interface number that you can edit.</p> <p>Status - Display if the WAN interface is available for such function or not.</p> <p>Bandwidth - Display the inbound and outbound bandwidth setting for the WAN interface.</p> <p>Direction - Display which direction that such function will influence.</p> <p>Class 1/Class2/Class 3/Others - Display the bandwidth percentage for each class.</p> <p>UDP Bandwidth Control - Display the UDP bandwidth control is enabled or not.</p> <p>Online Statistics - Display an online statistics for quality of service for your reference</p> <p>Setup - Allow to configure general QoS setting for WAN interface.</p> |
| Class Rule | <p>Index - Display the class number that you can edit.</p> <p>Name - Display the name of the class.</p> <p>Rule - Allow to configure detailed settings for the selected Class.</p> <p>Service Type - Allow to configure detailed settings for the</p> |

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| | service type. |
| Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP | When this feature is enabled, the VoIP SIP/UDP packets will be sent with highest priority. SIP UDP Port – Set a port number used for SIP. |

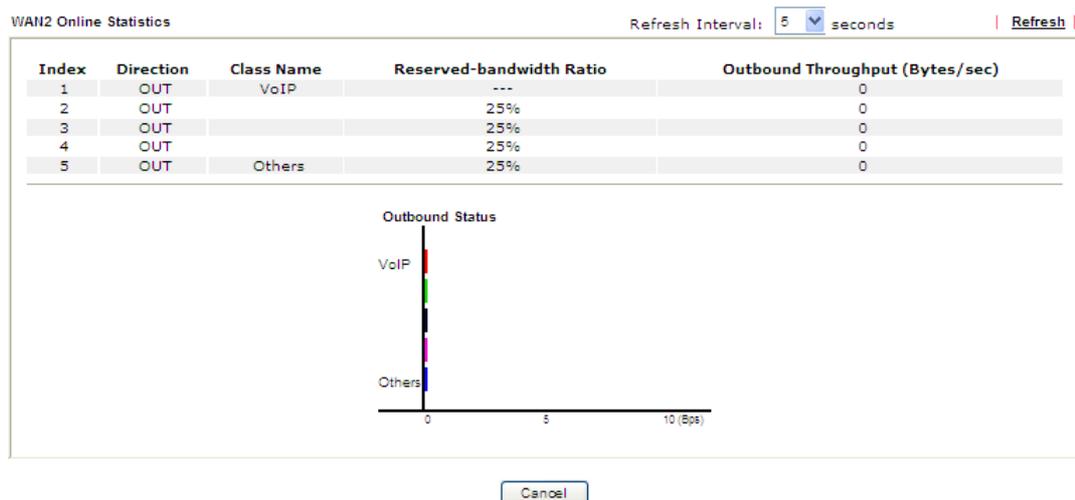
This page displays the QoS settings result of the WAN interface. Click the **Setup** link to access into next page for the general setup of WAN interface. As to class rule, simply click the **Edit** link to access into next for configuration.

You can configure general setup for the WAN interface, edit the Class Rule, and edit the Service Type for the Class Rule for your request.

Online Statistics

Display an online statistics for quality of service for your reference. This feature is available only when the Quality of Service for WAN interface is enabled.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service



General Setup for WAN Interface

When you click **Setup**, you can configure the bandwidth ratio for QoS of the WAN interface. There are four queues allowed for QoS control. The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. Yet, the last one is reserved for the packets which are not suitable for the user-defined class rules.

WAN2 General Setup

Enable the QoS Control OUT ▼

| | | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|--|
| WAN Inbound Bandwidth | <input type="text" value="100"/> | <input type="radio"/> Kbps | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Mbps | |
| WAN Outbound Bandwidth | <input type="text" value="100"/> | <input type="radio"/> Kbps | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Mbps | |
| Index | Class Name | Reserved_bandwidth Ratio | | |
| Class 1 | VoIP | <input type="text" value="25"/> | % | |
| Class 2 | IPTV | <input type="text" value="25"/> | % | |
| Class 3 | Data/Email | <input type="text" value="25"/> | % | |
| | Others | <input type="text" value="25"/> | % | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable UDP Bandwidth Control | | Limited_bandwidth Ratio <input type="text" value="25"/> % | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize | | | | |

Note: 1. Before enable QoS, you should test the real bandwidth first. QoS may not work properly if the bandwidth is not accurate.
 2. You can do speed test by <http://speedtest.net> or contact with your ISP for speed test program.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Enable the QoS Control | The factory default for this setting is checked. Please also define which traffic the QoS Control settings will apply to. IN- apply to incoming traffic only. OUT- apply to outgoing traffic only. BOTH- apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic. Check this box and click OK , then click Setup link again. You will see the Online Statistics link appearing on this page. |
| WAN Inbound Bandwidth | It allows you to set the connecting rate of data input for WAN2/WAN3. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 1000kbps for this box. The default value is 10000kbps. |
| WAN Outbound Bandwidth | It allows you to set the connecting rate of data output for WAN2/WAN3. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 256kbps for this box. The default value is 10000kbps. |
| Reserved Bandwidth Ratio | It is reserved for the group index in the form of ratio of reserved bandwidth to upstream speed and reserved bandwidth to downstream speed . |
| Enable UDP Bandwidth Control | Check this and set the limited bandwidth ratio on the right field. This is a protection of TCP application traffic since UDP application traffic such as streaming video will exhaust lots of bandwidth. |
| Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize | The difference in bandwidth between download and upload are great in ADSL2+ environment. For the download speed might be impacted by the uploading TCP ACK, you can |

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| | check this box to push ACK of upload faster to speed the network traffic. |
| Limited_bandwidth Ratio | The ratio typed here is reserved for limited bandwidth of UDP application. |

Note: The rate of outbound/inbound must be smaller than the real bandwidth to ensure correct calculation of QoS. It is suggested to set the bandwidth value for inbound/outbound as 80% - 85% of physical network speed provided by ISP to maximize the QoS performance.

Edit the Class Rule for QoS

- The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. To add, edit or delete the class rule, please click the **Edit** link of that one.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

General Setup | Set to Factory Default |

| Index | Status | Bandwidth | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control | Online Statistics |
|-------|---------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| WAN1 | Disable | --Kbps/--Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |
| WAN2 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |
| WAN3 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |
| WAN4 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |

Class Rule

| Index | Name | Rule | Service Type |
|---------|------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Class 1 | | Edit | |
| Class 2 | | Edit | Edit |
| Class 3 | | Edit | |

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:

SIP UDP Port: (Default: 5060)

- After you click the **Edit** link, you will see the following page. Now you can define the name for that Class. In this case, "Test" is used as the name of Class Index #1.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #1

Name Tag packets as: ▼

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|----|--------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 | Empty | - | - | - | - |

- For adding a new rule, click **Add** to open the following page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Rule Edit

ACT

Ethernet Type IPv4 IPv6

Local Address

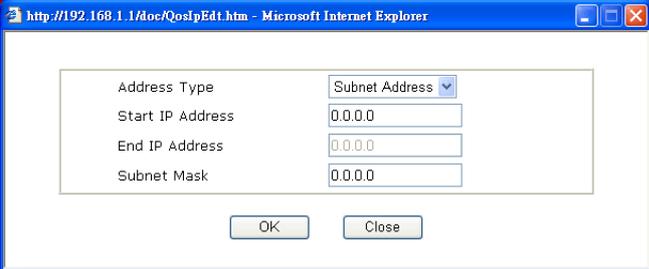
Remote Address

DiffServ CodePoint

Service Type

Note: Please choose/setup the **Service Type** first.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| ACT | Check this box to invoke these settings. |
| Ethernet Type | Please specify which protocol (IPv4 or IPv6) will be used for this rule. |
| Local Address | Click the Edit button to set the local IP address (on LAN) for the rule. |
| Remote Address | Click the Edit button to set the remote IP address (on LAN/WAN) for the rule.  |
| DiffServ CodePoint | All the packets of data will be divided with different levels and will be processed according to the level type by the system. Please assign one of the levels of the data for processing with QoS control. |
| Service Type | It determines the service type of the data for processing with QoS control. It can also be edited. You can choose the predefined service type from the Service Type drop down list. Those types are predefined in factory. Simply choose the one that you want for using by current QoS. |

- After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

By the way, you can set up to 20 rules for one Class. If you want to edit an existed rule, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit** to open the rule edit page for modification.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #1

Name Tag packets as: ▼

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|-------------------------|--------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 <input type="radio"/> | Active | Any | Any | ANY | ANY |

Edit the Service Type for Class Rule

- To add a new service type, edit or delete an existed service type, please click the Edit link under Service Type field.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

General Setup [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Status | Bandwidth | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control | Online Statistics | |
|-------|---------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| WAN1 | Disable | --Kbps/--Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN2 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN3 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN4 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |

Class Rule

| Index | Name | Rule | Service Type |
|---------|------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Class 1 | Test | Edit | Edit |
| Class 2 | | Edit | |
| Class 3 | | Edit | |

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:

SIP UDP Port: (Default: 5060)

- After you click the **Edit** link, you will see the following page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

User Defined Service Type

| NO | Name | Protocol | Port |
|----|-------|----------|------|
| 1 | Empty | - | - |

- For adding a new service type, click **Add** to open the following page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Service Type Edit

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Service Name | <input type="text"/> |
| Service Type | TCP <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="text" value="6"/> |
| Port Configuration | |
| Type | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Single <input type="radio"/> Range |
| Port Number | <input type="text" value="0"/> - <input type="text" value="0"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Service Name | Type in a new service for your request. The maximum length of the name you can set is 11 characters. |
| Service Type | Choose the type (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP or other) for the new service. |
| Port Configuration | <p>Type - Click Single or Range as the Type. If you select Range, you have to type in the starting port number and the end porting number on the boxes below.</p> <p>Port Number – Type in the starting port number and the end porting number here if you choose Range as the type.</p> |

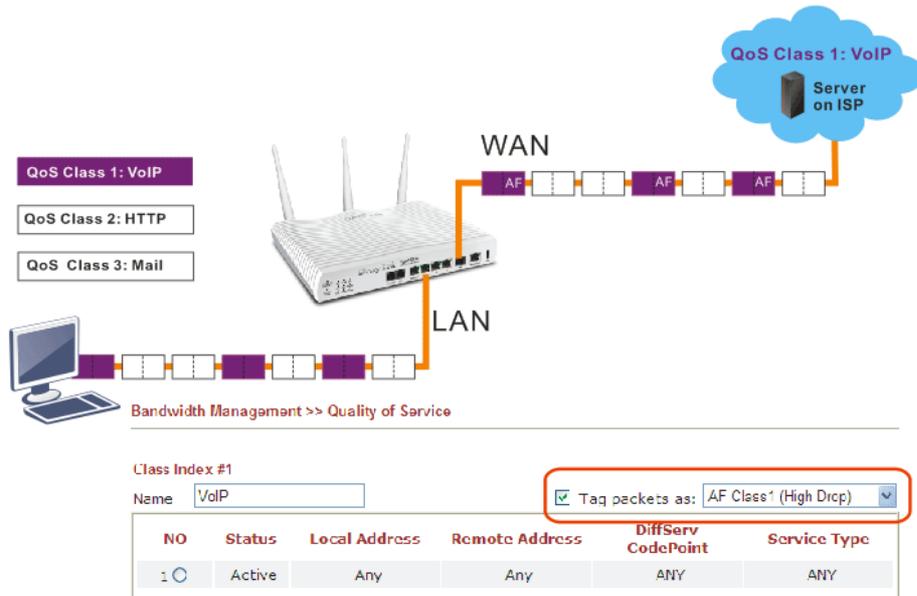
- After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

By the way, you can set up to 10 service types. If you want to edit/delete an existed service type, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit/Edit** for modification.

Retag the Packets for Identification

Packets coming from LAN IP can be retagged through QoS setting. When the packets sent out through WAN interface, all of them will be tagged with certain header and that will be easily to be identified by server on ISP.

For example, in the following illustration, the VoIP packets in LAN go into Vigor router without any header. However, when they go forward to the Server on ISP through Vigor router, all of the packets are tagged with AF (configured in Bandwidth >>QoS>>Class) automatically.



3.10 Applications

Below shows the menu items for Applications.



3.10.1 Dynamic DNS

The ISP often provides you with a dynamic IP address when you connect to the Internet via your ISP. It means that the public IP address assigned to your router changes each time you access the Internet. The Dynamic DNS feature lets you assign a domain name to a dynamic WAN IP address. It allows the router to update its online WAN IP address mappings on the specified Dynamic DNS server. Once the router is online, you will be able to use the registered domain name to access the router or internal virtual servers from the Internet. It is particularly helpful if you host a web server, FTP server, or other server behind the router.

Before you use the Dynamic DNS feature, you have to apply for free DDNS service to the DDNS service providers. The router provides up to three accounts from three different DDNS service providers. Basically, Vigor routers are compatible with the DDNS services supplied by most popular DDNS service providers such as www.dyndns.org, www.no-ip.com, www.dtdns.com, www.changeip.com, www.dynamic-nameserver.com. You should visit their websites to register your own domain name for the router.

Enable the Function and Add a Dynamic DNS Account

1. Assume you have a registered domain name from the DDNS provider, say *hostname.dyndns.org*, and an account with username: *test* and password: *test*.
2. In the DDNS setup menu, check **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup

Dynamic DNS Setup | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Enable Dynamic DNS Setup [View Log](#) [Force Update](#)

Auto-Update interval Min(s) (1~14400)

Accounts:

| Index | WAN Interface | Domain Name | Active |
|-----------|---------------|----------------------|--------|
| <u>1.</u> | WAN1 First | vigor2925.ubddns.org | y |
| <u>2.</u> | WAN1 First | | x |
| <u>3.</u> | WAN1 First | | x |
| <u>4.</u> | WAN1 First | | x |
| <u>5.</u> | WAN1 First | | x |
| <u>6.</u> | WAN1 First | | x |

[OK](#) [Clear All](#)

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Enable Dynamic DNS Setup | Check this box to enable DDNS function. |
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings. |
| View Log | Display DDNS log status. |
| Force Update | Force the router updates its information to DDNS server. |
| Auto-Update interval | Set the time for the router to perform auto update for DDNS service. |
| Index | Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of DDNS setup to set account(s). |
| WAN Interface | Display the WAN interface used. |
| Domain Name | Display the domain name that you set on the setting page of DDNS setup. |
| Active | Display if this account is active or inactive. |

- Select Index number 1 to add an account for the router. Check **Enable Dynamic DNS Account**, and choose correct Service Provider: `dyndns.org`, type the registered hostname: `hostname` and domain name suffix: `dyndns.org` in the **Domain Name** block. The following two blocks should be typed your account Login Name: `test` and Password: `test`.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> Dynamic DNS Account Setup

Index : 1

Enable Dynamic DNS Account

WAN Interface:

Service Provider:

Service Type:

Domain Name:

Login Name: (max. 64 characters)

Password: (max. 23 characters)

Wildcards

Backup MX

Mail Extender:

Determine Real WAN IP:

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Enable Dynamic DNS Account | Check this box to enable the current account. If you did check the box, you will see a check mark appeared on the Active column of the previous web page in step 2). |

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| WAN Interface | <p>WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 First - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the first channel for such account. If WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.</p> <p>WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 Only - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the only channel for such account.</p> |
| Service Provider | Select the service provider for the DDNS account. |
| Service Type | Select a service type (Dynamic, Custom or Static). If you choose Custom, you can modify the domain that is chosen in the Domain Name field. |
| Domain Name | Type in one domain name that you applied previously. Use the drop down list to choose the desired domain. |
| Login Name | Type in the login name that you set for applying domain. |
| Password | Type in the password that you set for applying domain. |
| Wildcard and Backup MX | The Wildcard and Backup MX (Mail Exchange) features are not supported for all Dynamic DNS providers. You could get more detailed information from their websites. |
| Mail Extender | If the mail server is defined with another name, please type the name in this area. Such mail server will be used as backup mail exchange. |
| Determine Real WAN IP | <p>If a Vigor router is installed behind any NAT router, you can enable such function to locate the real WAN IP.</p> <p>When the WAN IP used by Vigor router is private IP, this function can detect the public IP used by the NAT router and use the detected IP address for DDNS update.</p> <p>There are two methods offered for you to choose:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● WAN IP - If it is selected and the WAN IP of Vigor router is private, DDNS update will take place right away. ● Internet IP – If it is selected and the WAN IP of Vigor router is private, it will be converted to public IP before DDNS update takes place. |

4. Click **OK** button to activate the settings. You will see your setting has been saved.

Disable the Function and Clear all Dynamic DNS Accounts

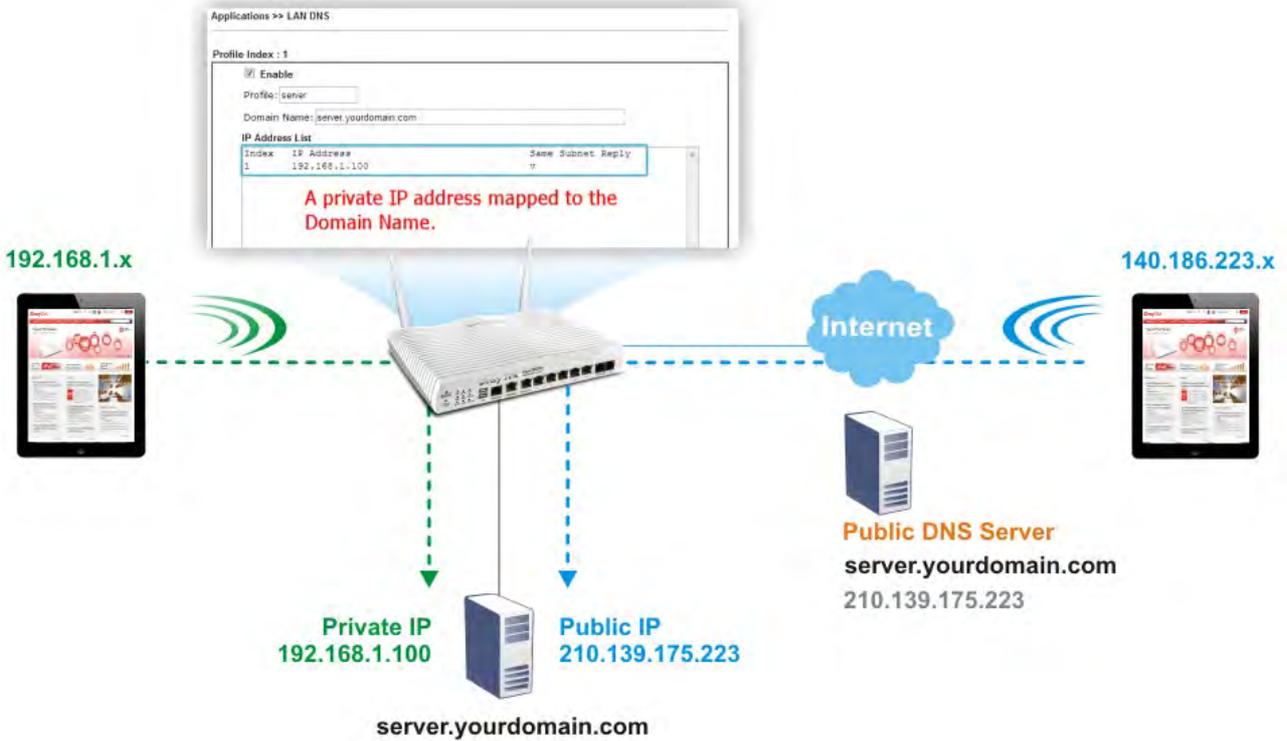
In the DDNS setup menu, uncheck **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**, and push **Clear All** button to disable the function and clear all accounts from the router.

Delete a Dynamic DNS Account

In the DDNS setup menu, click the **Index** number you want to delete and then push **Clear All** button to delete the account.

3.10.2 LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

The LAN DNS lets the network administrators host servers with privacy and security. When the network administrators of your office set up FTP, Mail or Web server inside LAN, you can specify specific private IP address (es) to correspondent servers. Thus, even the remote PC is adopting public DNS as the DNS server, the LAN DNS resolution on Vigor2860 series will respond the specified private IP address.



Simply click **Application>>LAN DNS** to open the following page.

Applications >> LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

| LAN DNS Resolution / Conditional DNS Forwarding | | | | | | Set to Factory Default |
|---|-------|---------|-------------|------------|------------|--|
| Enable | Index | Profile | Domain Name | Forwarding | DNS Server | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 3. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 4. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 5. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 6. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 7. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 8. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 9. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 10. | | | - | | |

<< 1-10 | 11-20 >>

OK

Each item is explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings. |

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Enable | Check the box to enable the selected profile. |
| Index | Click the number below Index to access into the setting page. |
| Profile | Display the name of the LAN DNS profile. |
| Domain Name | Display the domain name of the LAN DNS profile. |

You can set up to 20 LAN DNS profiles.

To create a LAN DNS profile:

1. Click any index, say Index No. 1.
2. The detailed settings with index 1 are shown below.

Applications >> LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

LAN DNS
Conditional DNS Forwarding

Profile Index : 1

Enable

Profile:

Domain Name:

IP Address List

| Index | IP Address | Same Subnet Reply |
|-------|------------|-------------------|
| | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Enable | Check this box to enable such profile. |
| Profile | Type a name for such profile. Note: If you type a name here for LAN DNS and click OK to save the configuration, the name also will be applied to conditional DNS forwarding automatically. |
| Domain Name | Type the domain name for such profile. |

IP Address List

The IP address listed here will be used for mapping with the domain name specified above. In general, one domain name maps with one IP address. If required, you can configure two IP addresses mapping with the same domain name.

Add – Click it to open a dialog to type the host's IP address.



- **Only responds to the DNS....** – Different LAN PCs can share the same domain name. However, you have to check this box to make the router identify & respond the IP address for the DNS query coming from different LAN PC.

Delete – Click it to remove an existed IP address on the list.

3. Click **OK** button to save the settings.
4. If you need to configure LAN DNS settings, click index 1 to edit the LAN DNS profile just created. Or, you can click index 2 to use this profile as conditional DNS forwarding.

Applications >> LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

| LAN DNS | Conditional DNS Forwarding |
|--|----------------------------|
| Profile Index : 1 | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable | |
| Profile: <input type="text" value="LAN_D1"/> | |
| Domain Name: <input type="text"/> | |
| Note: Support wildcard subdomain, ex: *.example.com | |
| DNS Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/> | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Enable | Check this box to enable such profile. |
| Profile | Type a name for such profile. Note: If you type a name here for conditional DNS forwarding and click OK to save the configuration, the name also will be applied to LAN DNS automatically. |
| Domain Name | Type the domain name for such profile. |

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| DNS Server IP Address | Type the IP address of the DNS server you want to use for DNS forwarding. |
|------------------------------|---|

- Click **OK** button to save the settings.
- A new LAN DNS profile has been created.

Applications >> LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

| LAN DNS Resolution / Conditional DNS Forwarding | | | | | | Set to Factory Default |
|---|-------|---------|-----------------|------------|------------|--|
| Enable | Index | Profile | Domain Name | Forwarding | DNS Server | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 1. | sales_1 | www.draytek.com | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 3. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 4. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 5. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 6. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 7. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 8. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 9. | | | - | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 10. | | | - | | |

<< 1-10 | 11-20 >>

OK

3.10.3 Schedule

The Vigor router has a built-in clock which can update itself manually or automatically by means of Network Time Protocols (NTP). As a result, you can not only schedule the router to dialup to the Internet at a specified time, but also restrict Internet access to certain hours so that users can connect to the Internet only during certain hours, say, business hours. The schedule is also applicable to other functions.

You have to set your time before set schedule. In **System Maintenance>> Time and Date** menu, press **Inquire Time** button to set the Vigor router's clock to current time of your PC. The clock will reset once if you power down or reset the router. There is another way to set up time. You can inquiry an NTP server (a time server) on the Internet to synchronize the router's clock. This method can only be applied when the WAN connection has been built up.

Applications >> Schedule

Schedule: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Status | Index | Status |
|--------------------|--------|---------------------|--------|
| 1. | x | 9. | x |
| 2. | x | 10. | x |
| 3. | x | 11. | x |
| 4. | x | 12. | x |
| 5. | x | 13. | x |
| 6. | x | 14. | x |
| 7. | x | 15. | x |
| 8. | x | | |

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Set to Factory Default | Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings. |
| Index | Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of schedule. |
| Status | Display if this schedule setting is active or inactive. |

You can set up to 15 schedules. Then you can apply them to your **Internet Access** or **VPN and Remote Access >> LAN-to-LAN** settings.

To add a schedule:

1. Click any index, say Index No. 1.
2. The detailed settings of the call schedule with index 1 are shown below.

Index No. 1

Enable Schedule Setup

Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd) 2000 1 1

Start Time (hh:mm) 0 : 0

Duration Time (hh:mm) 0 : 0

Action Force On

Idle Timeout 0 minute(s).(max. 255, 0 for default)

How Often

Once

Weekdays

Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Enable Schedule Setup | Check to enable the schedule. |
| Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd) | Specify the starting date of the schedule. |
| Start Time (hh:mm) | Specify the starting time of the schedule. |
| Duration Time (hh:mm) | Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule. |
| Action | Specify which action Call Schedule should apply during the period of the schedule. Force On -Force the connection to be always on. Force Down -Force the connection to be always down. Enable Dial-On-Demand -Specify the connection to be dial-on-demand and the value of idle timeout should be specified in Idle Timeout field. Disable Dial-On-Demand -Specify the connection to be up when it has traffic on the line. Once there is no traffic over idle timeout, the connection will be down and never up again during the schedule. |
| Idle Timeout | Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule. How often -Specify how often the schedule will be applied Once -The schedule will be applied just once Weekdays -Specify which days in one week should perform the schedule. |

- Click **OK** button to save the settings.

Example

Suppose you want to control the PPPoE Internet access connection to be always on (Force On) from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week. Other time the Internet access connection should be disconnected (Force Down).

**Office
Hour:
(Force On)**



Mon - Sun 9:00 am to 6:00 pm

1. Make sure the PPPoE connection and **Time Setup** is working properly.
2. Configure the PPPoE always on from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week.
3. Configure the **Force Down** from 18:00 to next day 9:00 for whole week.
4. Assign these two profiles to the PPPoE Internet access profile. Now, the PPPoE Internet connection will follow the schedule order to perform **Force On** or **Force Down** action according to the time plan that has been pre-defined in the schedule profiles.

3.10.4 RADIUS/TACACS+

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a security authentication client/server protocol that supports authentication, authorization and accounting, which is widely used by Internet service providers. It is the most common method of authenticating and authorizing dial-up and tunneled network users.

The built-in RADIUS client feature enables the router to assist the remote dial-in user or a wireless station and the RADIUS server in performing mutual authentication. It enables centralized remote access authentication for network management.

Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+

| RADIUS Setup | TACACS+ Setup |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable | |
| Server IP Address | <input type="text"/> |
| Destination Port | <input type="text" value="1812"/> |
| Shared Secret | <input type="text"/> |
| Confirm Shared Secret | <input type="text"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| Enable | Check to enable RADIUS client feature. |
| Server IP Address | Enter the IP address of RADIUS server |
| Destination Port | The UDP port number that the RADIUS server is using. The default value is 1812, based on RFC 2138. |
| Shared Secret | The RADIUS server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret. The maximum length of the shared secret you can set is 36 characters. |
| Confirm Shared Secret | Re-type the Shared Secret for confirmation. |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** button to save the settings.

TACACS+

It means Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus. It works like RADIUS does. Click the **TACACS+ Setup** to open the following page:

Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+

RADIUS Setup **TACACS+ Setup**

Enable

Server IP Address

Destination Port

Type ▼

Shared Secret

Confirm Shared Secret

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| Enable | Check to enable TACACS+ feature. |
| Server IP Address | Enter the IP address of TACACS+ server. |
| Destination Port | The UDP port number that the TACACS+ server is using. |
| Shared Secret | The TACACS+ server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret. |
| Confirm Shared Secret | Re-type the Shared Secret for confirmation. |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** button to save the settings.

3.10.5 LDAP /Active Directory Setup

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a communication protocol for using in TCP/IP network. It defines the methods to access distributing directory server by clients, work on directory and share the information in the directory by clients. The LDAP standard is established by the work team of Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).

As the name described, LDAP is designed as an effect way to access directory service without the complexity of other directory service protocols. For LDAP is defined to perform , inquire and modify the information within the directory, and acquire the data in the directory securely, therefore users can apply LDAP to search or list the directory object, inquire or manage the active directory.

General Setup

This page allows you to enable the function and specify general settings for LDAP server.

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP

Active Directory /LDAP[Set to Factory Default](#)

General Setup

Active Directory / LDAP Profiles

Enable

Bind Type Simple Mode ▾

Server Address

Destination Port

Use SSL

Regular DN

Regular Password

Note: After finishing the configuration of the LDAP profiles, they will be listed in the page of **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup**. If you want to use the profiles for VPN authentication, check the boxes under PPTP LDAP Profiles in **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup** first.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Enable | Check to enable such function. |
| Bind Type | <p>There are three types of bind type supported.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Simple Mode – Just simply do the bind authentication without any search action. ● Anonymous – Perform a search action first with Anonymous account then do the bind authentication. ● Regular Mode– Mostly it is the same with anonymous mode. The different is that, the server will firstly check if you have the search authority. <p>For the regular mode, you'll need to type in the Regular DN and Regular Password.</p> |
| Server Address | Enter the IP address of LDAP server. |
| Destination Port | Type a port number as the destination port for LDAP server. |
| Use SSL | Check the box to use the port number specified for SSL. |
| Regular DN | Type this setting if Regular Mode is selected as Bind Type . |
| Regular Password | Specify a password if Regular Mode is selected as Bind Type . |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** button to save the settings.

Profiles

You can configure eight AD/LDAP profiles. These profiles would be used with User Management for different purposes in management.

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Active Directory /LDAP

General Setup
Active Directory / LDAP Profiles

| Index | Name | Distinguished Name |
|--------------------|------|--------------------|
| 1. | | |
| 2. | | |
| 3. | | |
| 4. | | |
| 5. | | |
| 6. | | |
| 7. | | |
| 8. | | |

Note: After finishing the configuration of the LDAP profiles, they will be listed in the page of **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup**. If you want to use the profiles for VPN authentication, check the boxes under PPTP LDAP Profiles in **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup** first.

Click any index number link to open the following page.

Index No. 1

| | | |
|---|----------------------------------|---|
| Name | <input type="text" value="RD1"/> | |
| Common Name Identifier | <input type="text" value="UID"/> | |
| Base Distinguished Name | <input type="text"/> |  |
| Additional Filter | <input type="text"/> | |
| <p>Note: Please type in your additional filter for BaseDN search request. For example, 1) For OpenLDAP: (gidNumber=500) 2) For AD: (msNPAllowDialin=TRUE)</p> | | |
| Group Distinguished Name | <input type="text"/> |  |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---|--|
| Name | Type a name for such profile. The length of the use name is limited to 19 characters. |
| Common Name Identifier | Type or edit the common name identifier for the LDAP server. The common name identifier for most LDAP server is “cn”. |
| Additional Filter | Type the condition for additional filter. |
| Base Distinguished Name / Group Distinguished Name | Type or edit the distinguished name used to look up entries on the LDAP server. Sometimes, you may forget the Distinguished Name since it’s too long. Then you may click the  button to list all the account information on the AD/LDAP Server to assist you finish the setup. |

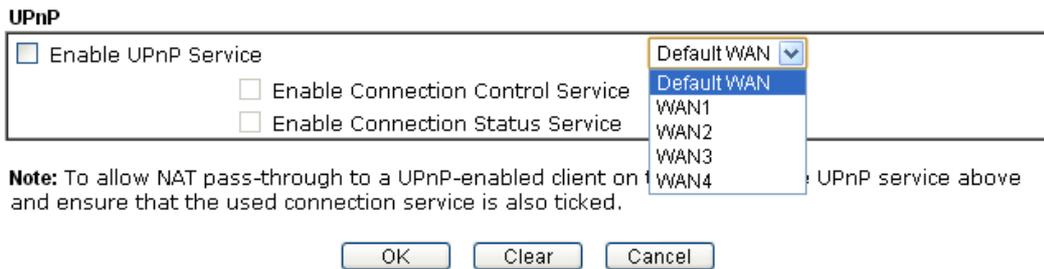
After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save and exit this page. A new profile has been created.

For detailed information about LDAP application, refer to **section 4.7 How to Implement the AD/LDAP Authentication for User Management?**

3.10.6 UPnP

The **UPnP** (Universal Plug and Play) protocol is supported to bring to network connected devices the ease of installation and configuration which is already available for directly connected PC peripherals with the existing Windows 'Plug and Play' system. For NAT routers, the major feature of UPnP on the router is "NAT Traversal". This enables applications inside the firewall to automatically open the ports that they need to pass through a router. It is more reliable than requiring a router to work out by itself which ports need to be opened. Further, the user does not have to manually set up port mappings or a DMZ. **UPnP is available on Windows XP** and the router provide the associated support for MSN Messenger to allow full use of the voice, video and messaging features.

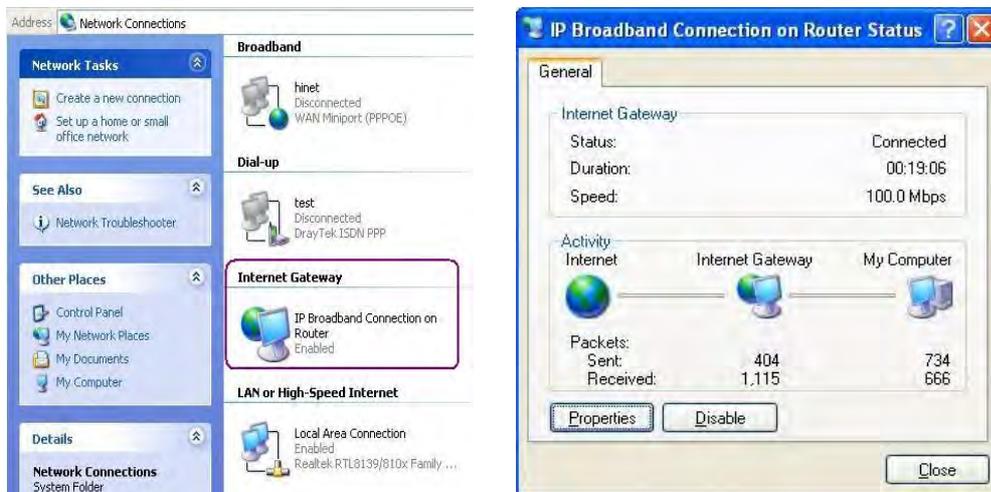
Applications >> UPnP



Available settings are explained as follows:

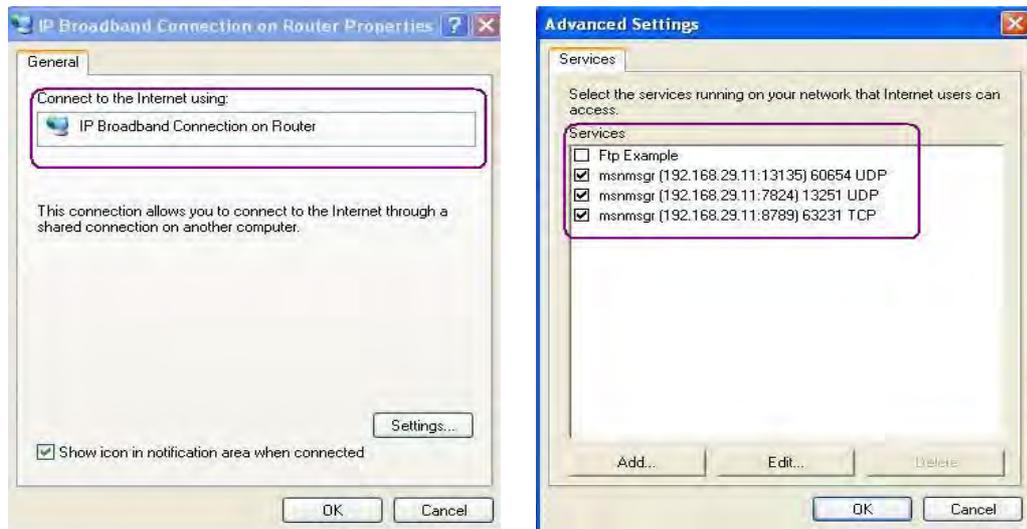
| Item | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| Enable UPNP Service | Accordingly, you can enable either the Connection Control Service or Connection Status Service . |
| Default WAN | It is used to specify the WAN interface for applying such function. |

After setting **Enable UPNP Service** setting, an icon of **IP Broadband Connection on Router** on Windows XP/Network Connections will appear. The connection status and control status will be able to be activated. The NAT Traversal of UPnP enables the multimedia features of your applications to operate. This has to manually set up port mappings or use other similar methods. The screenshots below show examples of this facility.



The UPnP facility on the router enables UPnP aware applications such as MSN Messenger to discover what are behind a NAT router. The application will also learn the external IP address

and configure port mappings on the router. Subsequently, such a facility forwards packets from the external ports of the router to the internal ports used by the application.



The reminder as regards concern about Firewall and UPnP

Can't work with Firewall Software

Enabling firewall applications on your PC may cause the UPnP function not working properly. This is because these applications will block the accessing ability of some network ports.

Security Considerations

Activating the UPnP function on your network may incur some security threats. You should consider carefully these risks before activating the UPnP function.

- Some Microsoft operating systems have found out the UPnP weaknesses and hence you need to ensure that you have applied the latest service packs and patches.
- Non-privileged users can control some router functions, including removing and adding port mappings.

The UPnP function dynamically adds port mappings on behalf of some UPnP-aware applications. When the applications terminate abnormally, these mappings may not be removed.

3.10.7 IGMP

IGMP is the abbreviation of *Internet Group Management Protocol*. It is a communication protocol which is mainly used for managing the membership of Internet Protocol multicast groups.

Applications >> IGMP

IGMP

Enable IGMP Proxy
 IGMP Proxy acts as a multicasting agent on the LAN side. Enable IGMP proxy to access any multicast group. This function is available in NAT mode. **Do not enable this function when Bridge Mode is enabled.**

Enable IGMP Snooping
 Enable: Forwards multicast traffic to ports that are members of that group.
 Disable: Treats multicast traffic as broadcast traffic.

WAN1
 WAN1
 WAN2
 WAN3
 WAN4
 PVC/VLAN

OK Cancel

[Refresh](#)

| Working Multicast Groups | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Index | Group ID | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | P5 | P6 |
| | | | | | | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Enable IGMP Proxy | Check this box to enable this function. The application of multicast will be executed through WAN/PVC/VLAN port. In addition, such function is available in NAT mode. |
| Enable IGMP Snooping | Check this box to enable this function. Multicast traffic will be forwarded to ports that have members of that group. Disabling IGMP snooping will make multicast traffic treated in the same manner as broadcast traffic. |
| Refresh | Click this link to renew the working multicast group status. |
| Group ID | This field displays the ID port for the multicast group. The available range for IGMP starts from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.254. |
| P1 to P6 | It indicates the LAN port used for the multicast group. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.10.8 Wake on LAN

A PC client on LAN can be woken up by the router it connects. When a user wants to wake up a specified PC through the router, he/she must type correct MAC address of the specified PC on this web page of **Wake on LAN (WOL)** of this router.

In addition, such PC must have installed a network card supporting WOL function. By the way, WOL function must be set as “Enable” on the BIOS setting.

Application >> Wake on LAN

Wake on LAN

Note: Wake on LAN integrates with **Bind IP to MAC** function, only binded PCs can wake up through IP.

Wake by: ▾

IP Address: ▾

MAC Address: : : : : :

Result

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Wake by | Two types provide for you to wake up the binded IP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If you choose Wake by MAC Address, you have to type the correct MAC address of the host in MAC Address boxes. ● If you choose Wake by IP Address, you have to choose the correct IP address. |
| IP Address | The IP addresses that have been configured in Firewall>>Bind IP to MAC will be shown in this drop down list. Choose the IP address from the drop down list that you want to wake up. |
| MAC Address | Type any one of the MAC address of the bound PCs. |
| Wake Up | Click this button to wake up the selected IP. See the following figure. The result will be shown on the box. |

3.10.9 SMS / Mail Alert Service

The function of SMS (Short Message Service)/Mail Alert is that Vigor router sends a message to user's mobile or e-mail box through specified service provider to assist the user knowing the real-time abnormal situations.

Vigor router allows you to set up to **10** SMS profiles which will be sent out according to different conditions.

SMS Provider

This page allows you to specify SMS provider, who will get the SMS, what the content is and when the SMS will be sent.

Applications >> SMS / Mail Alert Service

| SMS Alert | | Mail Alert | | Set to Factory Default | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|------------|----------------|------------------------|--|
| Index | SMS Provider | Recipient | Notify Profile | Schedule(1-15) | |
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? | | 1 - ??? | | |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? | | 1 - ??? | | |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? | | 1 - ??? | | |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? | | 1 - ??? | | |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? | | 1 - ??? | | |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? | | 1 - ??? | | |
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? | | 1 - ??? | | |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? | | 1 - ??? | | |
| 9 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? | | 1 - ??? | | |
| 10 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? | | 1 - ??? | | |

Note: All the SMS Alert profiles share the same "Sending Interval" setting if they use the same SMS Provider.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Index | Check the box to enable such profile. |
| SMS Provider | Use the drop down list to choose SMS service provider. You can click SMS Provider link to define the SMS server. |
| Recipient | Type the name of the one who will receive the SMS. |
| Notify | Use the drop down list to choose a message profile. The recipient will get the content stated in the message profile. You can click the Notify Profile link to define the content of the SMS. |
| Schedule | Type the schedule number that the SMS will be sent out. You can click the Schedule(1-15) link to define the schedule. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Mail Server

This page allows you to specify Mail Server profile, who will get the notification e-mail, what the content is and when the message will be sent.

Application >> SMS / Mail Alert Service

| SMS Alert | | Mail Alert | | Set to Factory Default | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------|----------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| Index | Mail Service | Recipient | Notify Profile | Schedule(1-15) | |
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 9 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 10 <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | 1 - ??? ▾ | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |

Note: All the Mail Alert profiles share the same "Sending Interval" setting if they use the sam Mail Server.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Index | Check the box to enable such profile. |
| Mail Service | Use the drop down list to choose mail service object. All of the available objects are created in Object Settings>>SMS/Mail Service Option . If there is no object listed, click Mail Service link to define a new one with specified service provider. |
| Recipient | Type the e-mail address of the one who will receive the notification message. |
| Notify | Use the drop down list to choose a message profile. The recipient will get the content stated in the message profile. You can click the Notify Profile link to define the content of the mail message. |
| Schedule | Type the schedule number that the notification will be sent out. You can click the Schedule(1-15) link to define the schedule. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.10.10 Bonjour

Bonjour is a service discovery protocol which is a built-in service in Mac OS X; for Windows or Linux platform, there are correspondent software to enable this function for free.

Usually, users have to configure the router or personal computers to use above services. Sometimes, the configuration (e.g., IP settings, port number) is complicated and not easy to complete. The purpose of Bonjour is to decrease the settings configuration (e.g., IP setting). If the host and user's computer have the plug-in Bonjour driver install, they can utilize the service offered by the router by clicking the router name icon. In short, what the Clients/users need to know is the name of the router only.

To enable the Bonjour service, click **Application>>Bonjour** to open the following page. Check the box(es) of the server service(s) that you want to share to the LAN clients.

Applications >> Bonjour

Bonjour Setup

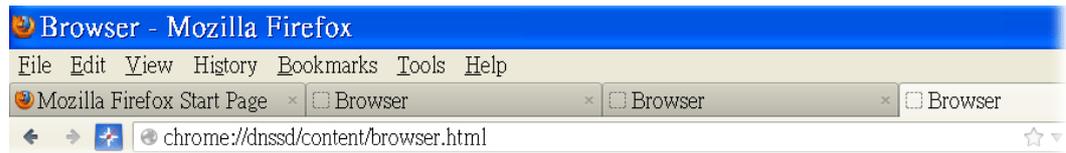
Enable Bonjour Service

- HTTP Server
- Telnet Server
- FTP Server
- SSH Server
- LPR Printer Server

OK Cancel

Below shows an example for applying the Bonjour feature that Vigor router can be used as the FTP server.

1. Here, we use Firefox and DNSSD to discover the service in such case. Therefore, just ensure the Bonjour client program and DNSSD for Firefox have been installed on the computer.



- Open the web browser, Firefox. If Bonjour and DNSSD have been installed, you can open the web page (DNSSD) and see the following results.

| Interface | Name | Type | Domain | Service Info |
|-----------|---|--------------------|--------|---|
| 2 | DS1010Plus | _http._tcp. | local. | Select a service on the left to view further details. |
| 2 | DS1010Plus(WebDAV) | _http._tcp. | local. | |
| 2 | HP LaserJet 1300 | _ipp._tcp. | local. | |
| 2 | tctseng-virtual-machine | _udisks-ssh._tcp. | local. | |
| 2 | tctseng-virtual-machine [00:0c:29:78:bc:24] | _workstation._tcp. | local. | |
| 2 | tomkao-desktop [00:0c:29:26:09:5d] | _workstation._tcp. | local. | |

- Open **System Maintenance >> Management**. Type a name (e.g., Dray_2925) as the Router Name and click **OK**.

System Maintenance >> Management

OK

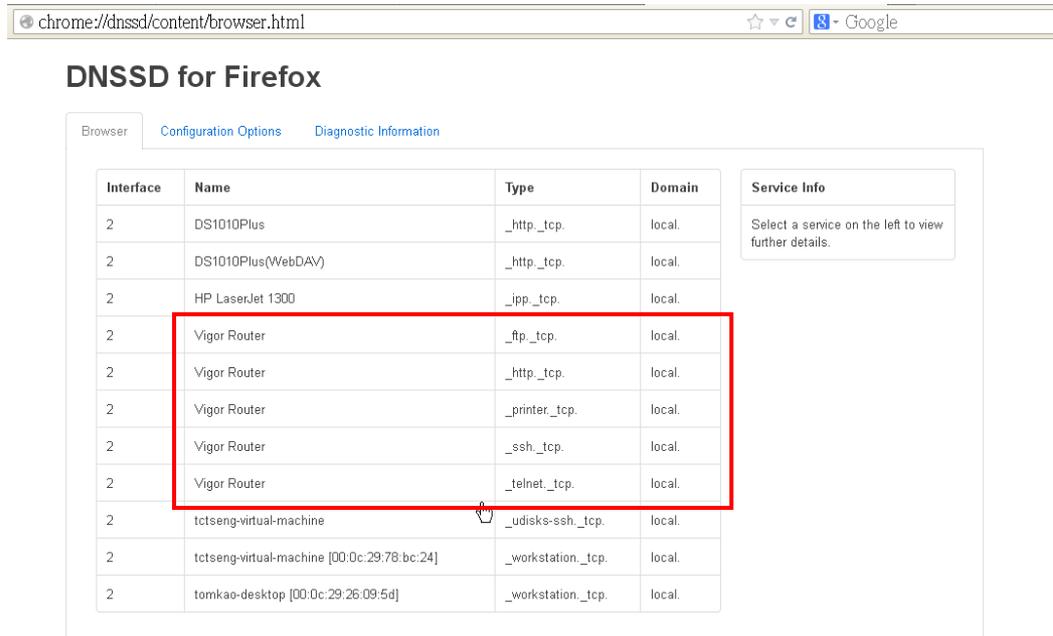
- Next, open **Applications >> Bonjour**. Check the service that you want to use via Bonjour.

Applications >> Bonjour

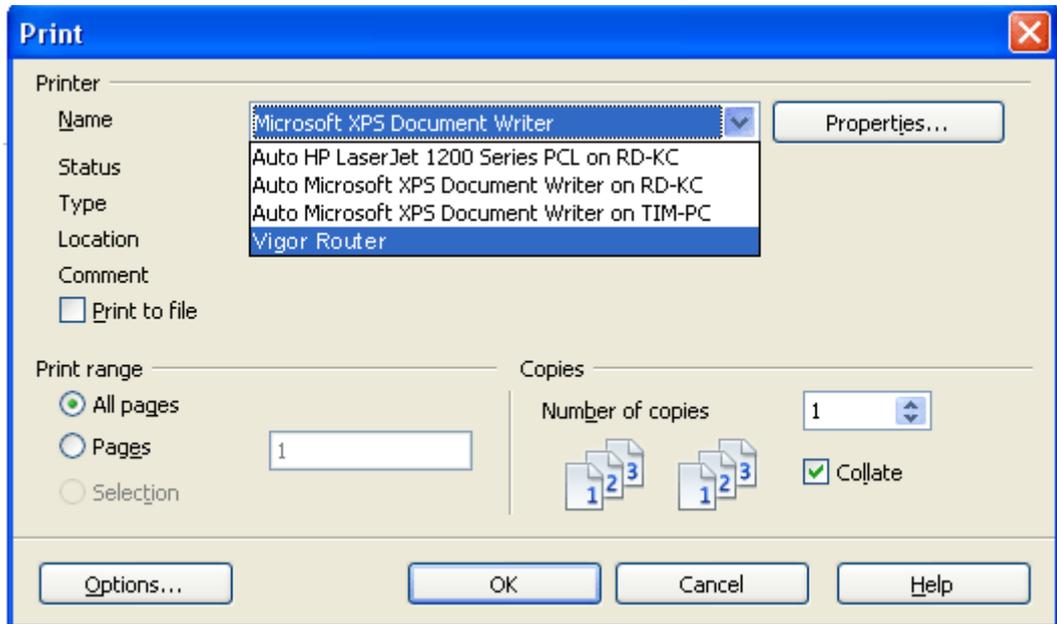
OK

Cancel

- Open the DNSSD page again. The available items will be changed as the follows. It means the Vigor router (based on Bonjour protocol) is ready to be used as a printer server, FTP server, SSH Server, Telnet Server, and HTTP Server.



- Now, any page or document can be printed out through Vigor router (installed with a printer).

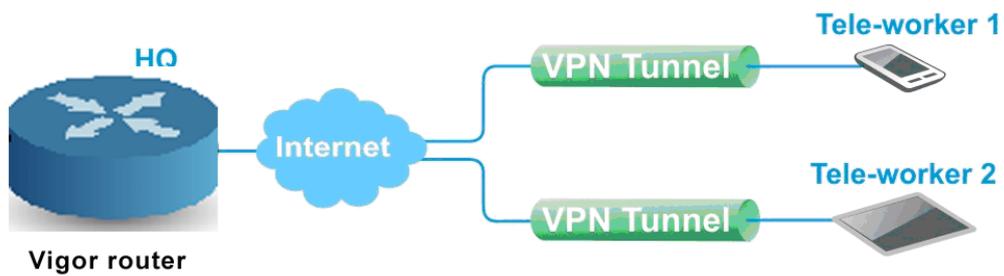
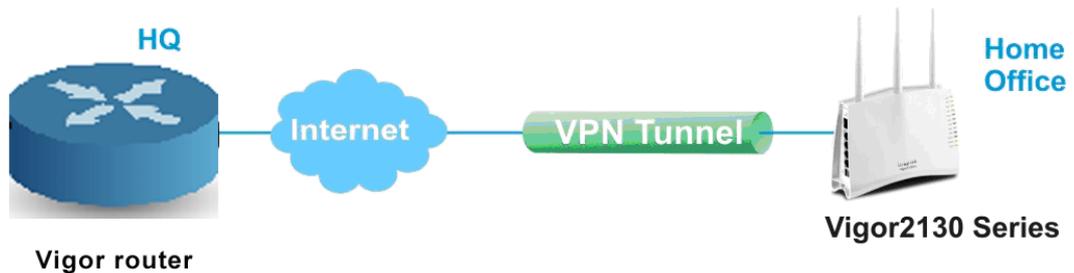


3.11 VPN and Remote Access

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is the extension of a private network that encompasses links across shared or public networks like the Internet. In short, by VPN technology, you can send data between two computers across a shared or public network in a manner that emulates the properties of a point-to-point private link.

The VPN built is suitable for:

- Communication between home office and customer
- Secure connection between Teleworker, staff on business trip and main office
- Exchange data between remote office and main office
- POS between chain store and headquarters



Below shows the menu items for VPN and Remote Access.



3.11.1 Remote Access Control

Enable the necessary VPN service as you need. If you intend to run a VPN server inside your LAN, you should disable the VPN service of Vigor Router to allow VPN tunnel pass through, as well as the appropriate NAT settings, such as DMZ or open port.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Access Control Setup

| Remote Access Control Setup | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Enable PPTP VPN Service |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Enable IPsec VPN Service |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Enable L2TP VPN Service |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Enable SSL VPN Service |

Note: To allow VPN pass-through to a separate VPN server on the LAN, disable any services above that use the same protocol and ensure that NAT **Open Ports** or **Port Redirection** is also configured.

OK Clear Cancel

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.11.2 PPP General Setup

This submenu only applies to PPP-related VPN connections, such as PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec.

VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

| PPP General Setup | |
|---|--|
| <p>PPP/MP Protocol</p> <p>Dial-In PPP Authentication: PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2</p> <p>Dial-In PPP Encryption(MPPE): Optional MPPE</p> <p>Mutual Authentication (PAP): <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Username: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="text"/></p> <p>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users (When DHCP Disable set)</p> <p>Assigned IP start LAN 1: 10.28.60.200</p> <p>LAN 2: 192.168.2.200</p> <p>LAN 3: 192.168.3.200</p> <p>LAN 4: 192.168.4.200</p> <p>LAN 5: 192.168.5.200</p> <p>LAN 6: 192.168.6.200</p> | <p>LDAP Server Profiles for PPP Authentication</p> <p>PPTP LDAP Profile</p> <p>Note: Please select 'PAP Only' in 'Dial-In PPP Authentication', if you want to use AD/LDAP for PPP Authentication!!</p> |

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Dial-In PPP Authentication | <p>PAP Only - elect this option to force the router to authenticate dial-in users with the PAP protocol.</p> <p>PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2 - Selecting this option means the router will attempt to authenticate dial-in users with the CHAP protocol first. If the dial-in user does</p> |

| | |
|--|---|
| | not support this protocol, it will fall back to use the PAP protocol for authentication. |
| Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE) | <p>Optional MPPE - This option represents that the MPPE encryption method will be optionally employed in the router for the remote dial-in user. If the remote dial-in user does not support the MPPE encryption algorithm, the router will transmit “no MPPE encrypted packets”. Otherwise, the MPPE encryption scheme will be used to encrypt the data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Require MPPE (40/128bits) - Selecting this option will force the router to encrypt packets by using the MPPE encryption algorithm. In addition, the remote dial-in user will use 40-bit to perform encryption prior to using 128-bit for encryption. In other words, if 128-bit MPPE encryption method is not available, then 40-bit encryption scheme will be applied to encrypt the data. ● Maximum MPPE - This option indicates that the router will use the MPPE encryption scheme with maximum bits (128-bit) to encrypt the data. |
| Mutual Authentication (PAP) | <p>The Mutual Authentication function is mainly used to communicate with other routers or clients who need bi-directional authentication in order to provide stronger security, for example, Cisco routers. So you should enable this function when your peer router requires mutual authentication. You should further specify the User Name and Password of the mutual authentication peer.</p> <p>The length of the name/password is limited to 23/19 characters.</p> |
| Assigned IP Start | <p>Enter a start IP address for the dial-in PPP connection. You should choose an IP address from the local private network. For example, if the local private network is 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0, you could choose 192.168.1.200 as the Start IP Address.</p> <p>You can configure up to four start IP addresses for LAN1 ~ LAN6.</p> |
| LDAP Server Profiles for PPP Authentication | <p>Configured LDAP profiles will be listed under such item. Simply check the one you want to enable the PPP authentication by LDAP server profiles.</p> <p>However, if there is no profile listed, simply click the link of PPTP LDAP Profile to create/add some new LDAP profiles you want.</p> <p>For detailed information about LDAP application, refer to section 4.7 How to Implement the AD/LDAP Authentication for User Management?</p> |

3.11.3 IPsec General Setup

In **IPsec General Setup**, there are two major parts of configuration.

There are two phases of IPsec.

- Phase 1: negotiation of IKE parameters including encryption, hash, Diffie-Hellman parameter values, and lifetime to protect the following IKE exchange, authentication of both peers using either a Pre-Shared Key or Digital Signature (x.509). The peer that starts the negotiation proposes all its policies to the remote peer and then remote peer tries to find a highest-priority match with its policies. Eventually to set up a secure tunnel for IKE Phase 2.
- Phase 2: negotiation IPsec security methods including Authentication Header (AH) or Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) for the following IKE exchange and mutual examination of the secure tunnel establishment.

There are two encapsulation methods used in IPsec, **Transport** and **Tunnel**. The **Transport** mode will add the AH/ESP payload and use original IP header to encapsulate the data payload only. It can just apply to local packet, e.g., L2TP over IPsec. The **Tunnel** mode will not only add the AH/ESP payload but also use a new IP header (Tunneled IP header) to encapsulate the whole original IP packet.

Authentication Header (AH) provides data authentication and integrity for IP packets passed between VPN peers. This is achieved by a keyed one-way hash function to the packet to create a message digest. This digest will be put in the AH and transmitted along with packets. On the receiving side, the peer will perform the same one-way hash on the packet and compare the value with the one in the AH it receives.

Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) is a security protocol that provides data confidentiality and protection with optional authentication and replay detection service.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec General Setup

VPN IKE/IPsec General Setup
Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).

IKE Authentication Method

Certificate for Dial-in: None

Pre-Shared Key

Pre-Shared Key:

Confirm Pre-Shared Key:

IPsec Security Method

Medium (AH)
Data will be authentic, but will not be encrypted.

High (ESP) DES 3DES AES
Data will be encrypted and authentic.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| IKE Authentication Method | This usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node (LAN-to-LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and IPsec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPsec and IPsec tunnel. There are two methods offered by Vigor router for you to authenticate the incoming data coming from remote dial-in user, Certificate (X.509) and |

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| | <p>Pre-Shared Key.</p> <p>Certificate for Dial-in –Choose one of the local certificates from the drop down list.</p> <p>Pre-Shared Key- Specify a key for IKE authentication.</p> <p>Confirm Pre-Shared Key- Retype the characters to confirm the pre-shared key.</p> <p>Note: Any packets from the remote dial-in user which does not match the rule defined in VPN and Remote Access>>Remote Dial-In User will be applied with the method specified here.</p> |
| IPsec Security Method | <p>Medium - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.</p> <p>High (ESP) - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.</p> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.11.4 IPsec Peer Identity

To use digital certificate for peer authentication in either LAN-to-LAN connection or Remote User Dial-In connection, here you may edit a table of peer certificate for selection. As shown below, the router provides **32** entries of digital certificates for peer dial-in users.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec Peer Identity

X509 Peer ID Accounts: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Name | Status | Index | Name | Status |
|---------------------|------|--------|---------------------|------|--------|
| 1. | ??? | X | 17. | ??? | X |
| 2. | ??? | X | 18. | ??? | X |
| 3. | ??? | X | 19. | ??? | X |
| 4. | ??? | X | 20. | ??? | X |
| 5. | ??? | X | 21. | ??? | X |
| 6. | ??? | X | 22. | ??? | X |
| 7. | ??? | X | 23. | ??? | X |
| 8. | ??? | X | 24. | ??? | X |
| 9. | ??? | X | 25. | ??? | X |
| 10. | ??? | X | 26. | ??? | X |
| 11. | ??? | X | 27. | ??? | X |
| 12. | ??? | X | 28. | ??? | X |
| 13. | ??? | X | 29. | ??? | X |
| 14. | ??? | X | 30. | ??? | X |
| 15. | ??? | X | 31. | ??? | X |
| 16. | ??? | X | 32. | ??? | X |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Set to Factory Default | Click it to clear all indexes. |

| | |
|--------------|--|
| Index | Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of IPsec Peer Identity. |
| Name | Display the profile name of that index. |

Click each index to edit one peer digital certificate. There are three security levels of digital signature authentication: Fill each necessary field to authenticate the remote peer. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec Peer Identity

Profile Index : 4

Profile Name

Enable this account

Accept Any Peer ID

Accept Subject Alternative Name

Type

Domain Name

Accept Subject Name

Country (C)

State (ST)

Location (L)

Organization (O)

Organization Unit (OU)

Common Name (CN)

Email (E)

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Profile Name | Type the name of the profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 32 characters. |
| Enable this account | Check it to enable such account profile. |
| Accept Any Peer ID | Click to accept any peer regardless of its identity. |
| Accept Subject Alternative Name | Click to check one specific field of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field can be IP Address, Domain, or E-mail Address . The box under the Type will appear according to the type you select and ask you to fill in corresponding setting. |
| Accept Subject Name | Click to check the specific fields of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field includes Country (C), State (ST), Location (L), Organization (O), Organization Unit (OU), Common Name (CN), and Email (E) . |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.11.5 Remote Dial-in User

You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profile, so that users can be authenticated to dial-in via VPN connection. You may set parameters including specified connection peer ID, connection type (VPN connection - including PPTP, IPsec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPsec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The router provides 32 access accounts for dial-in users. Besides, you can extend the user accounts to the RADIUS server through the built-in RADIUS client function. The following figure shows the summary table.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User



Remote Access User Accounts: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | User | Active | Status | Index | User | Active | Status |
|---------------------|------|--------------------------|--------|---------------------|------|--------------------------|--------|
| 1. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 17. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 2. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 18. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 3. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 19. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 4. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 20. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 5. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 21. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 6. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 22. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 7. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 23. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 8. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 24. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 9. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 25. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 10. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 26. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 11. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 27. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 12. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 28. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 13. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 29. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 14. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 30. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 15. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 31. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 16. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 32. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |

Note: User Accounts need to be added into User Group to enable SSL Portal Login.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Click to clear all indexes. |
| Index | Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of Remote Dial-in User. |
| User | Display the username for the specific dial-in user of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty. |
| Active | Check the box to activate such profile. |
| Status | Display the access state of the specific dial-in user. The symbol V and X represent the specific dial-in user to be active and inactive, respectively. |

Click each index to edit one remote user profile. **Each Dial-In Type requires you to fill the different corresponding fields on the right.** If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

Index No. 1

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>User account and Authentication</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable this account</p> <p>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)</p> <hr/> <p>Allowed Dial-In Type</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel</p> <hr/> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node</p> <p>Remote Client IP <input type="text"/></p> <p>or Peer ID <input type="text"/></p> <p>Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block</p> <p>Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)</p> <hr/> <p>Subnet</p> <p><input type="text" value="LAN 1"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Assign Static IP Address</p> <p><input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> | <p>Username <input style="background-color: #cccccc;" type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password <input style="background-color: #cccccc;" type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords(mOTP)</p> <p>PIN Code <input style="background-color: #cccccc;" type="text"/></p> <p>Secret <input style="background-color: #cccccc;" type="text"/></p> <hr/> <p>IKE Authentication Method</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key</p> <p>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input style="background-color: #cccccc;" type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)</p> <p><input type="text" value="None"/></p> <hr/> <p>IPsec Security Method</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH)</p> <p>High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES</p> <p>Local ID (optional) <input style="background-color: #cccccc;" type="text"/></p> |
|--|---|

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| User account and Authentication | <p>Enable this account - Check the box to enable this function.</p> <p>Idle Timeout- If the dial-in user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the router will drop this connection. By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 300 seconds.</p> |
| Allowed Dial-In Type | <p>PPTP - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below.</p> <p>IPsec Tunnel - Allow the remote dial-in user to make an IPsec VPN connection through Internet.</p> <p>L2TP with IPsec Policy - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> None - Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP |

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| | <p>connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Nice to Have - Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. ● Must -Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection. <p>SSL Tunnel – Allow the remote dial-in user to make an SSL VPN connection through Internet.</p> <p>Specify Remote Node -You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user, ISDN number or peer ID (used in IKE aggressive mode).</p> <p>Uncheck the checkbox means the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the general settings.</p> <p>Netbios Naming Packet -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass – Click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. ● Block – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel. <p>Multicast via VPN - Some programs might send multicast packets via VPN connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass – Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router. ● Block – This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router. <p>User Name - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 23 characters.</p> <p>Password - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 19 characters.</p> <p>Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords (mOTP) - Check this box to make the authentication with mOTP function.</p> <p>PIN Code – Type the code for authentication (e.g, 1234).</p> <p>Secret – Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6).</p> |
| Subnet | <p>Chose one of the subnet selections for such VPN profile.</p> <p>Assign Static IP Address – Please type a static IP address for the subnet you specified.</p> |
| IKE Authentication Method | <p>This group of fields is applicable for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPsec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node.</p> |

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| | <p>Pre-Shared Key - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.</p> <p>Digital Signature (X.509) – Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and Select one predefined Profiles set in the VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity.</p> |
| IPsec Security Method | <p>This group of fields is a must for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the remote node. Check the Medium, DES, 3DES or AES box as the security method.</p> <p>Medium-Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is invoked. You can uncheck it to disable it.</p> <p>High-Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.</p> <p>Local ID (Optional)- Specify a local ID to be used for Dial-in setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.</p> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.11.6 LAN to LAN

Here you can manage LAN-to-LAN connections by maintaining a table of connection profiles. You may set parameters including specified connection direction (dial-in or dial-out), connection peer ID, connection type (VPN connection - including PPTP, IPsec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPsec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The router supports up to 32 VPN tunnels simultaneously. The following figure shows the summary table.

The following figure shows the summary table according to the item (All/Trunk) selected for **View**.



LAN-to-LAN Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

View: All Trunk

| Index | Name | Active | Status | Index | Name | Active | Status |
|-------|------|--------------------------|--------|-------|------|--------------------------|--------|
| 1. | 282 | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 17. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 2. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 18. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 3. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 19. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 4. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 20. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 5. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 21. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 6. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 22. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 7. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 23. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 8. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 24. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 9. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 25. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 10. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 26. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 11. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 27. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 12. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 28. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 13. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 29. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 14. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 30. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 15. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 31. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| 16. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | 32. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Load Balance Mechanism]
 [XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Backup Mechanism]
 [XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile does not join for VPN TRUNK]

The following shows profiles joined into VPN Load Balance and VPN Backup mechanism.

LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

View: All Trunk

| Name | Activate | Members | Status |
|----------------------------|----------|----------------------------|---------|
| Loadbalan1 | v | VPN-2 | Offline |
| | | Connection | Offline |

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Load Balance Mechanism]
 [XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Backup Mechanism]

If there is no profile joined yet, this page will be shown as follows:

LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

View: All Trunk

| Name | Activate | Members | Status |
|------|----------|---------|--------|
| | | | |

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Load Balance Mechanism]
 [XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Backup Mechanism]

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| View | All – Click it to display the LAN to LAN profiles. Trunk – Click it to display the Trunk profiles. |
| Set to Factory Default | Click to clear all indexes. |
| Name | Indicate the name of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty. |
| Active | V – means the profile has been enabled. X – mans the profile has not been enabled. |
| Status | Indicate the status of individual profiles. The symbol V and X represent the profile to be active and inactive, respectively. |

To edit each profile:

1. Click each index to edit each profile and you will get the following page. Each LAN-to-LAN profile includes 4 subgroups. If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanations will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

For the web page is too long, we divide the page into several sections for explanation.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

| | |
|--|---|
| Profile Name <input type="text" value="282"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile | Call Direction <input type="radio"/> Both <input checked="" type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input type="radio"/> Dial-in <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive PING to the IP <input type="text"/> |
| VPN Dial-Out Through WAN2 First <input type="text"/> | |
| Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.) | |

2. Dial-Out Settings

| | |
|---|---|
| Type of Server I am calling <input checked="" type="radio"/> PPTP <input type="radio"/> IPsec Tunnel <input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/> | Username <input type="text" value="777"/> Password(Max 15 char) <input type="text" value="..."/> PPP Authentication PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2 <input type="text"/> VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off |
| Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) <input type="text" value="b025277.ubddns.org"/> | IKE Authentication Method <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509) Peer ID <input type="text" value="None"/> Local ID <input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First Local Certificate <input type="text" value="None"/> |
| | IPsec Security Method <input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH) <input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <input type="text" value="DES without Authentication"/> <input type="button" value="Advanced"/> |
| | Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <p>Common Settings</p> | <p>Profile Name – Specify a name for the profile of the LAN-to-LAN connection.</p> <p>Enable this profile - Check here to activate this profile.</p> <p>VPN Dial-Out Through - Use the drop down menu to choose a proper WAN interface for this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● WAN1 First/ WAN2 First/ WAN3 First /WAN4 First- While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead. ● WAN1 Only /WAN2 Only/WAN 3 Only/WAN 4 Only- While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the only channel for VPN connection. ● WAN1 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN2 down - If WAN2 failed, the router will use WAN1 for VPN connection. ● WAN2 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN1 down - If WAN1 failed, the router will use WAN2 for VPN connection. <p>Netbios Naming Packet</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass – click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. ● Block – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel. <p>Multicast via VPN - Some programs might send multicast packets via VPN connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass – Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router. ● Block – This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router. <p>Call Direction - Specify the allowed call direction of this LAN-to-LAN profile.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Both:-initiator/responder |

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Dial-Out- initiator only ● Dial-In- responder only. <p>Always On-Check to enable router always keep VPN connection.</p> <p>Idle Timeout: The default value is 300 seconds. If the connection has been idled over the value, the router will drop the connection.</p> <p>Enable PING to keep alive - This function is to help the router to determine the status of IPsec VPN connection, especially useful in the case of abnormal VPN IPsec tunnel disruption. For details, please refer to the note below. Check to enable the transmission of PING packets to a specified IP address.</p> <p>Enable PING to keep alive is used to handle abnormal IPsec VPN connection disruption. It will help to provide the state of a VPN connection for router's judgment of redial. Normally, if any one of VPN peers wants to disconnect the connection, it should follow a serial of packet exchange procedure to inform each other. However, if the remote peer disconnect without notice, Vigor router will by no where to know this situation. To resolve this dilemma, by continuously sending PING packets to the remote host, the Vigor router can know the true existence of this VPN connection and react accordingly. This is independent of DPD (dead peer detection).</p> <p>PING to the IP - Enter the IP address of the remote host that located at the other-end of the VPN tunnel.</p> |
| <p>Dial-Out Settings</p> | <p>Type of Server I am calling - PPTP - Build a PPTP VPN connection to the server through the Internet. You should set the identity like User Name and Password below for the authentication of remote server.</p> <p>IPsec Tunnel - Build an IPsec VPN connection to the server through Internet.</p> <p>L2TP with IPsec Policy - Build a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● None: Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection. ● Nice to Have: Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-out VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. <p>Must: Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.</p> <p>User Name - This field is applicable when you select, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 49 characters.</p> <p>Password - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 15 characters.</p> <p>PPP Authentication - This field is applicable when you</p> |

select, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2 is the most common selection due to wild compatibility.

VJ compression - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. Normally set to **Yes** to improve bandwidth utilization.

IKE Authentication Method - This group of fields is applicable for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy.

- **Pre-Shared Key** - Input 1-63 characters as pre-shared key.

- **Digital Signature (X.509)** - Select one predefined Profiles set in the **VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity**.

Peer ID - Select one of the predefined Profiles set in **VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity**.

Local ID – Specify a local ID (**Alternative Subject Name First** or **Subject Name First**) to be used for Dial-in setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.

- **Local Certificate** – Select one of the profiles set in **Certificate Management>>Local Certificate**.

IPsec Security Method - This group of fields is a must for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy.

- **Medium AH (Authentication Header)** means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.

- **High (ESP-Encapsulating Security Payload)**- means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. Select from below:

- **DES without Authentication** -Use DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.

- **DES with Authentication**-Use DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

- **3DES without Authentication**-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.

- **3DES with Authentication**-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

- **AES without Authentication**-Use AES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.

- **AES with Authentication**-Use AES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

Advanced - Specify mode, proposal and key life of each IKE phase, Gateway, etc.

The window of advance setup is shown as below:

Note: If you select "Auto" in IKE phase 1 proposal, the router will send the following proposals to negotiate with the remote site. The proposals include: DES_(MD5-SHA)_G1, 3DES_MD5_G1, 3DES_MD5_G2, 3DES_(MD5-SHA)_G5, AES128_MD5_(G2/G5), AES256_SHA_(G2/G5), AES256_SHA_G14

IKE phase 1 mode -Select from **Main** mode and **Aggressive** mode. The ultimate outcome is to exchange security proposals to create a protected secure channel. **Main** mode is more secure than **Aggressive** mode since more exchanges are done in a secure channel to set up the IPsec session. However, the **Aggressive** mode is faster. The default value in Vigor router is Main mode.

- **IKE phase 1 proposal**-To propose the local available authentication schemes and encryption algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Two combinations are available for **Aggressive** mode and nine for **Main** mode. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most schemes.
- **IKE phase 2 proposal**-To propose the local available algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Three combinations are available for both modes. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most algorithms.
- **IKE phase 1 key lifetime**-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 28800 seconds. You may specify a value in between 900 and 86400 seconds.
- **IKE phase 2 key lifetime**-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 3600 seconds. You may specify a value in between 600 and 86400 seconds.
- **Perfect Forward Secret (PFS)**-The IKE Phase 1 key will be reused to avoid the computation complexity in phase 2. The default value is inactive this function.

Local ID-In **Aggressive** mode, Local ID is on behalf of the IP address while identity authenticating with remote VPN server. The length of the ID is limited to 47 characters.

Index(1-15) - Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in **Applications >> Schedule** setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.

3. Dial-In Settings

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Allowed Dial-In Type</p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy None <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote VPN Gateway Peer VPN Server IP <input type="text"/> or Peer ID <input type="text"/> | Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password(Max 11 char) <input type="text"/> VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off IKE Authentication Method <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) None <input type="button" value="v"/> Local ID <input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First IPsec Security Method <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH) High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES |
|---|---|

4. GRE over IPsec Settings

| |
|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec <input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic My GRE IP <input type="text"/> Peer GRE IP <input type="text"/> |
|--|

5. TCP/IP Network Settings

| | |
|---|---|
| My WAN IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> Remote Gateway IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> Remote Network IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> Remote Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> Local Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/> Local Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> <input type="button" value="More"/> | RIP Direction Disable <input type="button" value="v"/> From first subnet to remote network, you have to do <input type="button" value="Route"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="checkbox"/> IPsec VPN with the Same Subnets <input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this) |
|---|---|

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------|--|
| Dial-In Settings | <p>Allowed Dial-In Type - Determine the dial-in connection with different types.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● PPTP - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below. ● IPsec Tunnel- Allow the remote dial-in user to trigger an IPsec VPN connection through Internet. ● L2TP with IPsec Policy - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ None - Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection. ■ Nice to Have - Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. ■ Must - Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection. |

Specify Remote VPN Gateway - You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user or peer ID (should be the same with the ID setting in dial-in type) by checking the box. Also, you should further specify the corresponding security methods on the right side.

If you uncheck the checkbox, the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the general settings.

User Name - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.

Password - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.

VJ Compression - VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above.

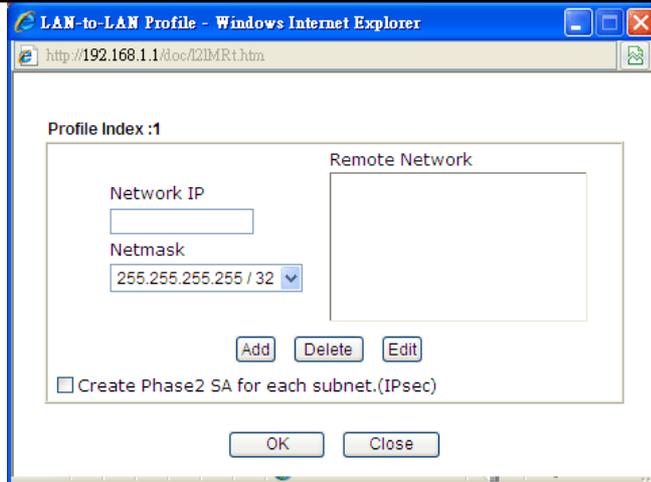
IKE Authentication Method - This group of fields is applicable for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPsec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node.

- **Pre-Shared Key** - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.
- **Digital Signature (X.509)** –Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and select one predefined Profiles set in the **VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity**.
 - **Local ID** – Specify which one will be inspected first.
 - **Alternative Subject Name First** – The alternative subject name (configured in **Certificate Management>>Local Certificate**) will be inspected first.
 - **Subject Name First** – The subject name (configured in **Certificate Management>>Local Certificate**) will be inspected first.

IPsec Security Method - This group of fields is a must for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the remote node.

- **Medium-** Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.
 - **High-** Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and
-

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| | AES. |
| GRE over IPsec Settings | <p>Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec: Check this box to verify data and transmit data in encryption with GRE over IPsec packet after configuring IPsec Dial-Out setting. Both ends must match for each other by setting same virtual IP address for communication.</p> <p>Logical Traffic: Such technique comes from RFC2890. Define logical traffic for data transmission between both sides of VPN tunnel by using the characteristic of GRE. Even hacker can decipher IPsec encryption, he/she still cannot ask LAN site to do data transmission with any information. Such function can ensure the data transmitted on VPN tunnel is really sent out from both sides. This is an optional function. However, if one side wants to use it, the peer must enable it, too.</p> <p>My GRE IP: Type the virtual IP for router itself for verified by peer.</p> <p>Peer GRE IP: Type the virtual IP of peer host for verified by router.</p> |
| TCP/IP Network Settings | <p>My WAN IP –This field is only applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select PPTP or L2TP.</p> <p>Remote Gateway IP - This field is only applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a remote Gateway PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select PPTP or L2TP.</p> <p>Remote Network IP/ Remote Network Mask - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to this Remote Network IP Address/Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. For IPsec, this is the destination clients IDs of phase 2 quick mode.</p> <p>Local Network IP / Local Network Mask - Display the local network IP and mask for TCP / IP configuration. You can modify the settings if required.</p> <p>More - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to more Remote Network IP Addresses/ Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. This is usually used when you find there are several subnets behind the remote VPN router.</p> |



RIP Direction - The option specifies the direction of RIP (Routing Information Protocol) packets. You can enable/disable one of direction here. Herein, we provide four options: TX/RX Both, TX Only, RX Only, and Disable.

From first subnet to remote network, you have to do - If the remote network only allows you to dial in with single IP, please choose **NAT**, otherwise choose **Route**.

Change default route to this VPN tunnel - Check this box to change the default route with this VPN tunnel.

IPSec VPN with the Same subnet

For both ends (e.g., different sections in a company) are within the same subnet, there is a function which allows you to build Virtual IP mapping between two ends. Thus, when VPN connection established, the router will change the IP address according to the settings configured here and block sessions which are not coming from the IP address defined in the Virtual IP Mapping list.

After checking the box of **IPSec VPN with the Same subnet**, the options under **TCP/IP Network Settings** will be changed as shown below:

5. TCP/IP Network Settings

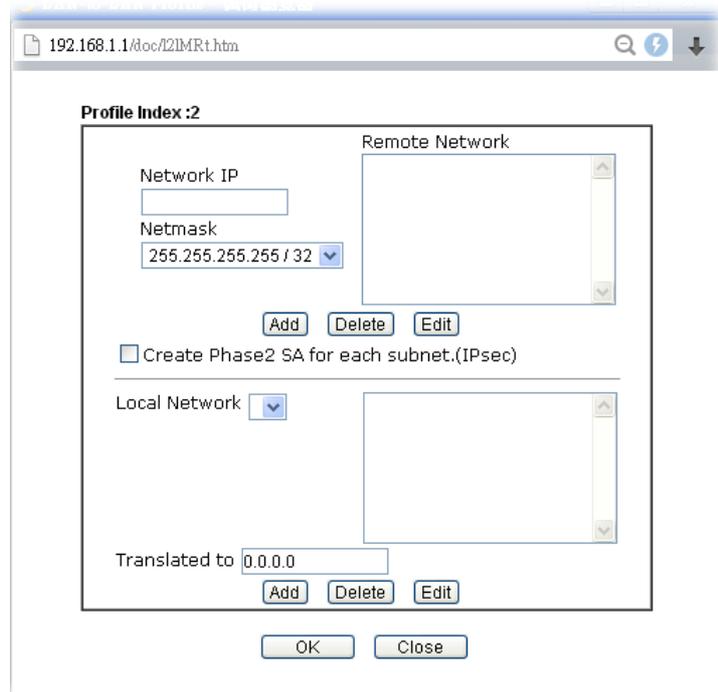
| | | | |
|--|---|---|---|
| Remote Network IP | 0.0.0.0 | From Local Subnet to Remote network, you have to do | Route |
| Remote Network Mask | 255.255.255.0 | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Translated Local Network | LAN1 to 192.168.1.0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPSec VPN with the Same Subnets | Translated Type |
| | <input type="button" value="Advanced"/> | <input type="radio"/> Whole Subnet | <input type="radio"/> Specific IP Address |
| | | | <input type="button" value="Virtual IP Mapping"/> |

Remote Network IP/ Remote Network Mask - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to this Remote Network IP Address/Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. For IPSec, this is the destination clients IDs of phase 2 quick mode.

Translated Local Network – This function is enabled in default. Use the drop down list to specify a LAN port as the transferred direction. Then specify an IP address. Click **Advanced** to configure detailed settings if required.

Advanced – Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to more Remote Network IP Addresses/ Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. This is usually used

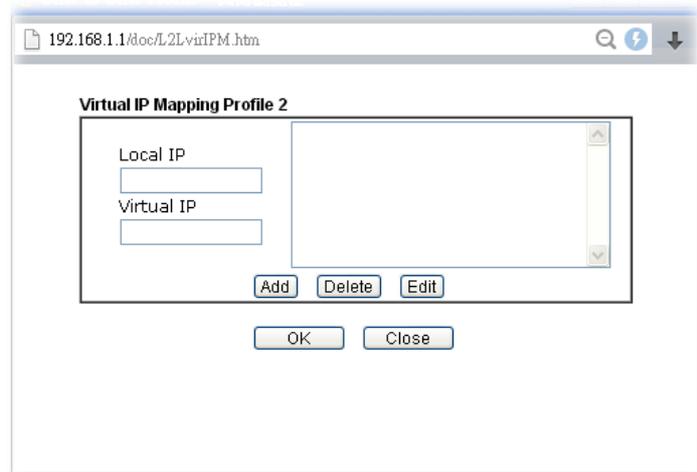
when you find there are several subnets behind the remote VPN router.



Translated Type – There are two types for you to choose.

- **Whole Subnet**
- **Specific IP Address**

Virtual IP Mapping – A pop up dialog will appear for you to specify the local IP address and the mapping virtual IP address.



2. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.11.7 VPN TRUNK Management

VPN trunk includes four features - VPN Backup, VPN load balance, GRE over IPsec, and Binding tunnel policy.

Features of VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup Mechanism

VPN TRUNK Management is a backup mechanism which can set multiple VPN tunnels as backup tunnel. It can assure the network connection not to be cut off due to network environment blocked by any reason.

- VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism can judge abnormal situation for the environment of VPN server and correct it to complete the backup of VPN Tunnel in real-time.
- VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism is compliant with all WAN modes (single/multi)
- Dial-out connection types contain IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec and ISDN (depends on hardware specification)
- The web page is simple to understand and easy to configure
- Fully compliant with VPN Server LAN Site Single/Multi Network
- Mail Alert support, please refer to **System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert** for detailed configuration
- Syslog support, please refer to **System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert** for detailed configuration
- Specific ERD (Environment Recovery Detection) mechanism which can be operated by using Telnet command

VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile will be activated when initial connection of single VPN tunnel is off-line. Before setting VPN TRUNK -VPN Backup mechanism backup profile, please configure at least two sets of LAN-to-LAN profiles (with fully configured dial-out settings) first, otherwise you will not have selections for grouping Member1 and Member2.

Features of VPN TRUNK – VPN Load Balance Mechanism

VPN Load Balance Mechanism can set multiple VPN tunnels for using as traffic load balance tunnel. It can assist users to do effective load sharing for multiple VPN tunnels according to real line bandwidth. Moreover, it offers three types of algorithms for load balancing and binding tunnel policy mechanism to let the administrator manage the network more flexibly.

- Three types of load sharing algorithm offered, Round Robin, Weighted Round Robin and Fastest
- Binding Tunnel Policy mechanism allows users to encrypt the data in transmission or specified service function in transmission and define specified VPN Tunnel for having effective bandwidth management
- Dial-out connection types contain IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec and GRE over IPsec
- The web page is simple to understand and easy to configure
- The TCP Session transmitted by using VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism will not be lost due to one of VPN Tunnels disconnected. Users do not need to reconnect with setting TCP/UDP Service Port again. The VPN Load Balance function can keep the transmission for internal data on tunnel stably



Backup Profile List | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Note: [Active:NO] The LAN-to-LAN Profile is disabled or under Dial-In(Call Direction) at present.

| No. | Status | Name | Member1 (Active) Type | Member2 (Active) Type |
|-----|--------|------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| | | | | |

Advanced

Load Balance Profile List | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Note: [Active:NO] The LAN-to-LAN Profile is disabled or under Dial-In(Call Direction) at present.

| No. | Status | Name | Member1 (Active) Type | Member2 (Active) Type |
|-----|--------|------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| | | | | |

Advanced

General Setup

Status Enable Disable

Profile Name

Member1

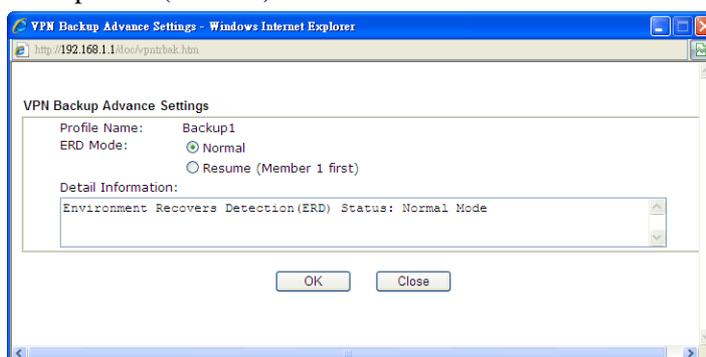
Member2

Active Mode Backup Load Balance

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| Backup Profile List | <p>Set to Factory Default - Click to clear all VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.</p> <p>No – The order of VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.</p> <p>Status - “v” means such profile is enabled; “x” means such profile is disabled.</p> <p>Name - Display the name of VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.</p> <p>Member1 - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member1 drop down list below.</p> <p>Active - “Yes” means normal condition. ”No” means the state might be disabled or that profile currently is set with Dial-in mode (for call direction) in LAN-to-LAN.</p> <p>Type - Display the connection type for that profile, such as IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec (NICE), L2TP over IPsec(MUST) and so on.</p> <p>Member2 - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member2 drop down list below.</p> |

Advanced – This button is available only when LAN to LAN profile (or more) is created.



Detailed information for this dialog, see later section - **Advanced Load Balance and Backup**.

Load Balance Profile List

Set to Factory Default - Click to clear all VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

No - The order of VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

Status - “v” means such profile is enabled; ”x” means such profile is disabled.

Name - Display the name of VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

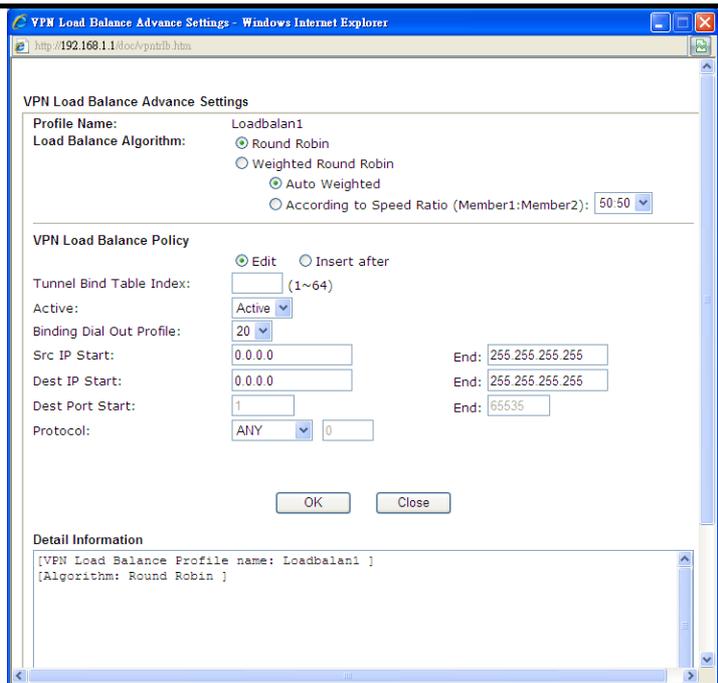
Member1 - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member1 drop down list below.

Active - “Yes” means normal condition. ”No” means the state might be disabled or that profile currently is set with Dial-in mode (for call direction) in LAN-to-LAN.

Type - Display the connection type for that profile, such as IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec (NICE), L2TP over IPsec(MUST) and so on.

Member2 - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member2 drop down list below.

Advanced – This button is only available when there is one or more profiles created in this page.



Detailed information for this dialog, see later section - **Advanced Load Balance and Backup.**

General Setup

Status- After choosing one of the profile listed above, please click **Enable** to activate this profile. If you click **Disable**, the selected or current used VPN TRUNK-Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile will not have any effect for VPN tunnel.

Profile Name- Type a name for VPN TRUNK profile. Each profile can group two VPN connections set in LAN-to-LAN. The saved VPN profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be shown on Member1 and Member2 fields. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.

Member 1/Member2 - Display the selection for LAN-to-LAN dial-out profiles (configured in **VPN and Remote Access >> LAN-to-LAN**) for you to choose for grouping under certain VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile.

- **No** - Index number of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile.
- **Name** - Profile name of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile.
- **Connection Type** - Connection type of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile.
- **VPN ServerIP (Private Network)** - VPN Server IP of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profiles.

Active Mode - Display available mode for you to choose. Choose **Backup** or **Load Balance** for your router.

Add - Add and save new profile to the backup profile list. The corresponding members (LAN-to-LAN profiles) grouped in such new VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism profile will be locked. The profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in red. VPN TRUNK – VPN Load Balance mechanism profile will be locked. The

profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in blue.

Update - Click this button to save the changes to the **Status** (Enable or Disable), profile name, member1 or member2.

Delete - Click this button to delete the selected VPN TRUNK profile. The corresponding members (LAN-to-LAN profiles) grouped in the deleted VPN TRUNK profile will be released and that profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in black.

Time for activating VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism profile

VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism will be activated automatically after the initial connection of single VPN Tunnel off-line. The content in Member1/2 within VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism backup profile is similar to dial-out profile configured in LAN-to-LAN web page. VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism backup profile will process and handle everything unless it is off-line once it is activated.

Time for activating VPN TRUNK – VPN Load Balance mechanism profile

After finishing the connection for one tunnel, the other tunnel will dial out automatically within two seconds. Therefore, you can choose any one of members under VPN Load Balance for dialing out.

Time for activating VPN TRUNK –Dial-out when VPN Load Balance Disconnected

For there is one Tunnel created and connected successfully, to keep the load balance effect between two tunnels, auto-dial will be executed within two seconds.

To close two tunnels of load balance after connecting, please click **Disable** for **Status** in **General Setup** field.

How can you set a VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile?

1. First of all, go to **VPN and Remote Access>>LAN-to-LAN**. Set two or more LAN-to-LAN profiles first that will be used for Member1 and Member2. If you do not set enough LAN-to-LAN profiles, you cannot operate VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup /Load Balance mechanism profile management well.
2. Access into **VPN and Remote Access>>VPN TRUNK Management**.
3. Set one group of VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism backup profile by choosing **Enable** radio button; type a name for such profile (e.g., 071023); choose one of the LAN-to-LAN profiles from Member1 drop down list; choose one of the LAN-to-LAN profiles from Member2 drop down list; and click **Add** at last.

General Setup

Status: Enable Disable

Profile Name: 071023

Member1: Please choose the combination that you want.

Member2: Please choose the combination that you want.

Attribute Mode:

| No. | <Name> | <Connection-Type> | <VPN ServerIP(Private Network)> |
|-----|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 | To-A PlaceIPSec | | 192.168.2.25(20.20.20.0) |
| 2 | To-B Site IPSec | | 192.168.2.26(20.20.21.0) |

Add Edit Delete

- Take a look for LAN-to-LAN profiles. Index 1 is chosen as Member1; index 2 is chosen as Member2. For such reason, LAN-to-LAN profiles of 1 and 2 will be expressed in red to indicate that they are fixed. If you delete the VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile, the selected LAN-to-LAN profiles will be released and expressed in black.

LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

View: All Trunk

| Index | Name | Active | Status |
|-----------|------------|--------|---------|
| <u>1.</u> | To-A Place | V | offline |
| <u>2.</u> | To-B Site | V | offline |
| <u>3.</u> | To-C Place | V | offline |
| <u>4.</u> | To-D Site | V | offline |
| 5. | ??? | X | --- |

How can you set a GRE over IPsec profile?

- Please go to LAN to LAN to set a profile with IPsec.
- If the router will be used as the VPN Server (i.e., with virtual address 192.168.50.200). Please type 192.168.50.200 in the field of My GRE IP. Type IP address (192.168.50.100) of the client in the field of Peer GRE IP. See the following graphic for an example.

High(ESP) DES 3DES AES

4. Gre over IPsec Settings

Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec

Logical Traffic

My GRE IP 192.168.50.200 Peer GRE IP 192.168.50.100

5. TCP/IP Network Settings

My WAN IP 0.0.0.0

Remote Gateway IP 192.168.1.1

Remote Network IP 192.168.1.0

Remote Network Mask 255.255.255.0

Local Network IP 192.168.25.1

Local Network Mask 255.255.255.0

More

RIP Direction Disable

From first subnet to remote network, you have to do

Route

Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this)

- Later, on peer side (as VPN Client): please type 192.168.50.100 in the field of My GRE IP and type IP address of the server (192.168.50.200) in the field of Peer GRE IP.

High(ESP) DES 3DES AES

4. Gre over IPsec Settings

Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec

Logical Traffic

My GRE IP 192.168.50.100 Peer GRE IP 192.168.50.200

5. TCP/IP Network Settings

My WAN IP 0.0.0.0

Remote Gateway IP 192.168.25.1

Remote Network IP 192.168.25.0

Remote Network Mask 255.255.255.0

Local Network IP 192.168.1.1

Local Network Mask 255.255.255.0

More

RIP Direction Disable

From first subnet to remote network, you have to do

Route

Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this)

Advanced Load Balance and Backup

After setting profiles for load balance, you can choose any one of them and click Advance for more detailed configuration. The windows for advanced load balance and backup are different. Refer to the following explanation:

Advanced Load Balance

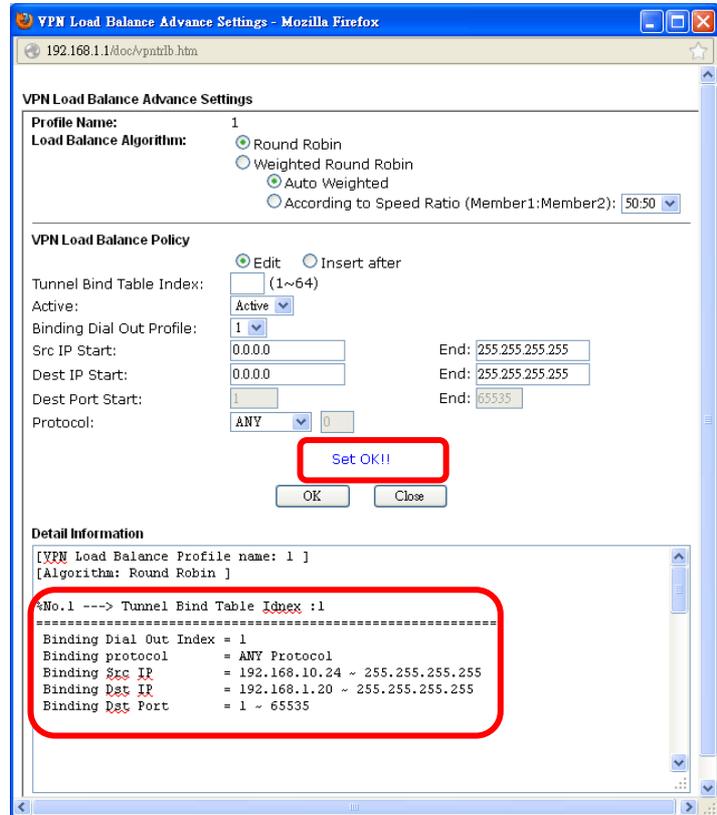
Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Profile Name | List the load balance profile name. |
| Load Balance Algorithm | <p>Round Robin – Based on packet base, both tunnels will send the packet alternatively. Such method can reach the balance of packet transmission with fixed rate.</p> <p>Weighted Round Robin –Such method can reach the balance of packet transmission with flexible rate. It can be divided into Auto Weighted and According to Speed Ratio. Auto Weighted can detect the device speed (10Mbps/100Mbps) and switch with fixed value ratio (3:7) for packet transmission. If the transmission rate for packets on both sides of the tunnels is the same, the value of Auto Weighted should be 5.5. According to Speed Ratio allows</p> |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| | <p>user to adjust suitable rate manually. There are 100 groups of rate ratio for Member1:Member2 (range from 1:99 to 99:1).</p> |
| <p>VPN Load Balance Policy</p> | <p>Below shows the algorithm for Load Balance.</p> <p>Edit – Click this radio button for assign a blank table for configuring Binding Tunnel.</p> <p>Insert after – Click this radio button to adding a new binding tunnel table.</p> <p>Tunnel Bind Table Index- 128 Binding tunnel tables are provided by this device. Specify the number of the tunnel for such Load Balance profile.</p> <p>Active – In-active/Delete can delete this binding tunnel table. Active can activate this binding tunnel table.</p> <p>Binding Dial Out Index – Specify connection type for transmission by choosing the index (LAN to LAN Profile Index) for such binding tunnel table.</p> <p>Src IP Start /End– Specify source IP addresses as starting point and ending point.</p> <p>Dest IP Start/End – Specify destination IP addresses as starting point and ending point.</p> <p>Dest Port Start /End– Specify destination service port as starting point and ending point.</p> <p>Protocol – Any means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here, such binding tunnel table can be established for TCP Service Port/UDP Service Port/ICMP/IGMP specified here.</p> <p>TCP means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and TCP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. UDP means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and UDP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. TCP/UPD means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and TCP/UDP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. ICMP means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and ICMP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. IGMP means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and IGMP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. Other means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here with different TCP Service Port/UDP Service Port/ICMP/IGMP, such binding tunnel table can be established.</p> |

Detail Information

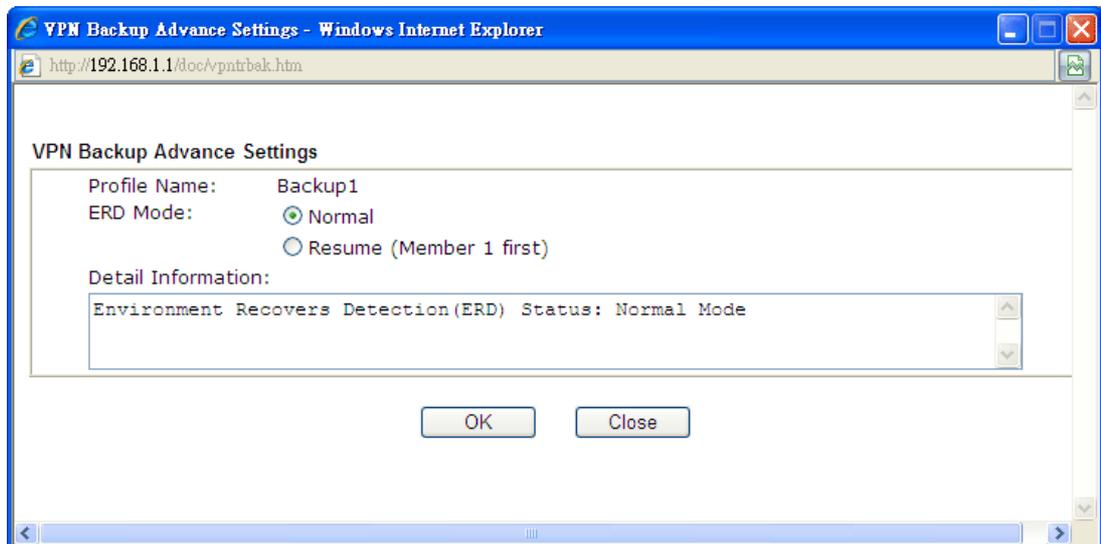
This field will display detailed information for Binding Tunnel Policy. Below shows a successful binding tunnel policy for load balance:



Note : To configure a successful binding tunnel, you have to:

Type Binding Src IP range (Start and End) and Binding Des IP range (Start and End). Choose TCP/UDP, IGMP/ICMP or Other as Binding Protocol.

Detailed Settings for Advanced Backup



Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Profile Name | List the backup profile name. |
| ERD Mode | ERD means “Environment Recovers Detection”. Normal – choose this mode to make all dial-out VPN TRUNK backup profiles being activated alternatively. Resume – when VPN connection breaks down or disconnects, Member 1 will be the top priority for the system to do VPN connection. |
| Detail Information | This field will display detailed information for Environment Recovers Detection. |

3.11.8 Connection Management

You can find the summary table of all VPN connections. You may disconnect any VPN connection by clicking **Drop** button. You may also aggressively Dial-out by using Dial-out Tool and clicking **Dial** button.

VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

Dial-out Tool Refresh Seconds : 10

| | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| General Mode: | (V2925) vigor2925.ubddns.c | <input type="button" value="Dial"/> |
| Backup Mode: | | <input type="button" value="Dial"/> |
| Load Balance Mode: | | <input type="button" value="Dial"/> |

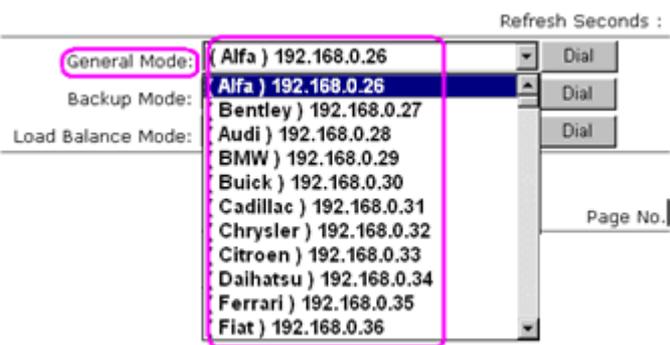
VPN Connection Status

Current Page: 1 Page No.

| VPN | Type | Remote IP | Virtual Network | Tx Pkts | Tx Rate(Bps) | Rx Pkts | Rx Rate(Bps) | UpTime |
|-----|-----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------|--------------|---------|--------------|--|
| 1 | IPsec Tunnel | 111.251.193.140 | 10.29.25.0/24 | 142 | 3 | 1510 | 3 | 3:3:55 <input type="button" value="Drop"/> |
| | (V2925) DES-No Auth | via WAN2 | | | | | | |

xxxxxxx : Data is encrypted.
xxxxxxx : Data isn't encrypted.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Dial-out Tool | <p>General Mode - This field displays the profile configured in LAN-to-LAN (with Index number and VPN Server IP address). The VPN connection built by General Mode does not support VPN backup function.</p>  <p>Backup Mode - This field displays the profile name saved</p> |

in VPN TRUNK Management (with Index number and VPN Server IP address). The VPN connection built by Backup Mode supports VPN backup function.

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|------|
| General Mode: | (Alfa) 192.168.0.26 | Dial |
| Backup Mode: | (VpnBackup) 192.168.2.103 | Dial |
| Load Balance Mode: | (VpnBackup) 192.168.2.103 | Dial |
| | (VpnBackup) 192.168.2.203 | |

Dial - Click this button to execute dial out function.

Refresh Seconds - Choose the time for refresh the dial information among 5, 10, and 30.

Refresh - Click this button to refresh the whole connection status.

3.12 Certificate Management

A digital certificate works as an electronic ID, which is issued by a certification authority (CA). It contains information such as your name, a serial number, expiration dates etc., and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify that the certificate is real. Here Vigor router support digital certificates conforming to standard X.509.

Any entity wants to utilize digital certificates should first request a certificate issued by a CA server. It should also retrieve certificates of other trusted CA servers so it can authenticate the peer with certificates issued by those trusted CA servers.

Here you can manage generate and manage the local digital certificates, and set trusted CA certificates. Remember to adjust the time of Vigor router before using the certificate so that you can get the correct valid period of certificate.

Below shows the menu items for Certificate Management.



3.12.1 Local Certificate

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

X509 Local Certificate Configuration

| Name | Subject | Status | Modify | |
|------|---------|--------|--------|--------|
| --- | --- | --- | View | Delete |
| --- | --- | --- | View | Delete |
| --- | --- | --- | View | Delete |

Note:

1. Please setup the "System Maintenance >> Time and Date" correctly before signing the local certificate.
2. The Time Zone MUST be setup correctly!!

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| Generate | Click this button to open Generate Certificate Request window. Type in all the information that the window requests. Then click Generate again. |
| Import | Click this button to import a saved file as the certification information. |
| Refresh | Click this button to refresh the information listed below. |
| View | Click this button to view the detailed settings for certificate request. |
| Delete | Click this button to delete selected name with certification information. |

GENERATE

Click this button to open **Generate Certificate Signing Request** window. Type in all the information that the window request such as certificate name (used for identifying different certificate), subject alternative name type and relational settings for subject name. Then click **GENERATE** again.

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

Generate Certificate Signing Request

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Certificate Name | <input type="text"/> |
| Subject Alternative Name | |
| Type | IP Address <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| IP | <input type="text"/> |
| Subject Name | |
| Country (C) | <input type="text"/> |
| State (ST) | <input type="text"/> |
| Location (L) | <input type="text"/> |
| Organization (O) | <input type="text"/> |
| Organization Unit (OU) | <input type="text"/> |
| Common Name (CN) | <input type="text"/> |
| Email (E) | <input type="text"/> |
| Key Type | RSA <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Key Size | 1024 Bit <input type="button" value="v"/> |

Note: Please be noted that “Common Name” must be configured with rotuer’s WAN IP or domain name.

After clicking **GENERATE**, the generated information will be displayed on the window below:

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

X509 Local Certificate Configuration

| Name | Subject | Status | Modify | |
|--------|---------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| server | /C=TW/ST=Hsinchu/L=Hsinchu/O... | Requesting | <input type="button" value="View"/> | <input type="button" value="Delete"/> |
| --- | --- | --- | <input type="button" value="View"/> | <input type="button" value="Delete"/> |
| --- | --- | --- | <input type="button" value="View"/> | <input type="button" value="Delete"/> |

IMPORT

Vigor router allows you to generate a certificate request and submit it the CA server, then import it as “Local Certificate”. If you have already gotten a certificate from a third party, you may import it directly. The supported types are PKCS12 Certificate and Certificate with a private key.

Click this button to import a saved file as the certification information. There are three types of local certificate supported by Vigor router.

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

Import X509 Local Certificate

Upload Local Certificate
 Select a local certificate file.
 Certificate file:
 Click **Import** to upload the local certificate.

Upload PKCS12 Certificate
 Select a PKCS12 file.
 PKCS12 file:
 Password:
 Click **Import** to upload the PKCS12 file.

Upload Certificate and Private Key
 Select a certificate file and a matchable Private Key.
 Certificate file:
 Key file:
 Password:
 Click **Import** to upload the local certificate and private key.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Upload Local Certificate | It allows users to import the certificate which is generated by vigor router and signed by CA server. If you have done well in certificate generation, the Status of the certificate will be shown as “OK”. |

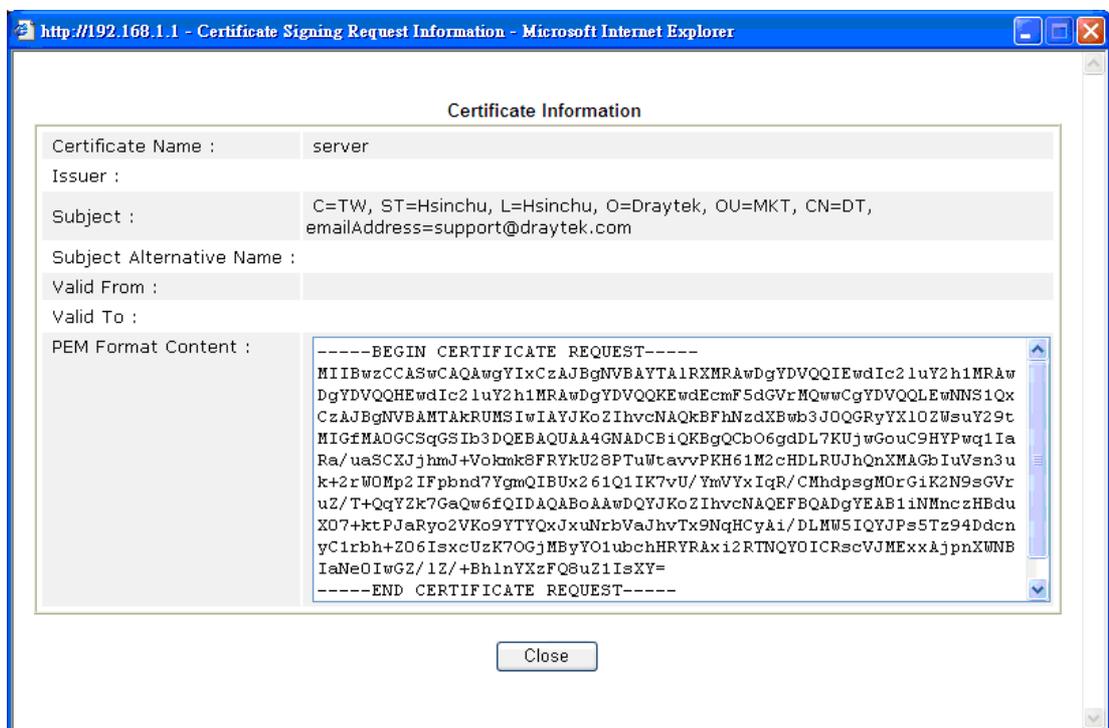
| | |
|--|---|
| |  |
| <p>Upload PKCS12 Certificate</p> | <p>It allows users to import the certificate whose extensions are usually .pfx or .p12. And these certificates usually need passwords.</p> <p>Note: PKCS12 is a standard for storing private keys and certificates securely. It is used in (among other things) Netscape and Microsoft Internet Explorer with their import and export options.</p> |
| <p>Upload Certificate and Private Key</p> | <p>It is useful when users have separated certificates and private keys. And the password is needed if the private key is encrypted.</p> |

REFRESH

Click this button to refresh the information listed below.

View

Click this button to view the detailed settings for certificate request.



Note: You have to copy the certificate request information from above window. Next, access your CA server and enter the page of certificate request, copy the information into it and submit a request. A new certificate will be issued to you by the CA server. You can save it.

Delete

Click this button to remove the selected certificate.

3.12.2 Trusted CA Certificate

Trusted CA certificate lists three sets of trusted CA certificate. In addition, you can build a RootCA certificate if required.

When the local client and remote client are required to make certificate authentication (e.g., IPsec X.509) for data passing through SSL tunnel and avoiding the attack of MITM, a trusted root certificate authority (Root CA) will be used to authenticate the digital certificates offered by both ends.

However, the procedure of applying digital certificate from a trusted root certificate authority is complicated and time-consuming. Therefore, Vigor router offers a mechanism which allows you to generate root CA to save time and provide convenience for general user. Later, such root CA generated by DrayTek server can perform the issuing of local certificate.

Note: Root CA can be deleted but not edited. If you want to modify the settings for a Root CA, please delete the one and create another one by clicking Create Root CA.

Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate

X509 Trusted CA Certificate Configuration

| Name | Subject | Status | Modify |
|--------------|---------|--------|---|
| Root CA | --- | --- | <input type="button" value="Create Root CA"/> |
| Trusted CA-1 | --- | --- | <input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> |
| Trusted CA-2 | --- | --- | <input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> |
| Trusted CA-3 | --- | --- | <input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> |

Note:

1. Please setup the "System Maintenance >> **Time and Date**" correctly before you try to generate a RootCA!!
2. The Time Zone MUST be setup correctly!!

Creating a RootCA

Click Create Root CA to open the following page. Type in all the information that the window request such as certificate name (used for identifying different certificate), subject alternative name type and relational settings for subject name. Then click **GENERATE** again.

Generate Root CA

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Certificate Name | Root CA |
| Subject Alternative Name | |
| Type | IP Address <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| IP | <input type="text"/> |
| Subject Name | |
| Country (C) | <input type="text"/> |
| State (ST) | <input type="text"/> |
| Location (L) | <input type="text"/> |
| Organization (O) | <input type="text"/> |
| Organization Unit (OU) | <input type="text"/> |
| Common Name (CN) | <input type="text"/> |
| Email (E) | <input type="text"/> |
| Key Type | RSA <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Key Size | 1024 Bit <input type="button" value="v"/> |

Importing a Trusted CA

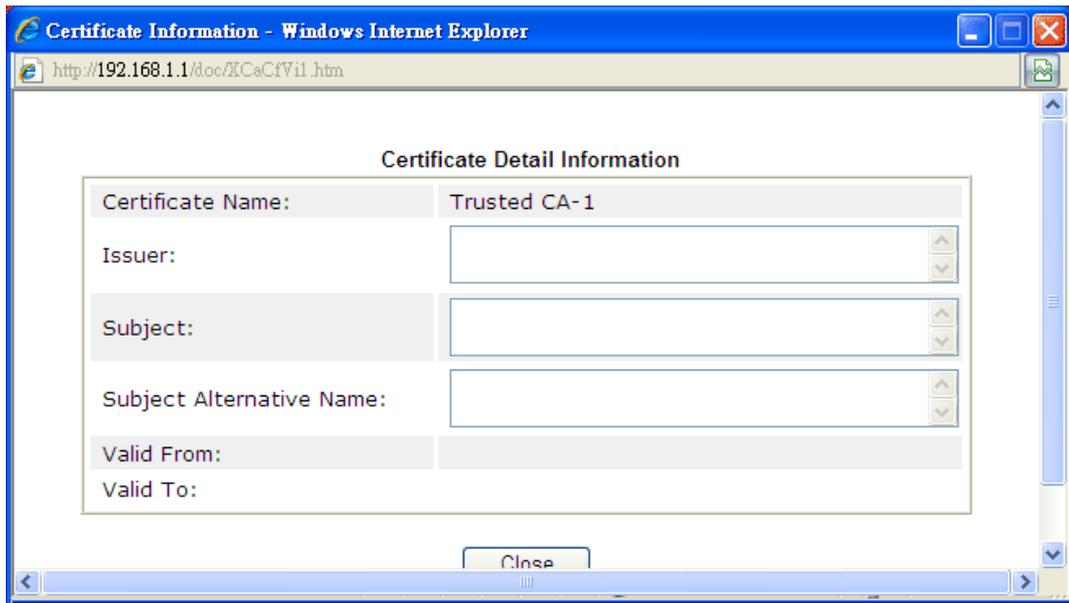
To import a pre-saved trusted CA certificate, please click **IMPORT** to open the following window. Use **Browse...** to find out the saved text file. Then click **Import**. The one you imported will be listed on the Trusted CA Certificate window.

Import X509 Trusted CA Certificate

Select a trusted CA certificate file.

Click [Import](#) to upload the certification.

For viewing each trusted CA certificate, click **View** to open the certificate detail information window. If you want to delete a CA certificate, choose the one and click **Delete** to remove all the certificate information.



3.12.3 Certificate Backup

Local certificate and Trusted CA certificate for this router can be saved within one file. Please click **Backup** on the following screen to save them. If you want to set encryption password for these certificates, please type characters in both fields of **Encrypt password** and **Confirm password**.

Also, you can use **Restore** to retrieve these two settings to the router whenever you want.

Certificate Management >> Certificate Backup

Certificate Backup / Restoration

Backup

Encrypt password:

Confirm password:

Click to download certificates to your local PC as a file.

Restoration

Select a backup file to restore.

Decrypt password:

Click to upload the file.

3.13 Central VPN Management

Vigor2860 can build virtual private network (VPN) between itself and any other TR-069 CPE by the function of central VPN management. In addition, it can be treated as a server (called CVM server) which can manage TR-069 CPE for periodical firmware upgrade, configuration backup and restoring configuration.



The f/w 1.0.7 of Vigor2960 and Vigor3900 is also embedded CVM for limited nodes.

Note: Such menu can manage the CPE connected through WAN only.

- Certificate Management
- Central VPN Management**
- General Setup
- CPE Management
- VPN Management
- Log & Alert
- Wireless LAN (2.4 GHz)

3.13.1 General Setup

This page is used to configure settings which will be used by the clients to register to such Vigor router. Click **General Settings** and **IPsec VPN Settings** to configure the basic settings for CVM mechanism.

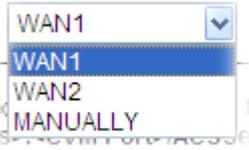
3.13.1.1 General Settings

To enable the CVM feature, the first thing you have to do is enabling CVM port or CVM SSL Port.

CVM >> General Setup

| General Settings | IPsec VPN Settings |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> CVM SSL Port: | <input type="text" value="8443"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> CVM Port: | <input type="text" value="8000"/> |
| WAN IP for Remote Connection: | <input type="text" value="WAN1"/> / <input type="text" value="---"/> |
| <p>Copy the following URL to paste onto Remote devices' ACS Server URL field "http://[hostname or IP address]:8000/ACSServer/services/ACSServlet" "https://[hostname or IP address]:8443/ACSServer/services/ACSServlet"</p> | |
| Username: | <input type="text" value="acs"/> |
| Password: | <input type="password" value="*****"/> |
| Polling Interval: | <input type="text" value="600"/> Seconds |
| <p>Note:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. To enable the CVM feature, one of the Port MUST be Enabled ! 2. If you choose to use CVM Port, the data between CVM Server & CPE Client will be transferred in plaintext, and could be revealed to ISP. | |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/> | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| CVM SSL Port | Check the box to enable the port setting. Type the port number in the box. |
| CVM Port | Check the box to enable the port setting. Type the port number in the box. |
| WAN IP for Remote Connection | For Vigor router can managed only the client from WAN interface, therefore you have to specify which interface will be used for such function. If you choose MANUALLY, you have to specify WAN IP address.  |
| Username | Type a username which will be used by any CPE tried to connect to Vigor router. |
| Password | Type the password for the user. |
| Polling Interval | Type the time value (unit is second). The range is from 60 ~ 86400. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.13.1.2 IPsec VPN Settings

Central VPN management is operated through IPsec VPN connection.

CVM >> General Setup

| General Settings | IPsec VPN Settings |
|------------------|--|
| IPsec Mode: | Aggressive mode <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Security Method: | ESP <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Encryption Type: | AES <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Local Subnet: | Manually <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="text"/> / <input type="text"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

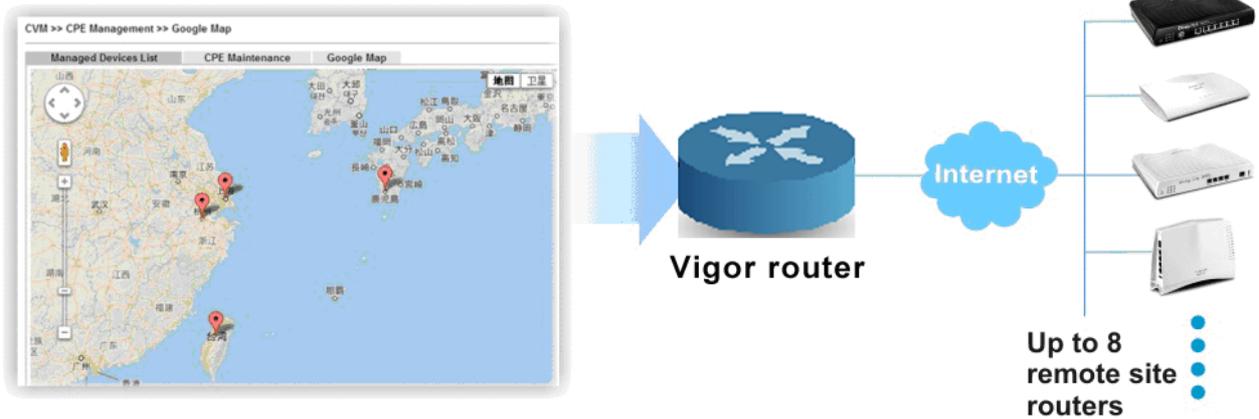
| Item | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| IPsec Mode | Choose Aggressive or Main as the IPsec Mode. |
| Security Method | Choose one of the following methods (AH or ESP) for the security of data transmission. For example, choose AH to specify the IPsec protocol for the Authentication Header protocol. The data will be authenticated but not be encrypted. |
| Encryption Type | Choose one of the selections as the encryption type. |
| Local Subnet | Type the IP address and subnet mask of local host. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.13.2 CPE Management

All the CPEs managed by Vigor2860 series can be seen with icons from this page

Before using such feature, make sure the CVM port has been enabled and configured properly.



3.13.2.1 Managed Device List

This page allows you to manage the CPEs connected to Vigor2860 series.

- Page without CPE connected

CVM >> CPE Management >> Managed Devices List

| Managed Devices List | CPE Maintenance | Google Map | | | | Refresh |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|----------|--|---------|
| Managed Devices List | | | | | | |
| Unmanaged Devices List | | | | | | |
| IP Address | Mac Address | Device Model | Description Name | Location | | |
| <input type="button" value="Add"/> | | | | | | |

- Page with CPE connected

CVM >> CPE Management >> Managed Devices List

Managed Devices List
CPE Maintenance
Google Map
Refresh

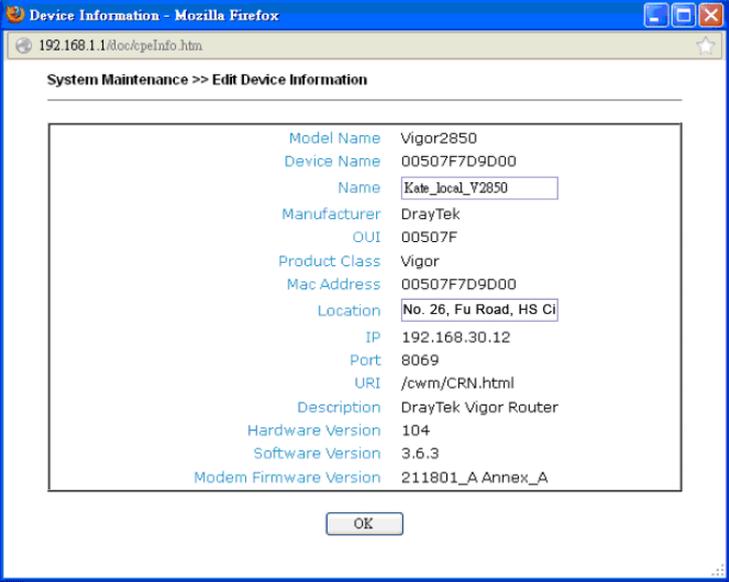
Managed Devices List

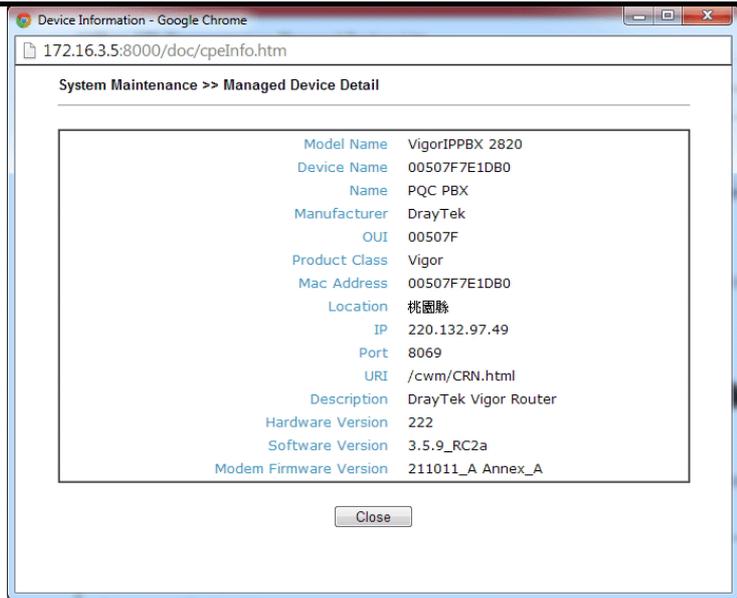

 192.168.100.220


Unmanaged Devices List

| IP Address | Mac Address | Device Model | Description Name | Location |
|------------------------------------|-------------|--------------|------------------|----------|
| <input type="button" value="Add"/> | | | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <p>Managed Devices List</p> | <p>This area displays device icons (up to 8) for the CPE managed by Vigor2860 series.</p> <p>Edit – To modify the name and location of specific CPE, click the one you want and click the Edit button. A pop up window will appear. Simply change the name and/or location manually.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">  </div> <p>Delete – To disconnect the management of any CPE, click the CPE icon you want and click the Delete button.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note: Double-clicking the CPE icon also can pop up the Managed Device Detail window. However, you cannot modify any data on the window.</p> </div> |



Unmanaged Devices List

Any device (CPE) which follows the standard of TR-069 can be configured and can be detected by Vigor2860 series automatically.

Only eight remote devices can be managed by Vigor2860 at one time. Therefore, other remote devices detected by Vigor2860 series might be displayed in such field.

Add – Move the selected device from Unmanaged Devices List to Managed Devices List.

IP Address – Display the IP address of the remote device.

Mac Address – Display the MAC address of the remote device.

Device Model – Display the model name of the remote device.

Description Name – Define the name or type the additional description of CPE for identification in VPN management and CPE management.

Location – Type the location (address) of the CPE to be displayed by Google Map.

Refresh

Click it to refresh current web page.

3.13.2.2 CPE Maintenance

This area displays all the profiles which are created for applying to the managed device. This page can help the administrator to do maintenance jobs like firmware upgrade, configuration backup, configuration restoration and etc.

CVM >> CPE Management >> CPE Maintenance

Managed Devices List
CPE Maintenance
Google Map
Refresh

USB Disk : Disk Usage : USB Storage Disconnected

| Index | Profile Name | Device Name | Action | File/Path | Schedule | Set to Factory Default |
|-------|--------------|-------------|--------|-----------|---|------------------------|
| 1. | | | | | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> | Now |
| 2. | | | | | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> | Now |
| 3. | | | | | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> | Now |
| 4. | | | | | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> | Now |
| 5. | | | | | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> | Now |
| 6. | | | | | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> | Now |
| 7. | | | | | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> | Now |
| 8. | | | | | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> | Now |

<< 1-8 | 9-16 >>

Note: To enable the schedulings, an USB storage **MUST** be plugged onto router.
This action is add to task queue, you can check the result later on page "CVM >> Alert/Log".

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Refresh | Click it to refresh current page. |
| USB Disk | USB Disk : - It means a USB disk connecting to Vigor2860. USB Disk : - It means no USB disk connecting to Vigor2860. |
| Disk Usage | Disk Usage : 1084MB / 2009MB - When a USB disk connects to Vigor2860, the disk usage and the disk capacity will be displayed in such field. Disk Usage : USB Storage Disconnected - When there is no USB disk connecting to Vigor2860, such message will be displayed in this field. |
| | Click the icon to see the content inside the USB disk. |
| Set to Factory Default | Click to clear all indexes. |
| Index | Display the number of the profile that you can edit. |
| Profile Name | Display the name of the maintenance profile. |
| Device Name | Display the name of the managed CPE that the maintenance |

| | |
|------------------|--|
| | profile will apply to. |
| Action | Display the action that managed CPE shall accept. |
| File/Path | Display the location of the file you want to save, restore or upgrade for CPE. |
| Schedule | Display the schedule profiles selected for such profile. |
| Now | The action will be performed for the selected CPE immediately. |

How to add a new Maintenance Profile

Follow the steps below to create a new maintenance profile.

1. Click any index number link, e.g., Index 1.
2. The Maintenance dialog appears.

Central VPN Management >> CPE Management >> Maintenance Profile

Profile Name:

Enable

Device Name:

Router Name: ???

Router Model: ???

Action Type:

File/Path:

Index in **Schedule**:

Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

Available parameters are listed as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Profile Name | Type the name of the maintenance profile. |
| Enable | Check it to enable such profile. |
| Device Name | The drop down list will display all the CPE devices detected by Vigor2860 series. Choose the one which will be applied with such new created profile. |
| Action Type | <p>There are three actions for you to choose for such profile.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Config Backup – It means such profile will be used for configuration backup of the selected CPE. ● Config Restore – It means such profile will be used for restoring the configuration of the selected CPE. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note: When restoring configuration to a CPE, make sure the configuration file you selected was backup from this CPE before. Because restoring from another device's configuration file may cause serious problem (e.g., Both devices have different ISP username/</p> </div> |

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| | password. Restoring configuration from one CPE to the other will cause Internet connection not being online). |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Firmware Upgrade – It means such profile will be used for firmware upgrade. |
| File/Path | Click Select to locate the file you want to save, restore or upgrade for CPE. |
| Index in Schedule | Vigor2860 series will perform the specified action to the selected CPE based on the schedule configured here. Specify one or two schedule profiles (represented by number) here. |

3. Enter all the settings and click **OK**.
4. A new maintenance profile has been created.

3.13.2.3 Google Map

To display the **location** of the managed CPE with a bird's eye view, open **Central VPN Management**>>**CPE Management** and click the tab of **Google Map**.



3.13.3 VPN Management

An easy and quick method is offered to configure VPN settings for building VPN connection automatically between Vigor2860 series (treated as VPN server) and other Vigor router (treated as CPE device, i.e., VPN client).

- Page without CPE connected

CVM >> VPN Management

| [Refresh](#) |



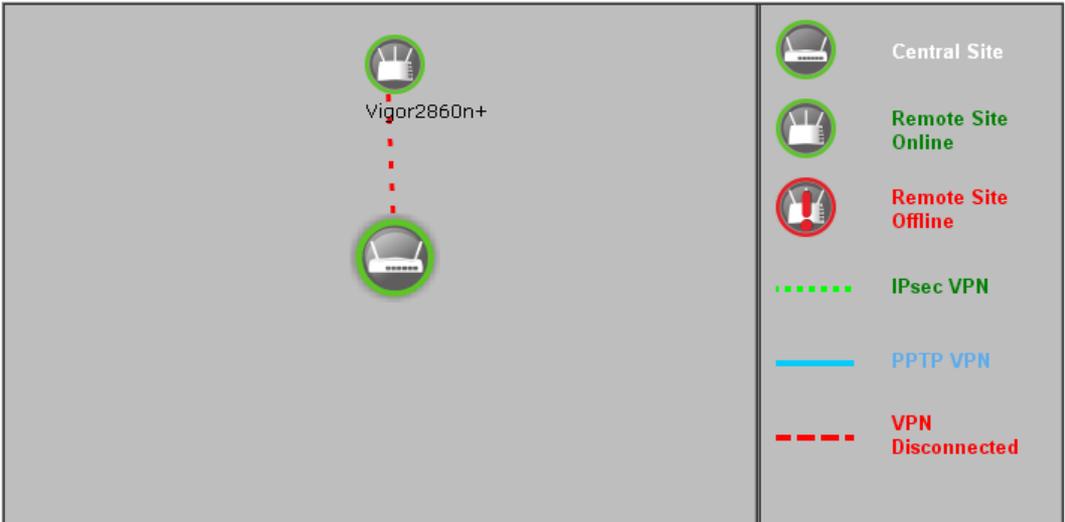
CPE VPN Connection List

| VPN | Type | Remote IP | Virtual Network | Tx Pkts | Tx Rate(Bps) | Rx Pkts | Rx Rate(Bps) | Up Time |
|-----|------|-----------|-----------------|---------|--------------|---------|--------------|---------|
| | | | | | | | | |

- Page with CPE connected

CVM >> VPN Management

| [Refresh](#) |



CPE VPN Connection List

| VPN | Type | Remote IP | Virtual Network | Tx Pkts | Tx Rate(Bps) | Rx Pkts | Rx Rate(Bps) | Up Time |
|-----|------|-----------|-----------------|---------|--------------|---------|--------------|---------|
| | | | | | | | | |

Available parameters are listed as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| VPN Management | |
| Display Screen | Once the device is managed (controlled) by Vigor2860 series, it will be displayed on such screen automatically. If not, refer to sections “ 4.15 How to manage the CPE (router) through Vigor2860? ” for more detailed information. |
| PPTP | To build a quick VPN connection with PPTP, simply click the managed CPE displayed on the Display Screen first and then click such button. If the connection is built successfully, related information will be displayed on CPE VPN Connection List. |
| IPsec | To build a quick VPN connection with IPsec, simply click the managed CPE displayed on the Display Screen first and then click such button. If the connection is built successfully, related information will be displayed on CPE VPN Connection List. |
| Advanced | <p>To build a VPN connection with detailed configuration (such as PPP authentication and VJ compression), click Advanced.</p>  <p>Specify the remote CPE from the Device drop down list; select PPTP or IPsec as the Dial Type; choose PAP only or PAP or CHAP as PPP authentication; enable (ON) or disable (OFF) VJ Compression; then click OK to build the VPN connection</p> |
| CPE VPN Connection List | |
| VPN | Display the name of the LAN-to-LAN profile. It is generated automatically when you click the PPTP/IPsec/Advanced button to build the VPN connection between Vigor2860 and remote CPE. |
| Type | Display the dial-in type and the authentication method. |
| Remote IP | Display the IP address of the remote CPE and the interface. |
| Virtual Network | Display the IP address and subnet mask of Vigor2860 series. |
| Tx Pkts | Display the number of the transmitted packets. |
| Tx Rate(Bps) | Display the number of the transmitted rate. |
| Rx Pkts | Display the number of the received packets. |
| Rx Rate(Bps) | Display the number of the received rate. |
| UP Time | Display the connection time of such VPN. |

3.13.4 Log & Alert

This page offers brief information to identify the CPE connected to Vigor2860 series.

CVM >> Log & Alert

| Log | | Alert | | |
|---|------------------|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| Refresh Clear | | | | |
| Display Mode <input type="text" value="Always record the new event"/> | | | | |
| Device Name | Description Name | time & date | Action Type | Message |
| 001DAAB61BB8 | | 2014-08-11 11:02:07 | CPE Maintenance | CPE Online |
| 001DAAB61BB8 | | 2000-01-01 00:00:00 | CPE Maintenance | Add CPE Successfully |

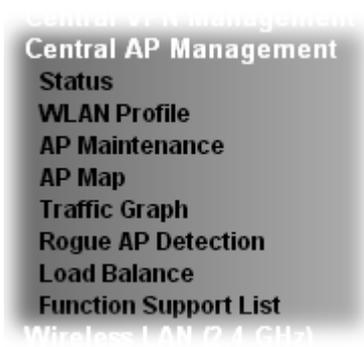
Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Display Mode | Choose the mode you want to display the related information on the following table. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Stop record when fulls – when the capacity of CVM log is full, the system will stop recording. ● Always record the new event – only the newest events will be recorded by the system. |
| Device Name | Display the name of the managed CPE. |
| Description Name | Display the brief explanation for the managed CPE. |
| Time & date | Display the time and date that the managed CPE scanned by Vigor2860 series. |
| Action Type | Display the action that Vigor2860 series will perform for the managed CPE. |
| Message | Display the information for each event. |

The Alert page offers brief information to identify the CPE connected to Vigor2860 series.

3.14 Central AP Management

Vigor2860 can manage the access points supporting AP management via Central AP Management.



3.14.1 Status

This page displays current status (online, offline or SSID hidden, IP address, encryption, channel, version, password and etc.) of the access points managed by Vigor router. Please open **Central AP Management>>Function Support List** to check what AP Models are supported.

Central AP Management >> Status

| Index | Device Name | IP Address | SSID | Encryption | Ch. | WL Client | Version | Password |
|---|--------------------|-------------|------|------------|-----|-----------|---------|--|
|  1 | AP810_007620482810 | 10.28.60.11 | | | | | | <input type="text" value="Password"/> <input type="button" value="x"/> |
|  2 | AP900_00507F223343 | 10.28.60.12 | | | | | | <input type="text" value="Password"/> <input type="button" value="x"/> |

Note:

 Green : Online  Red : Offline  Grey : Hidden SSID

Maximum support 20 APs.

When AP Devices connect via another intermediate router or switch, please check/unblock the following ports **UDP:67,68,4944** and **TCP:80** of the router/switch, thus AP status can be retrieved.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Index | Click the index number link for viewing the settings summary of the access point. |
| Device Name | The name of the AP managed by Vigor router will be displayed here. |
| IP Address | Display the true IP address of the access point. |
| SSID | Display the SSID configured for the access point(s) connected to Vigor2860. |
| Encryption | Display the encryption mode used by the access point. |
| Ch. | Display the channel used by the access point. |
| WL Client | Display the number of wireless clients (stations) connecting to the access point. In which, 0/64 means that up to 64 clients are allowed to connect to the access point. But, now no one connects to the |

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| | access point. The number displayed on the left side means 2.4GHz; and the number displayed on the right side means 5Ghz. |
| Version | Display the firmware version used by the access point. |
| Password | Vigor2860 can get related information of the access point by accessing into the web user interface of the access point. This button is used to modify the logging password of the connected access point. |

3.14.2 WLAN Profile

WLAN profile is used to apply to a selected access point. It is very convenient for the administrator to configure the setting for access point without opening the web user interface of the access point.

Central AP Management >> WLAN Profile

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| | Profile Name | Main SSID | Security | Multi-SSID | WLAN ACL | Rate Control |
|--------------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|------------|----------|--------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Default | DrayTek-LAN-A | WPA+WPA2/PSK | Enable | None | None |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |

Check the box on the left side of the selected profile to modify the content of the profile. The **Clone**, **Edit** and **Apply To Device** buttons will be available then.

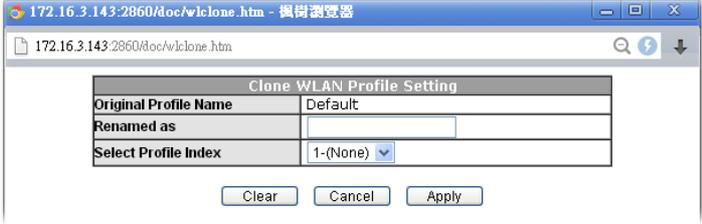
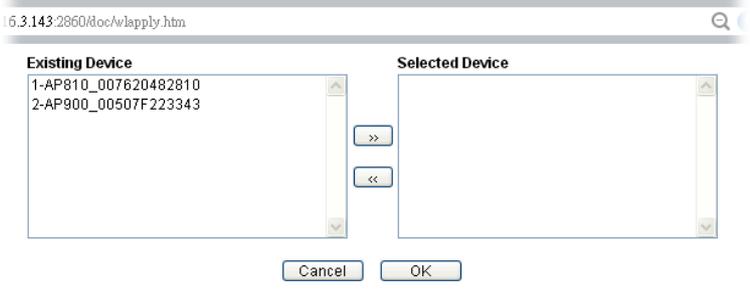
Central AP Management >> WLAN Profile

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| | Profile Name | Main SSID | Security | Multi-SSID | WLAN ACL | Rate Control |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|------------|----------|--------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Default | DrayTek-LAN-A | WPA+WPA2/PSK | Enable | None | None |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Profile | Display the name of the profile. The default profile cannot be renamed. |
| Main SSID | Display the SSID configured by such wireless profile. |
| Security | Display the security mode selected by such wireless profile. |
| Multi-SSID | Enable means multiple SSIDs (more than one) are active. Disable means only SSID1 is active. |

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| WLAN ACL | Display the name of the access control list. |
| Rate Control | Display the upload and/or download transmission rate. |
| Clone | <p>It can copy settings from an existing WLAN profile to another WLAN profile.</p> <p>First, you have to check the box of the existing profile as the original profile. Second, click Clone. The following dialog will appear.</p>  <p>Third, choose the profile index to accept the settings from the original profile. Forth, type a new name in the field of Renamed as. Last, click Apply to save the settings on this dialog.</p> <p>The new profile has been created with the settings coming from the original profile.</p> |
| Edit | It allows you to modify an existing wireless profile or create a new wireless profile. |
| Apply to Device | <p>Click it to apply the selected wireless profile to the specified Access Point.</p>  <p>Simply choose the device you want from Existing Device field. Click >> to move the device to Selected Device field. Then, click OK.</p> <p>The selected WLAN profile will be applied to the selected access point immediately. Later the access point will reboot.</p> |

How to edit the wireless LAN profile?

1. Check the box on the left side of the selected profile.
2. Click the **Edit** button to display the following page.

Central AP Management >> WLAN Profile

WLAN Profile Edit

| Device Settings | |
|-----------------|---|
| Profile Name | Default <input type="checkbox"/> Auto Provision |
| Administrator | admin |
| Password | ***** |
| 2nd Subnet | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| Operation Mode | AP |

| 2.4G WLAN General Settings | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Wireless LAN | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| 2.4G Mode | Mixed(11b+11g+11n) |
| 2.4G Channel | 2462MHz (Channel 11) |
| WMM | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| Tx Power | 100% |

| 5G WLAN General Settings | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Wireless LAN | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| 5G Mode | Mixed (11a+11n) |
| 5G Channel | 5180MHz (Channel36) |

Note: The function of **Auto Provision** is available for the default WLAN profile.

3. After finished the general settings configuration, click **Next** to open the following page for 2.4G wireless security settings.

Central AP Management >> WLAN Profile

| SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | | | |

| 2.4G SSID | |
|-------------------|---|
| Active | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| SSID | DrayTek-LAN-A LAN-A <input type="checkbox"/> Hide SSID |
| VLAN | 0 (0:untag) |
| Isolate | <input type="checkbox"/> From Member |
| Security Settings | |
| Encryption | Disable Set up RADIUS Server if 802.1X is enabled. WPA WPA Algorithms <input type="radio"/> TKIP <input type="radio"/> AES <input checked="" type="radio"/> TKIP/AES Pass Phrase Key Renewal Interval 0 Seconds WEP Setup WEP Key if WEP is enabled. 802.1X WEP <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| Access Control | |
| Mode | None |
| List | <div style="border: 1px solid gray; height: 40px; width: 100%;"></div> Client's MAC Address : : : : : <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> |
| Bandwidth Limit | |
| Status | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| Upload | 100 Kbps |
| Total Upload | 200 Kbps |
| Auto Adjustment | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| Download | 100 Kbps |
| Total Download | 200 Kbps |

- After finished the above web page configuration, click **Next** to open the following page for 5G wireless security settings.

Central AP Management >> WLAN Profile

| 5G SSID1 | 5G SSID2 | 5G SSID3 | 5G SSID4 |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------|--|
| 5G SSID | | | |
| Active | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable | | |
| SSID | DrayTek-5G | LAN-A | <input type="checkbox"/> Hide SSID |
| VLAN | 0 (0:untag) | | |
| Isolate | <input type="checkbox"/> From Member | | |
| Security Settings | | | |
| Encryption | Disable | | |
| | Set up RADIUS Server if 802.1X is enabled. | | |
| | WPA | | |
| | WPA Algorithms <input type="radio"/> TKIP <input type="radio"/> AES <input checked="" type="radio"/> TKIP/AES Pass Phrase <input type="text"/> Key Renewal Interval <input type="text" value="3600"/> Seconds WEP Setup WEP Key if WEP is enabled. 802.1X WEP <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | |
| Access Control | | | |
| Mode | None | | |
| List | | | |
| | Client's MAC Address : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | | |
| Bandwidth Limit | | | |
| Status | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | Auto Adjustment <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| Upload | <input type="text" value="0"/> Kbps | Download | <input type="text" value="0"/> Kbps |

Note : 5G SSID Configuration only work with VigorAP800 v1.1.1 and newer APM Client.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| Backup ACL Cfg : <input type="button" value="Backup"/> | Upload From File: <input type="button" value="Select"/> | <input type="button" value="Restore"/> |
|--|---|--|

- When you finished the above web page configuration, click **Finish** to exit and return to the first page. The modified WLAN profile will be shown on the web page.

Central AP Management >> WLAN Profile

| | Profile Name | Main SSID | Security | Multi-SSID | WLAN ACL | Rate Control | Set to Factory Default |
|--------------------------|--------------|---------------|----------|------------|----------|------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Default | DrayTek-LAN-A | Disable | Disable | None | ↑100 Kbps ↓100 Kbps | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 123 | DrayTek | Disable | Disable | None | None | x |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | |

3.14.3 AP Maintenance

Vigor router can execute configuration backup, configuration restoration, firmware upgrade and remote reboot for the APs managed by the router. It is very convenient for the administrator to process maintenance without accessing into the web user interface of the access point.

Note: Config Backup can be performed to one AP at one time. Others functions (e.g., Config Restore, Firmware Upgrade, Remote Reboot) can be performed to more than one AP at one time by using Vigor2860.

Central AP Management >> AP Maintenance

AP Maintenance

Select Action
 Action Type:
 File/Path:

Select Device
 Existing Device:
 Selected Device:

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Action | There are four actions provided by Vigor router to manage the access points.  |
| File/Path | Specify the file and the path which will be used to perform Config Restore or Firmware Upgrade . |
| Select Device | Display all the available access points managed by Vigor router. Simply click << or >> to move the device(s) between Select Device and Selected Device areas. |
| Selected Device | Display the access points that will be applied by such function after clicking OK. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to perform the action.

3.14.4 AP Map

This function is helpful to determine the best location for VigorAP in a room. A floor plan of a room is required to be uploaded first. By dragging and dropping available VigorAP icon from the list to the floor plan, the placement with the best wireless coverage will be clearly indicated through simulated signal strength.

Central AP Management >> AP Map

| | | | | | | Set to Factory Default |
|--------------------------|----------|----------------------|--------------------|--------------|-----------|--|
| | Location | AP | AP Signal Strength | Dimension(m) | Map | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 | AP810: 3 AP900: 1 | 30% | 200X100 | MAP ready | ✘ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Check the box to view or edit the AP Map. |
| Location | Display a brief description (e.g., ground, roof) of the AP Map. |
| AP | Display the model name and number of VigorAP located on the AP map. |
| AP Signal Strength | Display the pre-defined signal strength of the AP map. |
| Dimension(m) | Display the width and length of the AP map. |
| Map | Display if the uploaded file for AP map is ready or not. |
| View | Click it to review the layout for the selected AP map. |
| Edit | Click it to modify the geographic settings for the selected AP Map profile. |
| Cancel | Click it to cancel the configuration in such page. |
| Set to Factory Default | Click the link to clear current page configuration. |

Editing the AP Map Profile

1. Select an index and click **Edit** to open the following web page.

Central AP Management >> AP Map

AP Map Profile Edit

| Geographic Settings | |
|------------------------|--|
| Location(Profile Name) | <input type="text" value="testmap"/> |
| Dimensions | Length <input type="text" value="80"/> m width <input type="text" value="40"/> m |
| Upload Map | <input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 2dhi6v7.png |

Note: The size of the map should be 200KB or smaller.

Available settings are explained as follows:

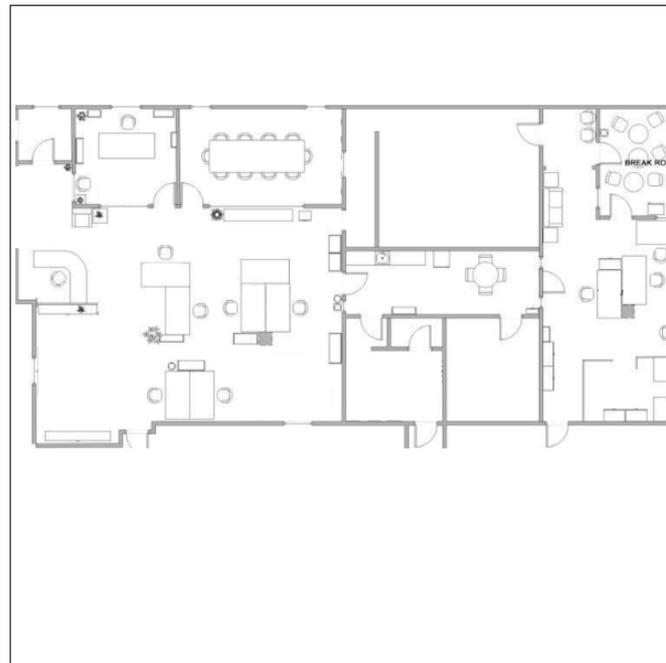
| Item | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Location (Profile Name) | Type a name (e.g., groundfloor) for the AP map profile. |
| Dimensions | Type the real length and width of the uploaded map. |
| Upload Map | Click the Select button to choose an image file (only JPG and PNG are supported) for floor plan. |
| Cancel | Click it to cancel the configuration. |
| Next | Click it to go to the next configuration page. |

2. Click **Next**. The configuration page with floor plan will be shown as follows.

Central AP Management >> AP Map

AP Map Profile Edit

Location: testmap 80 x 40 (m)



Compatible AP List

Step 1: Drag and drop AP from listed below to map



Step 2: Select signal strength

AP Signal Strength:

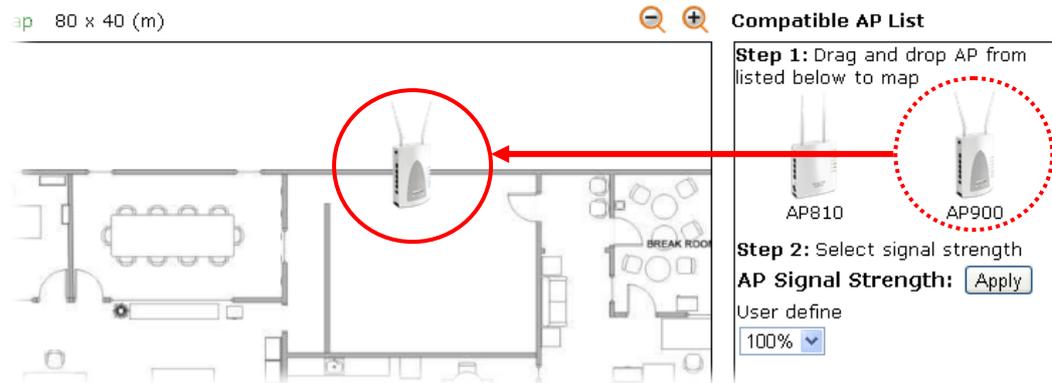
User define

Whitelist AP

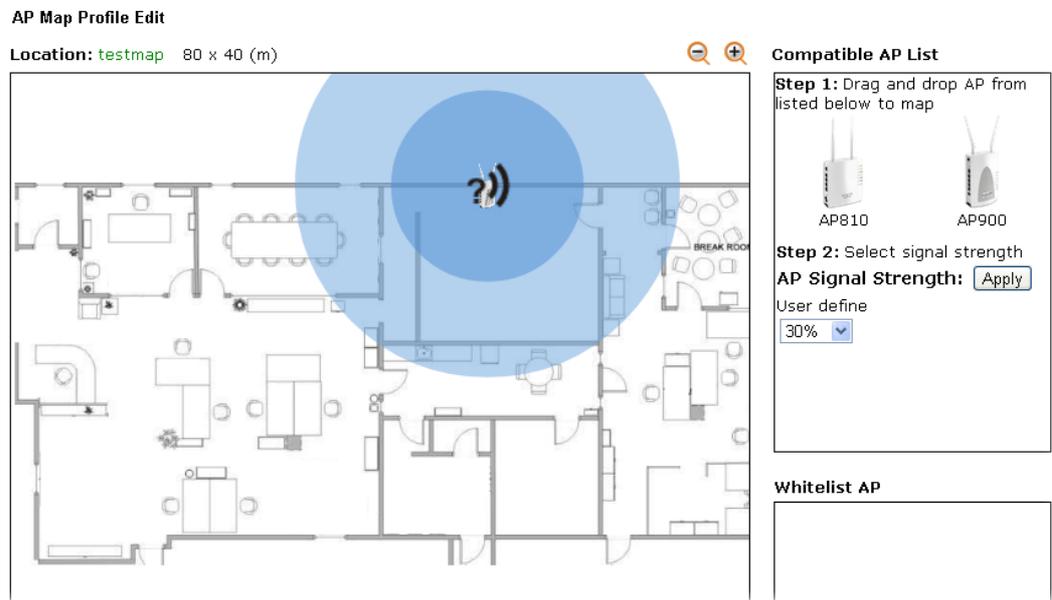
Step 3: Please right click AP on the map to attach a real AP to it.

Step 4: Save current settings

3. Drag and drop an AP icon from **Compatible AP List** to the map on the left side.



4. Choose the signal strength (e.g., 30% in this case) from **User Define** drop down list. Click **Apply**.



5. Adjust the AP on the map to find out which place can have the best wireless coverage. At last, click **Save**.

Central AP Management >> AP Map

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| | Location | AP | AP Signal Strength | Dimension(m) | Map | |
|--------------------------|----------|----------|--------------------|--------------|-----------|------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | testmap | AP900: 1 | 30% | 80X40 | MAP ready | x |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | |

3.14.5 Traffic Graph

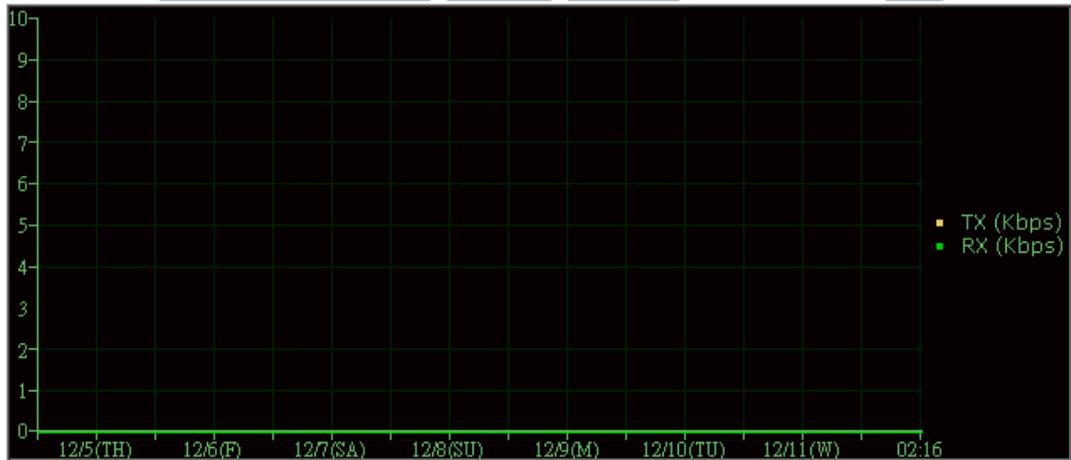
Click **Traffic Graph** to open the web page. Choose one of the managed Access Points, LAN-A or LAN-B, daily or weekly for viewing data transmission chart. Click **Refresh** to renew the graph at any time.

Note: Enabling/Disabling such function will also enable/disable the External Devices function.

Central AP Management >> Traffic Graph

Enable

Show Chart: VigorAP900, VigorAP900 LAN-A Weekly Refresh Min(s): 1 | **Refresh** |



Note : Enabling/Disabling AP Traffic Graph will also Enable/Disable the External Devices Function.

The horizontal axis represents time; the vertical axis represents the transmission rate (in kbps).

3.14.6 Rogue AP Detection

It displays the access point scanned by Vigor router. In which, the APs will be classified with friendly APs, rogue APs and unknown APs in different colors.

Central AP Management >> Rogue AP Detection

Rogue AP Detection

Enable: Neighbor AP Detection Local WLAN Detection

All APs Refresh Min(s) : 1

| Ch | SSID | Mode | BSSID | Security | Signal (%) | Beacon Period | Last Detected |
|----|------|------|-------|----------|------------|---------------|---------------|
|----|------|------|-------|----------|------------|---------------|---------------|

Note:
 Green :Friendly APs  Red :Rogue APs  Black :Unknown APs

Vigor2860 doesn't apply any security policies to Rogue AP List.

Below shows the detected APs by clicking **OK**.

Central AP Management >> Rogue AP Detection

Rogue AP Detection

Enable: Neighbor AP Detection Local WLAN Detection

All APs Refresh Min(s) : 1

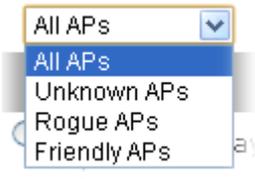
| Ch | SSID | Mode | BSSID | Security | Signal (%) | Beacon Period | Last Detected | |
|--|------|--------------------|-------|-------------------|------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
|  ?) | 11 | James_AP800 | AP | 00:50:7f:cc:08:e8 | Mixed | 68 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 11 | DrayTek-LAN-B | AP | 02:1d:aa:74:20:44 | Mixed | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 11 | DrayTek-LAN-A | AP | 00:1d:aa:76:20:44 | Mixed | 99 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 11 | James_900 | AP | 00:1d:aa:9c:f0:20 | WPA | 89 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 11 | burce24G4 | AP | 0a:1d:aa:9c:f7:20 | NONE | 37 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 11 | burce24G3 | AP | 06:1d:aa:9c:f7:20 | NONE | 52 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 11 | burce24G2 | AP | 02:1d:aa:9c:f7:20 | NONE | 52 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 11 | burce24G1 | AP | 00:1d:aa:9c:f7:20 | WPA2PSK | 47 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 10 | Wesley_crash_test3 | AP | 0a:1d:aa:b0:bc:38 | NONE | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 10 | Wesley_crash_test2 | AP | 06:1d:aa:b0:bc:38 | NONE | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 10 | Wesley_crash_test1 | AP | 02:1d:aa:b0:bc:38 | NONE | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 10 | Wesley_crash_test | AP | 00:1d:aa:b0:bc:38 | NONE | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  ?) | 6 | DrayTek | AP | 00:1d:aa:9c:f7:38 | Mixed | 78 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |

Note:
 Green :Friendly APs  Red :Rogue APs  Black :Unknown APs

Vigor2860 doesn't apply any security policies to Rogue AP List.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------|--|
| Enable | Neighbor AP Detection – The access point(s) registered to Vigor2860 will be used to detect other access points and send |

| | |
|---|---|
| | <p>the scanned results to Vigor2860. Later, the scanned result will be displayed on this page.</p> <p>Local WLAN Detection – The router will detect all the access points through wireless LAN connection.</p> |
|  | Specify the access points which are classified under each type. |
| Refresh Min(s) | Use the drop down list to specify the time to refresh the web page. |
| Refresh | Click such link to refresh the web page immediately. |
| Ch | Display the channel used by the detected access point. |
| SSID | Display the SSID specified for the detected access point. |
| Mode | Display the mode (AP or Ad Hoc) used by the detected access point. |
| BSSID | Display the MAC address of the detected access point. |
| Security | Display the encryption mode used by the access point. |
| Signal (%) | Display the signal strength (represented by percentage) sent by the access point. |
| Beacon Period | Display the period (time) of the beacon. The beacon signal will be sent out periodically. |
| Last Detected | Display the data and time that such access point detected by Vigor router. |

All the APs detected by Vigor router will be treated as unknown APs. You have to specify which AP is friendly and which one is Rogue respectively. Follow the steps below to perform the classification of access points.

1. Click the radio button on one of the access points. In this case, DrayTek-LAN-A is selected.

Central AP Management >> Rogue AP Detection

Rogue AP Detection

Enable: Neighbor AP Detection Local WLAN Detection

All APs Refresh Min(s) :

| | Ch | SSID | Mode | BSSID | Security | Signal (%) | Beacon Period | Last Detected |
|----------------------------------|----|---------------|------|-------------------|----------|------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <input type="radio"/> | 11 | James_AP800 | AP | 00:50:7f:cc:08:e8 | Mixed | 68 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
| <input type="radio"/> | 11 | DrayTek-LAN-B | AP | 02:1d:aa:74:20:44 | Mixed | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> | 11 | DrayTek-LAN-A | AP | 00:1d:aa:76:20:44 | Mixed | 99 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
| <input type="radio"/> | 11 | James_900 | AP | 00:1d:aa:9c:f0:20 | WPA | 89 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |

- Later, some options will appear on the bottom of the page.

?)
6
DrayTek
AP
00:1d:aa:9c:f7:38
Mixed
78
100
Jan 01,00:50:26

AP's MAC Address : : : : : :
AP's SSID

Add to Friendly APs:
Rogue APs:

Delete from Rogue APs:
Friendly APs:

Note:
?) Green :Friendly APs
 ?) Red :Rogue APs
 ?) Black :Unknown APs

Vigor2860 doesn't apply any security policies to Rogue AP List.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| AP's MAC Address | The MAC address of the selected AP will be displayed here automatically. |
| AP's SSID | The SSID of the selected AP will be displayed here automatically. |
| Add to | <p>Friendly APs - If the selected AP shall be treated as Friendly AP, simply click Add to change its classification from unknown to Friendly.</p> <p>Rogue APs - If the selected AP shall be treated as rogue AP, simply click Add to change its classification from unknown to Rogue.</p> |
| Delete From | <p>Rogue APs - If you want to change the classification of the rogue AP, simply choose the one and click Delete. Later, the page will refresh and the one will be classified as Unknown.</p> <p>Friendly APs - If you want to change the classification of the friendly AP, simply choose the one and click Delete. Later, the page will refresh and the one will be classified as Unknown.</p> |

- Click **OK** to save the settings.

The following figure shows the APs classified and displayed in different colors.

Rogue AP Detection

Enable: Neighbor AP Detection Local WLAN Detection

All APs Refresh Min(s) : | [Refresh](#) |

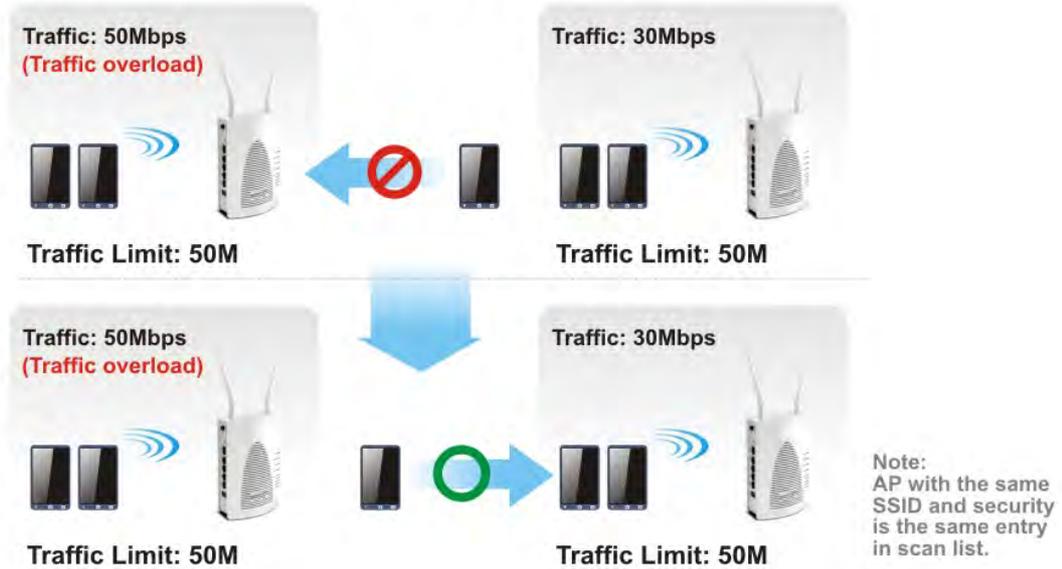
| Ch | SSID | Mode | BSSID | Security | Signal (%) | Beacon Period | Last Detected |
|--|--------------------|------|-------------------|----------|------------|---------------|-----------------|
|  11 | James_AP800 | AP | 00:50:7f:cc:08:e8 | Mixed | 68 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  11 | DrayTek-LAN-B | AP | 02:1d:aa:74:20:44 | Mixed | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  11 | DrayTek-LAN-A | AP | 00:1d:aa:76:20:44 | Mixed | 99 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  11 | James_900 | AP | 00:1d:aa:9c:f0:20 | WPA | 89 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  11 | burce24G4 | AP | 0a:1d:aa:9c:f7:20 | NONE | 37 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  11 | burce24G3 | AP | 06:1d:aa:9c:f7:20 | NONE | 52 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  11 | burce24G2 | AP | 02:1d:aa:9c:f7:20 | NONE | 52 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  11 | burce24G1 | AP | 00:1d:aa:9c:f7:20 | WPA2PSK | 47 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  10 | Wesley_crash_test3 | AP | 0a:1d:aa:b0:bc:38 | NONE | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  10 | Wesley_crash_test2 | AP | 06:1d:aa:b0:bc:38 | NONE | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  10 | Wesley_crash_test1 | AP | 02:1d:aa:b0:bc:38 | NONE | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  10 | Wesley_crash_test | AP | 00:1d:aa:b0:bc:38 | NONE | 100 | 100 | Jan 01,00:50:26 |
|  6 | DrayTek | AP | 00:1d:aa:9c:f7:38 | Mixed | 78 | 100 | Jan 00,00:00:00 |

Note:
 Green :Friendly APs  Red :Rogue APs  Black :Unknown APs

3.14.7 Load Balance

The parameters configured for Load Balance can help to distribute the traffic for all of the access points registered to Vigor router. Thus, the bandwidth will not be occupied by certain access points.

AP Load Balance (Traffic overload)



Central AP Management >> Load Balance

Enable:

Mode: (Overload Detected By)

By Station Number
 Maximum Station Number:
 Wireless LAN (2.4GHz) (3-64)
 Wireless LAN (5GHz) (3-64)

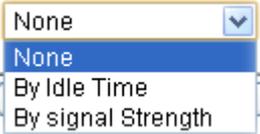
By Traffic
 Upload Limit bps (Default unit: K)
 Download Limit bps (Default unit: K)

Force Overload Disassociation:

Note: The maximum station number of Wireless LAN (2.4GHz) will be applied to both Wireless LAN (2.4GHz) and Wireless LAN (5GHz) if the firmware version of AP900 is less than or equal to 1.1.4.1.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------|--|
| Enable | Check the box to enable such function. |
| Mode | <p>It is used to determine the operation mode when the system detects overload between access points.</p> <p>By Station Number –The operation of load balance will be executed based on the station number configured in this page. It is used to limit the allowed number for the station connecting to the access point. The purpose is to prevent lots of stations connecting to access point at the same time and causing traffic</p> |

| | |
|---|--|
| | <p>unbalanced. Please define the required station number for WLAN (2.4GHz) and WLAN (5GHz) separately.</p> <p>By Traffic – The operation of load balance will executed according to the traffic configuration in this page.</p> <p>Upload Limit –Use the drop down list to specify the traffic limit for uploading.</p> <p>Download Limit – Use the drop down list to specify the traffic limit for downloading.</p> |
| <p>Force Overload Disassociation</p> | <p>By Idle Time - When the access point is overload (e.g., reaching the limit of station number or limit of network traffic), it will terminate the network connection of the client's station which is idle for a longest time.</p> <p>By signal Strength - When the access point is overload (e.g., reaching the limit of station number or limit of network traffic), it will terminate the network connection of the client's station with the weakest signal.</p>  |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.14.8 Function Support List

Click the **Client** tab to list the AP management functions that the Access Points support under different firmware versions.

Click the **Server** tab to list the AP management functions that Vigor router supports under different firmware versions.

Central AP Management >> Function Support List

| Client | Server | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Function Name | Model Name | | | | | | |
| | AP800 | | | AP900 | | AP810 | |
| | 1.0.5 | 1.1.0 | 1.1.1 | 1.1.0 | 1.1.1 | 1.1.0 | 1.1.1 |
| Register | | | | | | | |
| DHCP | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |
| Static IP | | | √ | | √ | √ | √ |
| Profile | | | | | | | |
| 2.4GHz | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |
| 5GHz | | | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |
| AP Mode | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |
| Repeater Mode | | | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |
| Client Disable Auto Provision | | | √ | | √ | √ | √ |
| WLAN Enable/Disable | | | | | √ | √ | √ |
| Station List | | | | | | | |
| Station List | | | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |
| Load Balance | | | | | | | |
| Load Balance | | | | | √ | | √ |
| Traffic Graph | | | | | | | |
| Traffic Graph | | | √ | √ | √ | √ | √ |
| Rogue AP Detection | | | | | | | |
| Rogue AP Detection | | | | | √ | | √ |
| AP Maintenance | | | | | | | |
| Config Backup/Restore | | | | | √ | | √ |
| Firmware Upgrade | | | | | √ | | √ |
| Remote Reboot | | | | | √ | | √ |

3.15 VoIP

Note: This function is used for “V” models.

Voice over IP network (VoIP) enables you to use your broadband Internet connection to make toll quality voice calls over the Internet.

There are many different call signaling protocols, methods by which VoIP devices can talk to each other. The most popular protocols are SIP, MGCP, Megaco and H.323. These protocols are not all compatible with each other (except via a soft-switch server).

The Vigor V models support the SIP protocol as this is an ideal and convenient deployment for the ITSP (Internet Telephony Service Provider) and softphone and is widely supported. SIP is an end-to-end, signaling protocol that establishes user presence and mobility in VoIP structure. Every one who wants to talk using his/her SIP Uniform Resource Identifier, “SIP Address”. The standard format of SIP URI is

sip: user:password @ host: port

Some fields may be optional in different use. In general, “host” refers to a domain. The “userinfo” includes the user field, the password field and the @ sign following them. This is very similar to a URL so some may call it “SIP URL”. SIP supports peer-to-peer direct calling and also calling via a SIP proxy server (a role similar to the gatekeeper in H.323 networks), while the MGCP protocol uses client-server architecture, the calling scenario being very similar to the current PSTN network.

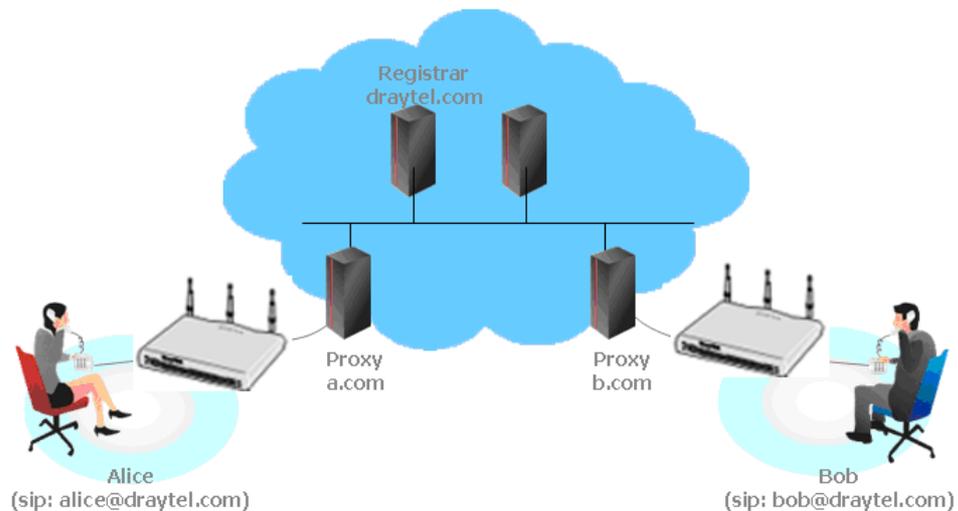
After a call is setup, the voice streams transmit via RTP (Real-Time Transport Protocol). Different codecs (methods to compress and encode the voice) can be embedded into RTP packets. Vigor V models provide various codecs, including G.711 A/ μ -law, G.723, G.726 and G.729 A & B. Each codec uses a different bandwidth and hence provides different levels of voice quality. The more bandwidth a codec uses the better the voice quality, however the codec used must be appropriate for your Internet bandwidth.

Usually there will be two types of calling scenario, as illustrated below:

- **Calling via SIP Servers**

First, the Vigor V models of yours will have to register to a SIP Registrar by sending registration messages to validate. Then, both parties’ SIP proxies will forward the sequence of messages to caller to establish the session.

If you both register to the same SIP Registrar, then it will be illustrated as below:



The major benefit of this mode is that you don't have to memorize your friend's IP address, which might change very frequently if it's dynamic. Instead of that, you will only have to use **dial plan** or directly dial your friend's **account name** if you are with the same SIP Registrar.

- **Peer-to-Peer**

Before calling, you have to know your friend's IP Address. The Vigor VoIP Routers will build connection between each other.



- Our Vigor V models firstly apply efficient codecs designed to make the best use of available bandwidth, but Vigor V models also equip with automatic QoS assurance. QoS Assurance assists to assign high priority to voice traffic via Internet. You will always have the required inbound and outbound bandwidth that is prioritized exclusively for Voice traffic over Internet but you just get your data a little slower and it is tolerable for data traffic.



3.15.1 DialPlan

This page allows you to set phone book, digit map, call barring, regional settings and PSTN setup for the VoIP function. Click the links on this page to access into next pages for detailed settings.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

DialPlan Configuration

| |
|---|
| Phone Book Digit Map Call Barring Regional PSTN Setup |
|---|

Secure Phone configuration

| |
|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Secure Phone (ZRTP+SRTP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable SAS Voice Prompt |
|--|

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Enable Secure Phone | It allows users to have encrypted RTP stream with the peer side using the same protocol (ZRTP+SRTP). Check this box to have secure call. |
| Enable SAS Voice Prompt | If it is enabled, SAS prompt will be heard for both ends every time. If it is disabled, no SAS prompt will be heard any more. |

Application for Secure Phone

Enable SAS Voice Prompt, for ex: if vigor router A calls vigor router B with checking **Enable Secure Phone** and **Enable SAS Voice Prompt**, then:

1. After the connection established, vigor router A will send SAS voice prompt to A and vigor router B will send the SAS voice prompt to B.
2. Then the RTP traffic is secured until the call ends.
3. If vigor router A wants to call vigor router B again next time, both A and B will not hear any voice prompt again even checking **Enable SAS Voice Prompt** on web UI. It means only the first call between them will have voice prompt.

Enable SAS Voice Prompt, for ex: if vigor router A calls vigor router B with checking **Enable Secure Phone** but not **Enable SAS Voice Prompt**, then:

1. After the connection established, vigor router A will **NOT** send SAS voice prompt to vigor router A and vigor router B will **NOT** send the SAS voice prompt to vigor router B.
2. Even no voice prompt, but the RTP traffic is still secured until the call ends.

Note: If the incoming or outgoing calls do not match any entry on the phonebook, the router will try to make the call "being protected". But, if the call ends up "unprotected"(e.g. peer side does not support ZRTP+SRTP), the router will not play out a warning message.

Phone Book

In this section, you can set your VoIP contacts in the “phonebook”. It can help you to make calls quickly and easily by using “speed-dial” **Phone Number**. There are total 60 index entries in the phonebook for you to store all your friends and family members’ SIP addresses. **Loop through** and **Backup Phone Number** will be displayed if you are using Vigor2830Vn for setting the phone book.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

Phone Book

| Index | Phone number | Display Name | SIP URL | Dial Out Account | Loop through | Backup Phone Number | Status |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------|---------|------------------|--------------|---------------------|--------|
| 1. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 2. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 3. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 4. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 5. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 6. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 7. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 8. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 9. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 10. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 11. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 12. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 13. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 14. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 15. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 16. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 17. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 18. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 19. | | | | Default | None | | x |
| 20. | | | | Default | None | | x |

<< [1-20](#) | [21-40](#) | [41-60](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive

Click any index number to display the dial plan setup page.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

Phone Book Index No. 1

Enable

Phone Number

Display Name

SIP URL @

Dial Out Account

Loop through

Backup Phone Number

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Enable | Click this to enable this entry. |
| Phone Number | The speed-dial number of this index. This can be any |

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| | number you choose, using digits 0-9 and * . |
| Display Name | The Caller-ID that you want to be displayed on your friend's screen. This let your friend can easily know who's calling without memorizing lots of SIP URL Address. |
| SIP URL | Enter your friend's SIP Address. |
| Dial Out Account | Choose one of the SIP accounts for this profile to dial out. It is useful for both sides (caller and callee) that registered to different SIP Registrar servers. If caller and callee do not use the same SIP server, sometimes, the VoIP phone call connection may not succeed. By using the specified dial out account, the successful connection can be assured. |
| Loop through | Choose PSTN to enable loop through function.  |
| Backup Phone Number | When the VoIP phone is obstructs or the Internet breaks down for some reasons, the backup phone will be dialed out to replace the VoIP phone number. At this time, the phone call will be changed from VoIP phone into PSTN call according to the loop through direction chosen. Note that, during the phone switch, the blare of phone will appear for a short time. And when the VoIP phone is switched into the PSTN phone, the telecom co. might charge you for the connection fee. Please type in backup phone number for this VoIP phone setting. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Note: If the incoming or outgoing calls do not match any entry on the phonebook, the router will try to make the call "being protected". But, if the call ends up "unprotected"(e.g. peer side does not support ZRTP+SRTP), the router will not play out a warning message.

Digit Map

For the convenience of user, this page allows users to edit prefix number for the SIP account with adding number, stripping number or replacing number. It is used to help user having a quick and easy way to dial out through VoIP interface.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup ?

Digit Map Setup

| # | Enable | Match Prefix | Mode | OP Number | Min Len | Max Len | Route | Move Up | Move Down |
|----|-------------------------------------|--------------|---------|-----------|---------|---------|-------|---------|-----------|
| 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 03 | Replace | 8863 | 7 | 8 | PSTN | | Down |
| 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 886 | Strip | 886 | 9 | 10 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 11 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 12 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 13 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 14 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 15 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 16 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 17 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 18 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 19 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | Down |
| 20 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | None | | 0 | 0 | PSTN | UP | |

Note:

- The length for Min Len and Max Len fields should be between 0~25.
- Wildcard '?' is supported.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Enable | Check this box to invoke this setting. |
| Match Prefix | It is used to match with the number you dialed and may modified by the action (add, strip or replace) with the OP Number . |
| Mode | <p>None - No action.</p> <p>Add - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be added before the match prefix number for calling out through the specific route.</p> <p>Strip - When you choose this mode, the partial or whole match prefix number will be deleted according to the OP number. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, the OP number of 886 will be deleted completely for the match prefix number is set with 886.</p> <p>Replace - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be replaced by the prefix number for calling out through the specific VoIP interface. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, the prefix number of</p> |

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| | <p>03 will be replaced by 8863. For example: dial number of “031111111” will be changed to “8863111111” and sent to SIP server.</p> <p>Mode</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>Replace ▾</p> <p>None</p> <p>Add</p> <p>Strip</p> <p>Replace</p> </div> |
| OP Number | The front number you type here is the first part of the account number that you want to execute special function (according to the chosen mode) by using the prefix number. |
| Min Len | Set the minimal length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, if the dial number is between 7 and 9, that number can apply the prefix number settings here. |
| Max Len | Set the maximum length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings. |
| Route | Choose the one that you want to enable the prefix number settings from the saved SIP accounts. Please set up one SIP account first to make this interface available. This item will be changed according to the port settings configured in VoIP>> Phone Settings . |
| Move UP /Move Down | Click the link to move the selected entry up or down. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Call Barring

Call barring is used to block phone calls coming from the one that is not welcomed.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup



| Call Barring Setup | | | | | | Set to Factory Default |
|--------------------|----------------|--------------|------------------------|---------|----------|--|
| Index | Call Direction | Barring Type | Barring Number/URL/URI | Route | Schedule | Status |
| 1. | | | | Wizard1 | | x |
| 2. | | | | Wizard1 | | x |
| 3. | | | | Wizard1 | | x |
| 4. | | | | Wizard1 | | x |
| 5. | | | | Wizard1 | | x |
| 6. | | | | Wizard1 | | x |
| 7. | | | | Wizard1 | | x |
| 8. | | | | Wizard1 | | x |
| 9. | | | | Wizard1 | | x |
| 10. | | | | Wizard1 | | x |

<< 1-10 | 11-20 >>

[Next >>](#)

Advanced:
[Block Anonymous](#)
[Block Unknown Domain](#)
[Block IP Address](#)

Click any index number to display the dial plan setup page.

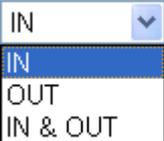
VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

Call Barring Index No. 1

| | |
|--|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable | |
| Call Direction | IN <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Barring Type | Specific URI/URL <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Specific URI/URL | <input type="text"/> |
| Route | All <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup | <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> |

Note: Wildcard '?' is supported.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Enable | Check it to enable this entry. |
| Call Direction | Determine the direction for the phone call, IN – incoming call, OUT-outgoing call, IN & OUT – both incoming and outgoing calls.  |
| Barring Type | Determine the type of the VoIP phone call, URI/URL or number.  |
| Specific URI/URL or Specific Number | This field will be changed based on the type you selected for barring Type. |
| Route | All means all the phone calls will be blocked with such mechanism. |
| Index (1-15) in Schedule | Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the call barring according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section Applications>>Schedule for detailed configuration. |

Additionally, you can set advanced settings for call barring such as **Block Anonymous**, **Block Unknown Domain** or **Block IP Address**. Simply click the relational links to open the web page.

For **Block Anonymous** – this function can block the incoming calls without caller ID on the interface (Phone port) specified in the following window. Such control also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

Call Barring Block Anonymous

| | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Route | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | | |
| Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |

Note:Block the incoming calls which do not have the caller ID.

For **Block Unknown Domain** – this function can block incoming calls (through Phone port) from unrecognized domain that is not specified in SIP accounts. Such control also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

Call Barring Block Unknown Domain

| | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Route | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | | |
| Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |

Note:If the domain of the incoming call is different from the domain found in SIP accounts, the call should be blocked.

For **Block IP Address** – this function can block incoming calls (through Phone port) coming from IP address. Such control also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

Call Barring Block IP Address

| | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Route | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | | |
| Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |

Note:The incoming calls by means of IP dialing (e.g.#192*168*1*1#) should be blocked.

Regional

This page allows you to process incoming or outgoing phone calls by regional. Default values (common used in most areas) will be shown on this web page. You *can change* the number based on the region that the router is placed.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

Enable Regional | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| | | | |
|----------------------------|---|------------------------------|---|
| Last Call Return [Miss]: | <input type="text" value="*69"/> | | |
| Last Call Return [In]: | <input type="text" value="*12"/> | Last Call Return [Out]: | <input type="text" value="*14"/> |
| Call Forward [All] [Act]: | <input type="text" value="*72"/> +number+# | Call Forward [Deact]: | <input type="text" value="*73"/> +# |
| Call Forward [Busy] [Act]: | <input type="text" value="*90"/> +number+# | Call Forward [No Ans] [Act]: | <input type="text" value="*92"/> +number+# |
| Do Not Disturb [Act]: | <input type="text" value="*78"/> +# | Do Not Disturb [Deact]: | <input type="text" value="*79"/> +# |
| Hide caller ID [Act]: | <input type="text" value="*67"/> +# | Hide caller ID [Deact]: | <input type="text" value="*68"/> +# |
| Call Waiting [Act]: | <input type="text" value="*56"/> +# | Call Waiting [Deact]: | <input type="text" value="*57"/> +# |
| Block Anonymous [Act]: | <input type="text" value="*77"/> +# | Block Anonymous [Deact]: | <input type="text" value="*87"/> +# |
| Block Unknow Domain [Act]: | <input type="text" value="*40"/> +# | Block Unknow Domain [Deact]: | <input type="text" value="*04"/> +# |
| Block IP Calls [Act]: | <input type="text" value="*50"/> +# | Block IP Calls [Deact]: | <input type="text" value="*05"/> +# |
| Block Last Calls [Act]: | <input type="text" value="*60"/> +# | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Enable Regional | Check this box to enable this function. |
| Last Call Return [Miss] | Sometimes, people might miss some phone calls. Please dial number typed in this field to know where the last phone call comes from and call back to that one. |
| Last Call Return [In] | You have finished an incoming phone call, however you want to call back again for some reason. Please dial number typed in this field to call back to that one. |
| Last Call Return [Out] | Dial the number typed in this field to call the previous outgoing phone call again. |
| Call Forward [All][Act] | Dial the number typed in this field to forward all the incoming calls to the specified place. |
| Call Forward [Deact] | Dial the number typed in this field to release the call forward function. |
| Call Forward [Busy][Act] | Dial the number typed in this field to forward all the incoming calls to the specified place while the phone is busy. |
| Call Forward [No | Dial the number typed in this field to forward all the incoming calls to the specified place while there is no |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Ans][Act] | answer of the connected phone. |
| Do Not Disturb [Act] | Dial the number typed in this field to invoke the function of DND. |
| Do Not Distrub [Deact] | Dial the number typed in this field to release the DND function. |
| Hide caller ID [Act] | Dial the number typed in this field to make your phone number (ID) not displayed on the display panel of remote end. |
| Hide caller ID [Deact] | Dial the number typed in this field to release this function. |
| Call Waiting [Act] | Dial the number typed in this field to make all the incoming calls waiting for your answer. |
| Call Waiting [Deact] | Dial the number typed in this field to release this function. |
| Block Anonymous[Act] | Dial the number typed in this field to block all the incoming calls with unknown ID. |
| Block Anonymous[Deact] | Dial the number typed in this field to release this function. |
| Block Unknown Domain [Act] | Dial the number typed in this field to block all the incoming calls from unknown domain. |
| Block Unknown Domain [Deact] | Dial the number typed in this field to release this function. |
| Block IP Calls [Act] | Dial the number typed in this filed to block all the incoming calls from IP address. |
| Block IP Calls [Deact] | Dial the number typed in this field to release this function. |
| Block Last Calls [Act] | Dial the number typed in this field to block the last incoming phone call. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

PSTN Setup

Some emergency phone (e.g., 911) or special phone cannot be dialed out by using VoIP and can be called out through PSTN line only. To solve this problem, this page allows you to set five sets of PSTN number for dialing without passing through Internet. Check the **Enable** box to make the PSTN number available for dial whenever you need and type the number in the field of **phone number for PSTN relay**.

Default phone number for PSTN relay

| Enable | phone number for PSTN relay |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.15.2 SIP Accounts

In this section, you set up your own SIP settings. When you apply for an account, your SIP service provider will give you an **Account Name** or user name, **SIP Registrar**, **Proxy**, and **Domain name**. (The last three might be the same in some case). Then you can tell your folks your SIP Address as in **Account Name@ Domain name**

As Vigor VoIP Router is turned on, it will first register with Registrar using AuthorizationUser@Domain/Realm. After that, your call will be bypassed by SIP Proxy to the destination using AccountName@Domain/Realm as identity.

Note: Selection items for **Ring Port** will differ according to the router you have.



SIP Accounts List

Refresh

| Index | Profile | Domain/Realm | Proxy | Account Name | Codec | Ring Port | Status |
|-----------|---------|--------------|-------|--------------|----------|---|--------|
| <u>1</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>2</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>3</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>4</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>5</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>6</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>7</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>8</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>9</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>10</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>11</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |
| <u>12</u> | | | | --- | G.729A/B | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | - |

R: success registered on SIP server
 -: fail to register on SIP server

NAT Traversal Setting

| | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| STUN Server: | <input type="text"/> |
| External IP: | <input type="text"/> |
| SIP PING Interval: | <input type="text" value="150"/> sec |

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Index | Click this link to access into next page for setting SIP account. |
| Profile | Display the profile name of the account. |
| Domain/Realm | Display the domain name or IP address of the SIP registrar server. |
| Proxy | Display the domain name or IP address of the SIP proxy server. |
| Account Name | Display the account name of SIP address before @. |
| Codec | Display the codec type for the account. |
| Ring Port | Specify which port will ring when receiving a phone call. |
| Status | Show the status for the corresponding SIP account. R means such account is registered on SIP server successfully. - means the account is failed to register on SIP server. |
| STUN Server | Type in the IP address or domain of the STUN server. |
| External IP | Type in the gateway IP address. |

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| SIP PING interval | The default value is 150 (sec). It is useful for a Nortel server NAT Traversal Support. |
|--------------------------|---|

Click any index link to access into the following page for configuring SIP account.

VoIP >> SIP Accounts

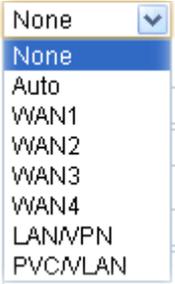
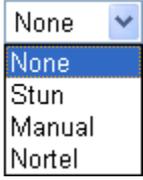
SIP Account Index No. 1

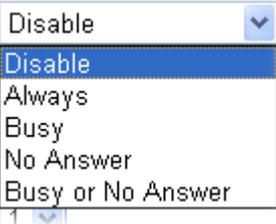
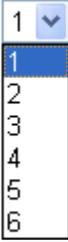
| | | |
|--|---|----------------|
| Profile Name | <input type="text"/> | (11 char max.) |
| Register via | None <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Call without Registration | |
| SIP Port | <input type="text" value="5060"/> | |
| Domain/Realm | <input type="text"/> | (63 char max.) |
| Proxy | <input type="text"/> | (63 char max.) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Act as outbound proxy | | |
| Display Name | <input type="text"/> | (23 char max.) |
| Account Number/Name | <input type="text" value="---"/> | (63 char max.) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Authentication ID | <input type="text"/> | (63 char max.) |
| Password | <input type="text"/> | (63 char max.) |
| Expiry Time | 1 hour <input type="button" value="v"/> 3600 sec | |
| NAT Traversal Support | None <input type="button" value="v"/> | |
| Call Forwarding | Disable <input type="button" value="v"/> | |
| SIP URL | <input type="text"/> | |
| Time Out | <input type="text" value="30"/> sec | |
| Ring Port | <input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 | |
| Ring Pattern | 1 <input type="button" value="v"/> | |
| Prefer Codec | G.729A/B (8Kbps) <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Single Codec | |
| Packet Size | 20ms <input type="button" value="v"/> | |
| Voice Active Detector | Off <input type="button" value="v"/> | |

OK Cancel Clear

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Profile Name | Assign a name for this profile for identifying. You can type similar name with the domain. For example, if the domain name is <i>draytel.org</i> , then you might set <i>draytel-1</i> in this field. |
| Register via | If you want to make VoIP call without register personal information, please choose None and check the box to achieve the goal. Some SIP server allows user to use VoIP function without registering. For such server, please check the box of Call without Registration . Choosing Auto is recommended. The system will select a proper way for your VoIP call. |

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| |  |
| SIP Port | Set the port number for sending/receiving SIP message for building a session. The default value is 5060 . Your peer must set the same value in his/her Registrar. |
| Domain/Realm | Set the domain name or IP address of the SIP Registrar server. |
| Proxy | Set domain name or IP address of SIP proxy server. By the time you can type :port number after the domain name to specify that port as the destination of data transmission (e.g., nat.draytel.org:5065) |
| Act as Outbound Proxy | Check this box to make the proxy acting as outbound proxy. |
| Display Name | The caller-ID that you want to be displayed on your friend's screen. |
| Account Number/Name | Enter your account name of SIP Address, e.g. every text before @. |
| Authentication ID | Check the box to invoke this function and enter the name or number used for SIP Authorization with SIP Registrar. If this setting value is the same as Account Name, it is not necessary for you to check the box and set any value in this field. |
| Password | The password provided to you when you registered with a SIP service. |
| Expiry Time | The time duration that your SIP Registrar server keeps your registration record. Before the time expires, the router will send another register request to SIP Registrar again. |
| NAT Traversal Support | <p>If the router (e.g., broadband router) you use connects to internet by other device, you have to set this function for your necessity.</p> <p>NAT Traversal Support </p> <p>None – Disable this function. Stun – Choose this option if there is Stun server provided for your router. Manual – Choose this option if you want to specify an external IP address as the NAT transversal support. Nortel – If the soft-switch that you use supports Nortel solution, you can choose this option.</p> |

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <p>Call Forwarding</p> | <p>There are four options for you to choose. Disable is to close call forwarding function. Always means all the incoming calls will be forwarded into SIP URL without any reason. Busy means the incoming calls will be forwarded into SIP URL only when the local system is busy. No Answer means if the incoming calls do not receive any response, they will be forwarded to the SIP URL by the time out.</p>  <p>SIP URL – Type in the SIP URL (e.g., aaa@draytel.org or abc@iptel.org) as the site for call forwarded.</p> <p>Time Out – Set the time out for the call forwarding. The default setting is 30 sec.</p> |
| <p>Ring Port</p> | <p>Set Phone 1 and/or Phone 2 as the default ring port(s) for this SIP account.</p> |
| <p>Ring Pattern</p> | <p>Choose a ring tone type for the VoIP phone call.</p> <p>Ring Pattern </p> |
| <p>Prefer Codec</p> | <p>Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining good voice quality.</p> <p>If your upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.</p>  <p>Single Codec – If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.</p> |
| <p>Packet Size</p> | <p>The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information.</p> |

| | | |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| | Packet Size | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> 20ms ▾ 10ms 20ms 30ms 40ms 50ms 60ms </div> |
| Voice Active Detector | <p>This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Click On to invoke this function; click off to close the function.</p> | <p>Voice Active Detector</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> Off ▾ Off On </div> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.15.3 Phone Settings

This page allows user to set phone settings for Phone 1 and Phone 2 respectively. However, it changes slightly according to different model you have.

VoIP >> Phone Settings

| Index | Port | Call Feature | Tone | Gain (Mic/Speaker) | Default SIP Account | DTMF Relay |
|-------|--------|--------------|--------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------|
| 1 | Phone1 | CW,CT, | User Defined | 5/5 | | OutBand |
| 2 | Phone2 | CW,CT, | User Defined | 5/5 | | OutBand |

RTP

Symmetric RTP
Dynamic RTP Port Start
Dynamic RTP Port End
RTP TOS

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Phone List | <p>Port – there are two phone ports provided here for you to configure. Phone1/Phone2 allows you to set general settings for PSTN phones.</p> <p>Call Feature – A brief description for call feature will be shown in this field for your reference.</p> <p>Tone - Display the tone settings that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index.</p> <p>Gain - Display the volume gain settings for Mic/Speaker that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index.</p> <p>Default SIP Account – “draytel_1” is the default SIP account. You can click the number below the Index field to</p> |

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| | <p>change SIP account for each phone port.</p> <p>DTMF Relay – Display DTMF mode that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index.</p> |
| <p>RTP</p> | <p>Symmetric RTP – Check this box to invoke the function. To make the data transmission going through on both ends of local router and remote router not misleading due to IP lost (for example, sending data from the public IP of remote router to the private IP of local router), you can check this box to solve this problem.</p> <p>Dynamic RTP Port Start - Specifies the start port for RTP stream. The default value is 10050.</p> <p>Dynamic RTP Port End - Specifies the end port for RTP stream. The default value is 15000.</p> <p>RTP TOS – It decides the level of VoIP package. Use the drop down list to choose any one of them.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;">RTP TOS</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <div style="background-color: #4a7ebb; color: white; padding: 2px;">Manual</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IP precedence 1 IP precedence 2 IP precedence 3 IP precedence 4 IP precedence 5 IP precedence 6 IP precedence 7 AF Class1 (Low Drop) AF Class1 (Medium Drop) AF Class1 (High Drop) AF Class2 (Low Drop) AF Class2 (Medium Drop) AF Class2 (High Drop) AF Class3 (Low Drop) AF Class3 (Medium Drop) AF Class3 (High Drop) AF Class4 (Low Drop) AF Class4 (Medium Drop) AF Class4 (High Drop) EF Class <div style="background-color: #d9e1f2; padding: 2px; display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> Manual ▼ </div> </div> </div> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Detailed Settings for Phone Port

Click the number link for Phone port, you can access into the following page for configuring Phone settings.

VoIP >> Phone Settings

Phone1

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Call Feature</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Hotline <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Session Timer <input type="text" value="90"/> sec</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> T.38 Fax Function</p> <p>Error Correction Mode <input type="text" value="REDUNDANCY"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DND(Do Not Disturb) Mode</p> <p>Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup:</p> <p><input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/></p> <p>Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.</p> <p>Index(1-60) in Phone Book as Exception List:</p> <p><input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> CLIR (hide caller ID)</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Call Waiting</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Call Transfer</p> | <p>Default SIP Account <input type="text" value=""/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Play dial tone only when account registered</p> |
|---|---|

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Hotline | Check the box to enable it. Type in the SIP URL in the field for dialing automatically when you pick up the phone set. |
| Session Timer | Check the box to enable the function. In the limited time that you set in this field, if there is no response, the connecting call will be closed automatically. |
| T.38 Fax Function | Check the box to enable T.38 fax function. Error Correction Mode – choose a mode for error correction. |
| DND (Do Not Disturb) mode | Set a period of peace time without disturbing by VoIP phone call. During the period, the one who dial in will listen busy tone, yet the local user will not listen any ring tone. Index (1-15) in Schedule - Enter the index of schedule profiles to control when the phone will ring and when will not according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section Application >>Schedule for detailed configuration. Index (1-60) in Phone Book - Enter the index of phone book profiles. Refer to section DialPlan – Phone Book for detailed configuration. |
| CLIR (hide caller ID) | Check this box to hide the caller ID on the display panel of the phone set. |
| Call Waiting | Check this box to invoke this function. A notice sound will appear to tell the user new phone call is waiting for your |

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| | response. Click hook flash to pick up the waiting phone call. |
| Call Transfer | Check this box to invoke this function. Click hook flash to initiate another phone call. When the phone call connection succeeds, hang up the phone. The other two sides can communicate, then. |
| Default SIP Account | You can set SIP accounts (up to six groups) on SIP Account page. Use the drop down list to choose one of the profile names for the accounts as the default one for this phone setting. Play dial tone only when account registered - Check this box to invoke the function. |

In addition, you can press the **Advanced** button to configure tone settings, volume gain, MISC and DTMF mode. **Advanced** setting is provided for fitting the telecommunication custom for the local area of the router installed. Wrong tone settings might cause inconvenience for users. To set the sound pattern of the phone set, simply choose a proper region to let the system find out the preset tone settings and caller ID type automatically. Or you can adjust tone settings manually if you choose User Defined. TOn1, TOff1, TOn2 and TOff2 mean the cadence of the tone pattern. TOn1 and TOn2 represent sound-on; TOff1 and TOff2 represent the sound-off.

VoIP >> Phone Settings

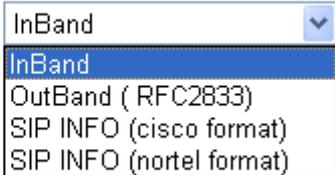
Advance Settings >> Phone 1

| Tone Settings | | | | | | |
|--|--------------|---------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|--------------------|----------------|
| Region | User Defined | | Caller ID Type | | | |
| | Low Freq(Hz) | High Freq(Hz) | T on 1 (msec) | T off 1 (msec) | T on 2 (msec) | T off 2 (msec) |
| Dial tone | 350 | 440 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Ringing tone | 400 | 450 | 400 | 200 | 400 | 2000 |
| Busy tone | 400 | 0 | 375 | 375 | 0 | 0 |
| Congestion tone | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Volume Gain | | | DTMF | | | |
| Mic Gain(1-10) | 5 | | DTMF Mode | | OutBand (RFC2833) | |
| Speaker Gain(1-10) | 5 | | Payload Type (RFC2833) (96 - 127) | | 101 | |
| MISC | | | | | | |
| Dial Tone Power Level (1 - 50) | 27 | | | | | |
| Ring Frequency (10 - 50HZ) | 25 | | | | | |
| Call Waiting Tone Power Level (1 - 30) | 13 | | | | | |
| Interdigit Timeout (1 - 10 sec) | 4 | | | | | |

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------|---|
| Region | Select the proper region which you are located. The common settings of Caller ID Type , Dial tone , Ringing tone , Busy tone and Congestion tone will be shown |

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| | <p>automatically on the page. If you cannot find out a suitable one, please choose User Defined and fill out the corresponding values for dial tone, ringing tone, busy tone, congestion tone by yourself for VoIP phone.</p>  <p>Also, you can specify each field for your necessity. It is recommended for you to use the default settings for VoIP communication.</p> |
| <p>Volume Gain</p> | <p>Mic Gain (1-10)/Speaker Gain (1-10) - Adjust the volume of microphone and speaker by entering number from 1- 10. The larger of the number, the louder the volume is.</p> |
| <p>MISC</p> | <p>Dial Tone Power Level - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the dial tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the dial tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.</p> <p>Call Waiting Tone Power Level - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the call waiting tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.</p> <p>Interdigit Timeout –Type a value in this field to specify time limit for interdigit.</p> |
| <p>DTMF</p> | <p>DTMF Mode – There are four DTMF modes for you to choose.</p> <p>DTMF mode </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● InBand - Choose this one then the Vigor will send the DTMF tone as audio directly when you press the |

| | |
|--|---|
| | <p>keypad on the phone.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● OutBand - Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the keypad number you pressed and transform it to digital form then send to the other side; the receiver will generate the tone according to the digital form it receive. This function is very useful when the network traffic congestion occurs and it still can remain the accuracy of DTMF tone. ● SIP INFO- Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the DTMF tone and transfer it into SIP form. Then it will be sent to the remote end with SIP message. <p>Payload Type (rfc2833) - Type a number from 96 to 127, the default value was 101. This setting is available for the OutBand (RFC2833) mode.</p> |
|--|---|

3.15.4 Status

From this page, you can find codec, connection and other important call status for each port.

VoIP >> Status

Status Refresh Seconds:

| Port | Status | Codec | PeerID | Elapse(hh:mm:ss) | Tx Pkts | Rx Pkts | Rx Losts | Rx Jitter(ms) | In Calls | Out Calls | Miss Calls | Speaker Gain |
|--------|--------|-------|--------|------------------|---------|---------|----------|---------------|----------|-----------|------------|--------------|
| Phone1 | IDLE | | | 00:00:00 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 5 |
| Phone2 | IDLE | | | 00:00:00 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 5 |

Log

| Date (mm-dd-yyyy) | Time (hh:mm:ss) | Duration (hh:mm:ss) | In/Out/Miss | Account ID | Peer ID |
|----------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------|------------|---------|
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |
| 00-00-00 | 00:00:00 | 00:00:00 | - | - | - |

xxxxxxx : VoIP is encrypted.
xxxxxxx : VoIP isn't encrypted.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Refresh Seconds | <p>Specify the interval of refresh time to obtain the latest VoIP calling information. The information will update immediately when the Refresh button is clicked.</p> <p>Refresh Seconds : <input type="text" value="10"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> 5 10 30 </div> </p> |
| Port | It shows current connection status for Phone(s) ports. |

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Status | It shows the VoIP connection status. IDLE - Indicates that the VoIP function is idle. HANG_UP - Indicates that the connection is not established (busy tone). CONNECTING - Indicates that the user is calling out. WAIT_ANS - Indicates that a connection is launched and waiting for remote user's answer. ALERTING - Indicates that a call is coming. ACTIVE -Indicates that the VoIP connection is launched. |
| Codec | Indicates the voice codec employed by present channel. |
| PeerID | The present in-call or out-call peer ID (the format may be IP or Domain). |
| Elapse(hh:mm:ss) | The format is represented as hours:minutes:seconds. |
| Tx Pkts | Total number of transmitted voice packets during this connection session. |
| Rx Pkts | Total number of received voice packets during this connection session. |
| Rx Losts | Total number of lost packets during this connection session. |
| Rx Jitter | The jitter of received voice packets. |
| In Calls | Accumulation for the times of in call. |
| Out Calls | Accumulation for the times of out call. |
| Miss Calls | Accumulation for the times of missing call. |
| Speaker Gain | The volume of present call. |
| Log | Display logs of VoIP calls. |

3.16 Wireless LAN(2.4GHz/5GHz)

This function is used for “n” models only.

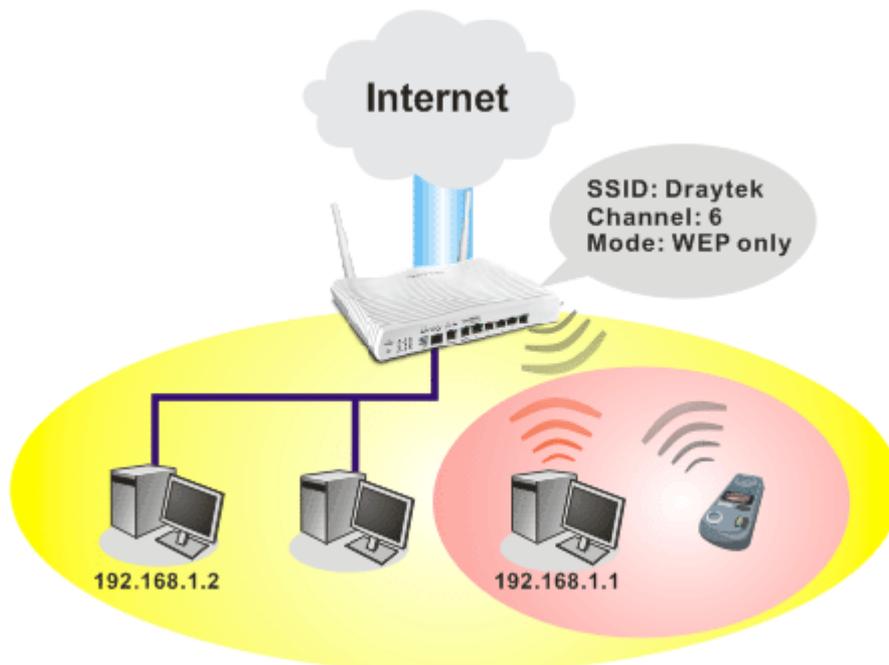
3.16.1 Basic Concepts

Over recent years, the market for wireless communications has enjoyed tremendous growth. Wireless technology now reaches or is capable of reaching virtually every location on the surface of the earth. Hundreds of millions of people exchange information every day via wireless communication products. The Vigor2860 wireless series router (with “n”, “n-plus” or “ac” in model name) is designed for maximum flexibility and efficiency of a small office/home. Any authorized staff can bring a built-in WLAN client PDA or notebook into a meeting room for conference without laying a clot of LAN cable or drilling holes everywhere. Wireless LAN enables high mobility so WLAN users can simultaneously access all LAN facilities just like on a wired LAN as well as Internet access.

Vigor2860 wireless router is a highly integrated wireless local area network (WLAN) for 5 GHz 802.11ac or 2.4/5 GHz 802.11n WLAN applications. It supports channel operations of 20/40 MHz at 2.4 GHz and 20/40/80 MHz at 5 GHz. Vigor2860 “ac” series router can support data rates up to 1.3 Gbps in 802.11ac 80 MHz channels. Vigor2860 “n” series router supports 802.11n up to 300 Mbps for 40 MHz channel operations.

Note: * The actual data throughput will vary according to the network conditions and environmental factors, including volume of network traffic, network overhead and building materials.

In an Infrastructure Mode of wireless network, Vigor wireless router plays a role as an Access Point (AP) connecting to lots of wireless clients or Stations (STA). All the STAs will share the same Internet connection via Vigor wireless router. The **General Settings** will set up the information of this wireless network, including its SSID as identification, located channel etc.



Multiple SSIDs

Vigor router supports four SSID settings for wireless connections. Each SSID can be defined with different name and download/upload rate for selecting by stations connected to the router wirelessly.

Security Overview

Real-time Hardware Encryption: Vigor Router is equipped with a hardware AES encryption engine so it can apply the highest protection to your data without influencing user experience.

Complete Security Standard Selection: To ensure the security and privacy of your wireless communication, we provide several prevailing standards on market.

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a legacy method to encrypt each frame transmitted via radio using either a 64-bit or 128-bit key. Usually access point will preset a set of four keys and it will communicate with each station using only one out of the four keys.

WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access), the most dominating security mechanism in industry, is separated into two categories: WPA-personal or called WPA Pre-Share Key (WPA/PSK), and WPA-Enterprise or called WPA/802.1x.

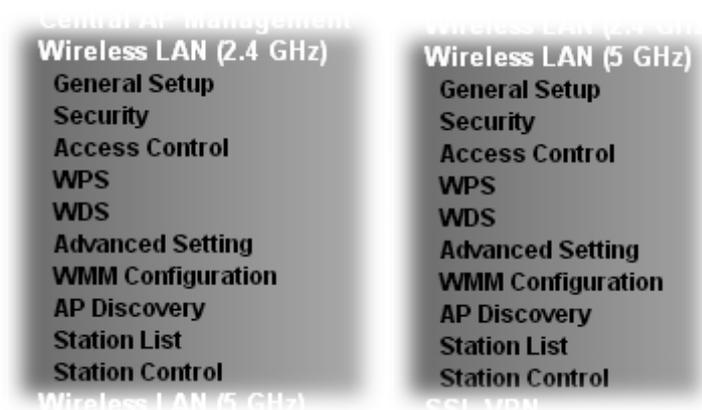
In WPA-Personal, a pre-defined key is used for encryption during data transmission. WPA applies Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) for data encryption while WPA2 applies AES. The WPA-Enterprise combines not only encryption but also authentication.

Since WEP has been proved vulnerable, you may consider using WPA for the most secure connection. You should select the appropriate security mechanism according to your needs. No matter which security suite you select, they all will enhance the over-the-air data protection and /or privacy on your wireless network. The Vigor wireless router is very flexible and can support multiple secure connections with both WEP and WPA at the same time.

Separate the Wireless and the Wired LAN- WLAN Isolation enables you to isolate your wireless LAN from wired LAN for either quarantine or limit access reasons. To isolate means neither of the parties can access each other. To elaborate an example for business use, you may set up a wireless LAN for visitors only so they can connect to Internet without hassle of the confidential information leakage. For a more flexible deployment, you may add filters of MAC addresses to isolate users' access from wired LAN.

Manage Wireless Stations - Station List will display all the station in your wireless network and the status of their connection.

Below shows the menu items for Wireless LAN (2.4GHz) and Wireless LAN(5GHz).



The following sections explain setting for wireless LAN. Here we take menu items under Wireless LAN (2.4 GHz) as the examples. The differences for the settings between 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz will be pointed out.

3.16.2 General Setup

By clicking the **General Settings**, a new web page will appear so that you could configure the SSID and the wireless channel. Please refer to the following figure for more information.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> General Setup

General Setting (IEEE 802.11)

Enable Wireless LAN

Mode :

Channel:

| | Enable | Hide SSID | SSID | Isolate Member | Isolate VPN |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text" value="DrayTek"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text" value="DrayTek_Guest"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Note:
Enabling the Isolate Member configuration will forbid the wireless clients associated to the same SSID from connecting to each other.

The isolate VPN configuration will isolate the wireless traffic from VPN connections and thus, wireless clients will not be able to access the VPN network under this setting.

Rate Control

| | Enable | Upload | Download |
|--------|--------------------------|---|---|
| SSID 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps | <input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps |
| SSID 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps | <input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps |
| SSID 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps | <input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps |
| SSID 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps | <input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps |

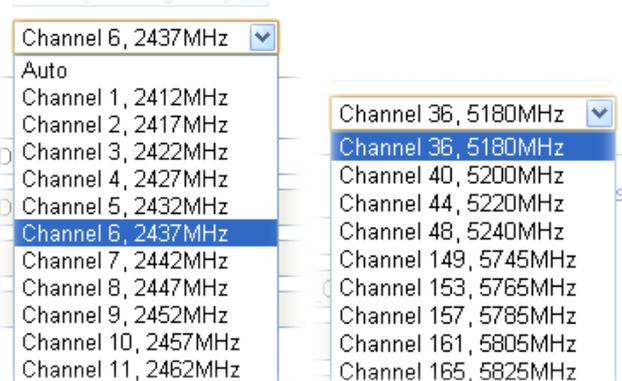
Note:
Configurable upload and download rates are from 100 to 50,000(kbps).

Associated Schedule Profiles: , , ,

Note:
Only schedule profiles that have the action "Force Down" are applied to the WLAN, all other actions are ignored. Valid settings are profile indexes 1 to 15.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| Enable Wireless LAN | Check the box to enable wireless function. |
| Mode | For 2.4GHz: At present, the router can connect to 11g Only, 11n Only(2.4 GHz), Mixed (11b+11g), Mixed (11g+11n), and Mixed (11b+11g+11n) stations simultaneously. Simply choose Mixed (11b+11g+11n) mode. |

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| |  <p>For 5 GHz: At present, the router can connect to 11a Only, 11n Only(5 GHz), Mixed (11a+11n), and Mixed (11a+11n+11ac) stations simultaneously. Simply choose Mixed (11a+11n) mode.</p> <p>In which, 802.11b/g operates on 2.4G band, 802.11a operates on 5G band, 802.11n operates on either 2.4G or 5G band, and 802.11ac operates on 5G band only.</p> |
| Channel | <p>Means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The default channel is 6 (for 2.4GHz) / 36 (for 5GHz). You may switch channel if the selected channel is under serious interference. If you have no idea of choosing the frequency, please select Auto to let system determine for you.</p> <p>For 2.4GHz: For 5 GHz:</p>  |
| Hide SSID | <p>Check it to prevent from wireless sniffing and make it harder for unauthorized clients or STAs to join your wireless LAN. Depending on the wireless utility, the user may only see the information except SSID or just cannot see anything about Vigor wireless router while site surveying. The system allows you to set four sets of SSID for different usage. In default, the first set of SSID will be enabled. You can hide it for your necessity.</p> |
| SSID | <p>Means the identification of the wireless LAN. SSID can be any text numbers or various special characters.</p> |
| Isolate | <p>Member – Check this box to make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID not accessing for each other.</p> <p>VPN – Check this box to make the wireless clients (stations) with different VPN not accessing for each other.</p> |
| Rate Control | <p>It controls the data transmission rate through wireless connection.</p> <p>Upload – Check Enable and type the transmitting rate for</p> |

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| | <p>data upload. Default value is 30,000 kbps.</p> <p>Download – Type the transmitting rate for data download. Default value is 30,000 kbps.</p> |
| Schedule | <p>Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in Applications >> Schedule setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.</p> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.16.3 Security

This page allows you to set security with different modes for SSID 1, 2, 3 and 4 respectively. After configuring the correct settings, please click **OK** to save and invoke it.

The password (PSK) of default security mode is provided and stated on the label pasted on the bottom of the router. For the wireless client who wants to access into Internet through such router, please input the default PSK value for connection.



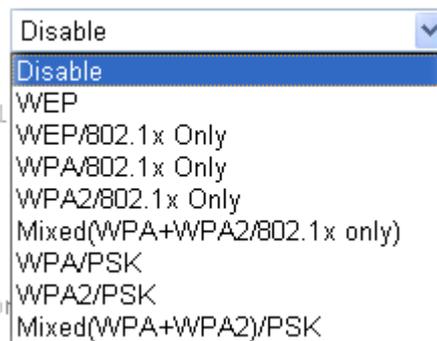
By clicking the **Security Settings**, a new web page will appear so that you could configure the settings of WPA and WEP.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Security Settings

| SSID 1 | SSID 2 | SSID 3 | SSID 4 |
|--|--------|--------|--------|
| <p>Mode: <input type="text" value="WEP/802.1x Only"/></p> <p><u>WPA</u></p> <p>Encryption Mode: TKIP for WPA/AES for WPA2</p> <p>Pre-Shared Key(PSK): <input type="text" value="*****"/></p> <p>Type 8~63 ASCII character or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "cfs01a2..." or "0x655abcd....".</p> <p><u>WEP</u></p> <p>Encryption Mode: <input type="text" value="64-Bit"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Key 1 : <input type="text" value="*****"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 2 : <input type="text" value="*****"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 3 : <input type="text" value="*****"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 4 : <input type="text" value="*****"/></p> <p>Note: Please configure the RADIUS Server if 802.1x is used. For 64 bit WEP key configurations, please insert 5 ASCII characters or 10 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x". Examples are "AB312" or "0x4142333132". For 128 bit WEP key configurations, please insert 13 ASCII characters or 26 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x".</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </p> | | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------|---|
| Mode | There are several modes provided for you to choose. |



Note: You should also set **RADIUS Server** simultaneously if 802.1x mode is selected.

Disable - Turn off the encryption mechanism.

WEP-Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key should be entered in WEP Key.

WEP/802.1x Only - Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

WPA/802.1x Only- Accepts only WPA clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

WPA2/802.1x Only- Accepts only WPA2 clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only) - Accepts WPA and WPA2 clients simultaneously and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

WPA/PSK-Accepts only WPA clients and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.

WPA2/PSK-Accepts only WPA2 clients and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.

Mixed (WPA+ WPA2)/PSK - Accepts WPA and WPA2 clients simultaneously and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.

WPA

The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication. Either **8~63** ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").

Pre-Shared Key (PSK) - Either **8~63** ASCII characters, such as 012345678..(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").

WEP

64-Bit - For 64 bits WEP key, either **5** ASCII characters, such as 12345 (or 10 hexadecimal digitals leading by 0x, such as 0x4142434445.)

128-Bit - For 128 bits WEP key, either **13** ASCII

characters, such as ABCDEFGHIJKLM (or 26 hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as 0x414243444546474849A4B4C4D).

Encryption Mode:

64-Bit
64-Bit
128-Bit

All wireless devices must support the same WEP encryption bit size and have the same key. **Four keys** can be entered here, but only one key can be selected at a time. The keys can be entered in ASCII or Hexadecimal. Check the key you wish to use.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.16.4 Access Control

In the **Access Control**, the router may restrict wireless access to certain wireless clients only by locking their MAC address into a black or white list. The user may block wireless clients by inserting their MAC addresses into a black list, or only let them be able to connect by inserting their MAC addresses into a white list.

In the **Access Control** web page, users may configure the **white/black** list modes used by each SSID and the MAC addresses applied to their lists.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Access Control

Access Control

Enable Mac Address Filter SSID 1 White List SSID 2 White List SSID 3 White List SSID 4 White List

| MAC Address Filter | | | |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| Index | Attribute | MAC Address | Apply SSID |
| | | | |

Client's MAC Address : : : : : :

Apply SSID : SSID 1 SSID 2 SSID 3 SSID 4

Attribute : s: Isolate the station from LAN

Add Delete Edit Cancel

OK Clear All

Available settings are explained as follows:

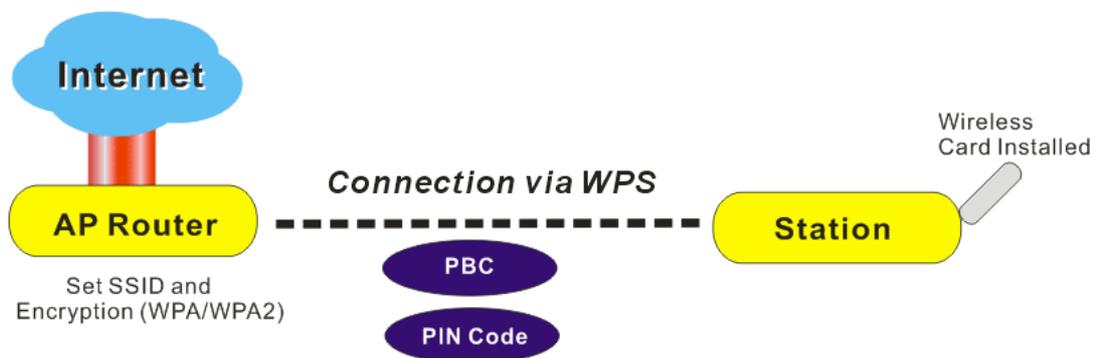
| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Enable Mac Address Filter | Select to enable the MAC Address filter for wireless LAN identified with SSID 1 to 4 respectively. All the clients (expressed by MAC addresses) listed in the box can be grouped under different wireless LAN. For example, they |

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| | can be grouped under SSID 1 and SSID 2 at the same time if you check SSID 1 and SSID 2. |
| MAC Address Filter | Display all MAC addresses that are edited before. |
| Client's MAC Address | Manually enter the MAC address of wireless client. |
| Apply SSID | After entering the client's MAC address, check the box of the SSIDs desired to insert this MAC address into their access control list. |
| Attribute | s: Isolate the station from LAN - select to isolate the wireless connection of the wireless client of the MAC address from LAN. |
| Add | Add a new MAC address into the list. |
| Delete | Delete the selected MAC address in the list. |
| Edit | Edit the selected MAC address in the list. |
| Cancel | Give up the access control set up. |
| OK | Click it to save the access control list. |
| Clear All | Clean all entries in the MAC address list. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.16.5 WPS

WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) provides easy procedure to make network connection between wireless station and wireless access point (vigor router) with the encryption of WPA and WPA2.

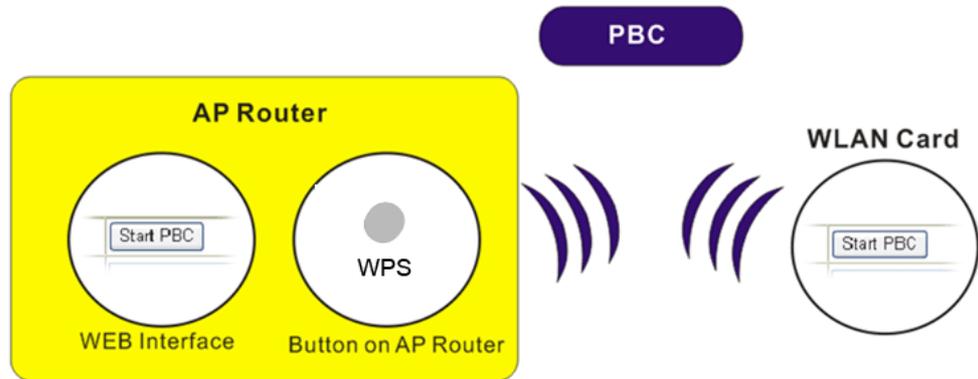


Note: Such function is available for the wireless station with WPS supported.

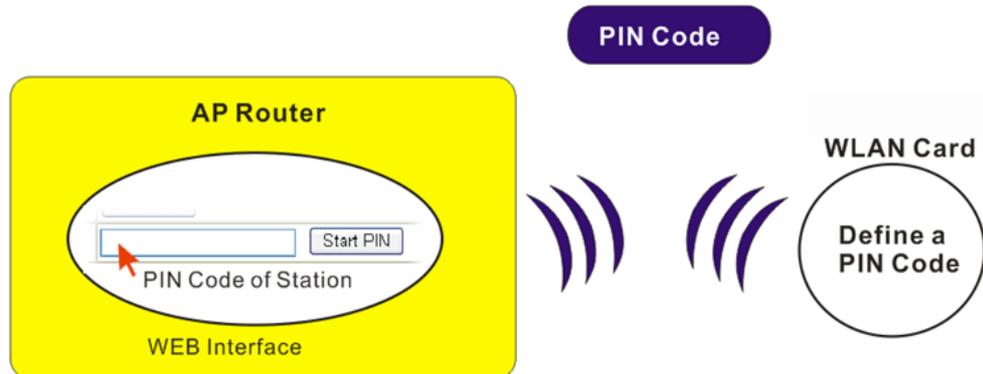
It is the simplest way to build connection between wireless network clients and vigor router. Users do not need to select any encryption mode and type any long encryption passphrase to setup a wireless client every time. He/she only needs to press a button on wireless client, and WPS will connect for client and router automatically.

There are two methods to do network connection through WPS between AP and Stations: pressing the *Start PBC* button or using *PIN Code*.

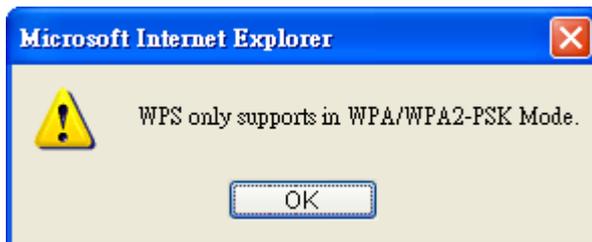
- On the side of Vigor 2860 series which served as an AP, press **WPS** button once on the front panel of the router or click **Start PBC** on web configuration interface. On the side of a station with network card installed, press **Start PBC** button of network card.



- If you want to use PIN code, you have to know the PIN code specified in wireless client. Then provide the PIN code of the wireless client you wish to connect to the vigor router.



For WPS is supported in WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode, if you do not choose such mode in **Wireless LAN>>Security**, you will see the following message box.



Please click **OK** and go back **Wireless LAN>>Security** to choose WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode and access WPS again.

Below shows **Wireless LAN>>WPS** web page:

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)

Enable WPS 

Wi-Fi Protected Setup Information

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| WPS Status | Configured |
| SSID | DrayTek_2860_130 |
| Authentication Mode | Mixed(WPA+WPA2)/PSK |

Device Configure

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Configure via Push Button | <input type="button" value="Start PBC"/> |
| Configure via Client PinCode | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Start PIN"/> |

Status: Ready

Note: WPS can help your wireless client automatically connect to the Access point.

 : WPS is Disabled.

 : WPS is Enabled.

 : Waiting for WPS requests from wireless clients.

Available settings are explained as follows:

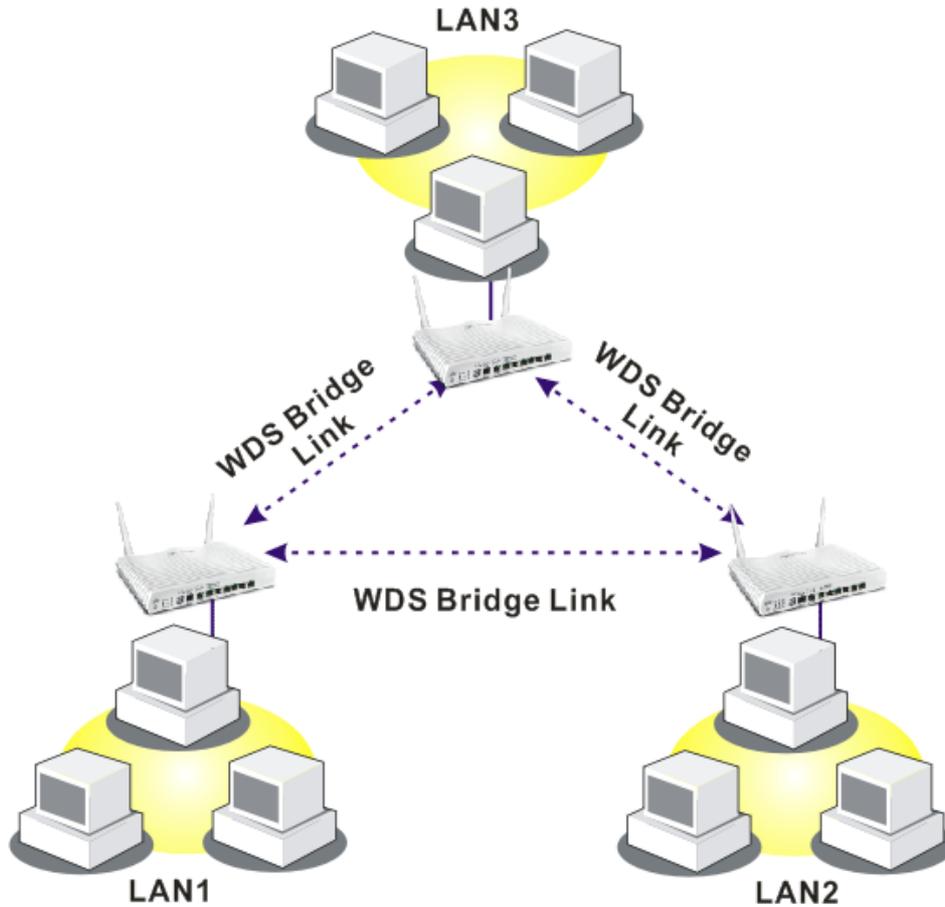
| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Enable WPS | Check this box to enable WPS setting. |
| WPS Status | Display related system information for WPS. If the wireless security (encryption) function of the router is properly configured, you can see 'Configured' message here. |
| SSID | Display the SSID1 of the router. WPS is supported by SSID1 only. |
| Authentication Mode | Display current authentication mode of the router. Only WPA2/PSK and WPA/PSK support WPS. |
| Configure via Push Button | Click Start PBC to invoke Push-Button style WPS setup procedure. The router will wait for WPS requests from wireless clients about two minutes. The WPS LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress. It will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within two minutes) |
| Configure via Client PinCode | Please input the PIN code specified in wireless client you wish to connect, and click Start PIN button. The WPS LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress. It will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within two minutes) |

3.16.6 WDS

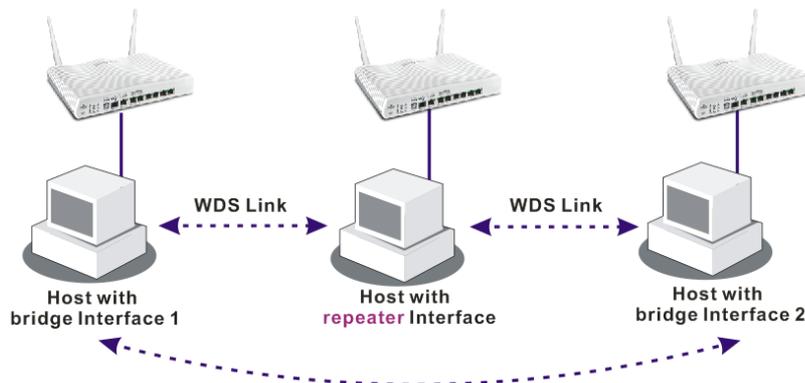
WDS means Wireless Distribution System. It is a protocol for connecting two access points (AP) wirelessly. Usually, it can be used for the following application:

- Provide bridge traffic between two LANs through the air.
- Extend the coverage range of a WLAN.

To meet the above requirement, two WDS modes are implemented in Vigor router. One is **Bridge**, the other is **Repeater**. Below shows the function of WDS-bridge interface:

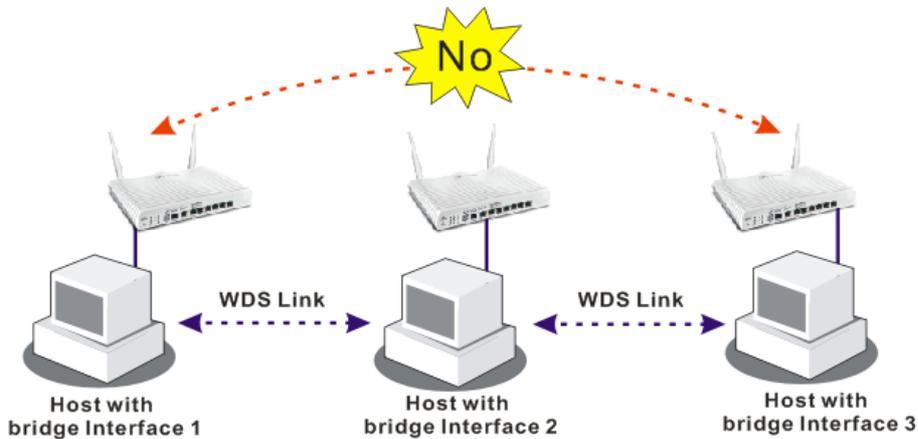


The application for the WDS-Repeater mode is depicted as below:



The major difference between these two modes is that: while in **Repeater** mode, the packets received from one peer AP can be repeated to another peer AP through WDS links. Yet in **Bridge** mode, packets received from a WDS link will only be forwarded to local wired or wireless hosts. In other words, only Repeater mode can do WDS-to-WDS packet forwarding.

In the following examples, hosts connected to Bridge 1 or 3 can communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 2 through WDS links. However, hosts connected to Bridge 1 CANNOT communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 3 through Bridge 2.



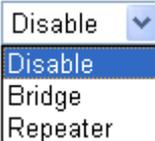
Click **WDS** from **Wireless LAN** menu. The following page will be shown.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> WDS Settings

WDS Settings
[Set to Factory Default](#)

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Mode: Bridge</p> <hr/> <p>Security:</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> WEP <input type="radio"/> Pre-shared Key</p> <hr/> <p>WEP:</p> <p>Use the same WEP key set in Security Settings.</p> <hr/> <p>Pre-shared Key:</p> <p>Type:</p> <p><input type="radio"/> WPA <input checked="" type="radio"/> WPA2</p> <p>Key : <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="*****"/></p> <p><small>Note: WPA and WPA2 are not compatible with DrayTek WPA.</small></p> <p><small>Type 8~63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "cfs01a2..." or "0x655abcd..."</small></p> | <p>Bridge</p> <p>Enable Peer MAC Address</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></p> <p><small>Note: Disable unused links to get better performance.</small></p> <hr/> <p>Repeater</p> <p>Enable Peer MAC Address</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></p> <hr/> <p>Access Point Function:</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable</p> <hr/> <p>Status:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Send "Hello" message to peers.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="button" value="Link Status"/></p> <p><small>Note: The status is valid only when the peer also supports this function.</small></p> |
|---|--|

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| Mode | <p>Choose the mode for WDS setting. Disable mode will not invoke any WDS setting. Bridge mode is designed to fulfill the first type of application. Repeater mode is for the second one.</p>  |
| Security | <p>There are three types for security, Disable, WEP and Pre-shared key. The setting you choose here will make the following WEP or Pre-shared key field valid or not. Choose one of the types for the router.</p> |
| WEP | <p>Check this box to use the same key set in Security Settings page. If you did not set any key in Security Settings page, this check box will be dimmed.</p> |
| Pre-shared Key | <p>Type – There are some types for you to choose. WPA and WPA2 are used for WDS devices (e.g.2920n wireless router, you can set the encryption mode as WPA or WPA2 to establish your WDS system between AP and the router.</p> <p>Key - Type 8 ~ 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits leading by “0x”.</p> |
| Bridge | <p>If you choose Bridge as the connecting mode, please type in the peer MAC address in these fields. Four peer MAC addresses are allowed to be entered in this page at one time. Yet please disable the unused link to get better performance. If you want to invoke the peer MAC address, remember to check Enable box in the front of the MAC address after typing.</p> |
| Repeater | <p>If you choose Repeater as the connecting mode, please type in the peer MAC address in these fields. Four peer MAC addresses are allowed to be entered in this page at one time. Similarly, if you want to invoke the peer MAC address, remember to check Enable box in the front of the MAC address after typing.</p> |
| Access Point Function | <p>Click Enable to make this router serving as an access point; click Disable to cancel this function.</p> |
| Status | <p>It allows user to send “hello” message to peers. Yet, it is valid only when the peer also supports this function.</p> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.16.7 Advanced Setting

This page allows users to set advanced settings such as operation mode, channel bandwidth, guard interval, and aggregation MSDU for wireless data transmission.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Advanced Setting

HT Physical Mode

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Operation Mode | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Mixed Mode <input type="radio"/> Green Field |
| Channel Bandwidth | <input type="radio"/> 20 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 20/40 |
| Guard Interval | <input type="radio"/> long <input checked="" type="radio"/> auto |
| Aggregation MSDU(A-MSDU) | <input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable |
| Long Preamble | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable |
| Packet-OVERDRIVE™ TX Burst | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable |

or,

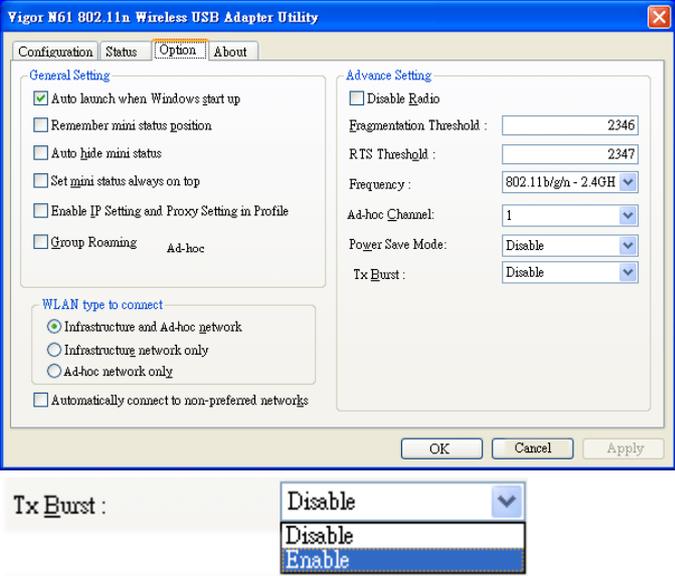
Wireless LAN(5GHz) >> Advanced Setting

Physical Mode

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Operation Mode | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Mixed Mode <input type="radio"/> Green Field |
| Channel Bandwidth | <input type="radio"/> 20 <input type="radio"/> 20/40 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 20/40/80 |
| Guard Interval | <input type="radio"/> long <input checked="" type="radio"/> auto |
| Aggregation MSDU(A-MSDU) | <input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable |
| Number of Spatial Streams(NSS) | <input type="radio"/> 1 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 2 <input type="radio"/> 3 |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| Operation Mode | <p>Mixed Mode – the router can transmit data with the ways supported in both 802.11a/b/g and 802.11n standards. However, the entire wireless transmission will be slowed down if 802.11g or 802.11b wireless client is connected.</p> <p>Green Field – to get the highest throughput, please choose such mode. Such mode can make the data transmission happening between 11n systems only. In addition, it does not have protection mechanism to avoid the conflict with neighboring devices of 802.11a/b/g.</p> |
| Channel Bandwidth | <p>20- the router will use 20Mhz for data transmission and receiving between the AP and the stations.</p> <p>20/40 – the router will use 20Mhz or 40Mhz for data transmission and receiving according to the station capability. Such channel can increase the performance for data transit.</p> <p>20/40/80 – the router will use 20Mhz, 40Mhz or 80Mhz for data transmission and receiving according to the station capability. Such channel can increase the performance for data transit.</p> |
| Guard Interval | It is to assure the safety of propagation delays and |

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| | reflections for the sensitive digital data. If you choose auto as guard interval, the AP router will choose short guard interval (increasing the wireless performance) or long guard interval for data transmit based on the station capability. |
| Aggregation MSDU | Aggregation MSDU can combine frames with different sizes. It is used for improving MAC layer's performance for some brand's clients. The default setting is Enable . |
| Number of Spatial Streams (NSS) | Setup Number of Spatial Stream for Vigor2860ac and Vigor2860Vac. Default value is 2 and connection rate could reach 1.3GBps. |
| Long Preamble | This option is to define the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync field instead of long preamble with 128 bit sync field. However, some original 11b wireless network devices only support long preamble. Click Enable to use Long Preamble if needed to communicate with this kind of devices. |
| Packet-OVERDRIVE | <p>This feature can enhance the performance in data transmission about 40% * more (by checking Tx Burst). It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function at the same time. That is, the wireless client must support this feature and invoke the function, too.</p> <p>Note: Vigor N61 wireless adapter supports this function. Therefore, you can use and install it into your PC for matching with Packet-OVERDRIVE (refer to the following picture of Vigor N61 wireless utility window, choose Enable for TxBURST on the tab of Option).</p>  <p>Note: * means the real transmission rate depends on the environment of the network.</p> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.16.8 WMM Configuration

WMM is an abbreviation of Wi-Fi Multimedia. It defines the priority levels for four access categories derived from 802.1d (prioritization tabs). The categories are designed with specific types of traffic, voice, video, best effort and low priority data. There are four accessing categories - AC_BE , AC_BK, AC_VI and AC_VO for WMM.

APSD (automatic power-save delivery) is an enhancement over the power-save mechanisms supported by Wi-Fi networks. It allows devices to take more time in sleeping state and consume less power to improve the performance by minimizing transmission latency.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> WMM Configuration

[Set to Factory Default](#)

WMM Configuration

WMM Capable Enable Disable

APSD Capable Enable Disable

WMM Parameters of Access Point

| | Aifsn | CWMin | CWMax | Txop | ACM | AckPolicy |
|-------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| AC_BE | <input type="text" value="3"/> | <input type="text" value="4"/> | <input type="text" value="6"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| AC_BK | <input type="text" value="7"/> | <input type="text" value="4"/> | <input type="text" value="10"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| AC_VI | <input type="text" value="1"/> | <input type="text" value="3"/> | <input type="text" value="4"/> | <input type="text" value="94"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| AC_VO | <input type="text" value="1"/> | <input type="text" value="2"/> | <input type="text" value="3"/> | <input type="text" value="47"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

WMM Parameters of Station

| | Aifsn | CWMin | CWMax | Txop | ACM |
|-------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| AC_BE | <input type="text" value="3"/> | <input type="text" value="4"/> | <input type="text" value="10"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| AC_BK | <input type="text" value="7"/> | <input type="text" value="4"/> | <input type="text" value="10"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| AC_VI | <input type="text" value="2"/> | <input type="text" value="3"/> | <input type="text" value="4"/> | <input type="text" value="94"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| AC_VO | <input type="text" value="2"/> | <input type="text" value="2"/> | <input type="text" value="3"/> | <input type="text" value="47"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| WMM Capable | To apply WMM parameters for wireless data transmission, please click the Enable radio button. |
| APSD Capable | The default setting is Disable . |
| Aifsn | It controls how long the client waits for each data transmission. Please specify the value ranging from 1 to 15. Such parameter will influence the time delay for WMM accessing categories. For the service of voice or video image, please set small value for AC_VI and AC_VO categories For the service of e-mail or web browsing, please set large value for AC_BE and AC_BK categories. |
| CWMin/CWMax | CWMin means contention Window-Min and CWMax means contention Window-Max. Please specify the value ranging from 1 to 15. Be aware that CWMax value must be greater than CWMin or equals to CWMin value. Both values will influence the time delay for WMM accessing categories. The difference between AC_VI and AC_VO categories must be smaller; however, the difference |

| | |
|------------------|--|
| | between AC_BE and AC_BK categories must be greater. |
| Txop | It means transmission opportunity. For WMM categories of AC_VI and AC_VO that need higher priorities in data transmission, please set greater value for them to get highest transmission opportunity. Specify the value ranging from 0 to 65535. |
| ACM | It is an abbreviation of Admission control Mandatory. It can restrict stations from using specific category class if it is checked. Note: Vigor2860 provides standard WMM configuration in the web page. If you want to modify the parameters, please refer to the Wi-Fi WMM standard specification. |
| AckPolicy | “Uncheck” (default value) the box means the AP router will answer the response request while transmitting WMM packets through wireless connection. It can assure that the peer must receive the WMM packets. “Check” the box means the AP router will not answer any response request for the transmitting packets. It will have better performance with lower reliability. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.16.9 AP Discovery

Vigor router can scan all regulatory channels and find working APs in the neighborhood. Based on the scanning result, users will know which channel is clean for usage. Also, it can be used to facilitate finding an AP for a WDS link. Notice that during the scanning process (about 5 seconds), no client is allowed to connect to Vigor.

This page is used to scan the existence of the APs on the wireless LAN. Yet, only the AP which is in the same channel of this router can be found. Please click **Scan** to discover all the connected APs.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Access Point Discovery

Access Point List

| Index | BSSID | Channel | RSSI | SSID | Authentication |
|---|-------|---------|------|------|----------------|
| <div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 5px;"><input type="button" value="Scan"/></div> | | | | | |

See [Statistics](#).

Add to WDS Settings :

AP's MAC address : : : : :

Bridge Repeater

Note:

1. During the scanning process (~5 seconds), no station is allowed to connect with the router.
2. AP Discovery can only support up to 32 APs displayed on the screen.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Scan | It is used to discover all the connected AP. The results will be shown on the box above this button. |
| Statistics | It displays the statistics for the channels used by APs. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;"> <p style="font-size: small;">Wireless LAN >> Site Survey Statistics</p> <hr/> <p style="font-size: x-small;">Recommended channels for usage: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13</p> <div style="text-align: center; border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p style="font-size: x-small;">AP number v.s. Channel</p> <p style="font-size: x-small;">Channel</p> </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;"><input type="button" value="Cancel"/></div> </div> |
| Add to | If you want the found AP applying the WDS settings, please type in the AP's MAC address on the bottom of the page and click Bridge or Repeater. Next, click Add to . Later, the MAC address of the AP will be added to Bridge or Repeater field of WDS settings page. |

3.16.10 Station List

Station List provides the knowledge of connecting wireless clients now along with its status code. There is a code summary below for explanation. For convenient **Access Control**, you can select a WLAN station and click **Add to Access Control** below.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Station List

Station List

General Advanced

| Index | Status | MAC Address | Associated with |
|--|--------|-------------|-----------------|
| <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 50px;">Refresh</div> | | | |

Status Codes :
C: Connected, No encryption.
E: Connected, WEP.
P: Connected, WPA.
A: Connected, WPA2.
B: Blocked by Access Control.
N: Connecting.
F: Fail to pass WPA/PSK authentication.

Add to Access Control :

Client's MAC address : : : : :

Note: After a station connects to the router successfully, it may be turned off without notice. In that case, it will still be on the list until the connection expires.

Add

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------|---|
| Refresh | Click this button to refresh the status of station list. |
| Add | Click this button to add current typed MAC address into Access Control . |

3.16.11 Station Control

Station Control is used to specify the duration for the wireless client to connect and reconnect Vigor router. If such function is not enabled, the wireless client can connect Vigor router until the router shuts down.

Such feature is especially useful for free Wi-Fi service. For example, a coffee shop offers free Wi-Fi service for its guests for one hour every day. Then, the connection time can be set as “1 hour” and reconnection time can be set as “1 day”. Thus, the guest can finish his job within one hour and will not occupy the wireless network for a long time.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Station Control

| SSID 1 | SSID 2 | SSID 3 | SSID 4 |
|--|--------|--------------------------|--------|
| SSID | | DrayTek | |
| Enable | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| Connection Time | | 1 hour | |
| Reconnection Time | | 1 day | |
| Display All Station Control List | | | |
| WEB Portal Setup | | | |

Note: Once the feature is enabled, the connection time quota will apply to each wireless client (identified by MAC address).

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| SSID | Display the SSID that the wireless station will use it to connect with Vigor router. |
| Enable | Check the box to enable the station control function. |
| Connection Time / Reconnection Time | Use the drop down list to choose the duration for the wireless client connecting /reconnecting to Vigor router. Or, type the duration manually when you choose User defined . |
| Display All Station Control List | All the wireless stations connecting to Vigor router by using such SSID will be listed on Station Control List. |
| WEB Portal Setup | Click it to access in to LAN>>Web Portal Setup page for modifying the settings if required. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.17 SSL VPN

An SSL VPN (Secure Sockets Layer virtual private network) is a form of VPN that can be used with a standard Web browser.

There are two benefits that SSL VPN provides:

- It is not necessary for users to preinstall VPN client software for executing SSL VPN connection.
- There are less restrictions for the data encrypted through SSL VPN in comparing with traditional VPN.



3.17.1 General Setup

This page determines the general configuration for SSL VPN Server and SSL Tunnel.

SSL VPN >> General Setup

SSL VPN General Setup

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Port | <input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443) |
| Server Certificate | <input type="text" value="self-signed"/> ▼ |

Note: The settings will act on all SSL applications.

Please go to **System Maintenance >> Management** to enable SSLv3.0 .

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Port | Such port is set for SSL VPN server. It will not affect the HTTPS Port configuration set in System Maintenance>>Management . In general, the default setting is 443. |
| Server Certificate | When the client does not set any certificate, default certificate will be used for HTTPS and SSL VPN server. Choose any one of the user-defined certificates from the drop down list if users set several certificates previously. Otherwise, choose Self-signed to use the router's built-in default certificate. The default certificate can be used in SSL VPN server and HTTPS Web Proxy. |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.17.2 SSL Web Proxy

SSL Web Proxy will allow the remote users to access the internal web sites over SSL.

SSL VPN >> SSL Web Proxy

SSL Web Proxy Servers Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Name | URL | Active |
|---------------------|------|-----|--------|
| 1. | | | x |
| 2. | | | x |
| 3. | | | x |
| 4. | | | x |
| 5. | | | x |
| 6. | | | x |
| 7. | | | x |
| 8. | | | x |
| 9. | | | x |
| 10. | | | x |

Each item is explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------|--|
| Name | Display the name of the profile that you create. |
| URL | Display the URL. |
| Active | Display current status (active or inactive) of such profile. |

Click number link under Index filed to set detailed configuration.

SSL VPN >> SSL Web Proxy

Profile Index : 1

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Name | <input type="text"/> |
| URL | <input type="text"/> |
| Host IP Address | <input type="text"/> |
| Access Method | <input type="text" value="Disable"/> <input type="text" value="Secured Port Redirection"/> <input type="text" value="SSL"/> |

Note: URL format must be entered as http://Domain_name/directory where Domain_name is a FQDN.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Name | Type name of the profile. The length of the name is limited to 15 characters. |
| URL | Type the address (function variation or IP address) or path of the proxy server. |
| Host IP Address | If you type function variation as URL, you have to type corresponding IP address in this filed. Such field must match with URL setting. |

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Access Method | <p>There are three modes for you to choose.</p> <p>Disable – the profile will be inactive. If you choose Disable, all the web proxy profile appeared under VPN remote dial-in web page will disappear.</p> <p>Secured Port Redirection – such technique applies private port mapping to random WAN port. There are two restrictions for proxy web server for such selection: 1) it is only used for WAN to LAN access, the web server must be configured behind vigor router; 2) web server gateway must be indicated to vigor router. In addition, users must execute “Connect” manually in SSL Client Portal page.</p> <p>SSL – if you choose such selection, web proxy over SSL will be applied for VPN.</p> |
|----------------------|---|

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.17.3 SSL Application

It provides a secure and flexible solution for network resources, including VNC (Virtual Network Computer) /RDP (Remote Desktop Protocol) /SAMBA, to any remote user with access to Internet and a web browser.

SSL VPN >> SSL Application

SSL Applications Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Name | Host Address | Service | Active |
|-------|------|--------------|---------|--------|
| 1. | | | | x |
| 2. | | | | x |
| 3. | | | | x |
| 4. | | | | x |
| 5. | | | | x |
| 6. | | | | x |
| 7. | | | | x |
| 8. | | | | x |
| 9. | | | | x |
| 10. | | | | x |

Each item is explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Name | Display the application name of the profile that you create. |
| Host Address | Display the IP address for VNC/RDP or SAMBA path. |
| Service | Display the type of the service selected, e.g., VNC/RDP/SAMBA. |
| Active | Display current status (active or inactive) of the selected profile. |

To create a new SSL application profile:

1. Click number link under Index filed to set detailed configuration.
2. The following page will appear.

SSL VPN >> SSL Application

Profile Index : 1

Enable Application Service

Application Name

Application Virtual Network Computing (VNC) ▾

IP Address ---Please Select---

Port Virtual Network Computing (VNC)

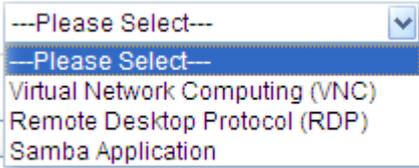
Idle Timeout Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP)

Scaling Samba Application

0 second(s)

100% ▾

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Enable Application Server | Check the box to enable such profile. |
| Application Name | Type a name for such application. The length of the name is limited to 23 characters. |
| Application | <p>There are three types offered for you to create an application profile.</p>  <p>Virtual Network Computing (VNC) – It allows you to access and control a remote PC through VNC protocol.</p> <p>Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) – It allows you to access and control a remote PC through RDP protocol.</p> <p>Samba Application – It allows you to access and control a remote PC through Samba service.</p> |
| IP Address | If you choose VNC or RDP, you have to type the IP address for this protocol. |
| Port | If you choose VNC or RDP, you have to specify the port used for this protocol. The default setting is 5900. |
| Idle Timeout | If you choose VNC, you have to specify the time for disconnecting the SSL VPN tunnel. |
| Scaling | If you choose VNC, you have to choose the percentage (100%, 80%, 60%) for such application. |
| Screen Size | If you choose RDP, you have to choose the screen size for such application. |
| Samba Path | If you choose Samba, you have to specify the path of the Samba service. |

3. Enter the required information.
4. After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.

SSL VPN >> SSL Application

SSL Applications Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Name | Host Address | Service | Active |
|-------|-------|-------------------|---------|--------|
| 1. | VNC_1 | 192.168.1.51:5900 | VNC | v |
| 2. | | | | x |
| 3. | | | | x |

3.17.4 User Account

With SSL VPN, Vigor2860 series let teleworkers have convenient and simple remote access to central site VPN. The teleworkers do not need to install any VPN software manually. From regular web browser, you can establish VPN connection back to your main office even in a guest network or web cafe. The SSL technology is the same as the encryption that you use for secure web sites such as your online bank. The SSL VPN can be operated in either full tunnel mode or proxy mode. Now, Vigor2860 series allows up to 16 simultaneous incoming users.

For SSL VPN, identity authentication and power management are implemented through deploying user accounts. Therefore, the user account for SSL VPN must be set together with remote dial-in user web page. Such menu item will guide to access into **VPN and Remote Access>>Remote Dial-in user.**

SSL VPN >> Remote Dial-in User

Remote Access User Accounts: [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | User | Active | Status | Index | User | Active | Status |
|------------|------|--------------------------|--------|------------|------|--------------------------|--------|
| <u>1.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>17.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>2.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>18.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>3.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>19.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>4.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>20.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>5.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>21.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>6.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>22.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>7.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>23.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>8.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>24.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>9.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>25.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>10.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>26.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>11.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>27.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>12.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>28.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>13.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>29.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>14.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>30.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>15.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>31.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |
| <u>16.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | <u>32.</u> | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |

Note: User Accounts need to be added into User Group to enable SSL Portal Login.

Click each index to edit one remote user profile.

SSL VPN >> Remote Dial-in User

Index No. 1

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>User account and Authentication</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable this account</p> <p>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)</p> <hr/> <p>Allowed Dial-In Type</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node</p> <p>Remote Client IP <input type="text"/></p> <p>or Peer ID <input type="text"/></p> <p>Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block</p> <p>Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP, IP-Camera, DHCP Relay..etc.)</p> <hr/> <p>Subnet</p> <p><input type="text" value="LAN 1"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Assign Static IP Address</p> <p><input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> | <p>Username <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password(Max 19 char) <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords(mOTP)</p> <p>PIN Code <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p>Secret <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <hr/> <p>IKE Authentication Method</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key</p> <p>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)</p> <p><input type="text" value="None"/></p> <hr/> <p>IPsec Security Method</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH)</p> <p>High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES</p> <p>Local ID (optional) <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> |
|--|--|

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---|--|
| <p>User account and Authentication</p> | <p>Enable this account - Check the box to enable this function.</p> <p>Idle Timeout- If the dial-in user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the router will drop this connection. By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 300 seconds.</p> <p>User Name - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name/password is limited to 23 characters.</p> <p>Password - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name/password is limited to 19 characters.</p> <p>Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords (mOTP) - Check this box to make the authentication with mOTP function.</p> <p>PIN Code – Type the code for authentication (e.g, 1234).</p> <p>Secret – Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6).</p> |
| <p>Allowed Dial-In Type</p> | <p>PPTP - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below.</p> |

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|--|
| | <p>IPSec Tunnel - Allow the remote dial-in user to make an IPSec VPN connection through Internet.</p> <p>L2TP with IPSec Policy - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPSec. Select from below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● None - Do not apply the IPSec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPSec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection. ● Nice to Have - Apply the IPSec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. ● Must -Specify the IPSec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection. <p>SSL Tunnel - It allows the remote dial-in user to make an SSL VPN Tunnel connection through Internet, suitable for the application through network accessing (e.g., PPTP/L2TP/IPSec)</p> <p>If you check this box, the function of SSL Tunnel for this account will be activated immediately.</p> <p>Specify Remote Node - Check the checkbox to specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user, ISDN number or peer ID (used in IKE aggressive mode). If you uncheck the checkbox, the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the general settings.</p> <p>Netbios Naming Packet</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass – Click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. ● Block – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel. <p>Multicast via VPN - Some programs might send multicast packets via VPN connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pass – Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router. ● Block – This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router. |
| Subnet | <p>Chose one of the subnet selections for such VPN profile.</p> <p>Assign Static IP Address – Please type a static IP address for the subnet you specified.</p> |
| IKE Authentication Method | <p>This group of fields is applicable for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPSec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node.</p> <p>Pre-Shared Key - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke</p> |

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| | <p>this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.</p> <p>Digital Signature (X.509) – Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and Select one predefined Profiles set in the VPN and Remote Access >>IPSec Peer Identity.</p> |
| IPSec Security Method | <p>This group of fields is a must for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the remote node. Check the Medium, DES, 3DES or AES box as the security method.</p> <p>Medium-Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is invoked. You can uncheck it to disable it.</p> <p>High-Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.</p> <p>Local ID - Specify a local ID to be used for Dial-in setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.</p> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.17.5 User Group

There are 10 user group profiles which can be created for authentication by LDAP server. Such profiles will be used by applications such as User Management, VPN and etc.

SSL VPN >> User Group

| SSL User Group Profiles: | | Set to Factory Default |
|--------------------------|------|--|
| Index | Name | Status |
| 1. | | x |
| 2. | | x |
| 3. | | x |
| 4. | | x |
| 5. | | x |
| 6. | | x |
| 7. | | x |
| 8. | | x |
| 9. | | x |
| 10. | | x |

Each item is explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Set to Factory Default | Click to clear all indexes. |
| Index | Display the number of the client which connecting to FTP server. |
| Name | Display the name of the group profile. |

Click any index number link to open the following page for detailed configuration.

SSL VPN >> User Group

Index No. 10

Enable

Group Name

Access Authority

SSL Web Proxy

SSL Application

Authentication Methods

Local User DataBase

Available User Accounts

1-alpha_huang
2-dni

Selected User Accounts

>>

<<

RADIUS

TACACS+

LDAP / Active Directory

OK

Clear

Cancel

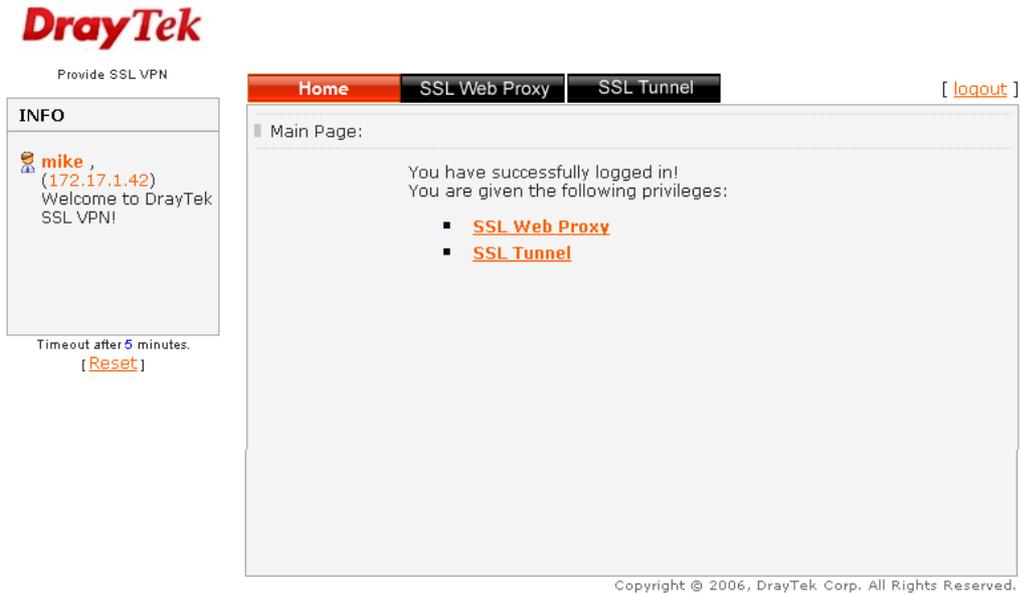
Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Enable | Check this box to enable such profile. | | | | |
| Group Name | Type a name for such profile. The length of the name is limited to 23 characters. | | | | |
| Access Authority | <p>Specify the authority for such profile.</p> <p>At present, Vigor router allows you to create SSL Web Proxy and SSL Application profiles used for SSL VPN. The available profiles will be displayed here for you to select.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Access Authority</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Web Proxy</td> <td style="width: 50%;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Application</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> SSL_WP_1</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Game_APP</td> </tr> </table> </div> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Web Proxy | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Application | <input type="checkbox"/> SSL_WP_1 | <input type="checkbox"/> Game_APP |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Web Proxy | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Application | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> SSL_WP_1 | <input type="checkbox"/> Game_APP | | | | |
| Authentication Methods | <p>It can determine the authentication method used for such profile.</p> <p>Local User DataBase – The system will do the authentication by using the user defined account profiles (in VPN and Remote Access>>Remote Dial-In User). The enabled profiles will be listed in the Available User Account on the left box. To add a profile into a group, simply choose the one from the left box and click the >> button. It will be displayed in the Selected User Account on the right box. For detailed information about configuring the profile setting, refer to Objects Setting>>IP Group.</p> <p>RADIUS – The RADIUS server will do the authentication by using the username and password</p> <p>TACACS+ - The TACACS+ will do the authentication by using the username and password.</p> <p>LDAP / Active Directory - If it is checked, the LDAP / AD server will do the authentication by using the username, password, information stated on the selected profiles.</p> <p>If the above three options are enabled, the system will do the authentication based on them in sequence.</p> | | | | |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.17.6 Online User Status

If you have finished the configuration of SSL Web Proxy (server), users can find out corresponding settings when they access into **Draytek SSL VPN portal** interface.



Next, users can open **SSL VPN>> Online Status** to view logging status of SSL VPN.

SSL VPN >> Online User Status

Refresh Seconds :

| Active User | Host IP | Time out(seconds) | Action |
|-------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Kate | 192.168.30.14 | 299 | <input type="button" value="Drop"/> |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Active User | Display current user who visit SSL VPN server. |
| Host IP | Display the IP address for the host. |
| Time out | Display the time remaining for logging out. |
| Action | You can click Drop to drop certain login user from the router's SSL Portal UI. |

3.18 USB Application

USB device connected on Vigor router can be regarded as a server or WAN interface. By way of Vigor router, clients on LAN can access, write and read data stored in USB storage disk with different applications. After setting the configuration in **USB Application**, you can type the IP address of the Vigor router and username/password created in **USB Application>>USB User Management** on the client software. Then, the client can use the FTP site (USB storage disk) or share the Samba service through Vigor router.

Note: USB ports on Vigor router are allowed to connect to USB modem. Models of the modems supported by Vigor router can be seen from **USB Application>>Modem Support List**. For network connection via USB modem, refer to **WAN>>Internet Access** and **WAN>>General Setup** for detailed information.



3.18.1 USB General Settings

This page will determine the number of concurrent FTP connection, default charset for FTP server and enable Samba service. At present, the Vigor router can support USB storage disk with formats of FAT16 and FAT32 only. Therefore, before connecting the USB storage disk into the Vigor router, please make sure the memory format for the USB storage disk is FAT16 or FAT32. It is recommended for you to use FAT32 for viewing the filename completely (FAT16 cannot support long filename).

USB Application >> USB General Settings

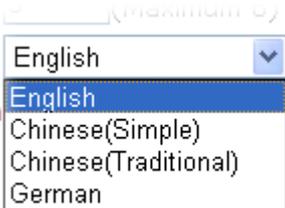
USB General Settings

| | |
|---|--|
| General Settings | |
| Simultaneous FTP Connections | <input type="text" value="5"/> (Maximum 6) |
| Default Charset | <input type="text" value="English"/> |
| Samba Service Settings(Network Neighborhood) | |
| <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | |
| Access Mode | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN Only <input type="radio"/> LAN And WAN | |
| NetBios Name Service | |
| Workgroup Name | <input type="text" value="WORKGROUP"/> |
| Host Name | <input type="text" value="Vigor"/> |

- Note:**
1. If Charset is set to "English", only English long file name is supported.
 2. Multi-session ftp download will be banned by Router FTP server. If your ftp client have multi-connection mechanism, such as FileZilla, you may limit client connections setting to 1 to get better performance.
 3. A workgroup name must not be the same as a host name. The workgroup name and the host name can have as many as 15 characters and a host name can have as many as 23 characters , but both cannot contain any of the following: . ; : " < > * + = / \ | ?.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| General Settings | <p>Simultaneous FTP Connections - This field is used to specify the quantity of the FTP sessions. The router allows up to 6 FTP sessions connecting to USB storage disk at one time.</p> <p>Default Charset - At present, Vigor router supports four types of character sets. Default Charset is for English based file name.</p>  |
| Samba Service Settings | Click Enable to invoke samba service via the router. |
| Access Mode | <p>LAN Only – Users coming from internet cannot connect to the samba server of the router.</p> <p>LAN And WAN - Both LAN and WAN users can access samba server of the router.</p> |
| NetBios Name Service | <p>For the NetBios service of USB storage disk, you have to specify a workgroup name and a host name. A workgroup name must not be the same as the host name. The workgroup name can have as many as 15 characters and the host name can have as many as 23 characters. Both them cannot contain any of the following--- ; : " < > * + = \ ?.</p> <p>Workgroup Name – Type a name for the workgroup.</p> <p>Host Name – Type the host name for the router.</p> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.18.2 USB User Management

This page allows you to set profiles for FTP/Samba users. Any user who wants to access into the USB storage disk must type the same username and password configured in this page. Before adding or modifying settings in this page, please insert a USB storage disk first. Otherwise, an error message will appear to warn you.

USB Application >> USB User Management

USB User Management | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Username | Home Folder | Index | Username | Home Folder |
|-----------|----------|-------------|------------|----------|-------------|
| <u>1.</u> | | | <u>9.</u> | | |
| <u>2.</u> | | | <u>10.</u> | | |
| <u>3.</u> | | | <u>11.</u> | | |
| <u>4.</u> | | | <u>12.</u> | | |
| <u>5.</u> | | | <u>13.</u> | | |
| <u>6.</u> | | | <u>14.</u> | | |
| <u>7.</u> | | | <u>15.</u> | | |
| <u>8.</u> | | | <u>16.</u> | | |

Click index number to access into configuration page.

USB Application >> USB User Management

Profile Index: 1

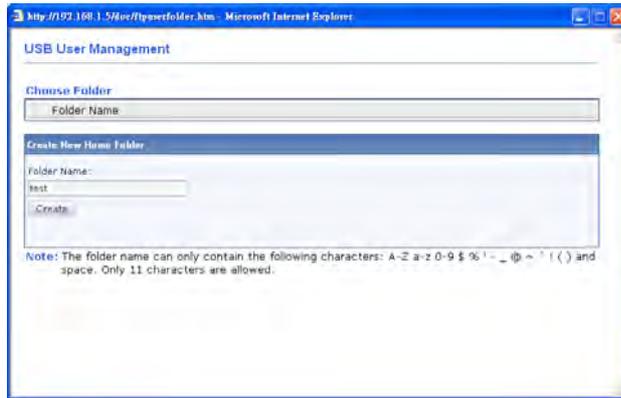
| | |
|--------------------|---|
| FTP/Samba User | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| Username | <input type="text"/> |
| Password | <input type="text"/> (Maximum 11 Characters) |
| Confirm Password | <input type="text"/> |
| Home Folder | <input type="text"/>  |
| Access Rule | |
| File | <input type="checkbox"/> Read <input type="checkbox"/> Write <input type="checkbox"/> Delete |
| Directory | <input type="checkbox"/> List <input type="checkbox"/> Create <input type="checkbox"/> Remove |

Note: The folder name can only contain the following characters: A-Z a-z 0-9 \$ % ' - _ @ ~ ` ! () / and space.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| FTP/Samba User | <p>Enable – Click this button to activate this profile (account) for FTP service or Samba User service. Later, the user can use the username specified in this page to login into FTP server.</p> <p>Disable – Click this button to disable such profile.</p> |
| Username | <p>Type the username for FTP/Samba users for accessing into FTP server (USB storage disk). Be aware that users cannot access into USB storage disk in anonymity. Later, you can open FTP client software and type the username specified here for accessing into USB storage disk. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.</p> <p>Note: “Admin” could not be typed here as username, for the word is specified for accessing into web pages of Vigor router only. Also, it is reserved for FTP firmware upgrade usage.</p> <p>Note: FTP Passive mode is not supported by Vigor Router. Please disable the mode on the FTP client.</p> |
| Password | <p>Type the password for FTP/Samba users for accessing FTP server. Later, you can open FTP client software and type the password specified here for accessing into USB storage disk. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.</p> |
| Confirm Password | <p>Type the password again to make confirmation.</p> |
| Home Folder | <p>It determines the folder for the client to access into. The user can enter a directory name in this field. Then, after clicking OK, the router will create the specific/new folder in the USB storage disk. In addition, if the user types “/” here, he/she can access into all of the disk folders and files in USB storage disk.</p> <p>Note: When write protect status for the USB storage disk is ON, you cannot type any new folder name in this field. Only “/” can be used in such case.</p> |

You can click  to open the following dialog to add any new folder which can be specified as the Home Folder.



Access Rule

It determines the authority for such profile. Any user, who uses such profile for accessing into USB storage disk, must follow the rule specified here.

File – Check the items (Read, Write and Delete) for such profile.

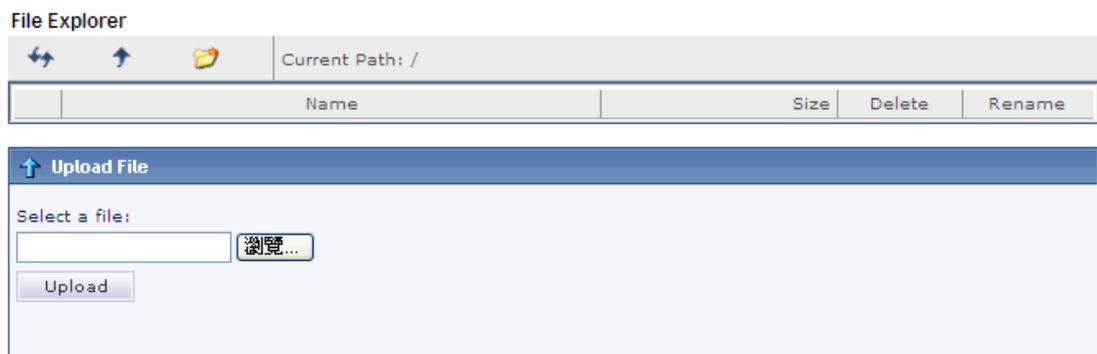
Directory –Check the items (List, Create and Remove) for such profile.

Before you click **OK**, you have to insert a USB storage disk into the USB interface of the Vigor router. Otherwise, you cannot save the configuration.

3.18.3 File Explorer

File Explorer offers an easy way for users to view and manage the content of USB storage disk connected on Vigor router.

USB Application >> File Explorer



Note: The folder can not be deleted when it is not empty.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|---|
|  Refresh | Click this icon to refresh files list. |
|  Back | Click this icon to return to the upper directory. |

| | |
|---|--|
|  Create | Click this icon to add a new folder. |
| Current Path | Display current folder. |
| Upload | Click this button to upload the selected file to the USB storage disk. The uploaded file in the USB diskette can be shared for other user through FTP. |

3.18.4 USB Device Status

This page is to monitor the status for the users who accessing into FTP or Samba server (USB storage disk) via the Vigor router. In addition, the status of the USB modem or USB printer connecting to Vigor router can be checked from such page. If you want to remove the storage disk from USB port in router, please click **Disconnect USB Disk** first. And then, remove the USB storage disk later.

USB Application >> USB Device Status

Disk
Modem
Printer

| [Refresh](#) |

USB Mass Storage Device Status

Connection Status: No Disk Connected Disconnect USB Disk

Disk Capacity: 0 MB

Free Capacity: 0 MB [Refresh](#)

USB Disk Users Connected

| Index | Service | IP Address(Port) | Username |
|-------|---------|------------------|----------|
| | | | |

Note: If the write protect switch of USB disk is turned on, the USB disk is in READ-ONLY mode. No data can be written to it.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| Connection Status | If there is no USB storage disk connected to Vigor router, “ No Disk Connected ” will be shown here. |
| Disk Capacity | It displays the total capacity of the USB storage disk. |
| Free Capacity | It displays the free space of the USB storage disk. Click Refresh at any time to get new status for free capacity. |
| Index | It displays the number of the client which connecting to FTP server. |
| IP Address | It displays the IP address of the user’s host which connecting to the FTP server. |
| Username | It displays the username that user uses to login to the FTP server. |

When you insert USB storage disk into the Vigor router, the system will start to find out such device within several seconds.

USB Application >> USB Device Status

| Disk | Modem | Printer | Refresh |
|---------------------------------------|---------|------------------|---------------------|
| USB Mass Storage Device Status | | | |
| Connection Status: Disk Connected | | | Disconnect USB Disk |
| Write Protect Status: No | | | |
| Disk Capacity: 2009 MB | | | |
| Free Capacity: 925 MB | | | Refresh |
| USB Disk Users Connected | | | |
| Index | Service | IP Address(Port) | Username |

Note: If the write protect switch of USB disk is turned on, the USB disk is in **READ-ONLY** mode. No data can be written to it.

3.18.5 Temperature Sensor

A USB Thermometer is now available that complements your installed DrayTek router installations that will help you monitor the server or data communications room environment and notify you if the server room or data communications room is overheating.



During summer in particular, it is important to ensure that your server or data communications equipment are not overheating due to cooling system failures.

The inclusion of a USB thermometer in compatible Vigor routers will continuously monitor the temperature of its environment. When a pre-determined threshold is reached you will be alerted by either an email or SMS so you can undertake appropriate action.

Temperature Sensor Settings

USB Application >> Temperature Sensor Setting

| Temperature Chart | Temperature Sensor Settings |
|--|---|
| Display Settings | |
| Temperature Calibration | <input type="text" value="0.00"/> |
| Temperature Unit | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Celsius <input type="radio"/> Fahrenheit |
| Alarm Settings | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Syslog Alarm | |
| Upper temperature limit | <input type="text" value="30.00"/> |
| Lower temperature limit | <input type="text" value="18.00"/> |

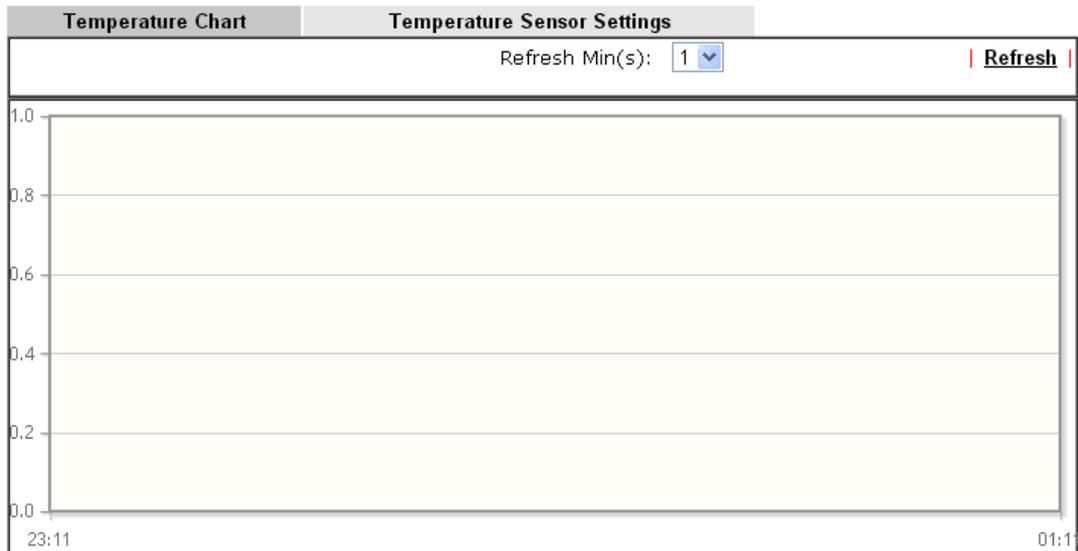
Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| Display Settings | <p>Temperature Calibration - Type a value used for correcting the temperature error.</p> <p>Temperature Unit - Choose the display unit of the temperature. There are two types for you to choose.</p> |
| Alarm Settings | <p>Enable Syslog Alarm - The temperature log will be recorded on Syslog if it is enabled.</p> <p>Upper temperature limit/Lower temperature limit - Type the upper limit and lower limit for the system to send out temperature alert.</p> |

Temperature Chart

Below shows an example of temperature graph:

USB Application >> Temperature Sensor Graph



Manufacturer:
 Product:
 Current Temperature:
 Average Temperature:
 Maximum Temperature:
 Minimum temperature:

3.18.6 Modem Support List

Such page provides the information about the brand name and model name of the USB modems which are supported by Vigor router.

USB Application >> Modem Support List

The following compatibility test lists 3.5G/LTE modems **supported by Vigor router under certain environment or countries**. If the LTE modem you have is on the list but cannot work properly, please write an e-mail to support@draytek.com or consult your dealer for further information.

| PPP mode | | DHCP mode | |
|----------|---------------|---|--------|
| Brand | Model | LTE | Status |
| Aiko | Aiko 83D | | Y |
| Alcatel | Alcatel L100V |  | Y |
| Alcatel | Alcatel W100 |  | Y |
| BandRich | Bandlux C170 | | Y |
| BandRich | Bandlux C270 | | Y |
| BandRich | Bandlux C321 | | Y |
| BandRich | Bandlux C330 | | Y |
| BandRich | Bandlux C331 | | Y |
| BandRich | Bandlux C502 | | Y |
| Huawei | Huawei E169u | | Y |
| Huawei | Huawei E220 | | Y |
| Huawei | Huawei E303D | | Y |
| Huawei | Huawei E3131 | | Y |
| Huawei | Huawei E392 |  | Y |
| Huawei | Huawei E398 |  | Y |

3.19 System Maintenance

For the system setup, there are several items that you have to know the way of configuration: System Status, TR-069, Administrator Password, User Password, Login Page Greeting, Configuration Backup, Syslog /Mail Alert, Time and Date, Management, Reboot System, Firmware Upgrade and Activation.

Below shows the menu items for System Maintenance.



3.19.1 System Status

The **System Status** provides basic network settings of Vigor router. It includes LAN and WAN interface information. Also, you could get the current running firmware version or firmware related information from this presentation.

System Status

Model Name : Vigor2860Vac
Firmware Version : 3.7.8
Build Date/Time : Dec 23 2014 18:34:33

| LAN | | | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|---------|--|
| | MAC Address | IP Address | Subnet Mask | DHCP Server | DNS | |
| LAN1 | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50 | 192.168.1.1 | 255.255.255.0 | ON | 8.8.8.8 | |
| LAN2 | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50 | 192.168.2.1 | 255.255.255.0 | ON | 8.8.8.8 | |
| LAN3 | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50 | 192.168.3.1 | 255.255.255.0 | ON | 8.8.8.8 | |
| LAN4 | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50 | 192.168.4.1 | 255.255.255.0 | ON | 8.8.8.8 | |
| LAN5 | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50 | 192.168.5.1 | 255.255.255.0 | ON | 8.8.8.8 | |
| LAN6 | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50 | 192.168.6.1 | 255.255.255.0 | ON | 8.8.8.8 | |
| DMZ PORT | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50 | 192.168.7.1 | 255.255.255.0 | ON | 8.8.8.8 | |
| IP Routed Subnet | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50 | 192.168.0.1 | 255.255.255.0 | ON | 8.8.8.8 | |

| Wireless LAN | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|---------|
| MAC Address | Frequency Domain | Firmware Version | SSID |
| 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-50 | Europe | 2.7.1.5 | DrayTek |

| Wireless LAN(5GHz) | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|------------------|------------|
| MAC Address | Frequency Domain | Firmware Version | SSID |
| 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-52 | Europe | 10.2.85 | DrayTek_5G |

| WAN | | | | | |
|------|--------------|-------------------|------------|------------|-----------------|
| | Link Status | MAC Address | Connection | IP Address | Default Gateway |
| WAN1 | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-51 | PPPoE | --- | --- |
| WAN2 | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-52 | --- | --- | --- |
| WAN3 | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-53 | --- | --- | --- |
| WAN4 | Disconnected | 00-1D-AA-C6-4C-54 | --- | --- | --- |

| IPv6 | | | |
|------|----------------------------|-------|----------------------|
| | Address | Scope | Internet Access Mode |
| LAN | FE80::21D:AFF:FEC6:4C50/64 | Link | --- |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Model Name | Display the model name of the router. |
| Firmware Version | Display the firmware version of the router. |
| Build Date/Time | Display the date and time of the current firmware build. |
| LAN | <p>MAC Address - Display the MAC address of the LAN Interface.</p> <p>IP Address - Display the IP address of the LAN interface.</p> <p>Subnet Mask - Display the subnet mask address of the LAN interface.</p> <p>DHCP Server - Display the current status of DHCP server of the LAN interface</p> <p>DNS - Display the assigned IP address of the primary DNS.</p> |
| WAN | <p>Link Status - Display current connection status.</p> <p>MAC Address - Display the MAC address of the WAN Interface.</p> <p>Connection - Display the connection type.</p> <p>IP Address - Display the IP address of the WAN interface.</p> <p>Default Gateway - Display the assigned IP address of the default gateway.</p> |
| IPv6 | <p>Address - Display the IPv6 address for LAN.</p> <p>Scope - Display the scope of IPv6 address. For example, IPv6 Link Local could only be used for direct IPv6 link. It can't be used for IPv6 internet.</p> <p>Internet Access Mode – Display the connection mode chosen for accessing into Internet.</p> |

3.19.2 TR-069

This device supports TR-069 standard. It is very convenient for an administrator to manage a TR-069 device through an Auto Configuration Server, e.g., VigorACS.

System Maintenance >> TR-069 Setting

ACS and CPE Settings

ACS Server On Internet

ACS Server

URL http://vigoracs.draytek.com/ACSServer/services/ACSServlet

Username alpha

Password *****

Test With Inform Event Code PERIODIC

Last Inform Response Time :Thu Aug 7 10:27:16 2014 ●

CPE Client

Enable Disable

URL http://111.251.216.33:8069/cwm/CRN.html

Port 8069

Username vigor

Password *****

Periodic Inform Settings

Disable Enable

Interval Time 900 second(s)

STUN Settings

Disable Enable

Server Address

Server Port 3478

Minimum Keep Alive Period 60 second(s)

Maximum Keep Alive Period -1 second(s)

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| ACS Server On | Choose the interface for the router connecting to ACS server. |
| ACS Server | <p>URL/Username/Password – Such data must be typed according to the ACS (Auto Configuration Server) you want to link. Please refer to Auto Configuration Server user’s manual for detailed information.</p> <p>Test With Inform – Click it to send a message based on the event code selection to test if such CPE is able to communicate with VigorACS SI server.</p> <p>Event Code – Use the drop down menu to specify an event to perform the test.</p> <p>Last Inform Response Time – Display the time that VigorACS server made a response while receiving Inform message from CPE last time.</p> |
| CPE Client | Such information is useful for Auto Configuration Server. |

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| | <p>Enable/Disable – Allow/Deny the CPE Client to connect with Auto Configuration Server.</p> <p>Port – Sometimes, port conflict might be occurred. To solve such problem, you might change port number for CPE.</p> <p>Username and Password – Type the username and password that VigorACS can use to access into such CPE.</p> |
| Periodic Inform Settings | <p>The default setting is Enable. Please set interval time or schedule time for the router to send notification to CPE. Or click Disable to close the mechanism of notification.</p> |
| STUN Settings | <p>The default is Disable. If you click Enable, please type the relational settings listed below:</p> <p>Server IP – Type the IP address of the STUN server.</p> <p>Server Port – Type the port number of the STUN server.</p> <p>Minimum Keep Alive Period – If STUN is enabled, the CPE must send binding request to the server for the purpose of maintaining the binding in the Gateway. Please type a number as the minimum period. The default setting is “60 seconds”.</p> <p>Maximum Keep Alive Period – If STUN is enabled, the CPE must send binding request to the server for the purpose of maintaining the binding in the Gateway. Please type a number as the maximum period. A value of “-1” indicates that no maximum period is specified.</p> |

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.19.3 Administrator Password

This page allows you to set new password.

System Maintenance >> Administrator Password Setup

Administrator Password

| | | |
|------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Old Password | <input type="text"/> | |
| New Password | <input type="text"/> | (Max. 23 characters allowed) |
| Confirm Password | <input type="text"/> | (Max. 23 characters allowed) |

Note: Password can contain only a-z A-Z 0-9 ; ; . " < > * + = \ | ? @ # ^ ! ()

Administrator Local User

| <input type="checkbox"/> Local User | | | | |
|---|-----------|-----------|--|--|
| Local User List | | | | |
| <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>User Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> </td> <td> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Index | User Name | | |
| Index | User Name | | | |
| | | | | |
| Specific User | | | | |
| User Name: <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| Password: <input type="text"/> Confirm Password: <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> | | | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable 'Admin' Login From Wan | | | | |

Administrator LDAP Setting

| |
|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable LDAP/AD login for Admin users |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable 'Admin' Login From Wan |
| LDAP Server Profiles |
| LDAP Profile Setup |

Note: Please select 'Admin' from group select box on login UI.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Administrator Password | <p>Old Password - Type in the old password. The factory default setting for password is “admin”.</p> <p>New Password -Type in new password in this field. The length of the password is limited to 23 characters.</p> <p>Confirm Password -Type in the new password again.</p> |
| Administrator Local User | <p>The administrator can login web user interface of Vigor router to modify all of the settings to fit the requirements. This feature allows other user in LAN who can access into the web user interface with the same privilege of the administrator.</p> <p>Local User – Check the box to enable the local user configuration.</p> <p>Local User List – It displays the username of the local user.</p> |

| | |
|--|--|
| | <p>User Name – Give a user name for the local user.</p> <p>Password – Type the password for the local user.</p> <p>Confirm Password – Type the password again for confirmation.</p> <p>Add – After typing the user name and password above, simply click it to create a new local user. The new one will be shown on the Local User List immediately.</p> <p>Edit – If the username listed on the box above is not satisfied, simply click the username and modify it on the field of User Name. Later, click Edit to update the information.</p> <p>Delete – If the local user listed on the box above is not satisfied, simply click the username and click Delete to remove it.</p> <p>Enable Admin Login From Wan – The default setting is enabled. It can ensure any user accessing into web user interface of Vigor router through Internet by username/password of “admin/admin”.</p> |
| <p>Administrator LDAP Setting</p> | <p>Enable LDAP/AD login for Admin users – If it is enabled, any user can access into the web user interface of Vigor router through the LDAP server authentication.</p> <p>Enable Admin Login From Wan – The default setting is enabled. It can ensure any user accessing into web user interface of Vigor router through Internet by username/password of “admin/admin”.</p> <p>LDAP Server Profiles – Available profiles will be displayed here under the link of LDAP Profile Setup.</p> <p>LDAP Profile Setup – It allows you to create a new LDAP profile.</p> |

When you click **OK**, the login window will appear. Please use the new password to access into the web user interface again.

3.19.4 User Password

This page allows you to set new password for user operation.

System Maintenance >> User Password

Enable User Mode for simple web configuration

User Password | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Password | <input type="text"/> |
| Confirm Password | <input type="text"/> |

Note: 1.Password can contain only a-z A-Z 0-9 , ; : . " < > * + = \ | ? @ # ^ ! ()
 2.Password can't be only *.Example:'*' or '***' or '****' is illegal, but '123*' or '*45' is OK.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Enable User Mode for simple web configuration | After checking this box, you can access into the web user interface with the password typed here for simple web configuration. The settings on simple web user interface will be different with full web user interface accessed by using the administrator password. |
| Password | Type in new password in this field. The length of the password is limited to 31 characters. |
| Confirm Password | Type in the new password again. |
| Set to Factory Default | Click to return to the factory default setting. |

When you click **OK**, the login window will appear. Please use the new password to access into the web user interface again.

Below shows an example for accessing into User Operation with User Password.

1. Open **System Maintenance>>User Password**.
2. Check the box of **Enable User Mode for simple web configuration** to enable user mode operation. Type a new password in the field of New Password and click **OK**.

System Maintenance >> User Password

Enable User Mode for simple web configuration

User Password | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| Password | <input type="password"/> |
| Confirm Password | <input type="password"/> |

Note: 1.Password can contain only a-z A-Z 0-9 , ; : . " < > * + = \ | ? @ # ^ ! ()
 2.Password can't be only *.Example:'*' or '***' or '****' is illegal, but '123*' or '*45' is OK.

3. The following screen will appear. Simply click **OK**.

System Maintenance >> User Password

Active Configuration

| | |
|----------|---------|
| Password | : ***** |
|----------|---------|

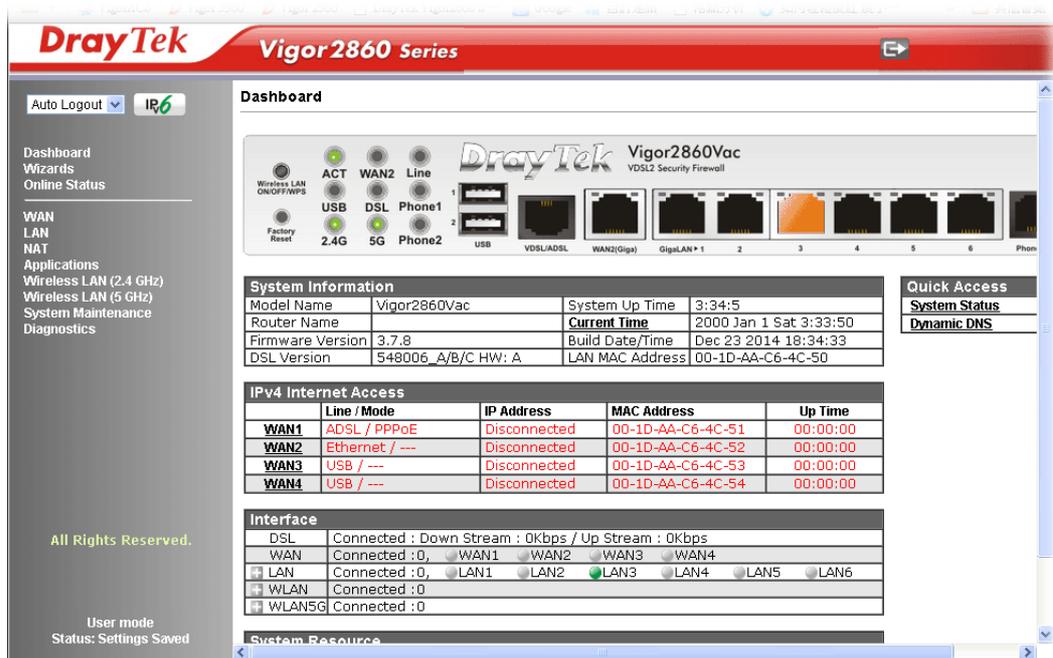
4. Log out Vigor router web user interface by clicking the Logout button.



5. The following window will be open to ask for username and password. Type the new user password in the field of **Password** and click **Login**.

A screenshot of the DrayTek Vigor2860 Series Login window. The window has a red header with the DrayTek logo and "Vigor2860 Series". Below the header is a black bar with the word "Login" in white. The main area contains two input fields: "Username" and "Password". The "Password" field has six dots representing masked characters. A "Login" button is located below the input fields. At the bottom of the window, there is a copyright notice: "Copyright © 2013 DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved."

6. The main screen with User Mode will be shown as follows.



Settings to be configured in User Mode will be less than settings in Admin Mode. Only basic configuration settings will be available in User Mode.

Note: Setting in User Mode can be configured as same as in Admin Mode.

3.19.5 Login Page Greeting

When you want to access into the web user interface of Vigor router, the system will ask you to offer username and password first. At that moment, the background of the web page is blank and no heading will be displayed on the Login window. This page allows you to specify login URL and the heading on the Login window if you have such requirement.

System Maintenance >> Login Page Greeting

Login Page Greeting

Enable

Login Page Title (31 char max.)

Welcome Message and Bulletin (Max 511 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

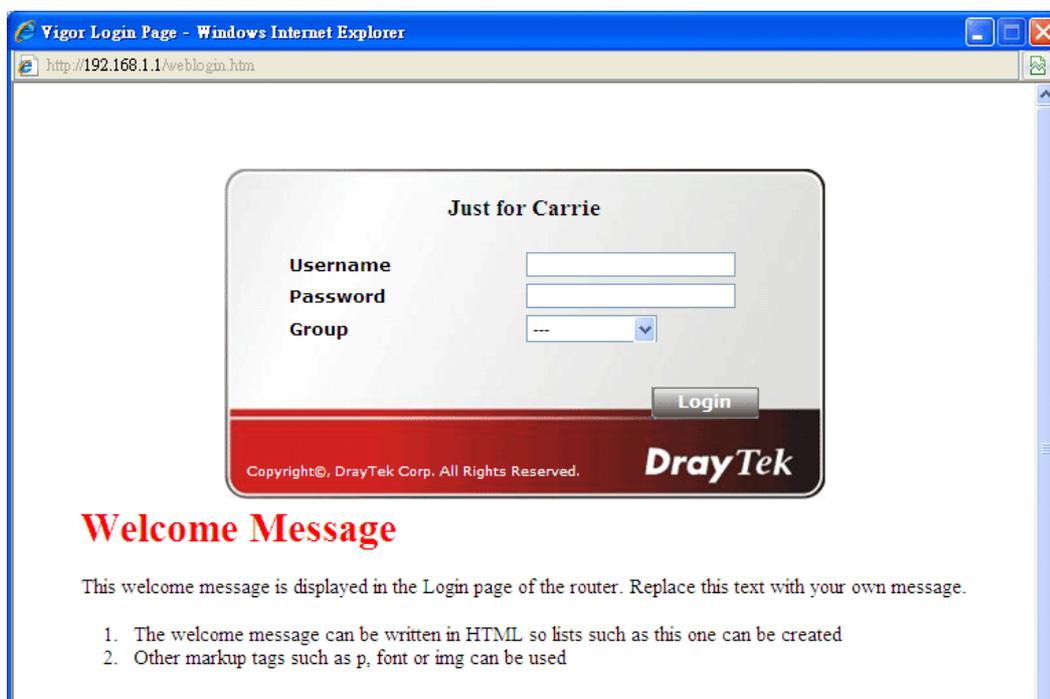
```
<h1><b><font color=red>Welcome Message</font></b></h1><p>This welcome message is displayed in the Login page of the router. Replace this text with your own message. </p><ol><li>The welcome message can be written in HTML so lists such as this one can be created </li><li>Other markup tags such as p, font or img can be used</li></ol>
```

Examples of Welcome Message and Bulletin:
 <h1>Welcome Message</h1>
 <p>Message</p>

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Enable | Check this box to enable the login customization function. |
| Login Page Title | Type a brief description (e.g., Welcome to DrayTek) which will be shown on the heading of the login dialog. |
| Welcome Message and Bulletin | Type words or sentences here. It will be displayed for bulletin message. In addition, it can be displayed on the login dialog at the bottom. Note that do not type URL redirect link here. |
| Preview | Click it to display the preview of the login window based on the settings on this web page. |
| Set to Factory Default | Click to return to the factory default setting. |

Below shows an example of login customization with the information typed in Login Description and Bulletin.



3.19.6 Configuration Backup

Such function can be used to apply the router settings configured by Vigor2820/ Vigor2830/ Vigor2850 to Vigor2860.

Backup the Configuration

Follow the steps below to backup your configuration.

1. Go to **System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**. The following page will be popped-up, as shown below.

System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup

Configuration Backup / Restoration

| |
|--|
| <p>Restore</p> <p>Restore settings from a configuration file.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Choose File"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Do not restore password from the configuration file.</p> <p>Note: This will work only if the selected configuration file was created from this device.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Restore"/></p> |
| <p>Backup</p> <p>Back up the current settings into a configuration file.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Protect with password</p> <p><input type="button" value="Backup"/></p> |

Note: When loading a configuration file from a model in the Supported Model List please note that features and functionality can vary between models so please manually verify the settings after the restoration.

Supported Model List

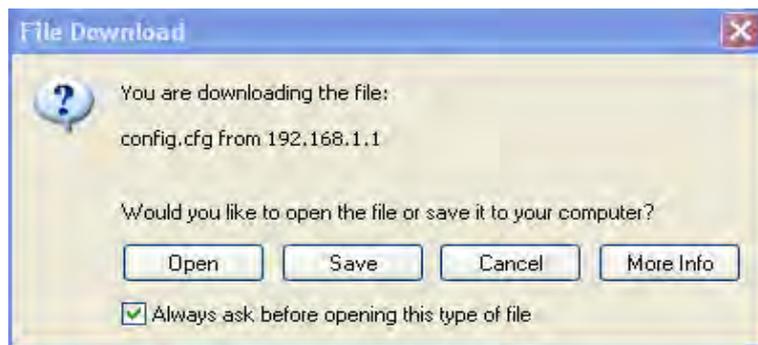
| Model | Firmware Version |
|-----------|------------------|
| Vigor2820 | 3.3.7.4 |
| Vigor2830 | 3.6.6.2 |
| Vigor2850 | 3.6.6 |

Available settings are explained as follows:

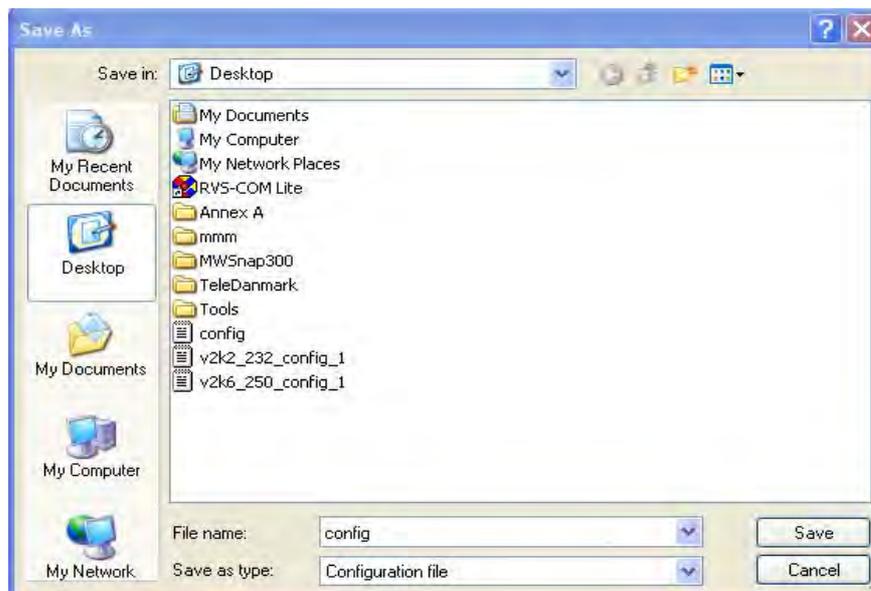
| Item | Description |
|----------------|---|
| Restore | <p>Choose File – Click it to specify a file to be restored.</p> <p>Do not restore password from the configuration file - If the password settings shall not be restored and applied to Vigor2860, simply check this box to get rid of password settings.</p> <p>Click Restore to restore the configuration. If the file is encrypted, the system will ask you to type the password to decrypt the configuration file.</p> |
| Backup | <p>Click it to perform the configuration backup of this router.</p> <p>The configuration file can... - The web configuration file of such Vigor router can be applied to other router based on user request. If this box is checked, the configuration file backup here can be restored to this router only.</p> <p>Encryption the configuration file...- For the sake of security, the configuration file for the router can be encrypted.</p> |

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| | <p>Backup</p> <p>Click Backup to download current running configurations as a file.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Backup"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The configuration file can only be restored to this router.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Encrypt the configuration file by using a password.</p> <p>Password <input type="text"/> (Max. 23 characters allowed)</p> <p>Confirm Password <input type="text"/> (Max. 23 characters allowed)</p> <p>Note: Configuration restoration from other models supported, but verification after restoration is required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Password – Type several characters as the password for encrypting the configuration file. ● Confirm Password – Type the password again for confirmation. |
| <p>Support Model List</p> | <p>Web configuration file from <i>other</i> Vigor router can be applied to Vigor2860 series. At present, the configuration file of Vigor2820/Vigor2830/Vigor2850 is accepted for Vigor 2860.</p> <p>This field displays model name(s) and firmware which web configuration file saved can be used by such router.</p> |

2. Click **Backup** button to get into the following dialog. Click **Save** button to open another dialog for saving configuration as a file.



3. In **Save As** dialog, the default filename is **config.cfg**. You could give it another name by yourself.



- Click **Save** button, the configuration will download automatically to your computer as a file named **config.cfg**.

The above example is using **Windows** platform for demonstrating examples. The **Mac** or **Linux** platform will appear different windows, but the backup function is still available.

Note: Backup for Certification must be done independently. The Configuration Backup does not include information of Certificate.

Restore Configuration

- Go to **System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**. The following windows will be popped-up, as shown below.

System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup

Configuration Backup / Restoration

Restoration

Select a configuration file.

Restore settings from the configuration file except current login password.

Click Restore to upload the file.

Backup

Click Backup to download current running configurations as a file.

The configuration file can only be restored to this router.

Encrypt the configuration file by using a password.

Note: Configuration restoration from other models supported, but verification after restoration is recommended as it's not guaranteed that every setting will map across perfectly.

Support Model List

| Model | Firmware Version |
|-----------|------------------|
| Vigor2820 | 3.3.7.4 |
| Vigor2830 | 3.6.6.2 |
| Vigor2850 | 3.6.6 |

- Click **Choose File** button to choose the correct configuration file for uploading to the router.
- Click **Restore** button and wait for few seconds, the following picture will tell you that the restoration procedure is successful.

3.19.7 Syslog/Mail Alert

SysLog function is provided for users to monitor router. There is no bother to directly get into the Web user interface of the router or borrow debug equipments.

System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert Setup

SysLog / Mail Alert Setup

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>SysLog Access Setup</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable</p> <p>Syslog Save to:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Syslog Server</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> USB Disk</p> <p>Router Name <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Server IP Address <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Destination Port <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="514"/></p> <p>Mail Syslog <input type="checkbox"/> Enable</p> <p>Enable syslog message:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Firewall Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User Access Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Router/DSL information</p> <p>AlertLog Setup</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable</p> <p>AlertLog Port <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="514"/></p> | <p>Mail Alert Setup</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/></p> <p>SMTP Server <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>SMTP Port <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="25"/></p> <p>Mail To <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Return-Path <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Use SSL</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Authentication</p> <p>Username <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Password <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Enable E-Mail Alert:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DoS Attack</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IM-P2P</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN LOG</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> APPE Signature</p> |
|--|--|

Note: 1. Mail Syslog cannot be activated unless USB Disk is ticked for "Syslog Save to".
 2. Mail Syslog feature sends a Syslog file when its size reaches 1M Bytes.
 3. We only support secured SMTP connection on port 465.

Available settings are explained as follows:

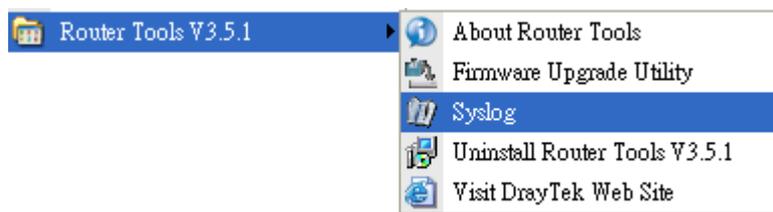
| Item | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| SysLog Access Setup | <p>Enable - Check Enable to activate function of syslog.</p> <p>Syslog Save to – Check Syslog Server to save the log to Syslog server.</p> <p>Check USB Disk to save the log to the attached USB storage disk.</p> |
| Router Name | <p>Display the name for such router configured in System Maintenance>>Management.</p> <p>If there is no name here, simply lick the link to access into System Maintenance>>Management to set the router name.</p> <p>Server IP Address -The IP address of the Syslog server.</p> <p>Destination Port - Assign a port for the Syslog protocol.</p> <p>Mail Syslog – Check the box to recode the mail event on Syslog.</p> <p>Enable syslog message - Check the box listed on this web page to send the corresponding message of firewall, VPN, User Access, Call, WAN, Router/DSL information to Syslog.</p> |

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| AlertLog Setup | <p>Check Enable to activate function of alert log.</p> <p>AlertLog Port - Type the port number for alert log. The default setting is 514.</p> |
| Mail Alert Setup | <p>Check Enable to activate function of mail alert.</p> <p>Send a test e-mail - Make a simple test for the e-mail address specified in this page. Please assign the mail address first and click this button to execute a test for verify the mail address is available or not.</p> <p>SMTP Server/SMTP Port - The IP address/Port number of the SMTP server.</p> <p>Mail To - Assign a mail address for sending mails out.</p> <p>Return-Path - Assign a path for receiving the mail from outside.</p> <p>Use SSL - Check this box to use port 465 for SMTP server for some e-mail server uses https as the transmission method.</p> <p>Authentication - Check this box to activate this function while using e-mail application.</p> <p>User Name - Type the user name for authentication.</p> <p>Password - Type the password for authentication.</p> <p>Enable E-mail Alert - Check the box to send alert message to the e-mail box while the router detecting the item(s) you specify here.</p> |

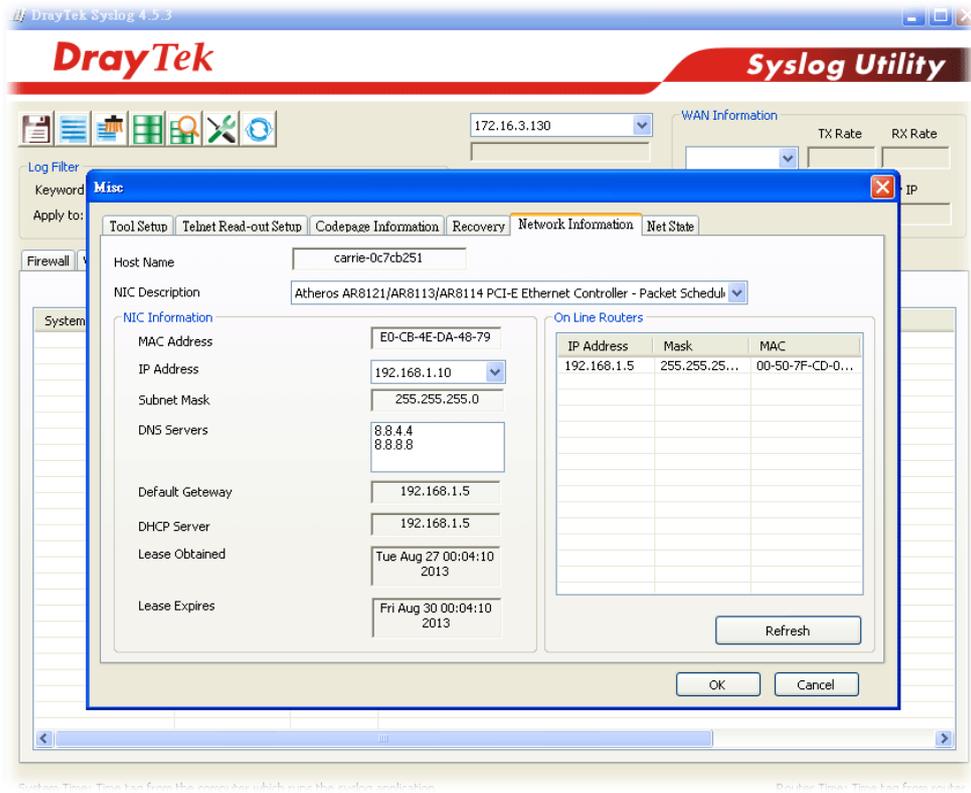
Click **OK** to save these settings.

For viewing the Syslog, please do the following:

1. Just set your monitor PC's IP address in the field of Server IP Address
2. Install the Router Tools in the **Utility** within provided CD. After installation, click on the **Router Tools>>Syslog** from program menu.



- From the Syslog screen, select the router you want to monitor. Be reminded that in **Network Information**, select the network adapter used to connect to the router. Otherwise, you won't succeed in retrieving information from the router.



3.19.8 Time and Date

It allows you to specify where the time of the router should be inquired from.

System Maintenance >> Time and Date

Time Information

Current System Time:

Time Setup

Use Browser Time
 Use Internet Time

Time Server:

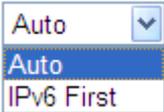
Priority: ▼

Time Zone: ▼

Enable Daylight Saving:

Automatically Update Interval: ▼

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Current System Time | Click Inquire Time to get the current time. |
| Use Browser Time | Select this option to use the browser time from the remote administrator PC host as router's system time. |
| Use Internet Time | Select to inquire time information from Time Server on the Internet using assigned protocol. |
| Time Server | Type the web site of the time server. |
| Priority | Choose Auto or IPv6 First as the priority.  |
| Time Zone | Select the time zone where the router is located. |
| Enable Daylight Saving | Check the box to enable the daylight saving. Such feature is available for certain area. Advanced – Click it to open a pop up dialog. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Daylight Saving Advanced</p> <p> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default Start: No Daylight Saving End: No Daylight Saving </p> <p> <input type="radio"/> Date Range Start: <input type="button" value="Year"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="Month"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="Day"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="00 : 00"/> ▼ End: <input type="button" value="Year"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="Month"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="Day"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="00 : 00"/> ▼ </p> <p> <input type="radio"/> Yearly Start: Yearly On <input type="button" value="Januai"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="First"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="Sunda"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="00 : 00"/> ▼ End: Yearly On <input type="button" value="Januai"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="First"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="Sunda"/> ▼ <input type="button" value="00 : 00"/> ▼ </p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Close"/> </p> </div> |
| | Use the default time setting or set user defined time for your requirement. |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Automatically Update Interval | Select a time interval for updating from the NTP server. |
|--------------------------------------|--|

Click **OK** to save these settings.

3.19.9 SNMP

This page allows you to configure settings for SNMP and SNMPV3 services.

The SNMPv3 is **more secure than SNMP** through the encryption method (support AES and DES) and authentication method (support MD5 and SHA) for the management needs.

System Maintenance >> SNMP

SNMP Setup

Enable SNMP Agent

Get Community:

Set Community:

Manager Host IP(IPv4)

| Index | IP | Subnet Mask |
|-------|----------------------|--|
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> |

Manager Host IP(IPv6)

| Index | IPv6 Address | / Prefix Length |
|-------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> |

Trap Community:

Notification Host IP(IPv4)

| Index | IP |
|-------|----------------------|
| 1 | <input type="text"/> |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> |

Notification Host IP(IPv6)

| Index | IPv6 Address |
|-------|----------------------|
| 1 | <input type="text"/> |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> |

Trap Timeout:

Enable SNMPV3 Agent

USM User:

Auth Algorithm:

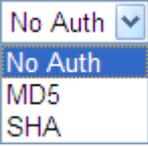
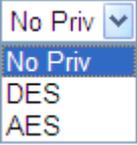
Auth Password:

Privacy Algorithm:

Privacy Password:

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| Enable SNMP Agent | Check it to enable this function. |
| Get Community | Set the name for getting community by typing a proper |

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| | <p>character. The default setting is public.</p> <p>The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.</p> |
| Set Community | <p>Set community by typing a proper name. The default setting is private.</p> <p>The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.</p> |
| Manager Host IP (IPv4) | <p>Set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IPv4 address to specify certain host.</p> |
| Manager Host IP (IPv6) | <p>Set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IPv6 address to specify certain host.</p> |
| Trap Community | <p>Set trap community by typing a proper name. The default setting is public.</p> <p>The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.</p> |
| Notification Host IP (IPv4) | <p>Set the IPv4 address of the host that will receive the trap community.</p> |
| Notification Host IP (IPv6) | <p>Set the IPv6 address of the host that will receive the trap community.</p> |
| Trap Timeout | <p>The default setting is 10 seconds.</p> |
| Enable SNMPV3 Agent | <p>Check it to enable this function.</p> |
| USM User | <p>USM means user-based security mode.</p> <p>Type a username which will be used for authentication. The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.</p> |
| Auth Algorithm | <p>Choose one of the encryption methods listed below as the authentication algorithm.</p>  |
| Auth Password | <p>Type a password for authentication. The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.</p> |
| Privacy Algorithm | <p>Choose one of the methods listed below as the privacy algorithm.</p>  |
| Privacy Password | <p>Type a password for privacy. The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.</p> |

Click **OK** to save these settings.

3.19.10 Management

This page allows you to manage the settings for Internet/LAN Access Control, Access List from Internet, Management Port Setup, TLS/SSL Encryption Setup, CVM Access Control and Device Management.

The management pages for IPv4 and IPv6 protocols are different.

For IPv4

System Maintenance >> Management



| IPv4 Management Setup | IPv6 Management Setup | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---|----|-------------|---|----------------------|---|---|----------------------|---|---|----------------------|---|
| Router Name <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Default: Disable Auto-Logout | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Internet Access Control <input type="checkbox"/> Allow management from the Internet Domain name allowed <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> TR069 Server <input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable PING from the Internet | Management Port Setup <input checked="" type="radio"/> User Define Ports <input type="radio"/> Default Ports Telnet Port <input type="text" value="23"/> (Default: 23) HTTP Port <input type="text" value="80"/> (Default: 80) HTTPS Port <input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443) FTP Port <input type="text" value="21"/> (Default: 21) TR069 Port <input type="text" value="8069"/> (Default: 8069) SSH Port <input type="text" value="22"/> (Default: 22) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| LAN Access Control <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow management from LAN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSH Server Apply To Subnet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DMZ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IP Routed Subnet | TLS/SSL Encryption Setup <input type="checkbox"/> Enable SSL 3.0 CVM Access Control <input type="checkbox"/> CVM Port <input type="text" value="8000"/> (Default: 8000) <input type="checkbox"/> CVM SSL Port <input type="text" value="8443"/> (Default: 8443) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Device Management <input type="checkbox"/> Respond to external device | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Access List from the Internet <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>List</th> <th>IP</th> <th>Subnet Mask</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | | List | IP | Subnet Mask | 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| List | IP | Subnet Mask | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> | | | | | | | | | | | |

Note: Subnet LAN1 is always allowed to access all the router services regardless of "LAN Access Control" settings.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Router Name | Type in the router name provided by ISP. |
| Default: Disable Auto-Logout | If it is enabled, the function of auto-logout for web user interface will be disabled. |

| | |
|---|---|
| |  <p>The web user interface will be open until you click the Logout icon manually.</p> |
| <p>Internet Access Control</p> | <p>Allow management from the Internet - Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from the Internet. There are several servers provided by the system to allow you managing the router from Internet. Check the box(es) to specify.</p> <p>Disable PING from the Internet - Check the checkbox to reject all PING packets from the Internet. For security issue, this function is enabled by default.</p> |
| <p>LAN Access Control</p> | <p>Allow management from LAN- Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from LAN interface. There are several servers provided by the system which allow you to manage the router from LAN interface. Check the box(es) to specify.</p> <p>Apply To – Check the LAN interface for the administrator to use for accessing into web user interface of Vigor router.</p> |
| <p>Access List from the Internet</p> | <p>You could specify that the system administrator can only login from a specific host or network defined in the list. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed.</p> <p>List IP - Indicate an IP address allowed to login to the router.</p> <p>Subnet Mask - Represent a subnet mask allowed to login to the router.</p> |
| <p>Management Port Setup</p> | <p>User Define Ports - Check to specify user-defined port numbers for the Telnet, HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, TR-069 and SSH servers.</p> <p>Default Ports - Check to use standard port numbers for the Telnet and HTTP servers.</p> |
| <p>TLS/SSL Encryption Setup</p> | <p>Enable SSL 3.0 – Check the box to enable the function of SSL 3.0 if required.</p> <p>Due to for security consideration, the built-in HTTPS and SSL VPN server of the router had upgraded to TLS1.x protocol. If you are using old browser(eg. IE6.0) or old SmartVPN Client, you may still need to enable SSL 3.0 to make sure you can connect, however, it's not recommended.</p> |
| <p>CVM Access Control</p> | <p>CVM Port – Check the box to enable such port setting.</p> <p>CVM SSL Port – Check the box to enable such port setting.</p> |

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Device Management | <p>Check the box to enable the device management function for Vigor2860.</p> <p>Respond to external device – If it is enabled, Vigor2860 will be regarded as slave device. When the external device (master device) sends request packet to Vigor2860, Vigor2860 would send back information to respond the request coming from the external device which is able to manage Vigor2860.</p> |
|--------------------------|---|

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.

For IPv6

System Maintenance >> Management

| IPv4 Management Setup | IPv6 Management Setup |
|---|-----------------------|
| <p>Management Access Control</p> <p>Allow management from the Internet</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server (Port : 23)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server (Port : 2860)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server (Port : 443)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server (Port : 22)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING from the Internet</p> <hr/> <p>Access List</p> <p>List IPv6 Address / Prefix Length</p> <p>1. <input type="text"/> / <input type="text" value="128"/></p> <p>2. <input type="text"/> / <input type="text" value="128"/></p> <p>3. <input type="text"/> / <input type="text" value="128"/></p> <p>Note : Telnet / Http server port is the same as IPv4.</p> | |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/> | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Management Access Control | <p>Allow management from the Internet - Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from the Internet. There are several servers provided by the system to allow you managing the router from Internet. Check the box(es) to specify.</p> <p>Enable PING from the Internet - Check the checkbox to enable all PING packets from the Internet. For security issue, this function is disabled by default.</p> |
| Access List | <p>You could specify that the system administrator can only login from a specific host or network defined in the list. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed.</p> <p>IPv6 Address /Prefix Length- Indicate the IP address(es) allowed to login to the router.</p> |

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.

3.19.11 Reboot System

The Web user interface may be used to restart your router. Click **Reboot System** from **System Maintenance** to open the following page.

System Maintenance >> Reboot System

Reboot System

Do you want to reboot your router ?

- Using current configuration
- Using factory default configuration

Reboot Now

Auto Reboot Time Schedule

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: , , ,

Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

OK

Cancel

Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can type in four sets of time schedule for performing system reboot. All the schedules can be set previously in **Applications >> Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

If you want to reboot the router using the current configuration, check **Using current configuration** and click **Reboot Now**. To reset the router settings to default values, check **Using factory default configuration** and click **Reboot Now**. The router will take 5 seconds to reboot the system.

Note: When the system pops up Reboot System web page after you configure web settings, please click **Reboot Now** to reboot your router for ensuring normal operation and preventing unexpected errors of the router in the future.

3.19.12 Firmware Upgrade

Download the newest firmware from DrayTek's web site or FTP site. The DrayTek web site is www.DrayTek.com (or local DrayTek's web site) and FTP site is [ftp.DrayTek.com](ftp://DrayTek.com).

Click **System Maintenance**>> **Firmware Upgrade** to launch the Firmware Upgrade Utility.

System Maintenance >> Firmware Upgrade

Web Firmware Upgrade

Select a firmware file.

Click Upgrade to upload the file.

TFTP Firmware Upgrade from LAN

Current Firmware Version: 3.7.8_RC6a

Firmware Upgrade Procedures:

1. Click "OK" to start the TFTP server.
2. Open the Firmware Upgrade Utility or other 3-party TFTP client software.
3. Check that the firmware filename is correct.
4. Click "Upgrade" on the Firmware Upgrade Utility to start the upgrade.
5. After the upgrade is complete, the TFTP server will automatically stop running.

Do you want to upgrade firmware ?

Choose the right firmware by clicking **Select**. Then, click **Upgrade**. The system will upgrade the firmware of the router automatically.

Click **OK**. The following screen will appear. Please execute the firmware upgrade utility first.

System Maintenance >> Firmware Upgrade

 TFTP server is running. Please execute a Firmware Upgrade Utility software to upgrade router's firmware. This server will be closed by itself when the firmware upgrading finished.

For the detailed information about firmware update, please go to Chapter 5.

3.19.13 Modem Code Upgrade

This function is used to upgrade modem code if you find built-in modem code is not suitable for Vigor router. Contact with your dealer for further assistance if required.

System Maintenance >> Modem Code Upgrade

Web DSL Modem Code Upgrade

Select a modem code file.

Click Upgrade to upload the file.

3.19.14 Activation

There are three ways to activate WCF on vigor router, using **Service Activation Wizard**, by means of **CSM>>Web Content Filter Profile** or via **System Maintenance>>Activation**.

After you have finished the setting profiles for WCF (refer to **Web Content Filter Profile**), it is the time to activate the mechanism for your computer.

Click **System Maintenance>>Activation** to open the following page for accessing <http://myvigor.draytek.com>.

System Maintenance >> Activation Activate via interface :

Web-Filter License [Activate](#)
 [Status:Not Activated]

Authentication Message

Note: If you want to use email alert or syslog, please configure the [SysLog/Mail Alert Setup](#) page.
 If you change the service provider, the configuration of the function will be reset.

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Activate via Interface | Choose WAN interface used by such device for activating Web Content Filter. |
| Activate | The Activate link brings you accessing into www.vigorpro.com to finish the activation of the account and the router. |
| Authentication Message | As for authentication information of web filter , the process of authenticating will be displayed on this field for your reference. |

Below shows the successful activation of Web Content Filter:

System Maintenance >> Activation Activate via interface: auto-selected ▾

Web-Filter License [Activate](#)
[Status: **CommTouch**] [Start Date: **2011-03-28** Expire Date: **2011-04-27**]

Authentication Message

```
WebFilter, Activation authenticate fail, contact with support@draytek.com, 2011-03-28 01:00:24
```

Note: If you want to use email alert or syslog, please configure the [SysLog/Mail Alert Setup](#) page.
If you change the service provider, the configuration of the function will be reset.

3.20 Diagnostics

Diagnostics Tools provide a useful way to **view** or **diagnose** the status of your Vigor router.

Below shows the menu items for Diagnostics.

- System Maintenance
- Diagnostics**
- Dial-out Triggering
- Routing Table
- ARP Cache Table
- IPv6 Neighbour Table
- DHCP Table
- NAT Sessions Table
- Ping Diagnosis
- Data Flow Monitor
- Traffic Graph
- Trace Route
- Syslog Explorer
- IPv6 TSPC Status
- External Devices

3.20.1 Dial-out Triggering

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Dial-out Triggering** to open the web page. The internet connection (e.g., PPPoE) is triggered by a package sending from the source IP address.

Diagnostics >> Dial-out Triggering

Dial-out Triggered Packet Header | [Refresh](#) |

HEX Format:

```
00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00
```



```
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00
```

Decoded Format:

```
0.0.0.0 -> 0.0.0.0
Pr 0 len 0 (0)
```

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Decoded Format | It shows the source IP address (local), destination IP (remote) address, the protocol and length of the package. |
| Refresh | Click it to reload the page. |

3.20.2 Routing Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Routing Table** to open the web page.

Diagnostics >> View Routing Table

| Current Running Routing Table | IPv6 Routing Table | Refresh |
|---|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private | | |
| C~ | 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 | directly connected LAN1 |

Diagnostics >> View Routing Table

| Current Running Routing Table | IPv6 Routing Table | Refresh | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|--------|----------|
| Destination | Interface | Flags | Metric | Next Hop |
| FE80::/64 | LAN | U | 256 | |
| FF00::/8 | LAN | U | 256 | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| Refresh | Click it to reload the page. |

3.20.3 ARP Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **ARP Cache Table** to view the content of the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache held in the router. The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IP address.

Diagnostics >> View ARP Cache Table

| Ethernet ARP Cache Table | | | | Clear Refresh |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------|---|
| IP Address | MAC Address | Netbios Name | Interface | |
| 192.168.1.5 | 00-50-7F-CD-07-48 | | LAN1 | |
| 192.168.1.49 | E0-CB-4E-DA-48-79 | CARRIE-0C7CB251 | LAN1 | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| Refresh | Click it to reload the page. |

3.20.4 IPv6 Neighbour Table

The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IPv6 address. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **IPv6 Neighbour Table** to open the web page.

Diagnostics >> View IPv6 Neighbour Table

| IPv6 Neighbour Table | | | Refresh |
|---------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| IPv6 Address | Mac Address | Interface | |
| FF02::2 | 33-33-00-00-00-02 | LAN | |
| FF02::1:3 | 33-33-00-01-00-03 | LAN | |
| FE80::3D5E:E74:8751:A44B | e8-9d-87-87-69-2f | LAN | |
| FF02::1:FF51:A44B | 33-33-ff-51-a4-4b | LAN | |
| FE80::250:7FFF:FE09:1E79 | 00-50-7f-c9-1e-79 | LAN | |
| FE80::250:7FFF:FE08:4305 | 00-50-7f-c8-43-05 | LAN | |
| FF02::1 | 33-33-00-00-00-01 | LAN | |
| FF02::1 | 00-00-00-00-00-00 | USB2 | |
| FF02::1:2 | 00-00-00-00-00-00 | USB2 | |
| FE80::9D5C:CA86:5428:3CA7 | 00-26-2d-fe-63-4f | LAN | |
| FF02::1:FF0A:673C | 33-33-ff-0a-67-3c | LAN | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| Refresh | Click it to reload the page. |

3.20.5 DHCP Table

The facility provides information on IP address assignments. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DHCP Table** to open the web page.

Diagnostics >> View DHCP Assigned IP Addresses

| DHCP IP Assignment Table | DHCPv6 IP Assignment Table | Refresh |
|--|----------------------------|---------|
| LAN1 : 192.168.1.1/255.255.255.0, DHCP server: Off | | |

and

Diagnostics >> View DHCP Assigned IP Addresses

| DHCP IP Assignment Table | DHCPv6 IP Assignment Table | Refresh |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| DHCPv6 server binding client: | | |
| Index | IPv6 Address | MAC Address Leased Time |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| Index | It displays the connection item number. |
| IP Address | It displays the IP address assigned by this router for specified PC. |
| MAC Address | It displays the MAC address for the specified PC that DHCP assigned IP address for it. |
| Leased Time | It displays the leased time of the specified PC. |
| HOST ID | It displays the host ID name of the specified PC. |

| | |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| Refresh | Click it to reload the page. |
|----------------|------------------------------|

3.20.6 NAT Sessions Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **NAT Sessions Table** to open the list page.

Diagnostics >> NAT Sessions Table

NAT Active Sessions Table | [Refresh](#) |

| Private IP :Port | #Pseudo Port | Peer IP :Port | Interface |
|-------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------|
| 192.168.1.11 2491 | 52078 | 24.9.93.189 443 | WAN1 |
| 192.168.1.11 2493 | 52080 | 207.46.25.2 80 | WAN1 |
| 192.168.1.10 3079 | 52665 | 207.46.5.10 80 | WAN1 |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Private IP:Port | It indicates the source IP address and port of local PC. |
| #Pseudo Port | It indicates the temporary port of the router used for NAT. |
| Peer IP:Port | It indicates the destination IP address and port of remote host. |
| Interface | It displays the representing number for different interface. |
| Refresh | Click it to reload the page. |

4.20.7 DNS Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DNS Cache Table** to pen the web page.

The record of domain Name and the mapping IP address for answering the DNS query from LAN will be stored on Vigor router's Cache temporarily and displayed on **Diagnostics >> DNS Cache Table**.

Diagnostics >> DNS Cache Table

| IPv4 DNS Cache Table | IPv6 DNS Cache Table | | Clear Refresh |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------|-----------------|
| Domain Name | IP Address | TTL (s) | |
| | | | |

Note: The LAN DNS entry's TTL is static.

When an entry's TTL is larger than s, this entry will be deleted from the table.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| Clear | Click this link to remove the result on the window. |
| Refresh | Click it to reload the page. |
| When an entry's TTL is larger than.... | Check the box the type the value of TTL (time to live) for each entry. Click OK to enable such function. It means when the TTL value of each DNS query reaches the threshold of the value specified here, the corresponding record will be deleted from router's Cache automatically. |

3.20.8 Ping Diagnosis

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Ping Diagnosis** to pen the web page.

Diagnostics >> Ping Diagnosis

Ping Diagnosis

IPV4 IPV6
Note: If you want to ping a LAN PC or you don't want to specify which WAN to ping through, please select "Unspecified".
 Ping through:

Ping to: IP Address:

Result | [Clear](#) |

or

Diagnostics >> Ping Diagnosis

Ping Diagnosis

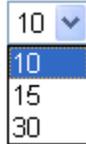
IPV4 IPV6
 Ping IPv6 Address:

Result | [Clear](#) |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| IPV4 /IPV6 | Choose the interface for such function. |
| Ping through | Use the drop down list to choose the WAN interface that you want to ping through or choose Unspecified to be determined by the router automatically. |
| Ping to | Use the drop down list to choose the destination that you want to ping. |
| IP Address | Type the IP address of the Host/IP that you want to ping. |
| Ping IPv6 Address | Type the IPv6 address that you want to ping. |

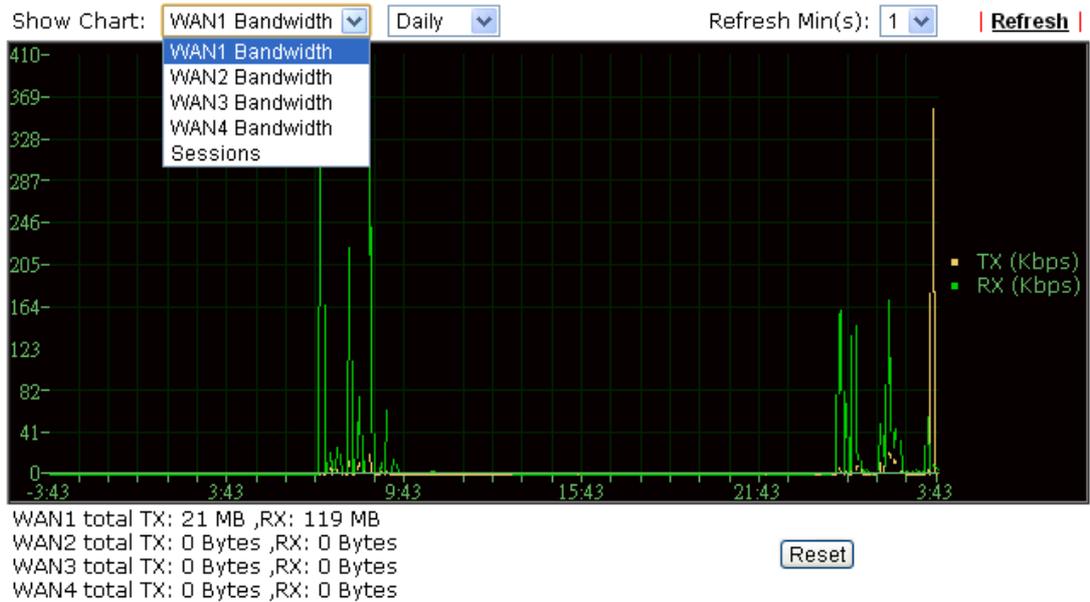
Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Enable Data Flow Monitor | Check this box to enable this function. |
| Refresh Seconds | Use the drop down list to choose the time interval of refreshing data flow that will be done by the system automatically. Refresh Seconds:  |
| Refresh | Click this link to refresh this page manually. |
| Index | Display the number of the data flow. |
| IP Address | Display the IP address of the monitored device. |
| TX rate (kbps) | Display the transmission speed of the monitored device. |
| RX rate (kbps) | Display the receiving speed of the monitored device. |
| Sessions | Display the session number that you specified in Limit Session web page. |
| Action | <p>Block - can prevent specified PC accessing into Internet within 5 minutes.</p>  <p>Unblock – the device with the IP address will be blocked in five minutes. The remaining time will be shown on the session column.</p>  |
| Current /Peak/Speed | <p>Current means current transmission rate and receiving rate for WAN interface.</p> <p>Peak means the highest peak value detected by the router in data transmission.</p> <p>Speed means line speed specified in WAN>>General Setup. If you do not specify any rate at that page, here will display Auto for instead.</p> |

3.20.10 Traffic Graph

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Traffic Graph** to pen the web page. Choose WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 Bandwidth, Sessions, daily or weekly for viewing different traffic graph. Click **Reset** to zero the accumulated RX/TX (received and transmitted) data of WAN. Click **Refresh** to renew the graph at any time.

Diagnostics >> Traffic Graph



The horizontal axis represents time. Yet the vertical axis has different meanings. For WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 Bandwidth chart, the numbers displayed on vertical axis represent the numbers of the transmitted and received packets in the past.

For Sessions chart, the numbers displayed on vertical axis represent the numbers of the NAT sessions during the past.

3.20.11 Trace Route

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Trace Route** to open the web page. This page allows you to trace the routes from router to the host. Simply type the IP address of the host in the box and click **Run**. The result of route trace will be shown on the screen.

Diagnostics >> Trace Route

Trace Route

IPV4 IPV6

Trace through:

Protocol:

Host / IP Address:

Result | [Clear](#) |

or

Diagnostics >> Trace Route

Trace Route

IPV4 IPV6

Trace Host / IP Address:

Result | [Clear](#) |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| IPv4 / IPv6 | Click one of them to display corresponding information for it. |
| Trace through | Use the drop down list to choose the interface that you want |

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| | to ping through. |
| Protocol | Use the drop down list to choose the protocol that you want to ping through. |
| Host/IP Address | It indicates the IP address of the host. |
| Trace Host/IP Address | It indicates the IPv6 address of the host. |
| Run | Click this button to start route tracing work. |
| Clear | Click this link to remove the result on the window. |

3.20.12 Syslog Explorer

Such page provides real-time syslog and displays the information on the screen.

For Web Syslog

This page displays the time and message for User/Firewall/call/WAN/VPN settings. You can check **Enable Web Syslog**, specify the type of Syslog and choose the display mode you want. Later, the event of Syslog with specified type will be shown for your reference.

Diagnostics >> Syslog Explorer

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| Enable Web Syslog | Check this box to enable the function of Web Syslog. |
| Syslog Type | Use the drop down list to specify a type of Syslog to be displayed.  |
| Export | Click this link to save the data as a file. |
| Refresh | Click this link to refresh this page manually. |
| Clear | Click this link to clear information on this page. |
| Display Mode | There are two modes for you to choose. |

| | |
|----------------|--|
| | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> Stop record when fulls ▼ </div> <div style="background-color: #e0e0e0; padding: 2px;">Stop record when fulls</div> <div style="padding: 2px;">Always record the new event</div> </div> <p>Stop record when fulls – when the capacity of syslog is full, the system will stop recording.</p> <p>Always record the new event – only the newest events will be recorded by the system.</p> |
| Time | Display the time of the event occurred. |
| Message | Display the information for each event. |

For USB Syslog

This page displays the syslog recorded on the USB storage disk.

[Diagnostics >> Syslog Explorer](#)

| | |
|------------|------------|
| Web Syslog | USB Syslog |
|------------|------------|

| <small>Note: The syslog will show while the saved syslog file size is over 1MB.</small> | | | |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <small>Folder: n/a</small> | <small>File: n/a</small> | <small>Page: n/a</small> | <small>Log Type: n/a</small> |
| Time | Log Type | Message | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| Time | Display the time of the event occurred. |
| Log Type | Display the type of the record. |
| Message | Display the information for each event. |

3.20.13 TSPC Status

IPv6 TSPC status web page could help you to diagnose the connection status of TSPC.

If TSPC has configured properly, the router will display the following page when the user connects to tunnel broker successfully.

[Diagnostics >> IPv6 TSPC Status](#)

| WAN1 | WAN2 | WAN3 | WAN4 | Refresh |
|--|------|------|------|-------------------------|
| <p>TSPC Enabled</p> <p>TSPC Connection Status</p> <p>Local Endpoint v4 Address : 114.44.54.220</p> <p>Local Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b9</p> <p>Router DNS name : 888866666.broker.freenet6.net</p> <p>Remote Endpoint v4 Address : 81.171.72.11</p> <p>Remote Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b8</p> <p>Tspc Prefix : 2001:05c0:1502:0d00:0000:0000:0000:0000</p> <p>Tspc Prefixlen : 56</p> <p>Tunnel Broker : amsterdam.freenet6.net</p> <p>Tunnel Status : Connected</p> | | | | |

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|---------|--|
| Refresh | Click this link to refresh this page manually. |

3.21 External Devices

Vigor router can be used to connect with many types of external devices. In order to control or manage the external devices conveniently, open **External Devices** to make detailed configuration.

3.21.1 All Devices

External Device >> All Devices

External Device Auto Discovery

External Devices Connected

Below shows available devices that connected externally:

For security reason:

If you have changed the administrator password on External Device, please click the **Account** button to retype new username and password. Otherwise, the router will be unable to monitor the External Device properly. Click the **Clear** button to Clear the off-line information and account information.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| External Device Auto Discovery | Check this box to detect the external device automatically and display on this page. |

From this web page, check the box of **External Device Auto Discovery**. Later, all the available devices will be displayed in this page with icons and corresponding information. You can change the device name if required or remove the information for off-line device whenever you want.

External Device >> All Devices

External Device Auto Discovery

External Devices Connected

Below shows available devices that connected externally:

On Line VigorAP900, VigorAP900, Connection Uptime:18:15:27

IP Address:10.28.60.12

Account

Clear

On Line P2261, Connection Uptime:18:15:17

IP Address:192.168.1.226

Account

Clear

For security reason:

If you have changed the administrator password on External Device, please click the **Account** button to retype new username and password. Otherwise, the router will be unable to monitor the External Device properly. Click the **Clear** button to Clear the off-line information and account information.

OK

When you finished the configuration, click **OK** to save it.

Note: Only DrayTek products can be detected by this function.

This page is left blank.

4

Tutorials and Applications

4.1 How to configure settings for IPv6 Service in Vigor2860

Due to the shortage of IPv4 address, more and more countries use IPv6 to solve the problem. However, to continually use the original rich resources of IPv4, both IPv6 and IPv4 networks shall communicate for each other via intercommunication mechanism to complete the shifting job from IPv4 to IPv6 gradually. At present, there are three common types of intercommunication mechanisms:

- **Dual Stack**

The user can use both IPv4 and IPv6 techniques at the same time. That means adding an IPv6 stack on the origin network layer to let the host own the communication capability of IPv4 and IPv6.

- **Tunnel**

Both IPv6 hosts can communication for each other via existing IPv4 network environment. The IPv6 packets will be encapsulated with the header of IPv4 first. Later, the packets will be transformed and judged by IPv4 router. Once the packets arrive the border between IPv4 and IPv6, the header of IPv4 on the packets will be removed. Then, the packets with IPv6 address will be forwarded to the destination of IPv6 network.

- **Translation**

Such feature is active only for the user who uses IPv4 to communicate with other user using IPv4 service.

Before configuring the settings on Vigor2860, you need to know which connection type that your IPv6 service used.

Note: For the IPv6 service, you have to configure WAN/LAN settings before using the service.

I. Configuring the WAN Settings

For the IPv6 WAN settings for Vigor2860, there are five connection types to be chosen: PPP, TSPC, AICCU, DHCPv6 Client and Static IPv6.

1. Access into the web user interface of Vigor2860. Open **WAN>> Internet Access**. Choose one of the WAN interfaces as the one supporting IPv6 service. Then, click the IPv6 button of the selected WAN.

WAN >> Internet Access

| Index | Display Name | Physical Mode | Access Mode | | |
|-------|--------------|---------------|----------------------|--------------|------|
| WAN1 | | ADSL / VDSL | Static or Dynamic IP | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN2 | | Ethernet | PPPoE | Details Page | IPv6 |
| WAN3 | | USB | None | Details Page | IPv6 |

Note : Only one WAN can support IPv6.

Note: Only one WAN interface support IPv6 service at one time. In this example, WAN2 is chosen as the one supporting IPv6 service.

- In the following figure, use the drop down list to choose a proper connection type.

WAN >> Internet Access i

WAN 1

| PPPoE / PPPoA | MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP | IPv6 |
|---|-----------------------------|------|
| Internet Access Mode Connection Type <div style="float: right; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> Offline Offline PPP TSPPC AICCU DHCPv6 Client Static IPv6 6in4 Static Tunnel 6rd </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;">OK</div> | | |

Different connection types will bring out different configuration page. Refer to the following:

- PPP – Dual Stack application, IPv4 and IPv6 services can be utilized at the same time**

Choose PPP and type the information for PPPoE of IPv4.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|---|--|-----------|------|
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable | PPP/MP Setup PPP Authentication: PAP or CHAP Idle Timeout: -1 second(s) IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP): WAN IP Alias Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address: | | |
| ISP Access Setup Username: 73768635@hinet.net Password: ***** Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: => | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address MAC Address: 00 .1D .AA .A8 .B7 .6A | | |
| WAN Connection Detection Mode: ARP Detect Ping IP: TTL: | MTU: 1442 (Max:1492) | | |
| <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center; gap: 20px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px 10px;">OK</div> <div>Cancel</div> </div> | | | |

Access into the setting page for IPv6 service, it is not necessary for you to configure anything.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|--|----------------------|-----------|------|
| Internet Access Mode | | | |
| Connection Type | | PPP | |
| Note: IPv4 WAN setting should be PPPoE client. | | | |

OK Cancel

Click **OK** and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, you will get the IP address for IPv4 and IPv6 at the same time.

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:1:17

| IPv4 | | IPv6 | | | | |
|---|---------------|---------------------------|--------------|---------------------------|---------------|-----------|
| LAN Status | | Primary DNS: 168.95.192.1 | | Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1 | | |
| IP Address | TX Packets | RX Packets | | | | |
| 192.168.1.1 | 0 | 3085 | | | | |
| WAN 1 Status | | | | | >> Dial PPPoE | |
| Enable | Line | Name | Mode | Up Time | | |
| Yes | ADSL | | PPPoE | 00:00:00 | | |
| IP | GW IP | TX Packets | TX Rate(Bps) | RX Packets | RX Rate(Bps) | |
| --- | --- | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| WAN 2 Status | | | | | >> Drop PPPoE | |
| Enable | Line | Name | Mode | Up Time | | |
| Yes | Ethernet | | PPPoE | 0:00:54 | | |
| IP | GW IP | TX Packets | TX Rate(Bps) | RX Packets | RX Rate(Bps) | |
| 114.44.49.54 | 168.95.98.254 | 800 | 4761 | 821 | 6617 | |
| WAN 3 Status | | | | | | |
| Enable | Line | Name | Mode | Up Time | Signal | |
| Yes | USB | | --- | 00:00:00 | = | |
| IP | GW IP | TX Packets | TX Rate(Bps) | RX Packets | RX Rate(Bps) | |
| --- | --- | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| ADSL Information (ADSL Firmware Version: 05-04-04-04-00-01) | | | | | | |
| ATM Statistics | | TX Cells | RX Cells | TX CRC errs | RX CRC errs | |
| | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| ADSL Status | Mode | State | Up Speed | Down Speed | SNR Margin | Loop Att. |
| | | READY | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Online Status

Physical Connection

System Uptime: 0:2:32

| IPv4 | | IPv6 | |
|--|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| LAN Status | | | |
| IP Address | | | |
| 2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global) | | | |
| FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 7 | 4 | 690 | 328 |
| WAN2 IPv6 Status >> Drop PPP | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | |
| Yes | PPP | 0:02:08 | |
| IP | | | |
| 2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Global) | | Gateway IP | |
| FE80::1D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Link) | | FE80::90:1A00:242:AD52 | |
| DNS IP | | | |
| 2001:B000:168::1 | | | |
| 2001:B000:168::2 | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 7 | 9 | 544 | 1126 |

- **TSPC – Tunnel application, both IPv6 hosts communicate through IPv4 network**

Choose **TSPC** and type the information for TSPC service.

Note: While using such mode, you have to make sure the IPv4 network connection is normal.

(In the following figure, the TSPC information is obtained from <http://gogo6.com/> after applied for the service.)

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|------|
| Internet Access Mode | | | |
| Connection Type | | TSPC | |
| TSPC Configuration | | | |
| Username | | cacahsu | |
| Password | | •••••• | |
| Confirm Password | | •••••• | |
| Tunnel Broker | | broker.freenet6.net | |

Click **OK** and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shows as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:23

| IPv4 | | IPv6 | |
|---|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| LAN Status | | | |
| IP Address | | | |
| 2001:5C0:1502:D00:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global) | | | |
| FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 88 | 121 | 15596 | 10249 |
| WAN2 IPv6 Status | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | |
| Yes | TSPC | 0:01:40 | |
| IP | | | Gateway IP |
| 2001:5C0:1400:B::10B9/128 (Global) | | | --- |
| FE80::722C:3559/128 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 127 | 89 | 9219 | 15866 |

- **AICCU – Tunnel application**

Choose AICCU and type the information for AICCU of IPv6.

Note: While using such mode, you have to make sure the IPv4 network connection is normal.

(In the following figure, the AICCU information is obtained from <https://www.sixxs.net/main/> after applied for the service.)

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|------|
| Internet Access Mode | | | |
| Connection Type | | AICCU | |
| AICCU Configuration | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Always On | | | |
| Username | | JCR3-SIXXS | |
| Password | | ••••• | |
| Confirm Password | | ••••• | |
| Tunnel Broker | | tic.sixxs.net | |
| Subnet Prefix | | 2001:4DD0:FF00:8805::2 / 64 | |

Note: If "Always On" is not enabled, AICCU connection would only retry three times.

Click **OK** and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shows as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:1:18

| IPv4 | | IPv6 | |
|---|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| LAN Status | | | |
| IP Address | | | |
| 2001:4DD0:FF00:83E4:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global) | | | |
| FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 147 | 187 | 34205 | 19176 |
| WAN2 IPv6 Status | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | |
| Yes | AICCU | 0:00:48 | |
| IP | | Gateway IP | |
| 2001:4DD0:FF00:3E4::2/64 (Global) | | --- | |
| FE80::4CD0:FF00:3E4:2/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 186 | 137 | 16438 | 33093 |

- **DHCPv6 Client**

Choose DHCPv6 Client. Click one of the identity associations and type the IAID number.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|--|------|
| Internet Access Mode | | | |
| Connection Type | | DHCPv6 Client | |
| DHCPv6 Client Configuration | | | |
| Identity Association | | <input type="radio"/> Prefix Delegation <input checked="" type="radio"/> Non-temporary Address | |
| IAID (Identity Association ID) | | 972573680 | |

OK Cancel

Click **OK** and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:0:50

| IPv4 | | IPv6 | |
|---|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| LAN Status | | | |
| IP Address | | | |
| FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 6 | 2 | 588 | 156 |
| WAN2 IPv6 Status | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | |
| Yes | DHCPv6 Client | 0:00:40 | |
| IP | | Gateway IP | |
| 2001:8010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global) | | --- | |
| 2001:1111:2222:5555:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global) | | | |
| 2001:1111:2222:3333::1111/128 (Global) | | | |
| FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Link) | | | |
| DNS IP | | | |
| 2001:4860:4860::8888 | | | |
| 2001:4860:4860::8844 | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 14 | 5 | 1174 | 694 |

- **Static IPv6**

Choose Static IPv6. Type IPv6 address, Prefix Length and Gateway Address.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

Static or Dynamic IP

Internet Access Mode

Connection Type: Static IPv6

Static IPv6 Address configuration

IPv6 Address: 2001:B010:7300:201:21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A / Prefix Length: 64

Current IPv6 Address Table

| Index | IPv6 Address/Prefix Length | Scope |
|-------|--|--------|
| 1 | 2001:B010:7300:201:21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 | Global |
| 2 | 2001:1111:2222:5555:21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 | Global |
| 3 | FE80::21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 | Link |

Static IPv6 Gateway configuration

IPv6 Gateway Address: ::

OK Cancel

Click **OK** and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:4:2

| IPv4 | | IPv6 | |
|---|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| LAN Status | | | |
| IP Address | | | |
| FE80::21D::AAFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 4 | 0 | 312 | 0 |
| WAN2 IPv6 Status | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | |
| Yes | Static IPv6 | 0:03:56 | |
| IP | | | Gateway IP |
| 2001:B010:7300:201:21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global) | | | --- |
| 2001:1111:2222:5555:21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global) | | | |
| FE80::21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 8 | 2 | 608 | 364 |

- **6in4 Static Tunnel**

Choose 6in4 Static Tunnel. Type remote endpoint IPv4 address, 6in4 IPv6 Address, LAN Routed Prefix and Tunnel TTL.

WAN >> Internet Access



WAN 1

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------|
| Internet Access Mode | | | |
| Connection Type | | | 6in4 Static Tunnel |
| 6in4 Static Tunnel | | | |
| Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address | | <input type="text"/> | |
| 6in4 IPv6 Address | | <input type="text"/> | / 64 (default:64) |
| LAN Routed Prefix | | <input type="text"/> | / 64 (default:64) |
| Tunnel TTL | | <input type="text" value="255"/> | (default:255) |
| OK | | Cancel | |

Click **OK** and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0day 0:4:16

| IPv4 | | IPv6 | |
|--|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| LAN Status | | | |
| IP Address | | | |
| 2001:4DD0:FE00:83E4::21D::AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global) | | | |
| FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 14 | 80 | 1244 | 6815 |
| WAN1 IPv6 Status | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | |
| Yes | 6in4 Static Tunnel | 0:04:07 | |
| IP | | | Gateway IP |
| 2001:4DD0:FF10:83E4::2131/64 (Global) | | | --- |
| FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 3 | 26 | 211 | 2302 |

- **6rd**

Choose 6rd. Type IPv4 Border Relay, IPv4 Mask Length, 6rd Prefix and 6rd Prefix Length.

WAN 1

| PPPoE | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP | IPv6 |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|--|------|
| Internet Access Mode | | | |
| Connection Type | | 6rd | |
| 6rd Settings | | | |
| 6rd Mode | | <input type="radio"/> Auto 6rd <input checked="" type="radio"/> Static 6rd | |
| Static 6rd Settings | | | |
| IPv4 Border Relay: | 192.168.101.111 | | |
| IPv4 Mask Length: | 0 | | |
| 6rd Prefix: | 2001:E41:: | | |
| 6rd Prefix Length: | 32 | | |
| OK | | Cancel | |

Click **OK** and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0day 0:9:15

| IPv4 | | IPv6 | |
|--|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| LAN Status | | | |
| IP Address | | | |
| 2001:E41:A865:1D00:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global) | | | |
| FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 15 | 113 | 1354 | 18040 |
| WAN1 IPv6 Status | | | |
| Enable | Mode | Up Time | |
| Yes | 6rd | 0:09:06 | |
| IP | | Gateway IP | |
| 2001:E41:A865:1D01:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B5/128 (Global) | | --- | |
| FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link) | | | |
| TX Packets | RX Packets | TX Bytes | RX Bytes |
| 13 | 29 | 967 | 2620 |

II. Configuring the LAN Settings

After finished the WAN settings for IPv6, please configure the LAN settings to make the router's client getting the IPv6 address.

1. Access into the web user interface of Viogr2860. Open **LAN>> General Setup**. Click the **IPv6** button.

Note: Only the subnet of **LAN1** supports IPv6 feature.

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 1 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup LAN 1 IPv6 Setup

RADVD Configuration

Enable Disable

Advertisement Lifetime Seconds (Range : 600 - 9000)

DHCPv6 Server Configuration

Enable Server Disable Server

Start IPv6 Address

End IPv6 Address

DNS Server IPv6 Address

Primary DNS Server

Secondary DNS Server

Static IPv6 Address configuration

IPv6 Address / Prefix Length

Current IPv6 Address Table

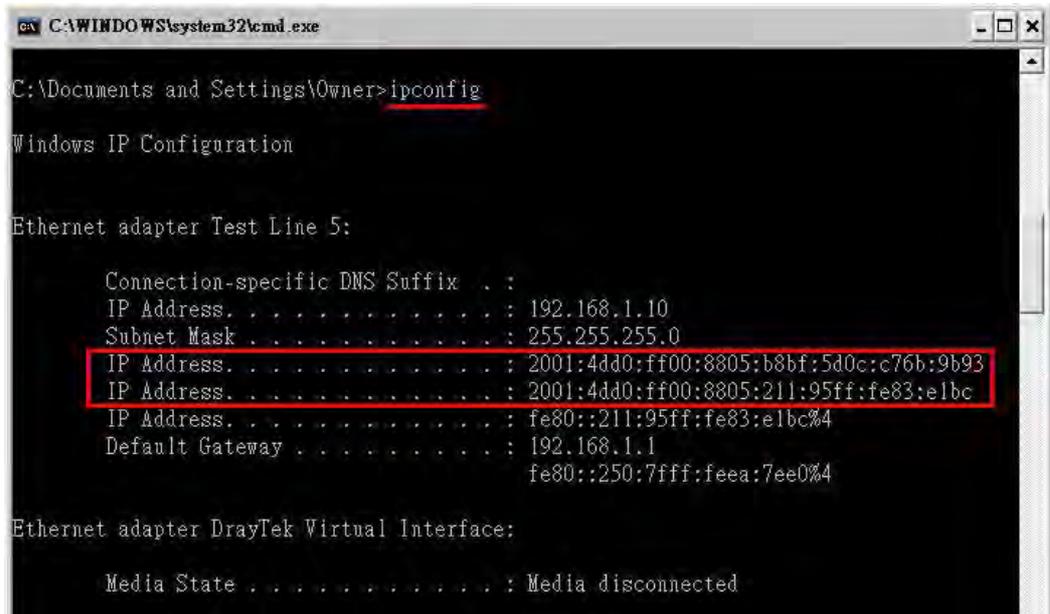
| Index | IPv6 Address/Prefix Length | Scope |
|-------|------------------------------|-------|
| 1 | FE80::21D:A AFF:FEA6:2568/64 | Link |

2. In the field of **RADVD Configuration**, the default setting is **Enable**. The client's PC will ask RADVD service for the Prefix of IPv6 address automatically, and generate an Interface ID by itself to compose a full and unique IPv6 address.
3. In the field of **DHCPv6 Server Configuration**, when DHCPv6 service is enabled, you can assign available IPv6 address for the client manually.

Note: When both mechanisms are enabled, the client can determine which mechanism to be used (e.g., the default mechanism for Windows7 is RADVD).

III. Confirming IPv6 Service Run Successfully

1. Make sure you have get the correct IPv6 IP address. Get into MS-DOS interface and type the command of “ipconfig”. Refer to the following figure.



```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>ipconfig

Windows IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Test Line 5:

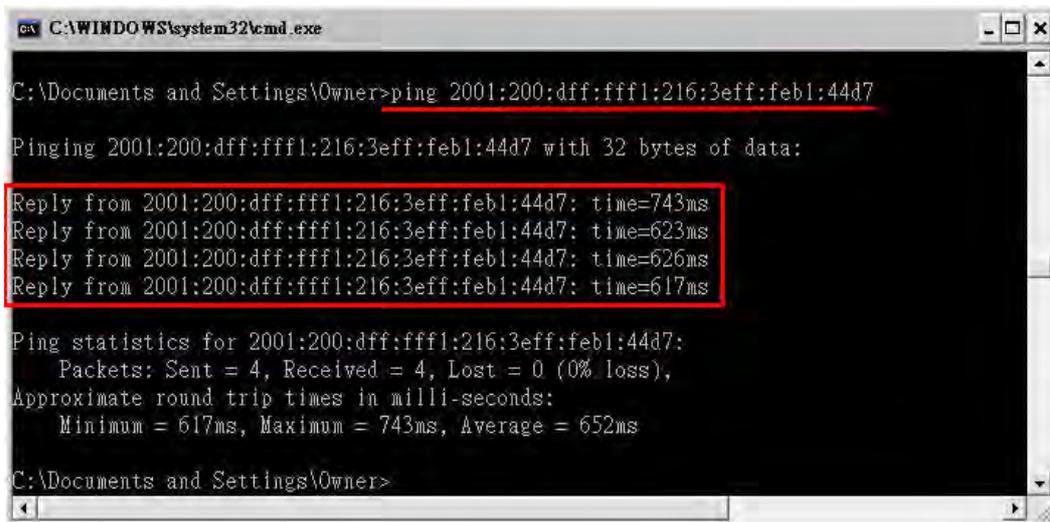
    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . : 
    IP Address. . . . .               : 192.168.1.10
    Subnet Mask . . . . .             : 255.255.255.0
    IP Address. . . . .               : 2001:4dd0:ff00:8805:b8bf:5d0c:c76b:9b93
    IP Address. . . . .               : 2001:4dd0:ff00:8805:211:95ff:fe83:e1bc
    IP Address. . . . .               : fe80::211:95ff:fe83:e1bc%4
    Default Gateway . . . . .         : 192.168.1.1
                                         fe80::250:7fff:feea:7ee0%4

Ethernet adapter DrayTek Virtual Interface:

    Media State . . . . .             : Media disconnected
```

From the above figure we can see IPv6 IP address has been captured by the system.

2. Use the Ping command to ping any IPv6 address indicating an IPv6 website. For example, www.kame.net is a website supporting IPv4 IP and IPv6 IP services. Its IPv6 address is seen with a format of 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:feb1:44d7.



```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>ping 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:feb1:44d7

Pinging 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:feb1:44d7 with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:feb1:44d7: time=743ms
Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:feb1:44d7: time=623ms
Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:feb1:44d7: time=626ms
Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:feb1:44d7: time=617ms

Ping statistics for 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:feb1:44d7:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 617ms, Maximum = 743ms, Average = 652ms

C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>
```

After getting the above message, it means the IPv6 service has been activated successfully.

3. Connect to the website for IPv6. Open a web browser and type an URL of IPv6, e.g., www.kame.net. If your computer accesses into the website by using IPv6 address, you may see a turtle dancing on the screen. If not, only a steady turtle will be seen.



If you can see a turtle dancing on the screen, that means IPv6 service is ready for you to access and utilize.

4.2 How can I get the files from USB storage device connecting to Vigor router?

Files on USB storage device can be reviewed by opening **USB Application>>File Explorer**. If it is necessary for you to delete, copy files on the device or write, paste files to the device, it must be done through SAMBA server or FTP server.

Samba service is based on the original USB FTP service. You will need to setup USB FTP first. We would like to give brief instructions on USB FTP setup here.

1. Plug the USB device to the USB port on the router. Make sure **Disk Connected** appears on the **Connection Status** as the figure shown below:

USB Application >> USB Disk Status

USB Mass Storage Device Status

| Connection Status | Disk Connected | Disconnect USB Disk | |
|--------------------------|----------------|---------------------|----------|
| Write Protect Status: | No | | |
| Disk Capacity: | 2009 MB | | |
| USB Disk Users Connected | | Refresh | |
| Index | Service | IP Address(Port) | Username |

Note: If the write protect switch of USB disk is turned on, the USB disk is in READ-ONLY mode. No data can be written to it.

2. Then, please open **USB Application >> USB General Settings** to enable Samba service.

USB Application >> USB General Settings

USB General Settings

| | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| General Settings | |
| Simultaneous FTP Connections | 5 (Maximum 6) |
| Default Charset | English |
| Samba Service Settings(Network Neighborhood) | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable | <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| Access Mode | |
| <input type="radio"/> LAN Only | <input type="radio"/> LAN And WAN |
| NetBios Name Service | |
| Workgroup Name | |
| Host Name | Vigor2860 |

Note: 1. If Charset is set to "English", only English long file name is supported.
2. Multi-session ftp download will be banned by Router FTP server. If your ftp client have multi-connection mechanism, such as FileZilla, you may limit client connections setting to 1 to get better performance.
3. A workgroup name must not be the same as the host name. The workgroup name and the host name can have as many as 15 characters and a host name can have as many as 23 characters, but both cannot contain any of the following: . ; : " < > * + = / \ | ?.

OK

3. Setup a user account for the FTP service by using **USB Application >>USB User Management**. Click **Enable** to enable FTP/Samba User account. Here we add a new account "user1" and assign authorities "Read", "Write" and "List" to it.

USB Application >> USB User Management

Profile Index: 1

| | |
|------------------|--|
| FTP/Samba User | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| Username | <input type="text" value="user1"/> |
| Password | <input type="password"/> (Maximum 11 Characters) |
| Confirm Password | <input type="password"/> |
| Home Folder | <input type="text"/> |
| Access Rule | |
| File | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Read <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Write <input type="checkbox"/> Delete |
| Directory | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> List <input type="checkbox"/> Create <input type="checkbox"/> Remove |

Note: The folder name can only contain the following characters: A-Z a-z 0-9 \$ % ' - _ @ ~ ` ! () / and space.

OK Clear Cancel

4. Click **OK** to save the configuration.
5. Make sure the FTP service is running properly. Please open a browser and type *ftp://192.168.1.1*. Use the account "**user1**" to login.

Log On As

Either the server does not allow anonymous logins or the e-mail address was not accepted.

FTP server: 192.168.1.1

User name:

Password:

After you log on, you can add this server to your Favorites and return to it easily.

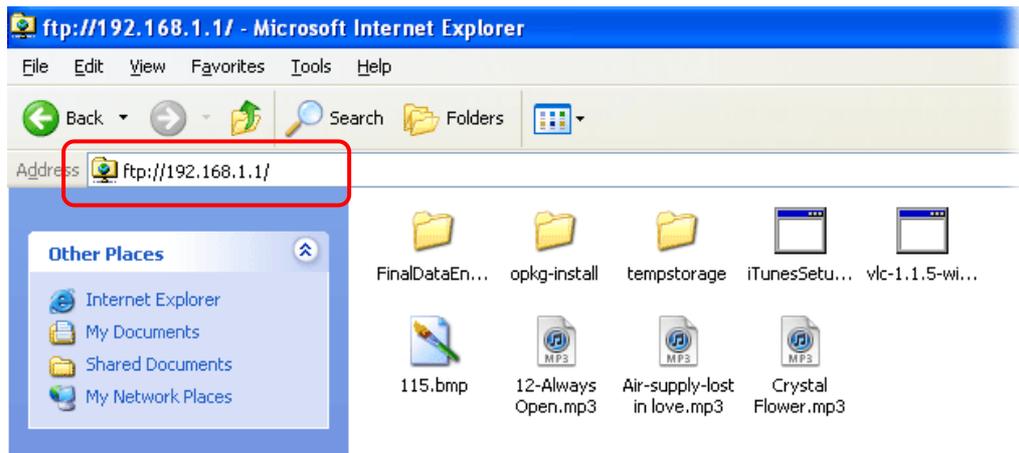
FTP does not encrypt or encode passwords or data before sending them to the server. To protect the security of your passwords and data, use Web Folders (WebDAV) instead.

Learn more about [using Web Folders](#).

Log on anonymously Save password

Log On Cancel

6. When the following screen appears, it means the FTP service is running properly.



7. Return to **USB Application >> USB Disk Status**. The information for FTP server will be shown as below.

USB Application >> USB Disk Status

USB Mass Storage Device Status

Connection Status: **Disk Connected**

[Disconnect USB Disk](#)

Write Protect Status: **No**

Disk Capacity: 2009 MB

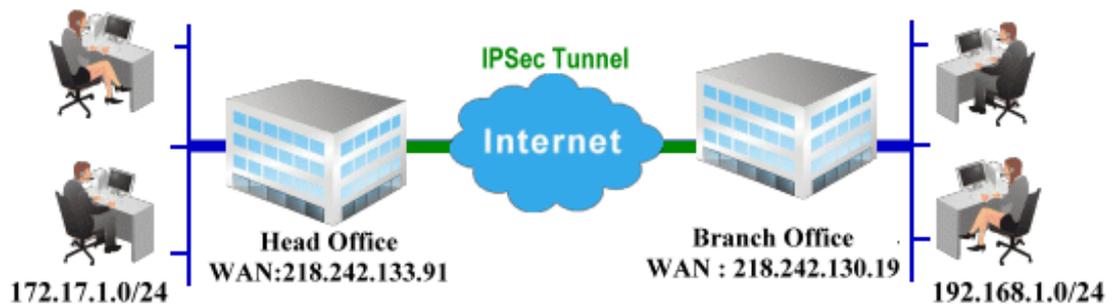
USB Disk Users Connected

[Refresh](#)

| Index | Service | IP Address(Port) | Username |
|-------|---------|--------------------|----------|
| 1. | FTP | 192.168.1.10(1963) | user1 |

Now, users in LAN of Vigor2710 can access into the USB storage device by typing ftp://192.168.1.1 on any browser. They can add or remove files / directories, depending on the Access Rule for FTP account settings in **USB Application >>USB User Management**.

4.3 How to Build a LAN-to-LAN VPN Between Remote Office and Headquarter via IPsec Tunnel (Main Mode)



Configuration on Vigor Router for Head Office

1. Log into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Open **VPN and Remote Access** >> **LAN to LAN** to create a LAN-to-LAN profile. The following settings are for a permanent VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

LAN-to-LAN Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

View: All Trunk

| Index | Name | Active | Status | Index | Name | Active | Status |
|--------------------|------|--------|--------|---------------------|------|--------|--------|
| 1. | | X | --- | 17. | | X | --- |
| 2. | | X | --- | 18. | | X | --- |
| 3. | | X | --- | 19. | | X | --- |
| 4. | | X | --- | 20. | | X | --- |
| 5. | | X | --- | 21. | | X | --- |
| 6. | | X | --- | 22. | | X | --- |
| 7. | | X | --- | 23. | | X | --- |

3. Click any index number to open the configuration page. Type a name which is easy for identification for such profile (in this case, type *VPN Server*), and check the box of **Enable This Profile**. For Vigor router will be set as a **server**, the call direction shall be set as **Dial-in** and set 0 as **Idle Timeout**.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

Profile Name:

Enable this profile

Call Direction: Both Dial-Out Dial-in

Always on

Idle Timeout: second(s)

Enable PING to keep alive

PING to the IP:

VPN Dial-Out Through:

Netbios Naming Packet: Pass Block

Multicast via VPN: Pass Block
(for some IGMP, IP-Camera, DHCP Relay..etc.)

2. Dial-Out Settings

- Now navigate to the next section, **Dial-In Settings** to check PPTP, IPsec Tunnel and L2TP boxes. Check the box of **Specify Remote...** and type the **Peer VPN Server IP** (e.g., 218.242.130.19 in this case). Press the **IKE Pre-Shared Key** button to set the **PSK**, and select **Medium (AH)** or **High (ESP)** as the security method.

3. Dial-In Settings

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Allowed Dial-In Type</p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy None | <p>Username <input type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password <input type="password"/></p> <p>VJ Compression <input type="radio"/> On <input checked="" type="radio"/> Off</p> |
| <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote VPN Gateway</p> <p>Peer VPN Server IP <input type="text" value="218.242.130.19"/></p> <p>or Peer ID <input type="text"/></p> | <p>IKE Authentication Method</p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key <input type="button" value="IKE Pre-Shared Key"/> <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) None |
| | <p>IPsec Security Method</p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH) <input type="checkbox"/> High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES |

4. Gre over IPsec Settings

- Continue to navigate to the **TCP/IP Network Settings** for setting the LAN IP for remote side.

4. Gre over IPsec Settings

Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec

Logical Traffic My GRE IP Peer GRE IP

5. TCP/IP Network Settings

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>My WAN IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Gateway IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.1.0"/></p> <p>Remote Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p>Local Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.1.9"/></p> <p>Local Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="More"/></p> | <p>RIP Direction Disable</p> <p>From first subnet to remote network, you have to do Route</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this)</p> |
|--|---|

- Click **OK** to save the settings.

- Open **VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management** to check the dial-in connection status (from branch office).

VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

Dial-out Tool Refresh Seconds : 5

VPN Connection Status

Current Page: 1 Page No.

| VPN | Type | Remote IP | Virtual Network | Tx Pkts | Tx Rate (Bps) | Rx Pkts | Rx Rate (Bps) | UpTime |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------|---------------|---------|---------------|---|
| 1 (VPN Server) | IPSec Tunnel DES-SHA1 Auth | 218.242.130.19 | 192.168.1.0/24 | 353 | 3 | 291 | 3 | 0:13:58 <input type="button" value="Drop"/> |

xxxxxxxx : Data is encrypted.
xxxxxxxx : Data isn't encrypted.

Configuration on Vigor Router for Branch Office

- Log into the web user interface of Vigor router.
- Open **VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN** to create a LAN-to-LAN profile. The following settings are for a permanent VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

LAN-to-LAN Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

View: All Trunk

| Index | Name | Active | Status | Index | Name | Active | Status |
|--------------------|------|--------|--------|---------------------|------|--------|--------|
| 1. | | X | --- | 17. | | X | --- |
| 2. | | X | --- | 18. | | X | --- |
| 3. | | X | --- | 19. | | X | --- |
| 4. | | X | --- | 20. | | X | --- |
| 5. | | X | --- | 21. | | X | --- |
| 6. | | X | --- | 22. | | X | --- |
| 7. | | X | --- | 23. | | X | --- |

- Click any index number to open the configuration page. Type a name which is easy for identification for such profile (in this case, type *VPN Client*), and check the box of **Enable This Profile**. For such Vigor router will be set as a **client**, the call direction shall be set as **Dial-out**. Check the box of **Always on** for a permanent VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

Profile Name

Enable this profile

Call Direction Both Dial-Out Dial-in

Always on

Idle Timeout second(s)

Enable PING to keep alive

PING to the IP

VPN Dial-Out Through

Netbios Naming Packet Pass Block

Multicast via VPN Pass Block
(for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)

2. Dial-Out Settings

- Now navigate to the next section, **Dial-Out Settings** to select the **IPsec Tunnel** service and type the remote server IP/host name (e.g., 218.242.133.91, in this case). Press the **IKE Pre-Shared Key** button to set the **PSK**; and select **Medium (AH)** or **High (ESP)** as the security method.

2. Dial-Out Settings

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Type of Server I am calling</p> <p><input type="radio"/> PPTP</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> IPsec Tunnel</p> <p><input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy None</p> | <p>Username <input type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password <input type="password"/></p> <p>PPP Authentication PAP/CHAP</p> <p>VJ Compression <input type="radio"/> On <input checked="" type="radio"/> Off</p> |
| <p>Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)</p> <p><input type="text" value="218.242.133.91"/></p> | <p>IKE Authentication Method</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key</p> <p><input type="button" value="IKE Pre-Shared Key"/> <input type="password" value="....."/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509)</p> <p>Peer ID None</p> <p>Local ID</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Subject Name First</p> |
| | <p>IPsec Security Method</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Medium(AH)</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> High(ESP) 3DES with Authentication</p> <p><input type="button" value="Advanced"/></p> |
| <p>Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup:</p> <p><input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/></p> | |

- Continue to navigate to the **TCP/IP Network Settings** for setting the LAN IP for the remote side.

4. Gre over IPsec Settings

Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec

Logical Traffic My GRE IP Peer GRE IP

5. TCP/IP Network Settings

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>My WAN IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Gateway IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Network IP <input type="text" value="172.17.1.0"/></p> <p>Remote Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p>Local Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.1.9"/></p> <p>Local Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="More"/></p> | <p>RIP Direction Disable</p> <p>From first subnet to remote network, you have to do</p> <p><input type="button" value="Route"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this)</p> |
|---|--|

- Click **OK** to save the settings.

- Open **VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management** to check the dial-in connection status (from head office).

VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

Dial-out Tool Refresh Seconds : 5

(V2920) 172.16.2.145

VPN Connection Status Page No.

Current Page: 1

| VPN | Type | Remote IP | Virtual Network | Tx Pkts | Tx Rate (Bps) | Rx Pkts | Rx Rate (Bps) | UpTime |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------|---------------|---------|---------------|--|
| 1 (VPN Client) | IPSec Tunnel DES-SHA1 Auth | 218.242.133.91 | 172.17.1.0/24 | 8 | 3 | 132 | 36 | 0:6:41 <input type="button" value="Drop"/> |

xxxxxxx : Data is encrypted.
xxxxxxx : Data isn't encrypted.

4.4 How to Optimize the Bandwidth through QoS Technology

Have you ever gotten any problems in uploading/downloading files (Voice, video or email/data only) with the narrow/districted bandwidth you may share from the common Internet connection line? The advanced bandwidth management technology-QoS (Quality of Service) helps you to well allocate the bandwidth upon your demand of Voice, Video, or Data transferring. Let's see how to get the optimum bandwidth per your request by using DrayTek Vigor router as below.

Scenario: The Internet connection you got from ISP line is 2MB/512Kb. There are VoIP telephony network, IPTV set top box and data server at your home. Assume you want to allocate 30% of the bandwidth you got to VoIP demand, 50% for IPTV, 15% for mail/data, 5% for others. Let's see how easily it is to do the setting as below:

- Open **Bandwidth Management>> Quality of Service**.



- You will get the following page. Click the **Edit** link for **Class 1**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

General Setup

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Status | Bandwidth | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control | Online Statistics |
|-------|---------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| WAN1 | Disable | --Kbps/--Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |
| WAN2 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |
| WAN3 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |
| WAN4 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |

Class Rule

| Index | Name | Rule | Service Type |
|---------|------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Class 1 | | Edit | |
| Class 2 | | Edit | Edit |
| Class 3 | | Edit | |

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:

SIP UDP Port: (Default: 5060)

3. In the following page, type a name (e.g., VoIP) for such class and click **Add**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #1

Name: Tag packets as:

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|----|--------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 | Empty | - | - | - | - |

4. Check the box of **ACT**. Click **Edit** to specify the local address.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Rule Edit

ACT

Ethernet Type: IPv4 IPv6

Local Address:

Remote Address:

DiffServ CodePoint:

Service Type:

Note: Please choose/setup the Service Type first.

- In the pop-up window, choose **Range Address** as the **Address Type** and type the start IP address and end IP address in relational fields. Click **OK** to save the settings and exit the window.

Ethernet Type: IPv4

Address Type: Range Address

Start IP Address: 172.16.1.240

End IP Address: 172.16.1.241

Subnet Mask: 0.0.0.0

OK Close

- Click **OK** again to save the settings.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Rule Edit

ACT

Ethernet Type: IPv4 IPv6

Local Address: 172.16.1.240~172.16.1.241 Edit

Remote Address: Any Edit

DiffServ CodePoint: ANY

Service Type: --Predefined--

Note: Please choose/setup the Service Type first.

OK Cancel

- The class rule for VoIP has been set. Click **OK** to return to previous page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #1

Name: VoIP Tag packets as: Default

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|----|--------|-----------------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 | Active | 172.16.1.240 ~ 172.16.1.241 | Any | ANY | ANY |

Add Edit Delete

OK Cancel

8. Do the same steps to add class rules for IPTV and Data/Email with IP addresses as shown below.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #2

Name Tag packets as:

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|-------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 <input type="radio"/> | Active | 172.16.1.242 ~ 172.16.1.249 | Any | ANY | ANY |

and

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #3

Name Tag packets as:

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|-------------------------|--------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 <input type="radio"/> | Active | Any | Any | IP precedence 2 | ANY |

9. Assuming you get 2MB/512Kb Internet line. You can click the **Setup** link of WAN1 to set up the bandwidth for different groups among VoIP, IPTV and Data/Email.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

General Setup | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Status | Bandwidth | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control | Online Statistics | |
|-------|---------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| WAN1 | Enable | --Kbps/--Kbps | Outbound | 30% | 50% | 15% | 5% | Active | Status | Setup |
| WAN2 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN3 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN4 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |

Class Rule

| Index | Name | Rule | Service Type |
|---------|------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Class 1 | VoIP | Edit | Edit |
| Class 2 | IPTV | Edit | |
| Class 3 | Data/Email | Edit | |

10. In the Setup page, check the box of **Enable the QoS Control**. Type 30, 50 and 15 in the boxes for VoIP, IPTV and Data/Email respectively. Check the box of **Enable UDP Bandwidth Control**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

WAN1 General Setup

Enable the QoS Control OUT ▾

| Index | Class Name | Reserved Bandwidth Ratio |
|---------|------------|--------------------------|
| Class 1 | VoIP | 30 % |
| Class 2 | IPTV | 50 % |
| Class 3 | Data/Email | 15 % |
| | Others | 5 % |

Enable UDP Bandwidth Control Limited_bandwidth Ratio %

Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

11. Click **OK** to save the settings. The class rules for WAN1 are defined as shown below.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Status | Bandwidth | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control | Online Statistics | |
|-------|---------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| WAN1 | Enable | --Kbps/--Kbps | Outbound | 30% | 50% | 15% | 5% | Active | Status | Setup |
| WAN2 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN3 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN4 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |

| Index | Name | Rule | Service Type |
|---------|--------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Class 1 | E-mail | Edit | Edit |
| Class 2 | HTTPS | Edit | |
| Class 3 | | Edit | |

4.5 QoS Setting Example

Assume a teleworker sometimes works at home and takes care of children. When working time, he would use Vigor router at home to connect to the server in the headquarter office downtown via either HTTPS or V PN to check email and access internal database. Meanwhile, children may chat on Skype in the restroom.

1. Go to **Bandwidth Management>>Quality of Service**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

[Set to Factory Default](#)

General Setup

| Index | Status | Bandwidth | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control | Online Statistics | |
|-------|---------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| WAN1 | Disable | --Kbps/--Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN2 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN3 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |
| WAN4 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status | Setup |

Class Rule

| Index | Name | Rule | Service Type |
|---------|------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Class 1 | | Edit | |
| Class 2 | | Edit | Edit |
| Class 3 | | Edit | |

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:
 SIP UDP Port: (Default: 5060)

2. Click **Setup** link of WAN(1/2/3). Make sure the QoS Control on the left corner is checked. And select **BOTH** in **Direction**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

WAN2 General Setup

Enable the QoS Control

| | | |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| WAN Inbound | | Bandwidth |
| | <input type="text" value="BOTH"/> | |
| WAN Outbound | | Bandwidth |

3. Set Inbound/Outbound bandwidth.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

WAN2 General Setup

Enable the QoS Control **BOTH** ▾

| WAN Inbound Bandwidth | <input type="text" value="100000"/> | Kbps |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| WAN Outbound Bandwidth | <input type="text" value="100000"/> | Kbps |
| Index | Class Name | Reserved_bandwidth Ratio |
| Class 1 | VoIP | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |

Note: The rate of outbound/inbound must be smaller than the real bandwidth to ensure correct calculation of QoS. It is suggested to set the bandwidth value for inbound/outbound as 80% - 85% of physical network speed provided by ISP to maximize the QoS performance.

4. Return to previous page. Enter the Name of Index Class 1 by clicking **Edit** link. Type the name “**E-mail**” for Class 1. Click **OK** to save the settings.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #1

Name: Tag packets as: **Default** ▾

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|-------------------------|--------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 <input type="radio"/> | Active | Any | Any | ANY | ANY |

5. Click the **Setup** link for WAN2. The user can set reserved bandwidth (e.g., 25%) for **E-mail** using protocol POP3 and SMTP. Click **OK** to save the settings.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

WAN2 General Setup

Enable the QoS Control **BOTH** ▾

| WAN Inbound Bandwidth | <input type="text" value="100000"/> | Kbps |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| WAN Outbound Bandwidth | <input type="text" value="100000"/> | Kbps |
| Index | Class Name | Reserved_bandwidth Ratio |
| Class 1 | E-mail | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
| Class 2 | | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
| Class 3 | | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
| | Others | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |

Enable UDP Bandwidth Control Limited_bandwidth Ratio %

Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

- Return to previous page. Enter the Name of Index Class 2 by clicking **Edit** link. In this index, the user will set reserved bandwidth for **HTTPS**. And click **OK**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #2

Name Tag packets as:

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|----|--------|--------------------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 | Active | 172.16.1.242 ~ 172.16.1.249 | Any | ANY | ANY |

- Click **Setup** link for WAN2.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

General Setup | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Status | Bandwidth | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control | Online Statistics |
|-------|---------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|--|
| WAN1 | Enable | --Kbps/--Kbps | Both | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |
| WAN2 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |
| WAN3 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |
| WAN4 | Disable | 100000Kbps/100000Kbps | | 25% | 25% | 25% | 25% | Inactive | Status Setup |

Class Rule

| Index | Name | Rule | Service Type |
|---------|--------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Class 1 | E-mail | Edit | |
| Class 2 | HTTPS | Edit | Edit |
| Class 3 | | Edit | |

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:

SIP UDP Port: (Default: 5060)

- Check **Enable UDP Bandwidth Control** on the bottom to prevent enormous UDP traffic influent other application. Click **OK**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

WAN2 General Setup

Enable the QoS Control BOTH

WAN Inbound Bandwidth 100000 Kbps

WAN Outbound Bandwidth 100000 Kbps

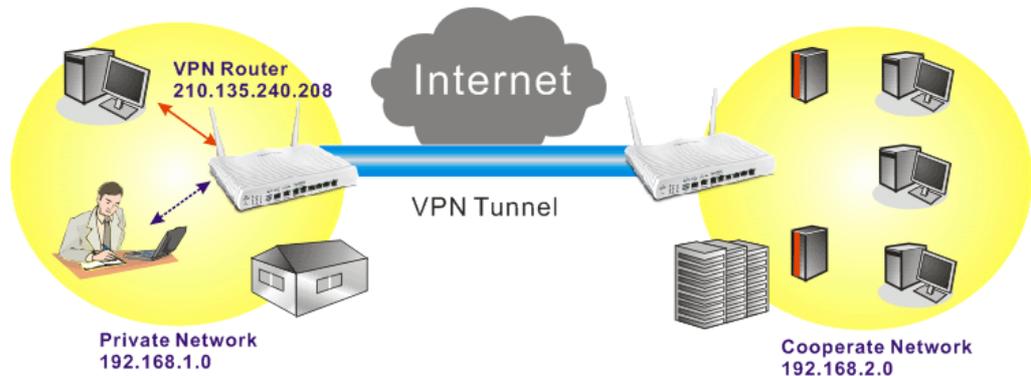
| Index | Class Name | Reserved_bandwidth Ratio |
|---------|------------|--|
| Class 1 | E-mail | 25 % |
| Class 2 | HTTPS | 25 % |
| Class 3 | | 25 % |
| | Others | 25 % |

Enable UDP Bandwidth Control Limited_bandwidth Ratio 25 %

Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

OK
Clear
Cancel

- If the worker has connected to the headquarter using host to host VPN tunnel. (Please refer to Chapter 3 VPN for detail instruction), he may set up an index for it. Enter the Class Name of Index 3. In this index, he will set reserved bandwidth for 1 VPN tunnel.



- Click **Edit** for Class 3 to open a new window. In this index, the user will set reserved bandwidth for **VPN**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #3

Name VPN Tag packets as: Default

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|----|--------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 | Empty | - | - | - | - |

Add
Edit
Delete

OK
Cancel

11. Click **Add** to open the following window. Check the **ACT** box, first.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Rule Edit

| | |
|---|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACT | |
| Ethernet Type | <input checked="" type="radio"/> IPv4 <input type="radio"/> IPv6 |
| Local Address | <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> |
| Remote Address | <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> |
| DiffServ CodePoint | <input type="text" value="ANY"/> ▾ |
| Service Type | <input type="text" value="---Predefined---"/> ▾ |
| Note: Please choose/setup the <u>Service Type</u> first. | |

12. Then click **Edit** of **Local Address** to set a worker's subnet address. Click **Edit** of **Remote Address** to set headquarter's IP address. Leave other fields and click **OK**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Rule Edit

| | |
|---|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACT | |
| Ethernet Type | <input checked="" type="radio"/> IPv4 <input type="radio"/> IPv6 |
| Local Address | <input type="text" value="192.168.1.0"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> |
| Remote Address | <input type="text" value="192.168.2.0"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> |
| DiffServ CodePoint | <input type="text" value="ANY"/> ▾ |
| Service Type | <input type="text" value="---Predefined---"/> ▾ |
| Note: Please choose/setup the <u>Service Type</u> first. | |

4.6 How to Implement the LDAP/AD Authentication for User Management?

For simplifying the configuration of LDAP authentication for User Access Management, we implement “Group” feature.

There is no need to pre-configure user profile for each user on Vigor router anymore. We only need to configure the Groups DN, then the Vigor router (e.g., Vigor 3200 series) can pass the authentication to LDAP server with the pre-defined Group path.

Below shows the configuration steps:

1. Access into the web user interface of the Vigor router.
2. Open **Applications>>Active Directory /LDAP** to get the following page for configuring LDAP related settings.

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP

Active Directory /LDAP | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

General Setup | **Active Directory / LDAP Profiles**

Enable

Bind Type: Regular Mode

Server IP Address: 172.16.2.8

Destination Port: 389

Regular DN: uid=vpntest,ou=vpnuser,dc=ms,dc=draytel

Regular Password: 1234

OK Cancel

There are three types of bind type supported:

- **Simple Mode** – Just simply do the bind authentication without any search action.
- **Anonymous** – Perform a search action first with Anonymous account then do the bind authentication.
- **Regular Mode**– Mostly it is the same with anonymous mode. The different is that, the server will firstly check if you have the search authority. For the regular mode, you’ll need to type in the **Regular DN** and **Regular Password**.

3. Create LDAP server profiles. Click the **Active Directory /LDAP** tab to open the profile web page and click any one of the index number link.

If we have two groups “**RD1**” and “**SHRD**” on LDAP server, we can configure two LDAP server profiles with different Group Distinguished Name.

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP>> Server Profiles

Index No. 1

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Name | <input type="text" value="rd1"/> |
| Common Name Identifier | <input type="text" value="uid"/> |
| Base Distinguished Name | <input type="text" value="ou=people,dc=ms,dc=draytek,dc=com"/> |
| Group Distinguished Name | <input type="text" value="cn=rd1,ou=group,dc=ms,dc=draytek,dc=com"/> |

and

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP>> Server Profiles

Index No. 2

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Name | <input type="text" value="shrd"/> |
| Common Name Identifier | <input type="text" value="uid"/> |
| Base Distinguished Name | <input type="text" value="ou=people,dc=ms,dc=draytek,dc=com"/> |
| Group Distinguished Name | <input type="text" value="cn=shrd,ou=group,dc=ms,dc=draytek,dc=com"/> |

4. Click **OK** to save the settings above.
5. Open **User Management>>General Setup**. Select **User-Based** as the **Mode** option.

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

| |
|---|
| Mode: <input type="button" value="User-Based"/> |
| Notice : 1. User Management will refer to active rules in Data Filter as whitelists and blacklists in user-based firewall mode. 2. Users match the above lists will not be required for authentication. The firewall rules policy will still valid. 3. Otherwise, authentication required for users not matched the above lists. The firewall rules designated in the user profile's policy will still valid. |
| Landing Page (Max 255 characters) Preview Set to Factory Default |
| <pre><body state=1><script language='javascript'> window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body></pre> |

- Then open **VPN and Remote Access>>PPP General Setup** to check the profile(s) that will be authenticated with LDAP server.

VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

PPP General Setup

| | | | |
|--|---|--|------|
| PPP/MP Protocol | | LDAP Server Profiles for PPP Authentication | |
| Dial-In PPP Authentication | <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | rd1 |
| Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE) | <input type="text" value="Optional MPPE"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | shrd |
| Mutual Authentication (PAP) | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No | | |
| Username | <input type="text"/> | | |
| Password | <input type="text"/> | | |
| IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users (When DHCP Disable set) | | | |
| Assigned IP start | LAN 1 | <input type="text" value="192.168.1.200"/> | |
| | LAN 2 | <input type="text" value="192.168.2.200"/> | |
| | LAN 3 | <input type="text" value="192.168.3.200"/> | |
| | LAN 4 | <input type="text" value="192.168.4.200"/> | |
| | LAN 5 | <input type="text" value="192.168.5.200"/> | |

OK

- After above configurations, users belong to either “rd1” or “shrd” group can access Internet after inputting their credentials on LDAP server.

4.7 How to use Landing Page Feature

Landing Page is a special feature configured under **User Management**. It can specify the message, content to be seen or specify which website to be accessed into when users try to access into the Internet by passing the authentication. Here, we take Vigor2860 series router as an example.

Example 1 : Users can see the message for landing page after logging into Internet successfully

1. Open the web user interface of Vigor2860.
2. Open **User Management -> General Setup** to get the following page. In the field of **Landing Page**, please type the words of “**Login Success**”. Please note that the maximum number of characters to be typed here is 255.

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

Mode:

Notice :

1. User Management will refer to active rules in Data Filter as whitelists and blacklists in user-based firewall mode.
2. Users match the above lists will not be required for authentication. The firewall rules policy will still valid.
3. Otherwise, authentication required for users not matched the above lists. The firewall rules designated in the user profile's policy will still valid.

Landing Page (Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) [Set to Factory Default](#)

Login success

3. Now you can enable the **Landing Page** function. Open **User Management -> User Profile** and click one of the index number (e.g., index number 3) links.

User Management >> User Profile

User Profile Table

| Profile | Name |
|--------------------|--------------|
| 1. | admin |
| 2. | Dial-In User |
| 3. | |
| 4. | |

4. In the following page, check the box of **Landing page** and click **OK** to save the settings.

User Management >> User Profile

Profile Index 3

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Enable this account | |
| User Name | <input type="text" value="Caca"/> | |
| Password | <input type="password" value="...."/> | |
| Confirm Password | <input type="password"/> | |
| Idle Timeout | <input type="text" value="10"/> min(s) 0:Unlimited | |
| Max User Login | <input type="text" value="0"/> 0:Unlimited | |
| <u>External Server Authentication</u> | None ▾ | |
| Log | None ▾ | |
| Pop Browser Tracking Window | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | |
| Authentication | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet | |
| Landing Page | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota | <input type="text" value="0"/> min(s) <input type="button" value="Refresh"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> more <input type="text" value="0"/> min(s) | |
| Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup: | <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> | |

5. Open any browser (e.g., FireFox, Internet Explorer). The logging page will appear and asks for username and password. Please type the correct username and password.



A login page with a white background and a red footer. The footer contains the text "Copyright©, DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved." and the "DrayTek" logo. The main area has a "Username" field with "CaCa" and a "Password" field with "....". A "Login" button is located below the password field.

6. Click **Login**. If the logging is successful, you will see the message of Login Success from the browser you use.



Example 2 : The system will connect to <http://www.draytek.com> automatically after logging into Internet successfully

1. In the field of **Landing Page**, please type the words as below:

**“ <body stats=1><script language='javascript'>
window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>”**

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

Mode:

Notice :

1. User Management will refer to active rules in Data Filter as whitelists and blacklists in user-based firewall mode.
2. Users match the above lists will not be required for authentication. The firewall rules policy will still valid.
3. Otherwise, authentication required for users not matched the above lists. The firewall rules designated in the user profile's policy will still valid.

Landing Page (Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) [Set to Factory Default](#)

```
<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>  
window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>
```

2. Next, enable the **Landing Page** function. Open **User Management -> User Profile** and click one of the index number (e.g., index number 3) links.

User Management >> User Profile

User Profile Table

| Profile | Name |
|--------------------|--------------|
| 1. | admin |
| 2. | Dial-In User |
| 3. | |
| 4. | |

3. In the following page, check the box of **Landing page** and click **OK** to save the settings.

Profile Index 3

Enable this account

User Name

Password

Confirm Password

Idle Timeout min(s) 0:Unlimited

Max User Login 0:Unlimited

External Server Authentication

Log

Pop Browser Tracking Window

Authentication Web Alert Tool Telnet

Landing Page

Enable Time Quota min(s) , more min(s)

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: , , ,

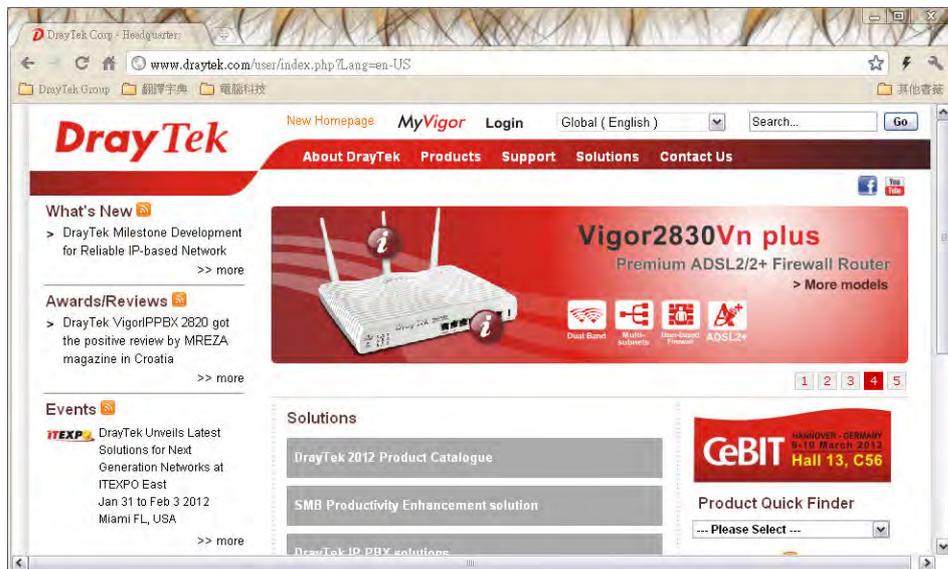
- Open any browser (e.g., FireFox, Internet Explorer). The logging page will appear and asks for username and password. Please type the correct username and password.

Username

Password

Copyright©, DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved. **DrayTek**

- Click **Login**. If the logging is successful, you will be directed into the website of www.draytek.com.



4.8 How to Send a Notification to Specified Phone Number via SMS Service in WAN Disconnection

Follow the steps listed below:

1. Log into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Configure relational objects first. Open **Object Settings>>SMS/Mail Server Object** to get the following page.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

| SMS Provider | Mail Server | Set to Factory Default |
|--------------|--------------|--|
| Index | Profile Name | SMS Provider |
| <u>1.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| <u>2.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| <u>3.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| <u>4.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| <u>5.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| <u>6.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| <u>7.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| <u>8.</u> | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) |
| <u>9.</u> | Custom 1 | |
| <u>10.</u> | Custom 2 | |

Index 1 to Index 8 allows you to choose the built-in SMS service provider. If the SMS service provider is not on the list, you can configure Index 9 and Index 10 to add the new service provider to Vigor router.

3. Choose any index number (e.g., Index 1 in this case) to configure the SMS Provider setting. In the following page, type the username and password and set the quota that the router can send the message out.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 1

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Profile Name | <input type="text" value="Local number"/> |
| Service Provider | <input type="text" value="kotsms.com.tw (TW)"/> ▼ |
| Username | <input type="text" value="abc5026"/> |
| Password | <input type="password" value="•••"/> |
| Quota | <input type="text" value="3"/> |
| Sending Interval | <input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds) |

- After finished the settings, click **OK** to return to previous page. Now you have finished the configuration of the SMS Provider profile setting.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

| SMS Provider | | Mail Server | Set to Factory Default |
|--------------|--------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Index | Profile Name | SMS Provider | |
| 1. | Local number | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 2. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 3. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 4. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 5. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 6. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 7. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 8. | | kotsms.com.tw (TW) | |
| 9. | Custom 1 | | |
| 10. | Custom 2 | | |

- Open **Object Settings>>Notification Object** to configure the event conditions of the notification.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

| | | | Set to Factory Default |
|-------|--------------|----------|------------------------|
| Index | Profile Name | Settings | |
| 1. | | | |
| 2. | | | |
| 3. | | | |
| 4. | | | |
| 5. | | | |
| 6. | | | |
| 7. | | | |
| 8. | | | |

- Choose any index number (e.g., Index 1 in this case) to configure conditions for sending the SMS. In the following page, type the name of the profile and check the Disconnected and Reconnected boxes for WAN to work in concert with the topic of this paper.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

Profile Index: 1

| Profile Name | | <input type="text" value="WAN_Notify"/> | |
|-------------------|--|---|--|
| Category | Status | | |
| WAN | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnected | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reconnected | |
| VPN Tunnel | <input type="checkbox"/> Disconnected | <input type="checkbox"/> Reconnected | |
| Temperature Alert | <input type="checkbox"/> Out of Range | | |

- After finished the settings, click **OK** to return to previous page. You have finished the configuration of the notification object profile setting.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index | Profile Name | Settings |
|-------|--------------|----------|
| 1. | WAN_Notify | WAN |
| 2. | | |
| 3. | | |
| 4. | | |
| 5. | | |
| 6. | | |
| 7. | | |
| 8. | | |

- Now, open **Application >> SMS / Mail Alert Service**. Use the drop down list to choose SMS Provider and the Notify Profile (specify the time of sending SMS). Then, type the phone number in the field of Recipient (the one who will receive the SMS).

Application >> SMS / Mail Alert Service

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| SMS Provider | | Mail Server | | |
|--------------|--|-------------|----------------|---|
| Index | SMS Provider | Recipient | Notify Profile | Schedule(1-15) |
| 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number | 0912345678 | 1 - WAN_Notify | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number | | 1 - WAN_Notify | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number | | 1 - WAN_Notify | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number | | 1 - WAN_Notify | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number | | 1 - WAN_Notify | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number | | 1 - WAN_Notify | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number | | 1 - WAN_Notify | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |
| 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number | | 1 - WAN_Notify | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |
| 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number | | 1 - WAN_Notify | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number | | 1 - WAN_Notify | <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |

- Click **OK** to save the settings. Later, if one of the WAN connections fails in your router, the system will send out SMS to the phone number specified. If the router has only one WAN interface, the system will send out SMS to the phone number while reconnecting the WAN interface successfully.

Remark: How the customize the SMS Provider

Choose one of the Index numbers (9 or 10) allowing you to customize the SMS Provider. In the web page, type the URL string of the SMS provider and type the username and password. After clicking OK, the new added SMS provider will be added and will be available for you to specify for sending SMS out.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 9

| | |
|--|--|
| Profile Name | <input type="text" value="Custom 1"/> |
| Service Provider | <input type="text" value="clickatell"/> |
| <div style="border: 1px solid gray; height: 50px; width: 100%;"></div> | |
| Please contact with your SMS provide to get the exact URL String eg:bulksms.vsms.net:5567/eapi/submission/send_sms/2/2.0?username===txtUser=== &password===txtPwd===&msisdn===txtDest===&message===txtMsg=== | |
| Username | <input type="text" value="ilan123"/> |
| Password | <input type="password" value="••••••"/> |
| Quota | <input type="text" value="3"/> |
| Sending Interval | <input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds) |

4.9 How to Create an Account for MyVigor

The website of MyVigor (a server located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>) provides several useful services (such as Anti-Spam, Web Content Filter, Anti-Intrusion, and etc.) to filtering the web pages for the sake of protecting your system.

To access into MyVigor for getting more information, please create an account for MyVigor.

4.9.1 Create an Account via Vigor Router

1. Click **CSM>> Web Content Filter Profile**. The following page will appear.

CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile

Web-Filter License
[Status:Not Activated] [Activate](#)

| | | |
|--------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Setup Query Server | <input type="text" value="auto-selected"/> | Find more |
| Setup Test Server | <input type="text" value="auto-selected"/> | Find more |

Web Content Filter Profile Table: [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Profile | Name | Profile | Name |
|--------------------|---------|--------------------|------|
| 1. | Default | 5. | |
| 2. | | 6. | |
| 3. | | 7. | |
| 4. | | 8. | |

Administration Message (Max 255 characters) Cache :

```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL%  
<br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% Web Content  
Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further  
information.</center></body>
```

Or

Click **System Maintenance>>Activation** to open the following page.

System Maintenance >> Activation Activate via interface :

Web-Filter License
[Status:Not Activated] [Activate](#)

Authentication Message

```
Activation authenticate fail, contact with support@draytek.com, 2012-10-30 16:17:01
```

2. Click the **Activate** link. A login page for MyVigor web site will pop up automatically.



Please take a moment to register.
Membership Registration entitles you to upgrade firmware for your purchased product and receive news about upcoming products and services!

LOGIN

UserName :

Password :

Auth Code : **t x x h d d**

If you cannot read the word, [click here](#)

[Forgotten password?](#)

Don't have a MyVigor Account ? [Create an account now](#)

If you are having difficulty logging in, contact our customer service.
Customer Service : (888) 3 597 2727 or

3. Click the link of **Create an account now**.
4. Check to confirm that you accept the Agreement and click **Accept**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

- 1 Agreement
- 2 Personal Information
- 3 Preferences
- 4 Completion

===== MyVigor Agreement =====

1. Agreement
Draytek provides MyVigor(myvigor.draytek.com) service according to this agreement. When you use MyVigor service, it means that you have read, understand and agree to accept the items listed in this agreement. Draytek can modify or change the content of the items without any reasons. It is suggested for you to notice the modifications or changes at any time. If you still use MyVigor service after knowing the modifications and changes of this service, it means you have read, understand and agree to accept the modifications and changes. If you do not agree the content of this agreement, please stop using MyVigor service.

2. Registration
To use this service, you have to agree the following conditions:
(a) Provide your complete and correct information according to the registration steps of this service.
(b) If you provide any incorrect or fake information here, DrayTek has the right to pause or terminate

I have read and understand the above Agreement. (Use the scroll bar to view the entire agreement)

5. Type your personal information in this page and then click **Continue**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile. (Fields marked by (*) are required)

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

Account Information

UserName:*
(3 - 20 characters)

Password:*
(4 - 20 characters : Do not set the same as the username.)

Confirm Password:*

Personal Information

First Name:*

Last Name:*

Company Name:

Email Address:*
Please note that a valid E-mail address is required to receive the Subscription Code. You will need this code to activate your account.

Tel: -

Country:*

Career:*

6. Choose proper selection for your computer and click **Continue**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

How did you find out about this website?

What kind of anti-virus do you use?

I would like to subscribe to the MyVigor e-letter.

I would like to receive DrayTek product news.

Please select the mail server for receiving the verification mail.

7. Now you have created an account successfully. Click **START**.

Register
Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

1 Agreement
2 Personal Information
3 Preferences
4 Completion

Completion

A confirmation email has been sent to **mary_ted@tech.com**
Please click on the activation link in the email
to activate your account

START

8. Check to see the confirmation *email* with the title of **New Account Confirmation Letter from myvigor.draytek.com**.

***** This is an automated message from myvigor.draytek.com. *****

Thank you (**Mary**) for creating an account.

Please click on the activation link below to activate your account

Link : [Activate my Account](#)

9. Click the **Activate my Account** link to enable the account that you created. The following screen will be shown to verify the register process is finished. Please click **Login**.

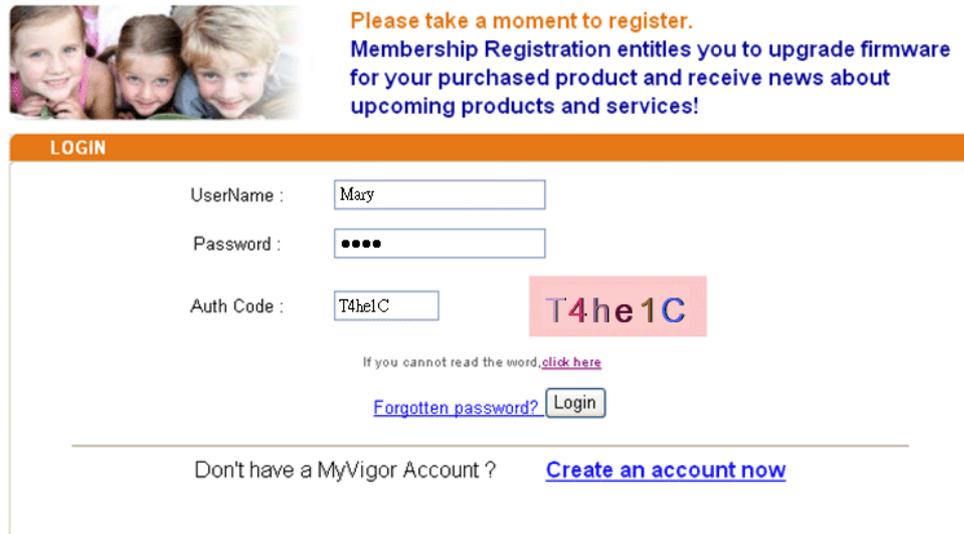
Register Search for this site GO

Register Confirm

Thank for your register in VigorPro Web Site
The Register process is completed

Close Login

10. When you see the following page, please type in the account and password (that you just created) in the fields of **UserName** and **Password**.

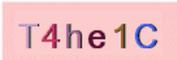


Please take a moment to register.
Membership Registration entitles you to upgrade firmware for your purchased product and receive news about upcoming products and services!

LOGIN

UserName :

Password :

Auth Code : 

If you cannot read the word, [click here](#)

[Forgotten password?](#)

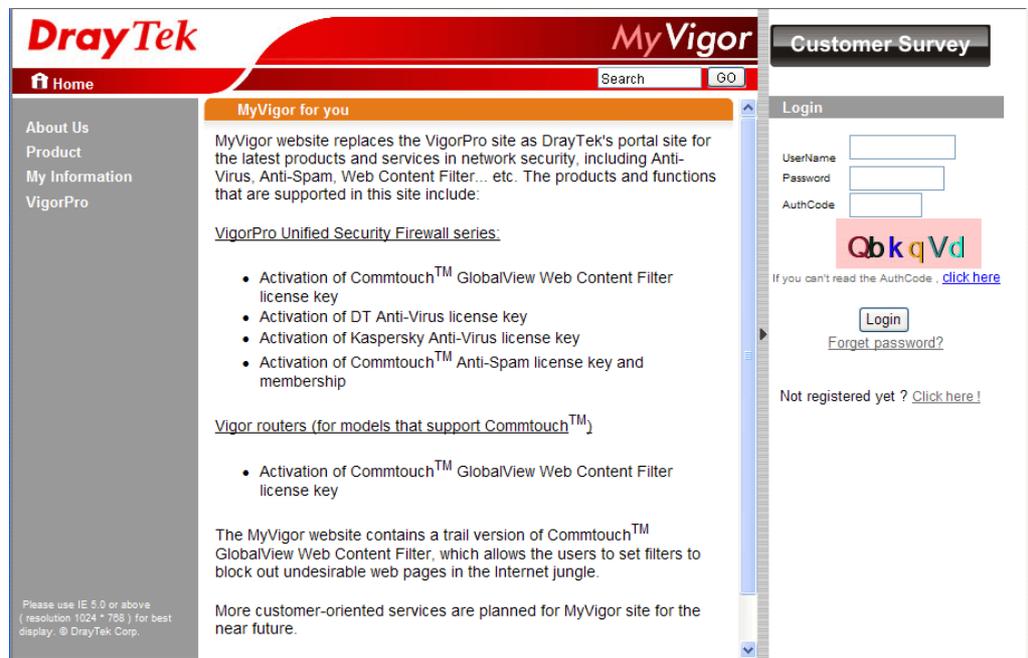
Don't have a MyVigor Account ? [Create an account now](#)

If you are having difficulty logging in, contact our customer service.
Customer Service : (886) 3 597 2727 or

11. Now, click **Login**. Your account has been activated. You can access into MyVigor server to activate the service (e.g., WCF) that you want.

4.9.2 Create an Account via MyVigor Web Site

1. Access into <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. Find the line of **Not registered yet?**. Then, click the link **Click here!** to access into next page.



DrayTek MyVigor Customer Survey

Home Search GO

MyVigor for you

MyVigor website replaces the VigorPro site as DrayTek's portal site for the latest products and services in network security, including Anti-Virus, Anti-Spam, Web Content Filter... etc. The products and functions that are supported in this site include:

VigorPro Unified Security Firewall series:

- Activation of Commtouch™ GlobalView Web Content Filter license key
- Activation of DT Anti-Virus license key
- Activation of Kaspersky Anti-Virus license key
- Activation of Commtouch™ Anti-Spam license key and membership

Vigor routers (for models that support Commtouch™)

- Activation of Commtouch™ GlobalView Web Content Filter license key

The MyVigor website contains a trail version of Commtouch™ GlobalView Web Content Filter, which allows the users to set filters to block out undesirable web pages in the Internet jungle.

More customer-oriented services are planned for MyVigor site for the near future.

Please use IE 5.0 or above (resolution 1024 * 768) for best display. © DrayTek Corp.

Login

UserName

Password

AuthCode 

If you can't read the AuthCode, [click here](#)

[Forget password?](#)

Not registered yet ? [Click here!](#)

2. Check to confirm that you accept the Agreement and click **Accept**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

MyVigor Agreement

1. Agreement

Draytek provides MyVigor(myvigor.draytek.com) service according to this agreement. When you use MyVigor service, it means that you have read, understand and agree to accept the items listed in this agreement. Draytek can modify or change the content of the items without any reasons. It is suggested for you to notice the medications or changes at any time. If you still use MyVigor service after knowing the modifications and changes of this service, it means you have read, understand and agree to accept the modifications and changes. If you do not agree the content of this agreement, please stop using MyVigor service.

2. Registration

To use this service, you have to agree the following conditions:

(a) Provide your complete and correct information according to the registration steps of this service.

(b) If you provide any incorrect or fake information here, DrayTek has the right to pause or terminate your account.

I have read and understand the above Agreement. (Use the scroll bar to view the entire agreement)

<< Back Accept >>

3. Type your personal information in this page and then click **Continue**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile. (Fields marked by (*) are required)

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

Account Information

UserName:* Mary Check Account

(3 ~ 20 characters)

Password:* ●●●●

(4 ~ 20 characters : Do not set the same as the username.)

Confirm Password:* ●●●●

Personal Information

First Name:* Mary

Last Name:* Ted

Company Name: Tech Ltd.

Email Address:* mary_ted@tech.com

Please note that a valid E-mail address is required to receive the Subscription Code. You will need this code to activate your account.

Tel: 0 -

Country:* SWITZERLAND

Career:* Supervisor

<< Back Continue >>

4. Choose proper selection for your computer and click **Continue**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

How did you find out about this website? Internet

What kind of anti-virus do you use? AntiVir

I would like to subscribe to the MyVigor e-letter.

I would like to receive DrayTek product news.

Please select the mail server for receiving the verification mail. Global Server

<< Back Continue >>

5. Now you have created an account successfully. Click **START**.



6. Check to see the confirmation *email* with the title of **New Account Confirmation Letter from myvigor.draytek.com**.

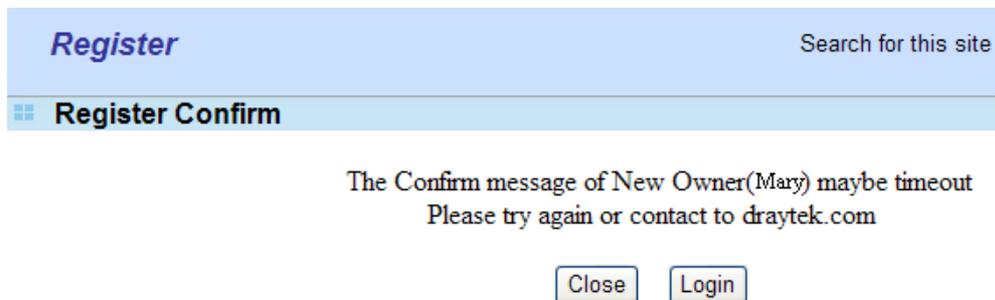
***** This is an automated message from myvigor.draytek.com.*****

Thank you (**Mary**) for creating an account.

Please click on the activation link below to activate your account

Link : [Activate my Account](#)

7. Click the **Activate my Account** link to enable the account that you created. The following screen will be shown to verify the register process is finished. Please click **Login**.



8. When you see the following page, please type in the account and password (that you just created) in the fields of **UserName** and **Password**. Then type the code in the box of Auth Code according to the value displayed on the right side of it.



Please take a moment to register.
Membership Registration entitles you to upgrade firmware for your purchased product and receive news about upcoming products and services!

LOGIN

UserName :

Password :

Auth Code : **T4he1C**

If you cannot read the word, [click here](#)

[Forgotten password?](#)

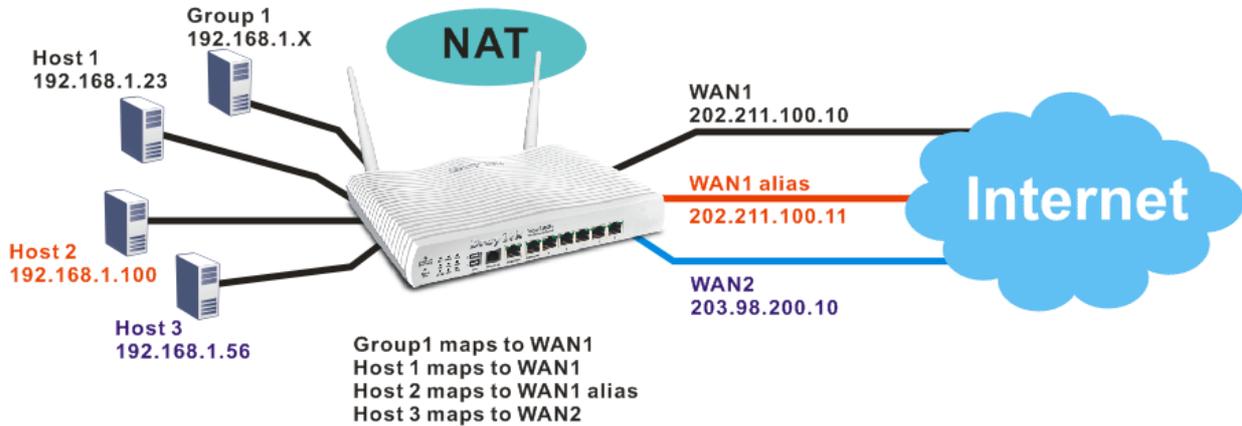
Don't have a MyVigor Account ? [Create an account now](#)

If you are having difficulty logging in, contact our customer service.
Customer Service : (886) 3 597 2727 or

Now, click **Login**. Your account has been activated. You can access into MyVigor server to activate the service (e.g., WCF) that you want.

4.10 How to Setup Address Mapping

Address Mapping is used to map a specified private IP or a range of private IPs of NAT subnet into a specified WAN IP (or WAN IP alias IP). Refer to the following figure.



Suppose the WAN settings for a router are configured as follows:

WAN1: 202.211.100.10, WAN1 alias: 202.211.100.11

WAN2: 203.98.200.10

Without address mapping feature, when a NAT host with an IP say "192.168.1.10" sends a packet to the WAN side (or the Internet), the source address of the NAT host will be mapped into either 202.211.100.10 or 203.98.200.10 (which IP or mapping is decided by the internal load balancing algorithm).

With address mapping feature, you can manually configure any host mapping to any WAN interface to fit the request. In the above example, you can configure NAT Host 1 to always map to 202.211.100.10 (WAN1); Host 2 to always map to 202.211.100.11 (WAN1 alias); Host 3 always map to 203.98.200.10 (WAN2) and Group 1 to always map to 202.211.100.10 (WAN1).

NAT Address Mapping function lets you specify the outgoing IP address(es) for one internal IP address or a block of internal IP addresses.

We will take an example to introduce how to make use of this feature.

1. Log into the web user interface of Vigor2860.
2. Open **WAN>>Internet Access**. For WAN1, choose **MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP** as the **Access Mode**.

WAN >> Internet Access

| Index | Display Name | Physical Mode | Access Mode | |
|-------|--------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| WAN1 | | ADSL / VDSL2 | PPPoE / PPPoA | Details Page IPv6 |
| WAN2 | | Ethernet | None PPPoE / PPPoA | Details Page IPv6 |
| WAN3 | | USB | MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP None | Details Page IPv6 |
| WAN4 | | USB | None | Details Page IPv6 |

Note : Only one WAN can support IPv6.

Advanced You can configure DHCP client options here.

- Click the **Details Page** of WAN 1 to open the following page. From the above figure, set main WAN IP address as *202.211.100.10*.

The screenshot shows the WAN 1 configuration page with several sections:

- WAN 1** (Overall status: Enable)
- Modem Settings (for ADSL only)**: Multi-PVC channel (Channel 2), Encapsulation (1483 Bridged IP LLC), VPI (0), VCI (88), Modulation (Multimode).
- WAN Connection Detection**: Mode (ARP Detect), Ping IP, TTL.
- MTU**: 1492 (Max: 1500)
- RIP Protocol**
- WAN IP Network Settings**:
 - Obtain an IP address automatically (selected)
 - Router Name: Vigor
 - Domain Name
 - DHCP Client Identifier for some ISP (Enable checkbox)
 - Username, Password
 - Specify an IP address (selected):
 - IP Address: 202.211.100.10
 - Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
 - Gateway IP Address
 - Default MAC Address (selected)
 - Specify a MAC Address: 00-1D-AA-58-B7-51
- WAN IP Alias** button (highlighted in red)

Click the **WAN IP Alias** button to configure the other P address which is *202.211.100.11*. Make sure **Join IP NAT Pool** is not checked. Click **OK** to save the settings.

WAN1 IP Alias (Multi-NAT)

| Index | Enable | Aux. WAN IP | Join NAT IP Pool |
|-------|-------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 202.211.100.10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 202.211.100.11 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0.0.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Buttons: OK, Clear All, Close

- After finished configuration for WAN1, open **Load-Balance/Route Policy**.

Load-Balance/Route Policy i

Policy Route | Set to Factory Default |

| Index | Enable | Protocol | Interface | Interface Address | Src IP Start | Src IP End | Dest IP Start | Dest IP End | Dest Port Start | Dest Port End | Move Up | Move Down |
|-------|--------------------------|----------|-----------|-------------------|--------------|------------|---------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | | Down |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |

<< 1-10 | 11-20 | 21-30 | 31-40 | 41-50 >> Next >>

- Click Index number 1 and 2 to configure the details. After finished the settings, click **OK** to save the settings respectively.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1

Enable criteria

Protocol: any

Source IP: any
 Src IP Start: ~ Src IP End

Destination IP: any
 Dest IP Start: ~ Dest IP End

Destination Port: any
 Dest Port Start: ~ Dest Port End

send to if criteria matched

Interface: WAN1

Interface Address: 1----

Gateway IP: default gateway
 specific gateway

more options

Auto Failover To The Other WAN

Packet Forwarding to WAN via: force NAT
 force Routing

And

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 2

Enable criteria

Protocol: any

Source IP:

- any
- Src IP Start: 192.168.1.100 ~ Src IP End: 192.168.1.100

Destination IP:

- any
- Dest IP Start: ~ Dest IP End:

Destination Port:

- any
- Dest Port Start: ~ Dest Port End:

send to if criteria matched

Interface: WAN1

Interface Address: 2-202.211.100.11

Gateway IP:

- default gateway
- specific gateway:

more options

Auto Failover To The Other WAN

Packet Forwarding to WAN via:

- force NAT
- force Routing

- Upon completing the above configuration, you have specified the outgoing IP address(es) for some specific computers.

Load-Balance/Route Policy



Policy Route

| Set to Factory Default |

| Index | Enable | Protocol | Interface | Interface Address | Src IP Start | Src IP End | Dest IP Start | Dest IP End | Dest Port Start | Dest Port End | Move Up | Move Down |
|-------|-------------------------------------|----------|-----------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|---------|-----------|
| 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | 192.168.1.16 | 192.168.1.31 | Any | Any | Any | Any | | Down |
| 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | 202.211.100.11 | 192.168.1.100 | 192.168.1.100 | Any | Any | Any | Any | UP | Down |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |

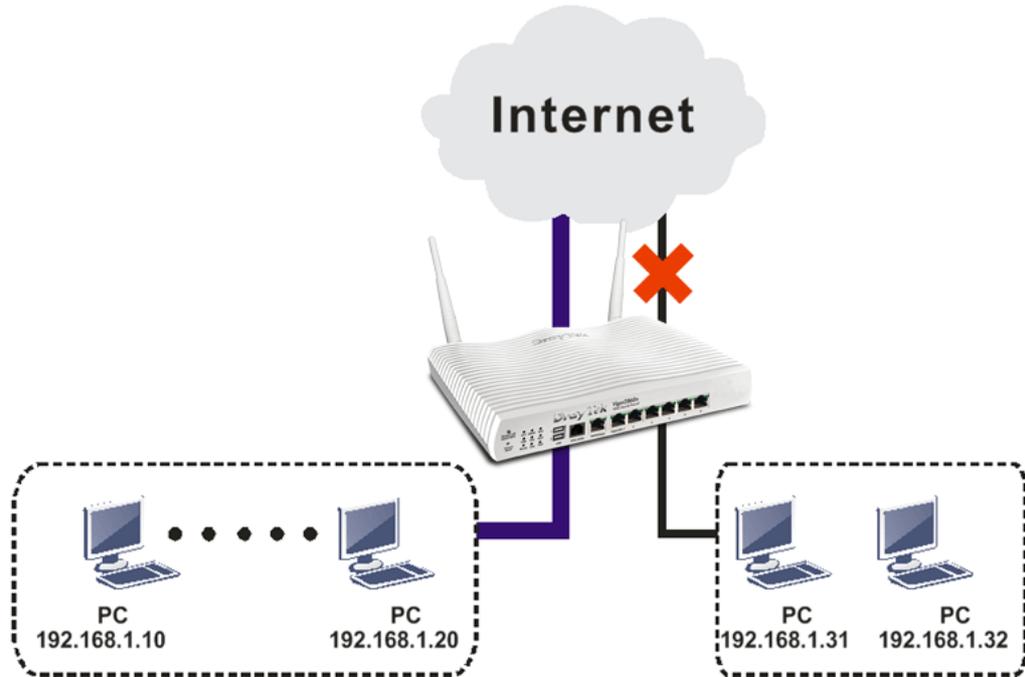
<< 1-10 | 11-20 | 21-30 | 31-40 | 41-50 >>

Next >>

- Now, you bind some specific computers to some WAN IP alias for outgoing traffic.

4.11 How to Configure Certain Computers Accessing to Internet

We can specify certain computers (e.g., 192.168.1.10 ~ 192.168.1.20) accessing to Internet through Vigor router. Others (e.g., 192.168.1.31 and 192.168.1.32) outside the range can get the source from LAN only.



The way we can use is to set two rules under **Firewall**. For **Rule 1** of **Set 2** under **Firewall>>Filter Setup** is used as the default setting, we has to create a new rule starting from Filter Rule 2 of Set 2.

1. Access into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Open **Firewall>>Filter Setup**. Click the **Set 2** link and choose the **Filter Rule 2** button.

Firewall >> Filter Setup

| Filter Setup | | Set to Factory Default | |
|--------------|---------------------|------------------------|----------|
| Set | Comments | Set | Comments |
| 1. | Default Call Filter | 7. | |
| 2. | Default Data Filter | 8. | |
| 3. | | 9. | |
| 4. | | 10. | |
| 5. | | 11. | |
| 6. | | 12. | |

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set

Filter Set 2

Comments : Default Data Filter

| Filter Rule | Active | Comments | Move Up | Move Down |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|---------|-----------|
| 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | xNetBios -> DNS | UP | Down |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | UP | Down |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | UP | Down |

3. Check the box of **Check to enable the Filter Rule**. Type the comments (e.g., **block_all**). Choose **Block If No Further Match** for the **Filter** setting. Then, click **OK**.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

Filter Set 2 Rule 2

Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments:

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup: , , ,

Clear sessions when schedule ON: Enable

Direction:

Source IP:

Destination IP:

Service Type:

Fragments:

Application

Filter:

Branch to Other Filter Set:

Sessions Control:

Syslog:

Note: In default, the router will check the packets starting with Set 2, Filter Rule 2 to Filter Rule 7. If **Block If No Further Match** for is selected for **Filter**, the firewall of the router would check the packets with the rules starting from Rule 3 to Rule 7. The packets not matching with the rules will be processed according to Rule 2.

4. Next, set another rule. Just open **Firewall>>Filter Setup**. Click the **Set 2** link and choose the **Filter Rule 3** button.
5. Check the box of **Check to enable the Filter Rule**. Type the comments (e.g., **open_ip**). Click the **Edit** button for **Source IP**.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

Filter Set 2 Rule 3

Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments:

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup: , , ,

Clear sessions when schedule ON: Enable

Direction:

Source IP:

Destination IP:

Service Type:

Fragments:

Application

Filter:

Branch to Other Filter Set:

Syslog:

- A dialog box will be popped up. Choose **Range Address** as **Address Type** by using the drop down list. Type 192.168.1.10 in the field of **Start IP**, and type 192.168.1.20 in the field of **End IP**. Then, click **OK** to save the settings. The computers within the range can access into the Internet.

IP Address Edit

| | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| Address Type | Range Address |
| Start IP Address | 192.168.1.10 |
| End IP Address | 192.168.1.20 |
| Subnet Mask | 0.0.0.0 |
| Invert Selection | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| IP Group | None |
| or IP Object | None |
| or IP Object | None |
| or IP Object | None |
| IPv6 Group | None |
| or IPv6 Object | None |
| or IPv6 Object | None |
| or IPv6 Object | None |

OK Close

- Now, check the content of **Source IP** is correct or not. The action for **Filter** shall be set with **Pass Immediately**. Then, click **OK** to save the settings.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

Filter Set 2 Rule 3

Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments: open_ip

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup: , , ,

Clear sessions when schedule ON: Enable

Direction: LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN

Source IP: 192.168.1.10~192.168.1.20 Edit

Destination IP: Any Edit

Service Type: Any Edit

Fragments: Don't Care

Application

Filter: **Action/Profile** Pass Immediately Syslog

Branch to Other Filter Set: None

8. Both filter rules have been created. Click **OK**.

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set

Filter Set 2

Comments :

| Filter Rule | Active | Comments | Move Up | Move Down |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------|-------------|
| <input type="text" value="1"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | xNetBios -> DNS | | <u>Down</u> |
| <input type="text" value="2"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | block_all | <u>UP</u> | <u>Down</u> |
| <input type="text" value="3"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | open_ip | <u>UP</u> | <u>Down</u> |
| <input type="text" value="4"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <u>UP</u> | <u>Down</u> |
| <input type="text" value="5"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <u>UP</u> | <u>Down</u> |
| <input type="text" value="6"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <u>UP</u> | <u>Down</u> |
| <input type="text" value="7"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <u>UP</u> | |

Next Filter Set 

9. Now, all the settings are configured well. Only the computers with the IP addresses within 192.168.1.10 ~ 192.168.1.20 can access to Internet.

4.12 How to Block Facebook Service Accessed by the Users via Web Content Filter / URL Content Filter

There are two ways to block the facebook service, Web Content Filter and URL Content Filter.

Web Content Filter,

Benefits: Easily and quickly implement the category/website that you want to block.

Note: License is required.

URL Content Filter,

Benefits: Free, flexible for customize webpage.

Note: Manual setting (e.g., one keyword for one website.)

I. Via Web Content Filter

1. Make sure the Web Content Filter (powered by Commtouch) license is valid.

DrayTek Vigor2860 Series

CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile

Web-Filter License Activate
[Status: CommTouch] [Start Date: 2012-12-31 Expire Date: 2013-01-08]

Setup Query Server: auto-selected Find more

Setup Test Server: auto-selected Find more

Web Content Filter Profile Table: Set to Factory Default

| Profile | Name | Profile | Name |
|---------|---------|---------|------|
| 1. | Default | 5. | |
| 2. | | 6. | |
| 3. | | 7. | |
| 4. | | 8. | |

Administration Message (Max 255 characters) Cache: L1 + L2 Cache

```
<body><center><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL% <br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% Web Content Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

Legend:
%SIP% - Source IP , %DIP% - Destination IP , %URL% - URL

How to register/activate Web Content Filter (WCF) license? Please visit for getting more information:

***How to Register AI/AV/AS/WCF Service (Service Activation Wizard)**

(<http://www.draytek.com/user/SupportFAQDetail.php?ID=1955>)

***How to Activate Anti-Virus/Anti-Intrusion/Anti-Spam Service**

(<http://www.draytek.com/user/SupportFAQDetail.php?ID=286>)

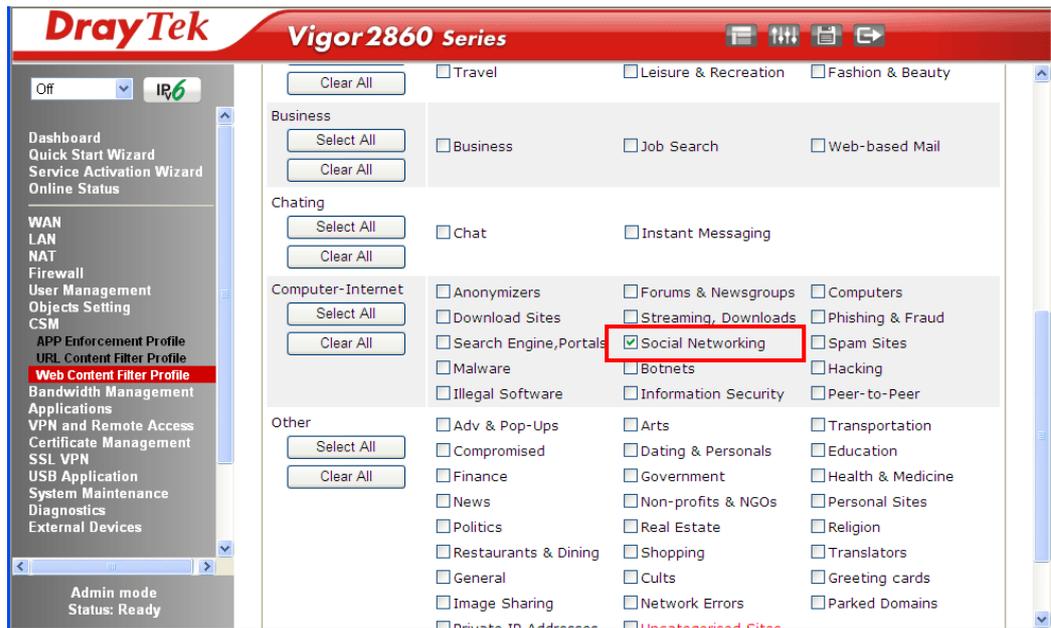
How to use the Web Content Filter (WCF)

(<http://www.draytek.com/user/SupportFAQDetail.php?ID=1953>)

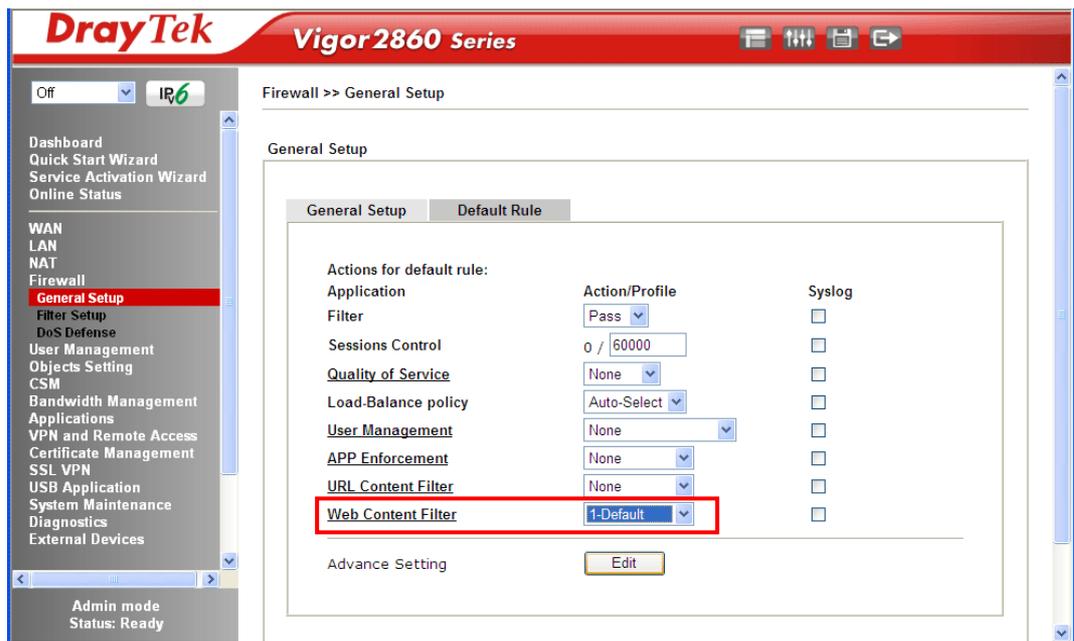
*** What the Web Content Filter (WCF) license benefits are,**

(<http://www.draytek.com/user/PdInfoDetail.php?Id=110>)

- Open CSM >> **Web Content Filter Profile** to create a WCF profile. Check **Social Networking** with Action, **Block**.



- Enable this profile in **Firewall>>General Setup>>Default Rule**.



- Next time when someone accesses facebook via this router, the web page would be blocked and the following message would be displayed instead.

The requested Web page
 from 192.168.2.114
 to www.facebook.com/
 that is categorized with [Social Networking]
 has been blocked by Web Content Filter.

Please contact your system administrator for further information.

[Powered by DrayTek]

II. Via URL Content Filter

A. Block the web page containing the word of “Facebook”

1. Open **Object Settings>>Keyword Object**. Click an index number to open the setting page.
2. In the field of **Contents**, please type *facebook*. Configure the settings as the following figure.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object Setup

Profile Index : 1

| | |
|----------|----------|
| Name | Facebook |
| Contents | facebook |

Limit of Contents: Max 3 Words and 63 Characters.
Each word should be separated by a single space.

You can replace a character with %HEX.
Example:
Contents: backdoo%72 virus keep%20out

Result:
1. backdoor
2. virus
3. keep out

OK Clear Cancel

3. Open **CSM>>URL Content Filter Profile**. Click an index number to open the setting page.
4. Configure the settings as the following figure.

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name: Facebook

Priority: Either : URL Access Control First Log: None

1.URL Access Control

Enable URL Access Control Prevent web access from IP address

Action: Block Group/Object Selections: Facebook Edit

2.Web Feature

Enable Restrict Web Feature

Action: Pass Cookie Proxy Upload File Extension Profile: None

OK Clear Cancel

5. When you finished the above steps, click **OK**. Then, open **Firewall>>General Setup**.

- Click the **Default Rule** tab. Choose the profile just configured from the drop down list in the field of **URL Content Filter**. Now, users cannot open any web page with the word “facebook” inside.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

General Setup Default Rule

| Actions for default rule: | Action/Profile | Syslog |
|---------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| Application | Pass | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Filter | 0 / 60000 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Sessions Control | None | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Quality of Service | Auto-Select | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Load-Balance policy | None | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| User Management | None | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| APP Enforcement | None | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| URL Content Filter | 1-Facebook | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Web Content Filter | None | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Advance Setting Edit

B. Disallow users to play games on Facebook

- Open **Object Settings>>Keyword Object**. Click an index number to open the setting page.
- In the field of **Contents**, please type *apps.facebook*. Configure the settings as the following figure.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object Setup

Profile Index : 2

| | |
|----------|---------------|
| Name | facebook-apps |
| Contents | apps.facebook |

Limit of Contents: Max 3 Words and 63 Characters.
Each word should be separated by a single space.

You can replace a character with %HEX.
Example:
Contents: backdoo%72 virus keep%20out

Result:
1. backdoor
2. virus
3. keep out

OK Clear Cancel

- Open **CSM>>URL Content Filter Profile**. Click an index number to open the setting page.
- Configure the settings as the following figure.

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

Profile Index: 2

Profile Name:

Priority: Log:

1.URL Access Control

Enable URL Access Control Prevent web access from IP address

Action: Group/Object Selections:

2.Web Feature

Enable Restrict Web Feature

Action: Cookie Proxy Upload File Extension Profile:

- When you finished the above steps, please open **Firewall>>General Setup**.
- Click the **Default Rule** tab. Choose the profile just configured from the drop down list in the field of URL Content Filter. Now, users cannot open any web page with the word “facebook” inside.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

General Setup Default Rule

| Actions for default rule: | Action/Profile | Syslog |
|---------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Application | <input type="text" value="Pass"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Filter | <input type="text" value="Pass"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Sessions Control | <input type="text" value="0 / 60000"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <u>Quality of Service</u> | <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Load-Balance policy | <input type="text" value="Auto-Select"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <u>User Management</u> | <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <u>APP Enforcement</u> | <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <u>URL Content Filter</u> | <input type="text" value="2-face.apps"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <u>Web Content Filter</u> | <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Advance Setting

4.13 How to use AP Management function (in Vigor2860) to check AP status and deploy WLAN profile

The administrator can manage the access points linked to Vigor2860.

1. Open **External Devices>>Access Point Devices**. Vigor2860 will detect the AP connecting to the router automatically and display as below:

External Device >> Access Point Devices

| Status | | WLAN Profile | | | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|------|-----------|---------|-------------------------------|
| Clear Refresh | | | | | | | | |
| Index | Device Name | IP Address | SSID | Encryption | Ch. | WL Client | Version | Password |
| 1 | AP800_00507F6EE490 | 192.168.1.10 | DrayTek-LAN-A | WPA+WPA2/PSK | ch11 | 0/64 | 1.0.5 | Password <input type="text"/> |

Note:

Green : Online Red : Offline Grey : Hidden SSID

Maximum support 20 APs.

In this case, a device named with AP800_00507F6EE4980 has been detected by Vigor router.

2. Click the **WLAN Profile** tab to get the following page. Check the box of the default profile to make the **Edit** button being available. Then, click the **Edit** button.

External Device >> Access Point Devices

| Status | | WLAN Profile | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|------------|----------|--------------|
| Set to Factory Default | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Profile Name | Main SSID | Security | Multi-SSID | WLAN ACL | Rate Control |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Default | DrayTek-LAN-A | WPA+WPA2/PSK | Enable | None | None |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |

3. When the following configuration page appears, make the changes you want and check **Apply to All APs**. Then, click **Next** to access into the next page.

External Device >> Access Point Devices

WLAN Profile Edit

| Device Settings | |
|-----------------|---|
| Profile Name | Default <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Apply to All APs |
| Administrator | admin |
| Password | ***** |
| 2nd Subnet | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| Operation Mode | AP |

| 2.4G WLAN General Settings | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 2.4G Mode | Mixed(11b+11g+11n) |
| 2.4G Channel | 2462MHz (Channel 11) |
| WMM | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| Tx Power | 100% |

| 5G WLAN General Settings | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 5G Mode | Mixed (11a+11n) |

Note: Apply to All APs can automatically apply the settings on **Default** profile to all of the access points registered to Vigor2860 later. Hence, it is not necessary for you to manually apply wireless profiles for APs respectively. Such feature will be convenient for people who want to *quickly deploy* multiple Vigor APs in a large exhibition to reach the goal of “plug and play” and “zero-configuration”.

- The following page allows you to modify related settings for 2.4G SSID of managed AP. Make the changes you want for 2.4G SSID. Click **Next** for next page.

External Device >> Access Point Devices

| SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 |
|--|--|--|--|
| 2.4G SSID | | | |
| Active | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable | | |
| SSID | DrayTek-LAN-A | LAN-A | <input type="checkbox"/> Hide SSID |
| VLAN | 0 (0:untag) | | |
| Isolate | <input type="checkbox"/> From Member | | |
| Security Settings | | | |
| Encryption | WPA+WPA2/PSK | | |
| | Set up RADIUS Server if 802.1X is enabled. | | |
| | WPA | | |
| | WPA Algorithms | <input type="radio"/> TKIP <input type="radio"/> AES <input checked="" type="radio"/> TKIP/AES | |
| | Pass Phrase | ***** | |
| | Key Renewal Interval | 3600 | Seconds |
| PMK Cache Period | 10 | Minutes | |
| Pre-Authentication | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | |
| WEP | | | |
| Setup WEP Key if WEP is enabled. | | | |
| 802.1X WEP <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | | |
| Access Control | | | |
| Mode | None | | |
| List | | | |
| | Client's MAC Address : [] : [] : [] : [] : [] : [] | | |
| | <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | | |
| | | | |
| Bandwidth Limit | | | |
| Status | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | Auto Adjustment <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| Upload | 0 | Kbps | Download 0 Kbps |

- The following page is offered for you to modify related settings for 5G SSID of managed AP. Continue to make any changes you want. After finished all of the changes, simply click **Finish**.

External Device >> Access Point Devices

| 5G SSID1 | 5G SSID2 | 5G SSID3 | 5G SSID4 |
|--|--|--|--|
| 5G SSID | | | |
| Active | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable | | |
| SSID | DrayTek-5G | LAN-A | <input type="checkbox"/> Hide SSID |
| VLAN | 0 (0:untag) | | |
| Isolate | <input type="checkbox"/> From Member | | |
| Security Settings | | | |
| Encryption | Disable | | |
| | Set up RADIUS Server if 802.1X is enabled. | | |
| | WPA | | |
| | WPA Algorithms | <input type="radio"/> TKIP <input type="radio"/> AES <input checked="" type="radio"/> TKIP/AES | |
| | Pass Phrase | <input type="text"/> | |
| | Key Renewal Interval | 3600 | Seconds |
| PMK Cache Period | 10 | Minutes | |
| Pre-Authentication | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | |
| WEP | | | |
| Setup WEP Key if WEP is enabled. | | | |
| 802.1X WEP <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | | |
| Access Control | | | |
| Mode | None | | |
| List | <input type="text"/> | | |
| | Client's MAC Address : <input type="text"/> | | |
| | <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | | |
| | | | |
| Bandwidth Limit | | | |
| Status | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | Auto Adjustment <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| Upload | 0 | Kbps | Download 0 Kbps |

- Now, the AP (represented with *AP800_00507F6EE4980*) detected by Vigor router will be applied with the settings modified by Vigor router.

4.14 CVM Application - How to manage the CPE (router) through Vigor2860 series?

To manage CPEs through Vigor2860 series, you have to set URL on CPE first and set username and password for Vigor2860 series. For this section, we use Vigor2850 series as the example. All the CPE configuration will be done through Vigor2850 series.

4.14.1 Configure CVM Settings on Vigor2860 series

1. Access into the web user interface of Vigor2860 series.
2. Open **Central VPN Management>>General Setup**.



3. In the following page, check the boxes for CVM Port and CVM SSL Port to enable the port setting. Type the values for **CVM Port**, **CVM SSL Port**, **Username**, and **Password** respectively. Remember the values configured in this page.

CVM >> General Setup

| General Settings | IPsec VPN Settings |
|--|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CVM Port: | <input type="text" value="8000"/> |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CVM SSL Port: | <input type="text" value="8443"/> |
| Copy the following URL to paste onto Remote devices' ACS Server URL field "http://172.16.3.130:8000/ACSServer/service/ACSServlet" "https://172.16.3.130:8443/ACSServer/service/ACSServlet" | |
| Username: | <input type="text" value="acs"/> |
| Password: | <input type="password" value="*****"/> |
| Polling Interval: | <input type="text" value="600"/> Seconds |
| WAN IP for Remote Connection: | <input type="text" value="WAN1"/> / <input type="text" value="172.16.3.130"/> |

Note:

To enable the CVM feature, one of the **Port MUST be Enabled !**

OK

4. Click **OK** to save the settings.

4.14.2 Configure Settings on CPE

1. In the end of the CPE, access into the web user interface of the CPE (e.g., Vigor2850 series). Open a web browser (for example, **IE**, **Mozilla Firefox** or **Netscape**) and type **http://192.168.1.1**.
2. Open **System Maintenance >> TR-069**.



3. In the field of **ACS Server**, type the URL (IP address with port number) of Vigor2860 series and type the same Username and Password defined on the page of **Central VPN Management>>General Setup** in Vigor2860 series. Then, click **Enable** for CPE Client and then click **OK** to save the settings.

System Maintenance >> TR-069 Setting

ACS and CPE Settings

| | |
|---|--|
| ACS Server On <input type="button" value="Internet"/> | |
| ACS Server | |
| URL | <input type="text" value="http://172.17.1.182:9000"/> |
| Username | <input type="text" value="acs"/> |
| Password | <input type="password" value="*****"/> |
| CPE Client | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable | |
| URL | <input type="text" value="http://172.17.1.208:8069/cwm/CRN.html"/> |
| Port | <input type="text" value="8069"/> |
| Username | <input type="text" value="vigor"/> |
| Password | <input type="password" value="*****"/> |

Periodic Inform Settings

| | |
|---|---|
| <input type="radio"/> Disable | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable | |
| Interval Time | <input type="text" value="60"/> second(s) |

4. Open **System Maintenance>>Management Setup**.

5. Check **Allow management from the Internet** to set management access control and click **OK**.

System Maintenance >> Management

IPv4 Management Setup

Router Name

Management Access Control

Allow management from the Internet

FTP Server

HTTP Server

HTTPS Server

Telnet Server

SSH Server

Disable PING from the Internet

Access List

| List | IP | Subnet Mask |
|------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |

IPv6 Management Setup

Management Port Setup

User Define Ports Default Ports

Telnet Port (Default: 23)

HTTP Port (Default: 80)

HTTPS Port (Default: 443)

FTP Port (Default: 21)

SSH Port (Default: 22)

OK

6. Open **WAN>>Internet Access**. Use the drop down list of **Access Mode** on WAN1 to select **MPoA (RFC1483/2684)**. Then, click **Details Page**.
7. Click **Specify an IP address**. Type correct WAN IP address, subnet mask and gateway IP address for your CPE. Then click **OK**.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA **MPoA (RFC1483/2684)** **IPv6**

Enable Disable

DSL Modem Settings

Multi-PVC channel

Encapsulation

VPI

VCI

Modulation

WAN Connection Detection

Mode

Ping IP

TTL:

RIP Protocol

Enable RIP

Bridge Mode

Enable Bridge Mode

WAN IP Network Settings

Obtain an IP address automatically

Router Name

Domain Name

* : Required for some ISPs

Specify an IP address

IP Address

Subnet Mask

Gateway IP Address

Default MAC Address

Specify a MAC Address

MAC Address:

DNS Server IP Address

Primary IP Address

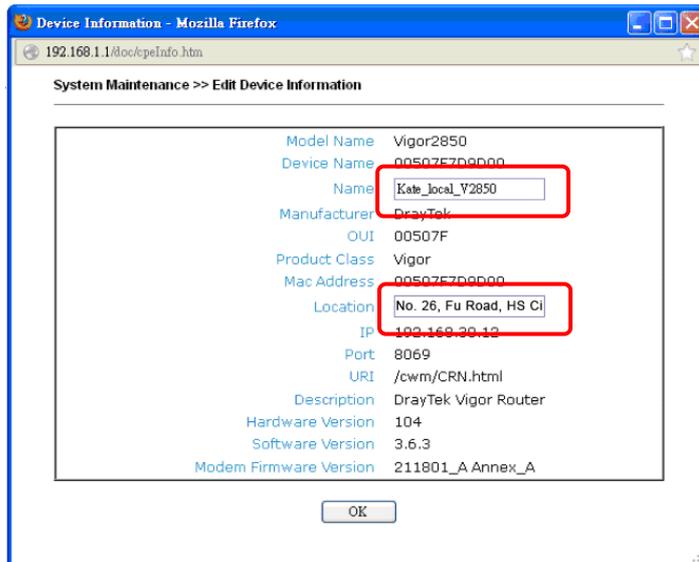
Secondary IP Address

OK Cancel

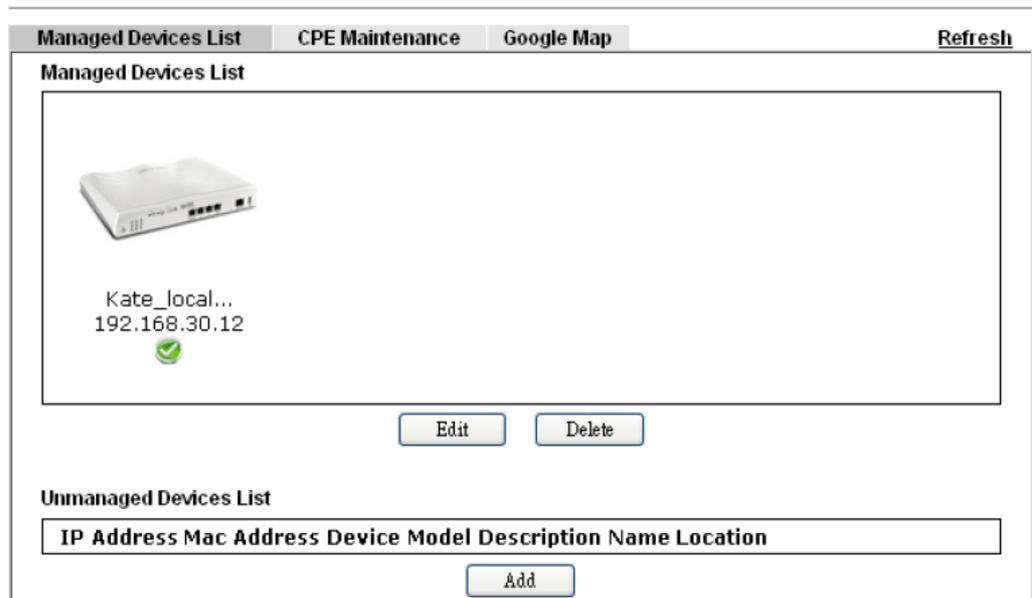
Note: Reboot the CPE device and re-log into Vigor2860 series. CPE which has registered to Vigor2860 series will be captured and displayed on the page of **Central VPN Management>>CPE Management**.

4.14.3 Check CPE Maintenance Page

1. Return to the web user interface of Vigor2860 series.
2. Open **Central VPN Management>>VPN Management**. Now there is one CPE displayed on the field of Unmanaged Devices List.
3. Choose the one (Vigor2850) from Unmanaged Devices List and click **Add**. The following dialog will be popped up. Type the name and the location of the router respectively. Click **OK** to save the configuration.



4. The selected CPE will be moved and displayed on Managed Devices List which means it is controlled / managed by Vigor2860 series from now on.



4.15 CVM Application - How to build the VPN between remote devices and Vigor2860 series?

When a remote device is managed by Vigor2860 series, it is easy to build VPN between these two devices.

1. Access into the web user interface of Vigor2860 series.
2. Open **Central VPN Management>>CPE Management**.

CVM >> VPN Management

VPN Management

The screenshot shows two device icons. The first device, labeled 'Kate_local... 192.168.30.12', has a green checkmark icon below it. The second device, labeled 'Kate_local... 192.168.30.13', has a red 'X' icon below it.

CPE VPN Connection List

| VPN | Type | Remote IP | Virtual Network | Tx Pkts | Tx Rate(Bps) | Rx Pkts | Rx Rate(Bps) | Up Time |
|-----|------|-----------|-----------------|---------|--------------|---------|--------------|---------|
| | | | | | | | | |

3. Click the device icon (marked with ) and click the **PPTP/IPsec** button.
4. Wait for a moment. If VPN is built successfully, related information will be displayed on **CPE VPN Connection List**.

CVM >> VPN Management

VPN Management

The screenshot shows two device icons. The first device, labeled 'Kate_local... 192.168.30.12', has a green checkmark icon below it. The second device, labeled 'Kate_local... 192.168.30.13', has a red 'X' icon below it.

CPE VPN Connection List

| VPN | Type | Remote IP | Virtual Network | Tx Pkts | Tx Rate(Bps) | Rx Pkts | Rx Rate(Bps) | Up Time |
|-------------------|-----------|---------------------------|-----------------|---------|--------------|---------|--------------|---------|
| 1 (cvm_7D9D00) | PPTP/MPPE | 192.168.30.12 via WAN2 | 192.168.50.1/24 | 805 | 3 | 1088 | 3 | 0:40:30 |

- A LAN to LAN profile for such VPN will be generated automatically. You can access into **VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN** of the remote device for viewing the detailed information.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

View: All Trunk

| Index | Name | Active | Status | Index | Name | Active | Status |
|-------|------------|-------------------------------------|--------|-------|------|--------------------------|--------|
| 1. | cvm_7D9D00 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | online | 17. | ??? | <input type="checkbox"/> | --- |



Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

| | |
|---|---|
| Profile Name <input type="text" value="cvm_7D9D00"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile VPN Dial-Out Through <input type="text" value="WAN1 First"/> Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay,.etc.) | Call Direction <input type="radio"/> Both <input type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input checked="" type="radio"/> Dial-in <input type="checkbox"/> Always on Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="0"/> second(s) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive PING to the IP <input type="text"/> |
|---|---|

3. Dial-In Settings

| | |
|---|---|
| Allowed Dial-In Type <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/> | Username <input type="text" value="7D9D00"/> Password(Max 11 char) <input type="password" value="●●●●●●"/> VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off IKE Authentication Method |
|---|---|

Note: The profile name is created automatically by the system. Do not modify any value in such page to avoid VPN error.

4.16 CVM Application - How to upgrade CPE firmware through Vigor2860 series?

Download the newest firmware from your Draytek website to USB Storage Disk for the device (e.g., Vigor2850) managed by Vigor2860 series.

Vigor2850, as an example, is chosen for Vigor2860 to perform the CPE firmware upgrade remotely in this case.

1. Plug in USB storage disk onto Vigor2860 series via USB interface. Make sure the USB disk has been installed correctly, otherwise, the firmware upgrade will not be successful.
2. Access into web user interface of Vigor2860 series. Open Central **VPN Management**>>**CPE Management** and click the **CPE Maintenance** tab.

CVM >> CPE Management >> CPE Maintenance

The screenshot shows the 'CPE Maintenance' tab in the web interface. At the top, there are navigation tabs: 'Managed Devices List', 'CPE Maintenance', and 'Google Map', along with a 'Refresh' button. Below this is a 'Maintenance Profile List' table with columns for Index, Profile Name, Device Name, Action, File/Path, and Schedule. The table contains 8 rows, each with a 'Now' button in the Schedule column. Below the table, there is a green status message: 'USB Disk Status: USB Disk Connected' and a link for 'File Explorer'. A note at the bottom states: 'Note: If you want to use CPE Maintenance feature, you'll have to plug in a USB Disk!'.

| Index | Profile Name | Device Name | Action | File/Path | Schedule |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------|--------|-----------|----------|
| 1. | | | | | 0 0 Now |
| 2. | | | | | 0 0 Now |
| 3. | | | | | 0 0 Now |
| 4. | | | | | 0 0 Now |
| 5. | | | | | 0 0 Now |
| 6. | | | | | 0 0 Now |
| 7. | | | | | 0 0 Now |
| 8. | | | | | 0 0 Now |

USB Disk Status: USB Disk Connected
[File Explorer](#)

Note: If you want to use CPE Maintenance feature, you'll have to plug in a USB Disk!

3. Click any index number link, e.g., Index 1.

CVM >> CPE Management >> CPE Maintenance

This is a partial screenshot of the 'CPE Maintenance' web interface, showing the top part of the 'Maintenance Profile List' table. The table has columns for Index, Profile Name, and Device Name. The first three rows are visible, with index links 1, 2, and 3.

| Index | Profile Name | Device Name |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. | | |
| 2. | | |
| 3. | | |

- The Maintenance profile dialog appears.

Central VPN Management >> CPE Management >> Maintenance Profile

Profile Name:

Enable

Device Name:

Action Type:

File/Path:

Index in **Schedule**:

Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

In the field of Profile Name, type a name for such maintenance profile; check Enable; and choose the one you want to perform firmware upgrade from Device Name drop down list. From the Action Type, choose Firmware Upgrade. Type the file/path of the newest firmware or click Select to locate it. Specify the Schedule profile. At last, click **OK**.

- Now, a new maintenance profile has been created.

CVM >> CPE Management >> CPE Maintenance

| Managed Devices List | | CPE Maintenance | | Google Map | | Refresh | |
|---------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| Maintenance Profile List | | | | | | | Set to Factory Default |
| Index | Profile Name | Device Name | Action | File/Path | Schedule | | |
| 1. | V2850 | 00507F7D9D00 | Firmware Upgrade | | <input type="text" value="1"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="button" value="Now"/> |
| 2. | | | | | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="button" value="Now"/> |
| 3. | | | | | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="button" value="Now"/> |
| 4. | | | | | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="button" value="Now"/> |
| 5. | | | | | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="button" value="Now"/> |
| 6. | | | | | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="button" value="Now"/> |
| 7. | | | | | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="button" value="Now"/> |
| 8. | | | | | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="button" value="Now"/> |

USB Disk Status: USB Disk Connected
[File Explorer](#)

Note: If you want to use CPE Maintenance feature, you'll have to plug in a USB Disk!

- Click **Now** to perform the firmware upgrade immediately for Vigor2850.
- Wait for several minutes for firmware upgrade.

- Then check the device information for the managed device if the firmware upgrade is successful or not. Click **Managed Devices List**.

Managed Devices List CPE Maintenance Google Map Refresh

Managed Devices List



Kate_local...
192.168.30.12



Edit Delete

Unmanaged Devices List

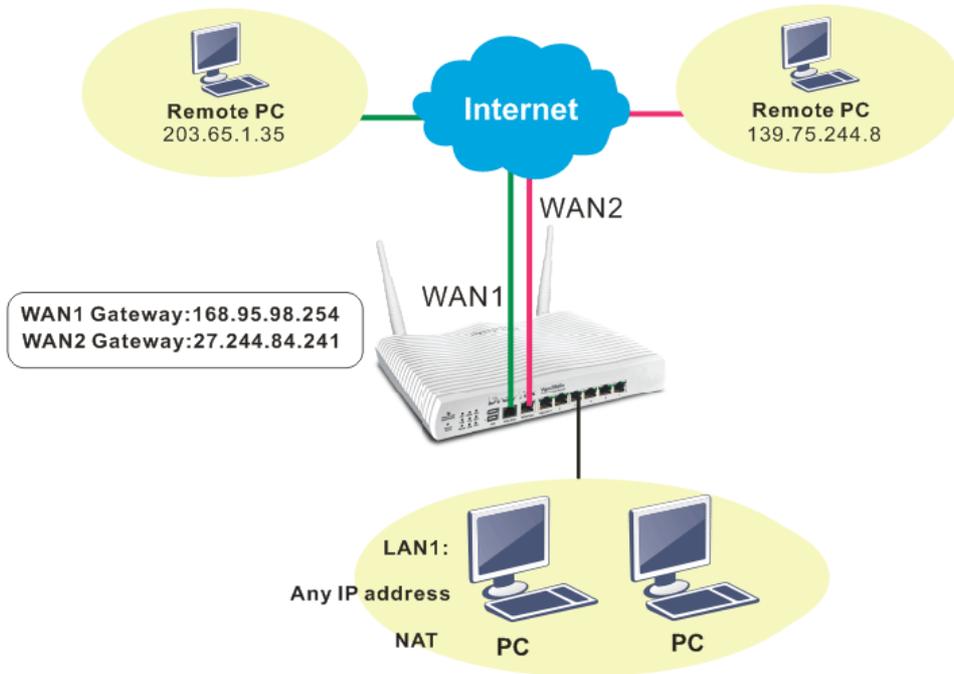
| IP Address | Mac Address | Device Model | Description | Name | Location |
|------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|------|----------|
|------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|------|----------|

Add

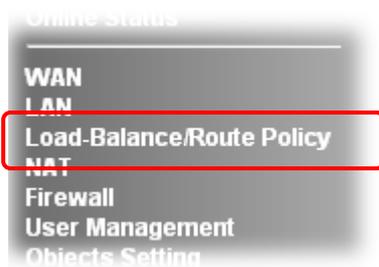
- Click the icon of Vigor2850 and click **Edit** and view the software version. Another way to check if the firmware upgrade is completed or not, simply open **Central VPN Management>>Log & Alert**.

4.17 How to setup Load Balance for Packets?

The following figure shows a simple application of load balance. WAN1 and WAN2 can be used to access into Internet. The PC in LAN1 can send the data to the remote PC through the specified WAN1.



1. Access into web user interface of Vigor2860 series. Open **Load-Balance/Route Policy**.



2. From the following web page, simply click index number #1.

Load-Balance/Route Policy i

| Policy Route | | | | | | | | | | Set to Factory Default | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|----------|-----------|-------------------|--------------|------------|---------------|-------------|-----------------|------------------------|---------|-----------|
| Index | Enable | Protocol | Interface | Interface Address | Src IP Start | Src IP End | Dest IP Start | Dest IP End | Dest Port Start | Dest Port End | Move Up | Move Down |
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | | Down |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |

<< 1-10 | 11-20 | 21-30 | 31-40 | 41-50 >> Next >>

OK

- In the following page, check **Enable**; set Dest IP Start and Dest IP End with 203.65.1.35 and 203.65.1.35; choose WAN1 as the **Interface**; click **default gateway**; do not check **Auto Failover To The Other WAN**.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1

Enable criteria

Protocol: any

Source IP: any
 Src IP Start ~ Src IP End

Destination IP: Dest IP Start ~ Dest IP End
 any
 Dest Port Start ~ Dest Port End

Destination Port: any

send to if criteria matched

Interface: WAN1

Interface Address: 203.69.175.31

Gateway IP: default gateway
 specific gateway

more options

Auto Failover To The Other WAN

Packet Forwarding to WAN via: force NAT
 force Routing

- After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Policy Route | [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Enable | Protocol | Interface | Interface Address | Src IP Start | Src IP End | Dest IP Start | Dest IP End | Dest Port Start | Dest Port End | Move Up | Move Down |
|-------|-------------------------------------|----------|-----------|-------------------|--------------|------------|---------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | 203.69.175.31 | Any | Any | 203.65.1.35 | 203.65.1.35 | Any | Any | | Down |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | any | WAN1 | --- | | | | | | | UP | Down |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >>
 [Next](#) >>

Now, the packets sent to the remote PC (IP address: 203.65.1.35) will be forcefully to pass through WAN1.

4.18 How to authenticate clients via User Management

Before using the function of User Management, please make sure **User-Based** has been selected as the **Mode** in the **User Management>>General Setup** page.

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

Mode: (dropdown menu with options: User-Based, Rule-Based, User-Based)

Web Authentication: (dropdown menu)

Notice :

1. User Management will refer to active rules in Data Filter as whitelists and blacklists in user-based firewall mode.
2. Users match the above lists will not be required for authentication. The firewall rules policy will still valid.
3. Otherwise, authentication required for users not matched the above lists. The firewall rules designated in the user profile's policy will still valid.

Landing Page (Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

```
<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>
window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>
```

OK Clear Cancel

With **User Management** authentication function, before a valid username and password have been correctly supplied, a particular client will not be allowed to access Internet through the router. There are three ways for authentication: **Web**, **Telnet** and **Alert Tool**.

User Management >>User Profile

Profile Index 3

Enable this account

User Name:

Password:

Confirm Password:

Idle Timeout: min(s) 0:Unlimited

Max User Login: 0:Unlimited

Policy: (dropdown menu)

External Server Authentication: (dropdown menu)

Log: (dropdown menu)

Pop Browser Tracking Window:

Authentication: Web Alert Tool Telnet

Landing Page:

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup: , , ,

Enable Time Quota 0 min. min.

Enable Data Quota 0 MB MB

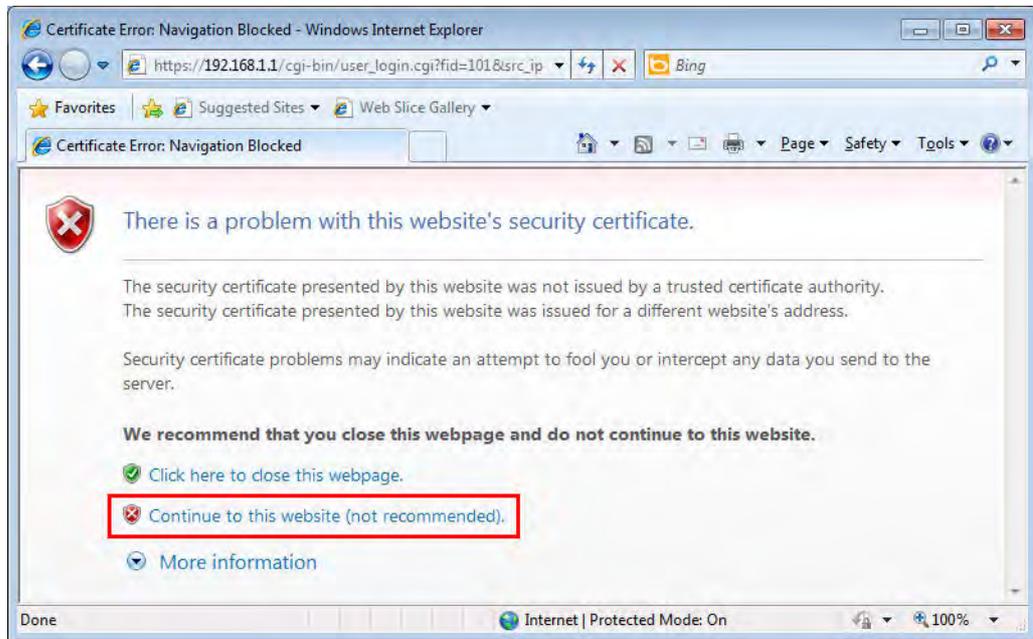
Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired

Enable Default Time Quota min. Default Data Quota MB

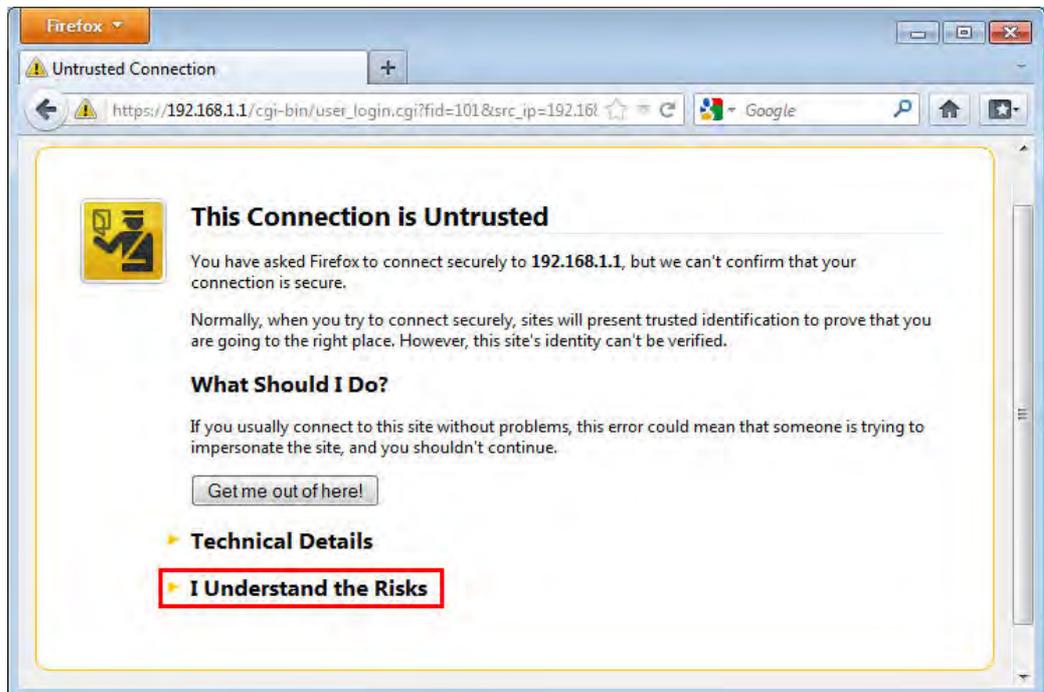
OK Refresh Clear Cancel

Authentication via Web

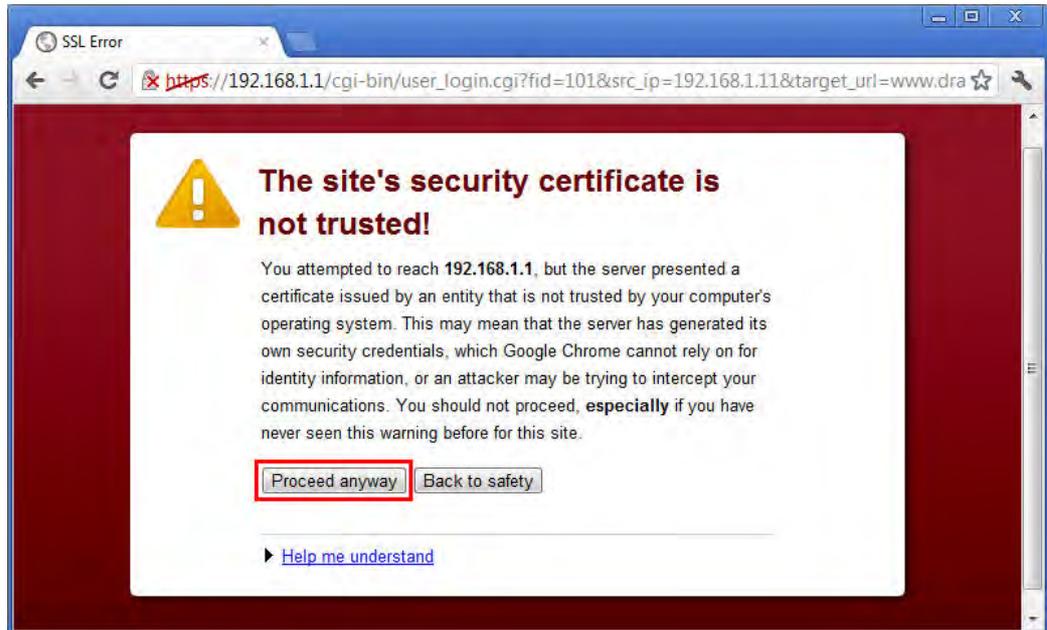
- If a LAN client who hasn't passed the authentication opens an external web site in his browser, he will be redirected to the router's Web authentication interface first. Then, the client is trying to access <http://www.draytek.com> and but brought to the Vigor router. Since this is an SSL connection, some web browsers will display warning messages.
 - With Microsoft Internet Explorer, you may get the following warning message. Please press **Continue to this website (not recommended)**.



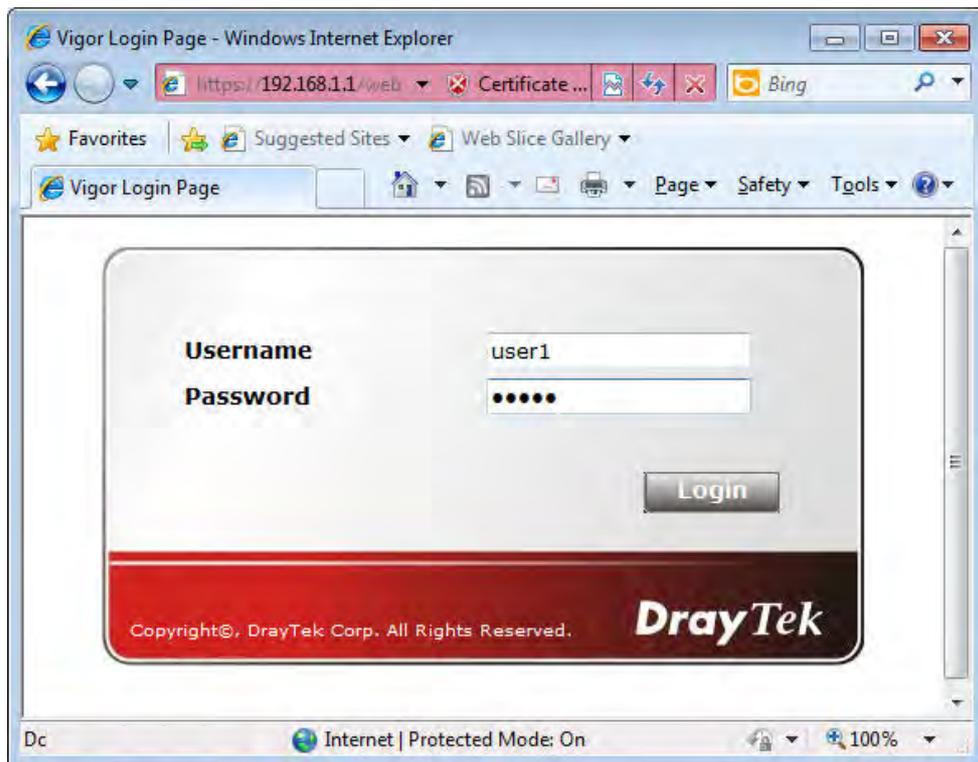
- With Mozilla Firefox, you may get the following warning message. Select **I Understand the Risks**.



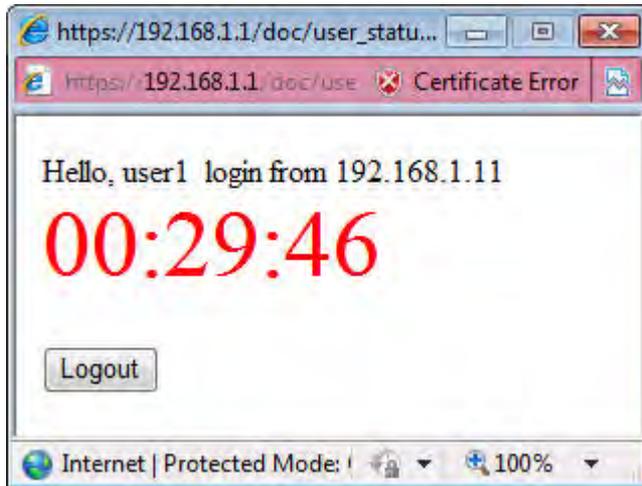
- With Chrome browser, you may get the following warning. Click **Proceed anyway**.



After that, the web authentication window will appear. Input the user name and the password for your account (defined in **User Management**) and click **Login**.

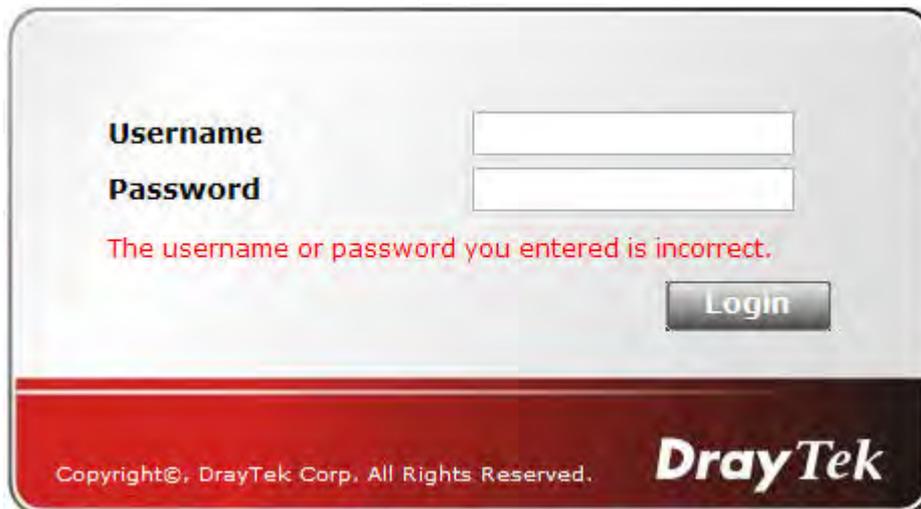


If the authentication is successful, the client will be redirected to the original web site that he tried to access. In this example, it is <http://www.draytek.com> . Furthermore, you will get a popped up window as the following. Then you can access the Internet.



Note, if you block the web browser to pop up any window, you will not see such window.

If the authentication is failed, you will get the error message, **The username or password you entered is incorrect.** Please login again.



- In above description, you access an external web site to trigger the authentication. You may also directly access the router's Web UI for authentication. Both HTTP and HTTPS are supported, for example `http://192.168.1.1` or `https://192.168.1.1`. Replace 192.168.1.1 with your router's real IP address, and add the port number if the default management port has been modified.

If the authentication is successful, you will get the **Welcome Message** that is set in the **User Management >> General Setup** page.

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

Mode:

Web Authentication:

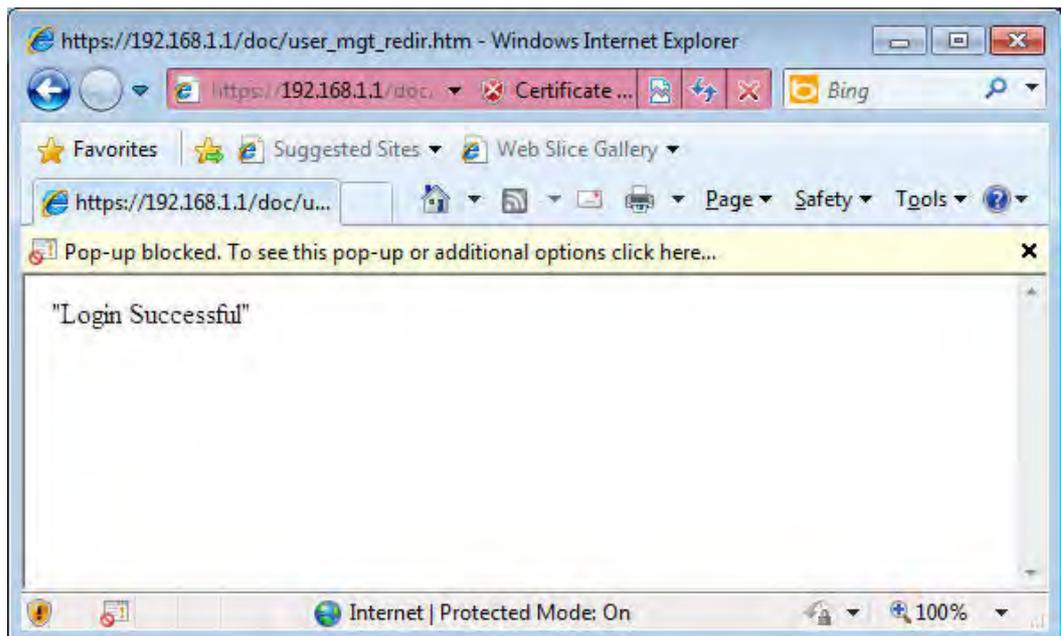
Notice :

1. User Management will refer to active rules in Data Filter as whitelists and blacklists in user-based firewall mode.
2. Users match the above lists will not be required for authentication. The firewall rules policy will still valid.
3. Otherwise, authentication required for users not matched the above lists. The firewall rules designated in the user profile's policy will still valid.

Landing Page (Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#)

```
<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>
window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>
```

With the default setup `<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>`, you will be redirected to `http://www.draytek.com`. You may change it if you want. For example, you will get the following welcome message if you enter **Login Successful** in the **Welcome Message** table.



Also you will get a **Tracking Window** if you don't block the pop-up window.

- Don't setup a user profile in **User Management** and a VPN Remote Dial-in user profile with the same Username. Otherwise, you may get unexpected result. It is because the VPN Remote Dial-in User profiles can be extended to the User profiles in User Management for authentication.

There are two different behaviors when a User Management account and a VPN profile share the same Username:

- If **SSL Tunnel** or **SSL Web Proxy** is enabled in the VPN profile, the user profile in User Management will always be invalid for Web authentication. For example, if you create a user profile in User Management with **chaochen/test** as username/password, while a VPN Remote Dial-in user profile with the same username "chaochen" but a different password "1234", you will always get error message **The username or password you entered is incorrect** when you use **chaochen/test** via Web to do authentication.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

Index No. 1

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| User account and Authentication <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account Idle Timeout: 300 second(s) | | Username: chaochen Password(Max 19 char): <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords(mOTP) PIN Code: <input type="text"/> Secret: <input type="text"/> |
| Allowed Dial-In Type <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy: None <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OpenVPN Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node Remote Client IP: <input type="text"/> or Peer ID: <input type="text"/> Netbios Naming Packet: <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block Multicast via VPN: <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay ..etc.) | | IKE Authentication Method <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key: <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) None |
| Subnet LAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Assign Static IP Address 0.0.0.0 | | IPsec Security Method <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH) High(ESP): <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES Local ID (optional): <input type="text"/> |

OK Clear Cancel

- If **SSL Tunnel** or **SSL Web Proxy** is disabled in the VPN profile, a User Management account and a remote dial-in VPN profile can use the same Username, even with different passwords. However, we recommend you to use different usernames for different user profiles in User Management and VPN profiles.

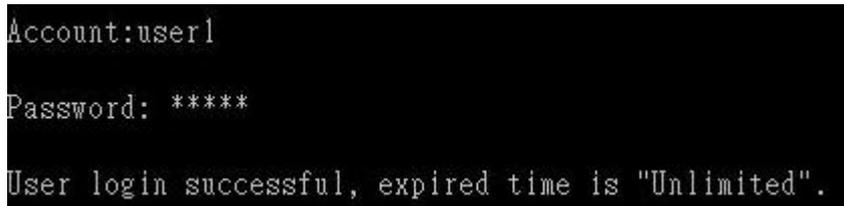
Authentication via Telnet

The LAN clients can also authenticate their accounts via telnet.

1. Telnet to the router's LAN IP address and input the account name for the authentication:



2. Type the password for authentication and press **Enter**. The message **User login successful** will be displayed with the expired time (if configured).



Note: Here **expired time** is “Unlimited” means the **Time Quota** function is not enabled for this account. After login, this account will not be expired until it is logout.

3. In the Web interface of router, the configuration page of **Time Quota** is shown as below.

User Management >>User Profile

Profile Index 3

| | |
|--|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account | |
| User Name | user1 |
| Password | ***** |
| Confirm Password | ***** |
| Idle Timeout | 10 min(s) 0:Unlimited |
| Max User Login | 1 0:Unlimited |
| Policy | Default |
| <small>The selection of items could be created as rules and which not set to active.</small> | |
| External Server Authentication | None |
| Log | None |
| Pop Browser Tracking Window | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Authentication | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet |
| Landing Page | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota | 0 min. + - 0 min. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Data Quota | 0 MB + - 0 MB |
| Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | Default Time Quota 0 min. Default Data Quota 0 MB |

OK Refresh Clear Cancel

- If the Time Quota is set with "0" minute, you will get the following message which means this account has no time quota.

```
Account:user1
Password: *****
User's time is up, or it has not enough time quota.
```

If the **Time Quota** is enabled and time is not 0 minute,

User Management >>User Profile

Profile Index 3

| | |
|---|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account | |
| User Name | user1 |
| Password | ***** |
| Confirm Password | ***** |
| Idle Timeout | 10 min(s) 0:Unlimited |
| Max User Login | 1 0:Unlimited |
| Policy | Default |
| | The selection of items could be created as rules and which not set to active. |
| External Server Authentication | None |
| Log | None |
| Pop Browser Tracking Window | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Authentication | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet |
| Landing Page | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota | 0 min. <input type="text" value="120"/> min. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Data Quota | 0 MB <input type="text" value="0"/> MB |
| Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable | Default Time Quota 0 min. Default Data Quota 0 MB |

OK Refresh Clear Cancel

You will get the following message. The expired time is shown after you login.

```
Account:user1
Password: *****
User login successful, expired time is "12-23 10:21:33".
```

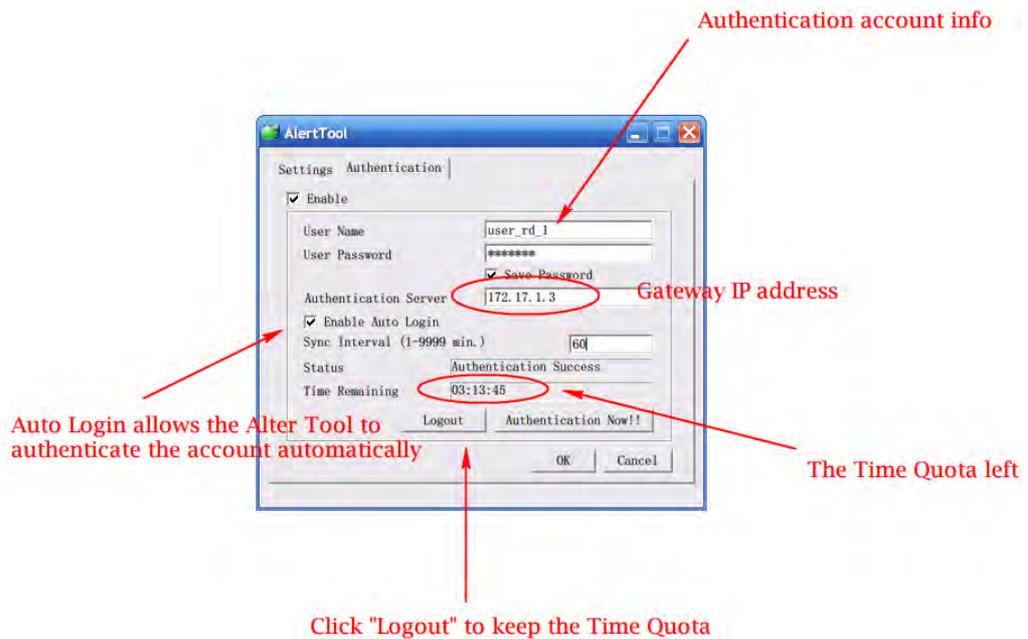
After you run out the available time, you can't use this account any more until the administrator manually adds additional time for you.

Authentication via VigorPro Alert Notice Tool

Authentication via Web or Telnet is convenient for users; however, it has some limitations. The most advantage with VigorPro Alert Notice Tool to operate the authentication is the ability to do **auto login**. If the timeout value set on the router for the user account has been reached, the router will stop the client computer from accessing the Internet until it does an authentication again. Authentication via VigorPro Alert Notice Tool allows user to setup the re-authentication interval so that the utility will send authentication requests periodically. This will keep the client hosts from having to manually authenticate again and again.

The configuration of the VigorPro Alert Notice Tool is as follows:

1. Click **Authenticate Now!!** to start the authentication immediately.



2. You may get the **VigorPro Alert Notice Tool** from the following link:
<http://www.draytek.com/user/SupportDLUtility.php>

Note:

- Any modification to the Firewall policy will break down the connections of all current users. They all have to authenticate again for Internet access.
- The administrator may check the current users from **User Online Status** page.

5

Trouble Shooting

This section will guide you to solve abnormal situations if you cannot access into the Internet after installing the router and finishing the web configuration. Please follow sections below to check your basic installation status stage by stage.

- Checking if the hardware status is OK or not.
- Checking if the network connection settings on your computer are OK or not.
- Pinging the router from your computer.
- Checking if the ISP settings are OK or not.
- Backing to factory default setting if necessary.

If all above stages are done and the router still cannot run normally, it is the time for you to contact your dealer for advanced help.

5.1 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not

Follow the steps below to verify the hardware status.

1. Check the power line and WLAN/LAN cable connections. Refer to “**1.3 Hardware Installation**” for details.
2. Turn on the router. Make sure the **ACT LED** blink once per second and the correspondent **LAN LED** is bright.



3. If not, it means that there is something wrong with the hardware status. Simply back to “**1.3 Hardware Installation**” to execute the hardware installation again. And then, try again.

5.2 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not

Sometimes the link failure occurs due to the wrong network connection settings. After trying the above section, if the link is still failed, please do the steps listed below to make sure the network connection settings is OK.

For Windows

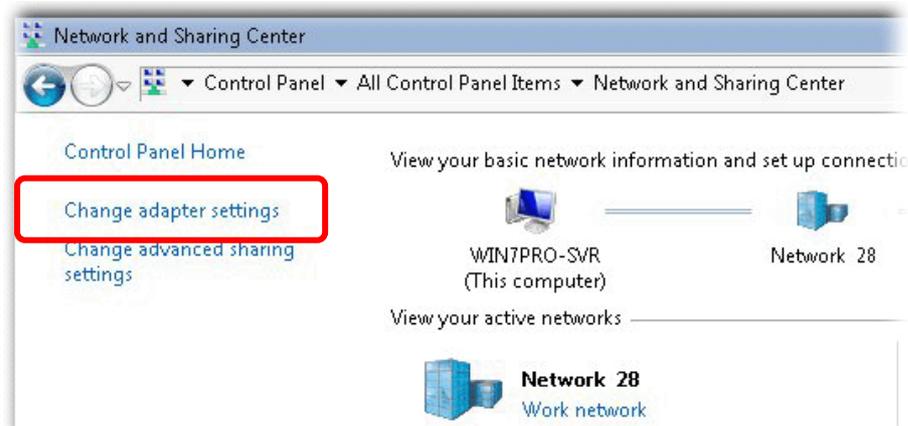


The example is based on Windows 7. As to the examples for other operation systems, please refer to the similar steps or find support notes in www.DrayTek.com.

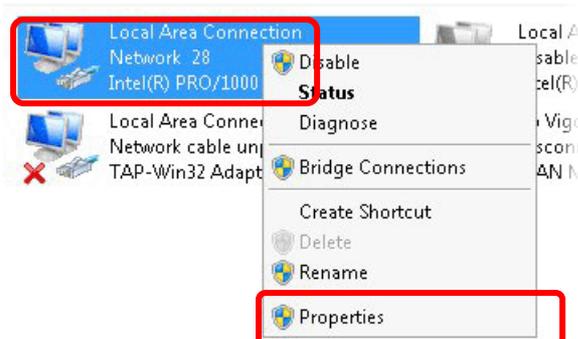
1. Open **All Programs>>Getting Started>>Control Panel**. Click **Network and Sharing Center**.



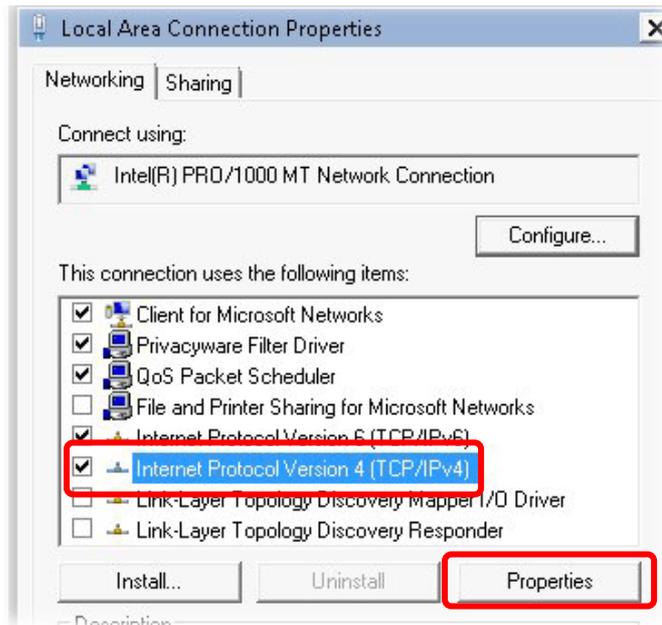
2. In the following window, click **Change adapter settings**.



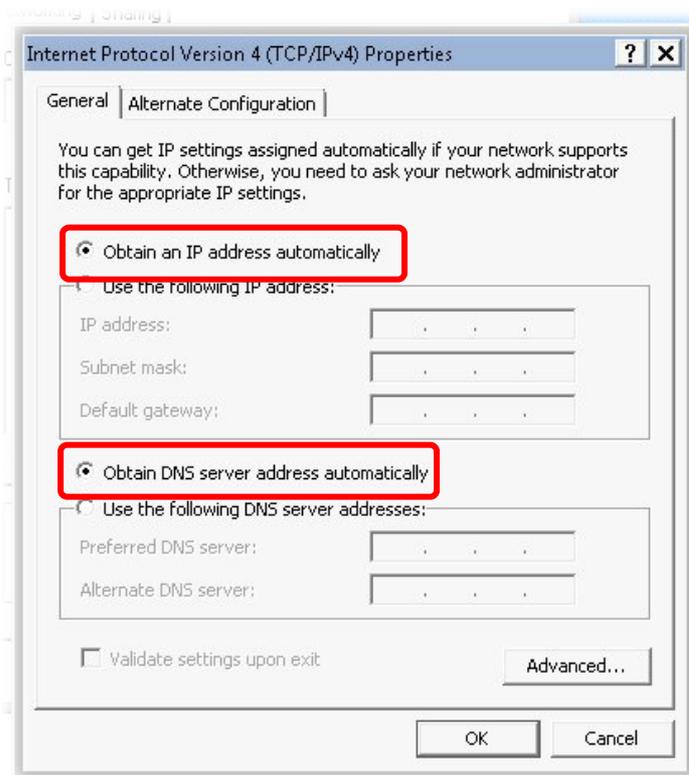
3. Icons of network connection will be shown on the window. Right-click on **Local Area Connection** and click on **Properties**.



4. Select **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IP)** and then click **Properties**.

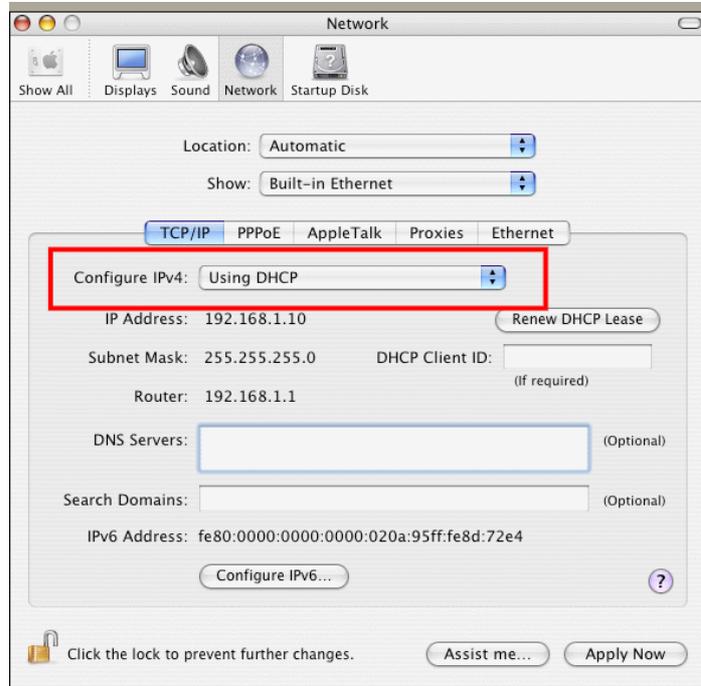


5. Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server address automatically**. Finally, click **OK**.



For Mac OS

1. Double click on the current used Mac OS on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Network**.
3. On the **Network** screen, select **Using DHCP** from the drop down list of Configure IPv4.



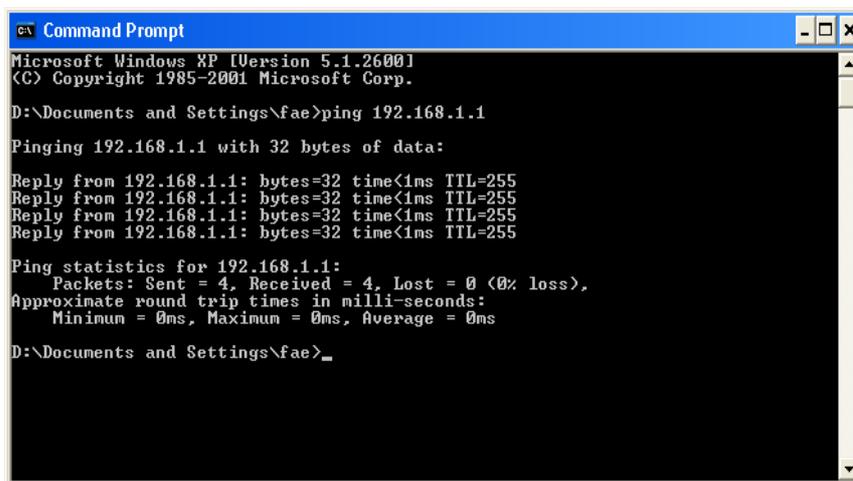
5.3 Pinging the Router from Your Computer

The default gateway IP address of the router is 192.168.1.1. For some reason, you might need to use “ping” command to check the link status of the router. **The most important thing is that the computer will receive a reply from 192.168.1.1.** If not, please check the IP address of your computer. We suggest you setting the network connection as **get IP automatically**. (Please refer to the section 5.2)

Please follow the steps below to ping the router correctly.

For Windows

1. Open the **Command Prompt** window (from **Start menu**> **Run**).
2. Type **command** (for Windows 95/98/ME) or **cmd** (for Windows NT/ 2000/XP/Vista/7). The DOS command dialog will appear.



```
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600]
(C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.

D:\Documents and Settings\fae>ping 192.168.1.1

Pinging 192.168.1.1 with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255

Ping statistics for 192.168.1.1:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

D:\Documents and Settings\fae>_
```

3. Type ping 192.168.1.1 and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of “**Reply from 192.168.1.1:bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255**” will appear.
4. If the line does not appear, please check the IP address setting of your computer.

For Mac OS (Terminal)

1. Double click on the current used MacOs on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Utilities**.
3. Double click **Terminal**. The Terminal window will appear.
4. Type **ping 192.168.1.1** and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of “**64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=xxxx ms**” will appear.

```

Terminal - bash - 80x24
Last login: Sat Jan  3 02:24:18 on ttys1
Welcome to Darwin!
Vigor10:~ draytek$ ping 192.168.1.1
PING 192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.755 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.697 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.716 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.731 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=255 time=0.72 ms
^C
--- 192.168.1.1 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.697/0.723/0.755 ms
Vigor10:~ draytek$

```

5.4 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not

If WAN connection cannot be up, check if the LEDs (according to the LED explanations listed on section 1.2) are correct or not. If the LEDs are off, please:

- Change the **Physical Type** from **Auto negotiation** to other values (e.g., 100M full duplex).
- Next, change the physical type of modem (e.g., DSL/FTTX(GPON)/Cable modem) offered by ISP with the same value configured in Vigor router. Check if the LEDs on Vigor router are on or not.
- If not, please install an additional switch for connecting both Vigor router and the modem offered by ISP. Then, check if the LEDs on Vigor router are on or not.
- If the problem of LEDs cannot be solved by the above measures, please contact with the nearest reseller, or send an e-mail to DrayTek FAE for technical support.
- Check if the settings offered by ISP are configured well or not.

When the LEDs are on and correct, yet the WAN connection still cannot be up, please:

- Open **WAN >> Internet Access** page and then check whether the ISP settings are set correctly. Click **Details Page** of WAN1-WAN4 to review the settings that you configured previously.

WAN >> Internet Access

Internet Access

| Index | Display Name | Physical Mode | Access Mode | |
|-------|--------------|---------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| WAN1 | | ADSL / VDSL2 | PPPoE / PPPoA | Details Page IPv6 |
| WAN2 | | Ethernet | Static or Dynamic IP | Details Page IPv6 |
| WAN3 | | USB | None | Details Page IPv6 |
| WAN4 | | USB | None | Details Page IPv6 |

Note : Only one WAN can support IPv6.

You can configure DHCP client options here.

5.5 Problems for 3G Network Connection

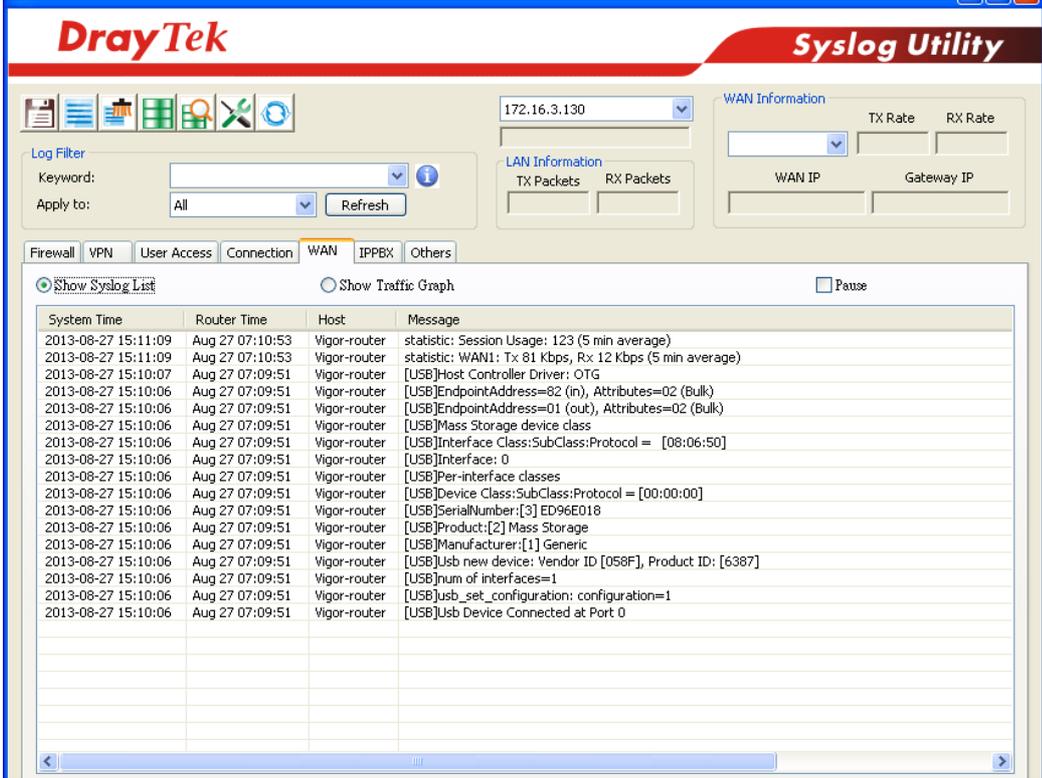
When you have trouble in using 3G network transmission, please check the following:

Check if USB LED lights on or off

You have to wait about 15 seconds after inserting 3G USB Modem into your Vigor2860. Later, the USB LED will light on which means the installation of USB Modem is successful. If the USB LED does not light on, please remove and reinsert the modem again. If it still fails, restart Vigor2860.

USB LED lights on but the network connection does not work

Check the PIN Code of SIM card is disabled or not. Please use the utility of 3G USB Modem to disable PIN code and try again. If it still fails, it might be the compliance problem of system. Please open DrayTek Syslog Tool to capture the connection information (WAN Log) and send the page (similar to the following graphic) to the service center of DrayTek.



The screenshot displays the DrayTek Syslog Utility interface. At the top, the DrayTek logo is on the left and 'Syslog Utility' is on the right. Below the logo is a navigation bar with icons for various system functions. The main area is divided into several sections:

- WAN Information:** Shows the WAN IP address as 172.16.3.130. There are fields for TX Rate, RX Rate, WAN IP, and Gateway IP.
- LAN Information:** Shows TX Packets and RX Packets.
- Log Filter:** Includes a Keyword field, an Apply to dropdown set to 'All', and a Refresh button.
- Navigation Tabs:** Firewall, VPN, User Access, Connection, WAN (selected), IPPEX, Others.
- Display Options:** Radio buttons for 'Show Syslog List' (selected) and 'Show Traffic Graph', along with a 'Pause' checkbox.
- Table:** A table with columns for System Time, Router Time, Host, and Message. The messages are logs related to a USB device connection, including statistics and device details.

| System Time | Router Time | Host | Message |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------|---|
| 2013-08-27 15:11:09 | Aug 27 07:10:53 | Vigor-router | statistic: Session Usage: 123 (5 min average) |
| 2013-08-27 15:11:09 | Aug 27 07:10:53 | Vigor-router | statistic: WAN1: Tx 81 Kbps, Rx 12 Kbps (5 min average) |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:07 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]Host Controller Driver: OTG |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]EndpointAddress=82 (in), Attributes=02 (Bulk) |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]EndpointAddress=01 (out), Attributes=02 (Bulk) |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]Mass Storage device class |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]Interface Class:SubClass:Protocol = [08:06:50] |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]Interface: 0 |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]Per-interface classes |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]Device Class:SubClass:Protocol = [00:00:00] |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]SerialNumber:[3] ED96E018 |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]Product:[2] Mass Storage |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]Manufacturer:[1] Generic |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]Usb new device: Vendor ID [058F], Product ID: [6387] |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]num of interfaces=1 |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]usb_set_configuration: configuration=1 |
| 2013-08-27 15:10:06 | Aug 27 07:09:51 | Vigor-router | [USB]Usb Device Connected at Port 0 |

Transmission Rate is not fast enough

Please connect your Notebook with 3G USB Modem to test the connection speed to verify if the problem is caused by Vigor2860. In addition, please refer to the manual of 3G USB Modem for LED Status to make sure if the modem connects to Internet via HSDPA mode. If you want to use the modem indoors, please put it on the place near the window to obtain better signal receiving.

5.6 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary

Sometimes, a wrong connection can be improved by returning to the default settings. Try to reset the router by software or hardware. Such function is available in **Admin Mode** only.



Warning: After pressing **factory default setting**, you will lose all settings you did before. Make sure you have recorded all useful settings before you pressing. The password of factory default is null.

Software Reset

You can reset the router to factory default via Web page. Such function is available in **Admin Mode** only.

Go to **System Maintenance** and choose **Reboot System** on the web page. The following screen will appear. Choose **Using factory default configuration** and click **Reboot Now**. After few seconds, the router will return all the settings to the factory settings.

System Maintenance >> Reboot System

Reboot System

Do you want to reboot your router ?

- Using current configuration
- Using factory default configuration

Reboot Now

Auto Reboot Time Schedule

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: , , ,

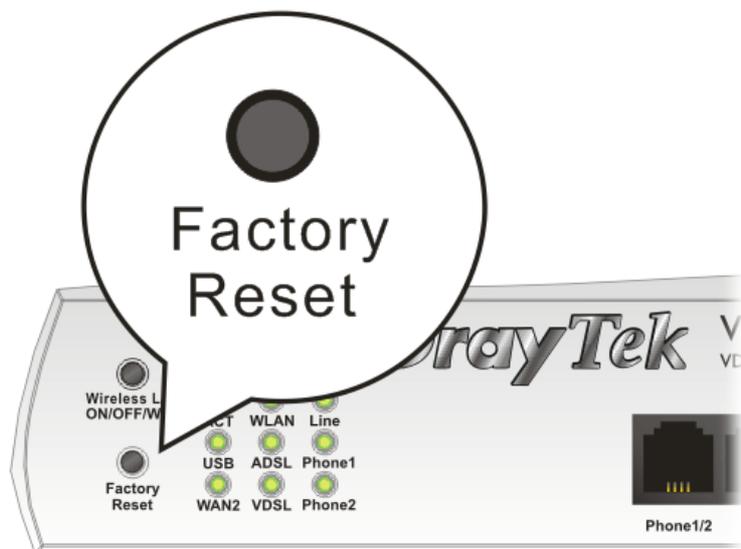
Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

OK

Cancel

Hardware Reset

While the router is running (ACT LED blinking), press the **Factory Reset** button and hold for more than 5 seconds. When you see the **ACT LED** blinks rapidly, please release the button. Then, the router will restart with the default configuration.



After restore the factory default setting, you can configure the settings for the router again to fit your personal request.

5.7 Contacting DrayTek

If the router still cannot work correctly after trying many efforts, please contact your dealer for further help right away. For any questions, please feel free to send e-mail to support@DrayTek.com.

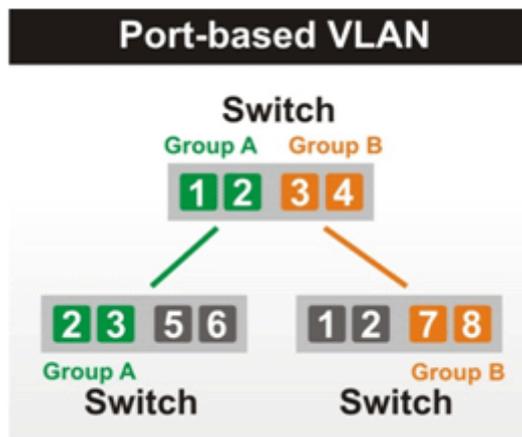
This page is left blank.

Appendix I: VLAN Applications on Vigor Router

Virtual Local Area Network is so-called VLAN. It offers the logical grouping technique to separate the physical ports of Ethernet switches, thus we can management our local network easier, more flexible and secure. For instance, you're a networking administrator in your company and you're planning to isolate the visitors' traffics from your private network for security considerations because you cannot ensure that visitors' computer is clean. Or you want to separate your private network into several parts by divisions because there are too many computers in the same network segment and it results in the local traffics heavily. VLAN helps you to solve these situations, and DrayTek's products support bellow two popular types:

Port-based

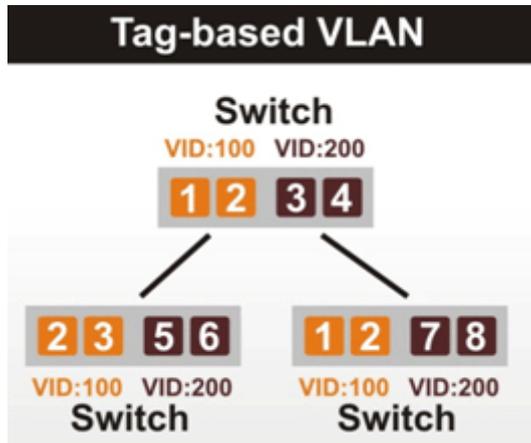
It uses a matrix table of the physical ports to define the traffics how to exchange between each port, and the traffics will be isolated from the ports are not being ticked in the same line. It is the easiest way to setup an isolate network, but not a flexible way to maintain a growing network. Because the idea of port-based VLAN is grouping by physical ports, but the difficulty is how to handle the traffics between two or more Ethernet switches. Thus, VLAN is suitable for some circumstances, for example, the rental apartment, SOHO office...and so on. These clients may need two or three isolated networks only and setup a network in a simple way.



Tag-based

The idea of tag-based VLAN is to identify a virtual LAN with a specific ID, therefore, **VLAN ID** introduced by tag-based VLAN. Through VLAN ID, ports with different **VID (VLAN ID)** will be identified as in different LANs, so the traffics also will be isolated from each of VLANs. Many administrators who manage an enterprise network or even the internet service providers (ISP) adopt Tag-based VLAN popularly because it is convenient to maintenance and management a distributed network. Setting a large-scale network is easy by giving each of them with different VID and isolating the traffics at the same time. Besides the VLAN ID, there is another feature, **Trunk**, introduced. While the role of a port on an Ethernet switch is setup as a Trunk port, it means the VLAN ID will be kept while forwarding the packets between switches. By this feature, VLANs are able to distribute over two or more Ethernet

switches easily, moreover design a large and secured network is possible through Trunk port. When VLAN is being enabled on Vigor routers, the LAN ports are being turned into Trunk mode automatically. Therefore, a VLAN supported switch, like VigorSwitch G2260/P2261, or VigorSwitch G1240, is needed.



Vigor routers ^[Note] support Tag-based feature both on LAN and WAN interfaces. The next we'll demonstrate our web design and how to configure the settings by introducing the functionalities of Vigor router.

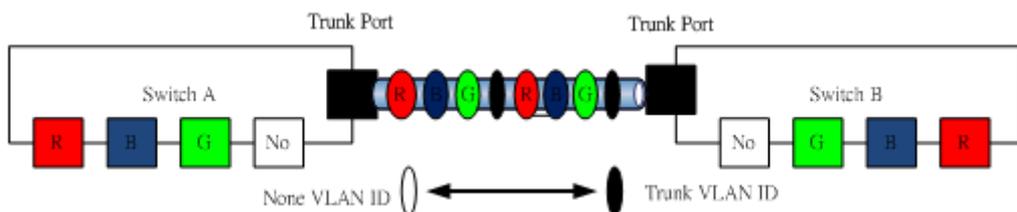
[Note]

Broadband router: Vigor2920/Vigor3200/Vigor2925/Vigo2960/Vigor3900

Modem router: Vigor2850/Vigor2860

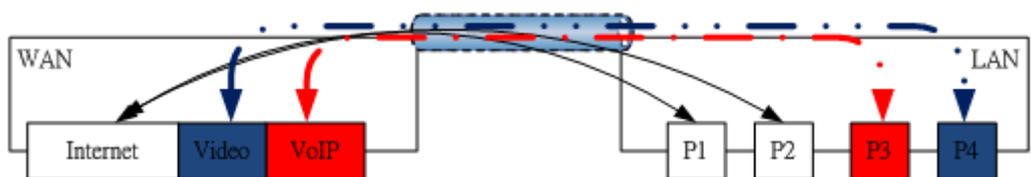
VLAN Packets on Vigor routers

Trunk mode of LAN



Trunk Port can carry the packets with VID but replace the Non-VID packet as the VID of Trunk port while forwarding the packets to another switch.

Bridge mode of WAN



P1 and P2 are doing NAT flow to access to the internet, but P3 and P4 will forward the packets between WAN and LAN ports directly.

Web User Interface

So far, there are two kinds of open system on Vigor router. One is DrayOS, which is DrayTek owned, and another is Linux-like which customized by DrayTek from OpenWRT. Here

DrayOS system is going to be introduced to you because it is the most stable and superfast booting system in DrayTek products. If the UI style of yours is different from the following. It may not DrayOS system with new web style or maybe the Linux-like model.

WAN

Internet Access >> Multi-VLAN

Multi-VLAN

| Channel | Enable | WAN Type | VLAN Tag | Port-based Bridge |
|---------|--------|----------------|----------|---|
| 1 | Yes | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | |
| 2 | Yes | Ethernet(WAN2) | None | |
| 3 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5 |
| 4 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5 |
| 5_WAN5 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5 |
| 6_WAN6 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5 |
| 7_WAN7 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5 |
| 8 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5 |

Detail settings of channel profile

Multi-VLAN Channel 5: Enable Disable
 WAN Type : Ethernet(WAN1)

General Settings
 VLAN Header
 VLAN Tag:
 Priority:
 Note:1.Tag value must be set between 1~4095 and unique for each channel.
 2.Only one channel can be untagged (equal to 0) at a time.

Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel
 Physical Members
 P1 P2 P3 P4 P5
 Note:3.P1 is reserved for NAT use,and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

Open WAN Interface for this Channel
 WAN for Router-borne Application: Management
 WAN Setup: Static or Dynamic IP

ISP Access Setup
 ISP Name:
 Username:
 Password:
 PPP Authentication: PAP or CHAP
 Always On
 Idle Timeout: -1 second(s)
IP Address From ISP
 Fixed IP Yes No (Dynamic IP)
 Fixed IP Address:

WAN IP Network Settings
 Obtain an IP address automatically
 Router Name: Vigor
 Domain Name:
 *: Required for some ISPs
 Specify an IP address
 IP Address:
 Subnet Mask:
 Gateway IP Address:
DNS Server IP Address
 Primary IP Address: 8.8.8.8
 Secondary IP Address: 8.8.4.4

VLAN Settings

VLAN Members

Service Binding & WAN Setup

LAN

Enable *Port-based VLAN* by checking the option

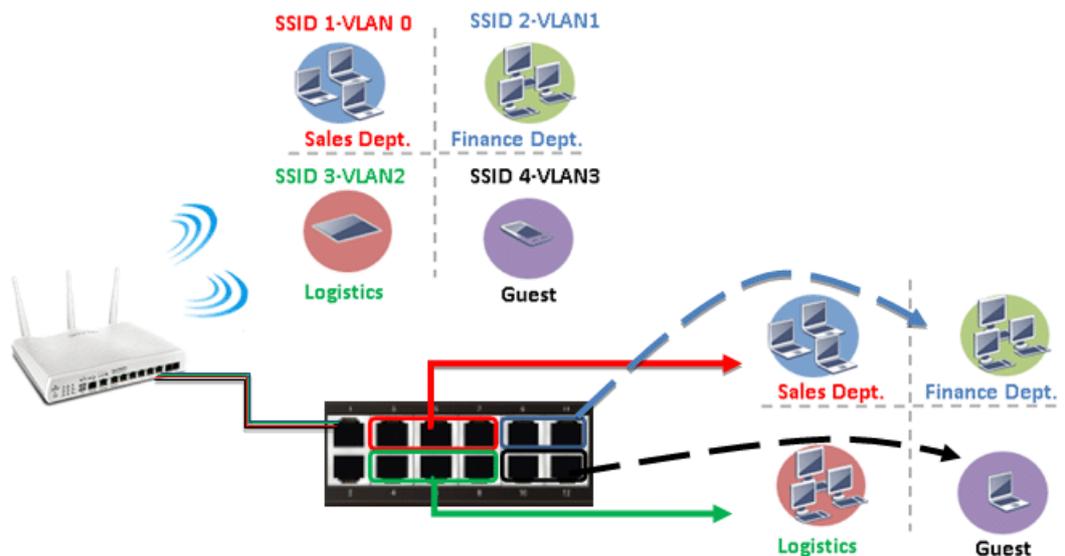
The option of *Tag-based VLAN*

| VLAN Configuration | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------|-----|----------|
| | LAN | | | | Wireless LAN | | | | Subnet | VLAN Tag | | |
| | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 | | Enable | VID | Priority |
| VLAN0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |

Annotations from the diagram:
 - **Enable**: Points to the 'Enable' checkbox in the configuration header.
 - **VLAN Group**: Points to the LAN and Wireless LAN columns.
 - **Member of *Port-based* or *Tag-based* VLAN**: Points to the checkboxes in the LAN and Wireless LAN columns.
 - **DHCP Pool will be used**: Points to the Subnet dropdown menu.
 - **VLAN ID assigned**: Points to the VID input field.
 - **802.1p field**: Points to the Priority dropdown menu.

VLAN applications on Vigor router

- Multi Subnet (VLAN of LAN)



Port-based mode

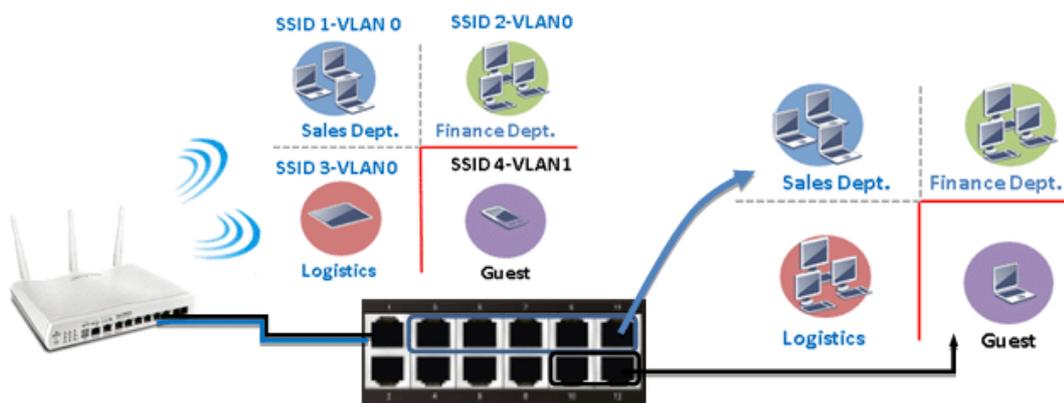
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------|-----|----------|
| VLAN | LAN | | | | Wireless LAN | | | | Subnet | VLAN Tag | | |
| | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 | | Enable | VID | Priority |
| VLAN0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LAN 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |

Tag-based mode

| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------|-----|----------|
| VLAN | LAN | | | | Wireless LAN | | | | Subnet | VLAN Tag | | |
| | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 | | Enable | VID | Priority |
| VLAN0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 10 | 0 |
| VLAN1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 20 | 0 |
| VLAN2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 3 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 30 | 0 |
| VLAN3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LAN 4 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 40 | 0 |
| VLAN4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |

By above settings, there are four private networks will be created and computers attached with each of LAN ports or SSIDs which are able to obtain a private IP address from each DHCP servers (LAN1/LAN2/LAN3/LAN4). However, the traffics of the LAN port or SSID that are NOT being grouped in the same VLAN are unable to forward to each other. The benefit of Port-based is able to extend the wired ports by installing a cheaper dumb switch as many as you need, but Tag-based offers you a flexible and well-managed network. The networks are isolated, secured and reduce the broadcasting storm effectively in each of networks with VLAN.

- **Guest Network**



Port-based mode

VLAN Configuration

| | LAN | | | | Wireless LAN | | | | VLAN Tag | | | |
|-------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------|--------------------------|-----|----------|
| | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 | Subnet | Enable | VID | Priority |
| VLAN0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LAN 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |

Tag-based mode

| | LAN | | | | Wireless LAN | | | | VLAN Tag | | | |
|-------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|-----|----------|
| | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | SSID1 | SSID2 | SSID3 | SSID4 | Subnet | Enable | VID | Priority |
| VLAN0 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LAN 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 10 | 0 |
| VLAN2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |
| VLAN7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 0 | 0 |

To deploy a guest network, which serves your guests the internet accessibility, but the traffics have to be isolated from your private network due to the security considerations, it can be done by above settings. However, a switch support VLAN function is need if VLAN Tag enabled.

● **Triple Play (Multi-WAN)**

NAT mode with VLAN



Following settings, the set-top box (STB) is able to attach with any LAN port. Video streaming which your ISP provided will be played on your monitor.

WAN 1

Enable: Yes No

Display Name:

Physical Mode: Ethernet

Physical Type: Auto negotiation

Line Speed(Kbps):

DownLink:

UpLink:

VLAN Tag insertion: Enable (Please configure Internet Access setting first)

Tag value: (0~4095)

Priority: (0~7)

Active Mode: Always On Load Balance:

1. Setup the VLAN ID on WAN1 profiles if WAN is the primary interface of IPTV service.

2. Open the profile of WAN5 by clicking the ID.

| Channel | Enable | WAN Type | VLAN Tag | Port-based Bridge |
|---------|--------|----------------|----------|---|
| 1 | Yes | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | |
| 2 | Yes | Ethernet(WAN2) | None | |
| 3 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 |
| 4 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 |
| 5, WAN5 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 |
| 6, WAN6 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 |
| 7, WAN7 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 |
| 8 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 |

Multi-VLAN Channel 5: Enable Disable

WAN Type: Ethernet(WAN1)

General Settings

VLAN Header

VLAN:

Tag:

Priority:

Note: 1. Tag value must be set between 1~4095 and unique for each channel.
2. Only one channel can be untagged (equal to 0):

P1 P2 P3 P4 P5

Note: 3. P1 is reserved for NAT use, and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel

Physical Members

P1 P2 P3 P4 P5

Note: 3. P1 is reserved for NAT use, and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

3. Setup connection of WAN 5 and bind the service onto it.

NO need to enable Port-based Bridge.

P1 P2 P3 P4 P5

Note: 3. P1 is reserved for NAT use, and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

Open WAN interface for this Channel

WAN for Router-borne Application: IPTV

WAN Setup: Static or Dynamic IP

ISP Access Setup

ISP Name:

Username:

Password:

PPP Authentication: PAP or CHAP

Always On

Idle Timeout: second(s)

IP Address From ISP

Fixed IP: Yes No

(Dynamic IP)

Fixed IP Address:

WAN IP Network Settings

Obtain an IP address automatically

Router: Vigor

Name:

Domain Name:

*: Required for some ISPs

Specify an IP address

IP Address:

Subnet:

Mask:

Gateway:

IP Address:

DNS Server IP Address

Primary IP Address:

Secondary IP Address:

4. Go to Application >> IGMP to bind it on PVC WAN.

IGMP

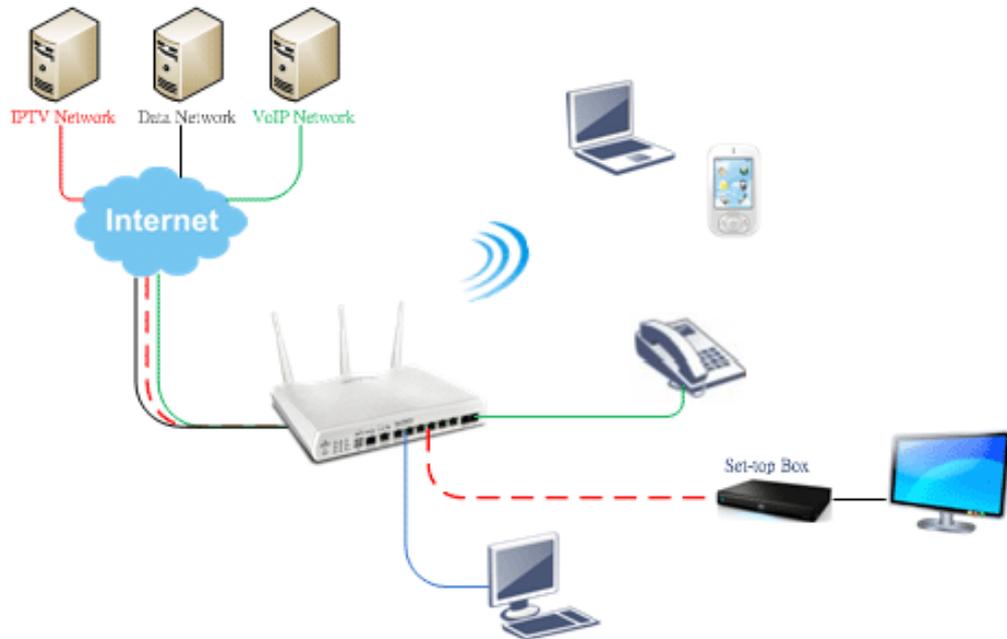
Enable IGMP Proxy

IGMP Proxy is to act as a multicast proxy for will access any multicast group. But this function take no effect when bridge mode is enable.

Enable IGMP Snooping

Enable IGMP Snooping, multicast traffic is only forwarded to ports that have members of that group. Disable IGMP snooping, multicast traffic is treated in the same manner as broadcast traffic.

Bridge mode with VLAN



Multi-VLAN

| General | | | | |
|---------|--------|----------------|----------|---|
| Channel | Enable | WAN Type | VLAN Tag | Port-based Bridge |
| 1 | Yes | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | |
| 2 | Yes | Ethernet(WAN2) | None | |
| 3 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5 |
| 4 | No | Ethernet(WAN1) | None | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5 |
| 5 | No | | | |
| 6 | No | | | |
| 7 | No | | | |
| 8 | No | | | |

Multi-VLAN Channel 3: Enable Disable

WAN Type :

General Settings

VLAN Header

VLAN Tag:

Priority:

Note:1.Tag value must be set between 1~4095 and unique for each channel.
2.Only one channel can be untagged (equal to 0) at a time.

Bridge mode

Enable

Physical Members

P1 P2 P3 P4 P5

Note:3.P1 is reserved for NAT use,and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

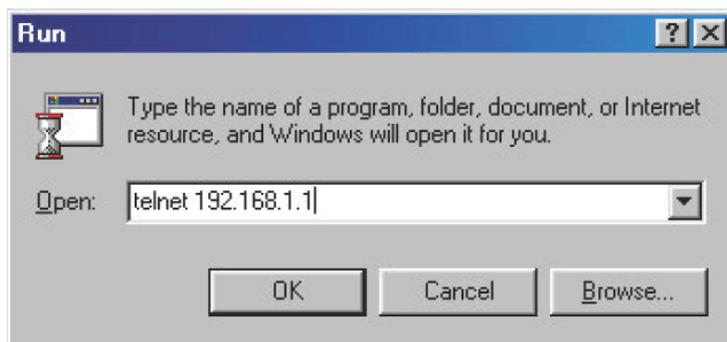
Set-top box (STB) or the other kinds of media devices are able to attach with Port4 or Port5 of LAN. Those devices that attached with Port4 or Port5 are able to access the services network directly which your ISP provided.

Telnet Command Reference

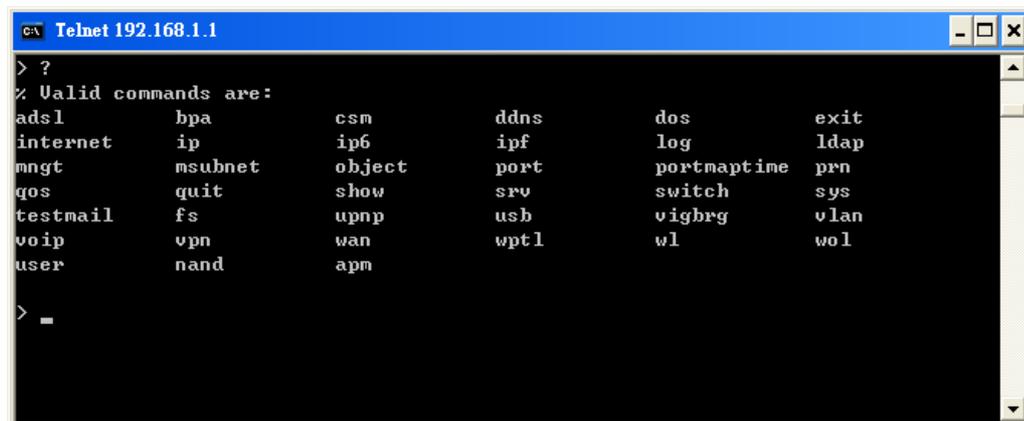
Accessing Telnet of Vigor2860

This chapter also gives you a general description for accessing telnet and describes the firmware versions for the routers explained in this manual.

Click **Start > Run** and type **Telnet 192.168.1.1** in the Open box as below. Note that the IP address in the example is the default address of the router. If you have changed the default, enter the current IP address of the router.



Click **OK**. The Telnet terminal will be open. Please type admin/admin for Account/Password. Then, type **?**. You will see a list of valid/common commands depending on the router that you use.



Telnet Command: adsl txpct /adsl rxpct

This command allows the user to adjust the percentage of data transmission (receiving/transmitting) for QoS application.

Syntax

adsl txpct [auto:percent]

adsl rxpct [auto:percent]

| Syntax | Description |
|-------------|--|
| auto | It means auto detection of ADSL transmission packet. |

| | |
|----------------|--|
| percent | It means to specify the percentage of ADSL transmission packet. Available range is 10-100. |
|----------------|--|

Example

```
> adsl txpct auto
% tx percentage : 80
> adsl txpct 75
% tx percentage : 75
```

Telnet Command: adsl status

This command is used to display current status of ADSL setting.

Syntax

adsl status

Example

```
> adsl status
----- ATU-R Info (hw: annex A, f/w: annex Unknown) -----
Running Mode           : T1.413      State           : TRAINING
DS Actual Rate         : 0 bps US Actual Rate : 0 bps
DS Attainable Rate    : 0 bps US Attainable Rate: 0 bps
DS Path Mode          : Fast  US Path Mode       : Fast
DS Interleave Depth   : 0      US Interleave Depth: 0
NE Current Attenuation : 0 dB  Cur SNR Margin : 0 dB
DS actual PSD         : 0.0 dB US actual PSD : 0.0 dB
ADSL Firmware Version : 05-04-08-00-00-06
----- ATU-C Info -----
Far Current Attenuation : 0 dB  Far SNR Margin : 0 dB
CO ITU Version[0]      : 00000000  CO ITU Version[1] : 00000000
DSLAM CHIPSET VENDOR  : < ADI >
>
```

Telnet Command: adsl ppp

This command can set the Internet Access mode for the router.

Syntax

adsl ppp [? / pvc_no vci vpi Encap Proto modu acqIP idle [Username Password]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| ? | Display the command syntax of “adsl ppp”. |
| pvc_no | It means the PVC number and the adjustable range is from 0 (Channel-1) to 7(Channel-8). |

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| Encap | Different numbers represent different modes. 0 : VC_MUX, 1: LLC/SNAP, 2: LLC_Bridge, 3: LLC_Route, 4: VCMUX_Bridge 5: VCMUX_Route, 6: IPoE. |
| Proto | It means the protocol used to connect Internet. Different numbers represent different protocols. 0: PPPoA, 1: PPPoE, 2: MPoA. |
| Modu | 0: T1.413, 2: G.dmt, 4: Multi, 5: ADSL2, 7:ADSL2_AnnexM 8:ADSL2+ 14:ADSL2+_AnnexM. |
| acqIP | It means the way to acquire IP address. Type the number to determine the IP address by specifying or assigned dynamically by DHCP server. 0 : fix_ip, 1: dhcp_client/PPPoE/PPPoA.(acquire IP method) |
| idle | Type number to determine the network connection will be kept for always or idle after a certain time. 1: always on, else idle timeout secs. Only for PPPoE/PPPoA. |
| Username | This parameter is used only for PPPoE/PPPoA |
| Password | This parameter is used only for PPPoE/PPPoA |

You have to reboot the system when you set it on Route mode.

Example

```
> adsl ppp o 35 8 1 1 4 1 -1 draytek draytek
pvc no.=0
vci=35
vpi=8
encap=LLC(1)
proto=PPPoE(1)
modu=MULTI(4)
AcquireIP: Dhcp_client(1)
```

```
Idle timeout:-1
Username=draytek
Password=draytek
```

Telnet Command: adsl bridge

This command can specify a LAN port (LAN1 to LAN4) for mapping to certain PVC, and the mapping port/PVC will be operated in bridge mode.

adsl bridge [*pvc_no/status/save/enable/disable*] [*on/off/clear/tag tag_no*] [*service type*] [*px ...*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| <i>pvc_no</i> | It means <i>pvc</i> number and must be between 0(Channel 1) to 7(Channel 8). |
| <i>status</i> | It means to shown the whole bridge status. |
| <i>save</i> | It means to save the configuration to flash. |
| <i>enable</i> | It means to enable the Multi-VLAN function. |
| <i>disable</i> | It means to disable the Multi-VLAN function. |
| <i>on/off</i> | It means to turn on/off bridge mode for the specific channel. |
| <i>clear</i> | It means to turn off and clear all the PVC settings. |
| <i>tag tag_no</i> | No tag: -1 Available number for tag: 0-4095 |
| <i>pri pri_no</i> | The number 0 to 7 can be set to indicate the priority. "7" is the highest. |
| <i>service type</i> | Two number can be set: 0: for Normal (all the applications will be processed with the same PVC). 1: for the IGMP with different PVC which is used for special ISP. |
| <i>px...</i> | It means the number of LAN port (x=2~4). Port 1 is locked for NAT. |

Example

```
> adsl bridge 4 on p2 p3
PVC Bridge   p1  p2  p3  p4  Service Type  Tag  Pri
-----
   4   ON     0   0   1   0   Normal   -1(OFF)  0
PVC 0 & 1 can't set for bridge mode.
Please use 'save' to save config.
```

Telnet Command: adsl idle

This command can make the router accessing into the idle status. If you want to invoke the router again, you have to reboot the router by using “reboot” command.

Example

```
> adsl idle
%Idle Mode!
You has to use {adsl reboot} to restart booting.
```

Telnet Command: adsl drivemode

This command is useful for laboratory to measure largest power of data transmission. Please follow the steps below to set adsl drivermode.

1. Please connect dsl line to the DSLAM.
2. Waiting for dsl SHOWTIME.
3. Drop the dsl line.
4. Now, it is on continuous sending mode, and adsl2/2+ led is always ON.
5. Use 'adsl reboot' to restart dsl to normal mode.

Telnet Command: adsl reboot

This command can wake up the idle router.

Example

```
> adsl reboot
% Adsl is Rebooting...
```

Telnet Command: adsl oamlb

This command is used to test if the connection between CPE and CO is OK or not.

adsl oamlb [*n*][*type*]

adsl oamlb chklink [*on/off*]

adsl oamlb [*log_on/log_off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| <i>n</i> | It means the total number of transmitted packets. |
| <i>type</i> | It means the protocol that you can use. 1 – for F4 Seg-to-Seg (VP level) 2 – for F4 End-to-End (VP level) 4 – for F5 Seg-to-Seg (VC level) 5 – for F5 End-to-End (VC level) |
| <i>chklink</i> | Check the DSL connection. |
| <i>Log_on/log_off</i> | Enable or disable the OAM log for debug. |

Example

```
> adsl oamlb chklink on
OAM checking dsl link is ON.
> adsl oamlb F5 4
Tx cnt=0
Rx Cnt=0
>
```

Telnet Command: adsl vcilimit

This command can cancel the limit for vci value.

Some ISP might set the vci value under 32. In such case, we can cancel such limit manually by using this command. Do not set the number greater than 254.

adsl vcilimit [*n*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>n</i> | The number shall be between 1 ~ 254. |

Example

```
> adsl vcilimit 33
change VCI limitation from 32 to 33.
```

Telnet Command: adsl annex

This command can display the annex interface of this router.

Example

```
> adsl annex
% hardware is annex B.
% modem code is annex B; built at 01/15,07:34.
```

Telnet Command: adsl automode

This command is used to add or remove ADSL modes (such as ANNEXL, ANNEXM and ANNEXJ) supported by Multimode.

adsl automode [*add/remove/set/default/show*] [*adsl_mode*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <i>add</i> | It means to add ADSL mode. |
| <i>remove</i> | It means to remove ADSL mode. |
| <i>set</i> | It means to use default settings plus the new added ADSL mode. |
| <i>default</i> | It means to use default settings. |
| <i>show</i> | It means to display current setting. |
| <i>adsl_mode</i> | There are three modes to be choose, ANNEXL, ANNEXM and ANNEXJ. |

Example

```
> Vigor> adsl automode set ANNEXJ
Automode supported : T1.413, G.DMT, ADSL2, ADSL2+, ANNEXJ,

Vigor> adsl automode default
Automode supported : T1.413, G.DMT, ADSL2, ADSL2+,
```

Telnet Command: adsl optn

At present ,this command allows you to enable and disable dual-latency only.

adsl optn FUNC [*value/on/off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <i>FUNC</i> | Available setting is “dual” only. It means dual-latency. |
| <i>value</i> | The value shall be hex digits. |
| <i>on/off</i> | Type “on” for enabling such function. Type “off” for disabling such function. |

Example

```
> adsl optn dual on
dsl dual-latency is ON.
```

Telnet Command: adsl savecfg

This command can save the configuration into FLASH with a file format of cfg.

Example

```
> adsl savecfg
% Xdsl Cfg Save OK!
```

Telnet Command: adsl vendorid

This command allows you to configure user-defined CPE vendor ID.

adsl vendorid [*status/on/off/ set vid0 vid1*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <i>status</i> | Display current status of user-defined vendor ID. |
| <i>on</i> | Enable the user-defined function. |
| <i>off</i> | Disable the user-defined function. |
| <i>set vid0 vid1</i> | It means to set user-defined vendor ID with vid0 and vid1. The vendor ID shall be set with HEX format, ex: 00fe7244: 79612f21. |

Example

```
> adsl vendorid status
% User define CPE Vendor ID is OFF
% vid0:vid1 = 0x00fe7244:79612f21
> adsl vendorid on set vid0 vid1
% User define CPE Vendor ID is ON
```

Telnet Command: adsl atm

This command can set QoS parameter for ATM.

adsl atm pcr [*pvc_no*][*PCR*][*max*][*status*]

adsl atm scr [*pvc_no*][*SCR*]

adsl atm mbs [*pvc_no*][*MBS*]

adsl atm status

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <i>pvc_no</i> | It means <i>pvc</i> number and must be between 0(Channel 1) to 7(Channel 8). |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| <i>PCR</i> | It means Peak Cell Rate for upstream. The range for the number is “1” to “2539”. |
| <i>max</i> | It means to get the highest speed for the upstream. |
| <i>SCR</i> | It means Sustainable Cell Rate. |
| <i>MBS</i> | It means Maximum Burst Size. |
| <i>status</i> | It means to display PCR/SCR/MBS setting. |

Example

```

> adsl atm pcr 1 200 max
% PCR is 200 for pvc 1.

> adsl atm pcr status
pvc   channel      PCR
-----
  0     1           0
  1     2          200
  2     3           0
  3     4           0
  4     5           0
  5     6           0
  6     7           0
  7     8           0
> adsl atm mbs 2 300 max
% MBS is 300 for pvc 2.

```

Telnet Command: adsl pvcbinding

This command can configure PVC to PVC binding. Such command is available only for PPPoE and MPoA 1483 Bridge mode.

adsl pvcbinding [*pvc_x pvc_y* | *status* | *-1*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|---|
| <i>pvc_x</i> | It means the PVC number for the source. |
| <i>pvc_y</i> | It means the PVC number that the source PVC will be bound to. |
| <i>status</i> | Display a table for PVC binding group. |
| <i>-1</i> | It means to clear specific PVC binding. |

Example

```

> adsl pvcbinding 3 5
set done. bind pvc3 to pvc5.

```

The above example means PVC3 has been bound to PVC5.

```

> adsl pvcbinding 3 -1
clear pvc-1 binding

```

The above example means the PVC3 binding group has been removed.

Telnet Command: adsl snr

This command is used to .

Note: We can provide prompt support (support@draytek.com) if you refer to the telnet command and have any queries.

adsl snr [*delta*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| <i>delta</i> | It means SNR margin delta. The range is from -50 to 50. Current ADSL SNR Margin is 0 dB. |

Example

```
> vdsl snr 25
ADSL SNR update successfully !
Restarting ADSL modem ...
```

Telnet Command: bpa

This command allows to configure a network setting specified for Australia's ISP.

bpa m [-<command> <parameter> / ...]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <i>m</i> | Available settings are 1 and 2. |
| -a <enable> | 1/0 to enable/disable this entry |
| -n <UserName> | contact UserName(max. 24 characters) |
| -p <PassWord> | contact PassWord (max. 24 characters) |
| -s <select> | It means to specify an IP address for Server. 0 : no selection. 1 : NSW(61.9.192.13) 2 : QLD(61.9.208.13), 3 : VIC(61.9.128.13) 4 : SA(61.9.224.13), 5 : WA(61.9.240.13) |
| -l <List> | List all settings configured. |

Example

```
> bpa 1 -a 1 -n testUser -p testPassword -s 4
> bpa -l
-----index: 1 active-----
UserName[1]: testUser
PassWord[1]: testPassword
ServerIP[1]:4
```

```

-----index: 2 inactive-----
UserName[2]:
PassWord[2]:
ServerIP[2]:0
>

```

Telnet Command: csm appe prof

Commands under CSM allow you to set CSM profile to define policy profiles for different policy of IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer) application.

“csm appe prof “ is used to configure the APP Enforcement Profile name. Such profile will be applied in **Default Rule** of **Firewall>>General Setup** for filtering.

csm appe prof -i INDEX [-v / -n NAME]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32. |
| - v | It means to view the configuration of the CSM profile. |
| - n | It means to set a name for the CSM profile. |
| <i>NAME</i> | It means to specify a name for the CSM profile, less then 15 characters. |

Example

```

> csm appe prof -i 1 -n games
The name of APPE Profile 1 was setted.

```

Telnet Command: csm appe im

It is used to configure IM settings for APP Enforcement Profile.

csm appe im -i INDEX [-v / -e AP / -d AP/ -a AP [ACTION]]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32. |
| - v | It means to view the IM configuration of the CSM profile. |
| -e | It means to enable the blocking for specific application. |
| -d | It means to disable the blocking for specific application. |
| -a | Set the action of specific application |
| <i>AP</i> | Specify one of the following applications for such profile. MSN : MSN YIM : YahooIM AIM : AIM ICQ : ICQ QQTM : QQ/TM |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| | iChat : iChat Jabber : Jabber/GoogleTalk GC : GoogleChat AliWW : AliWW Skype : Skype Kubao : Kubao Gizmo : Gizmo SIP : SIP/RTP TelTel : TelTel TeamSpk: TeamSpeak WIM : WebIMs RaidCall : RaidCall |
| <i>ACTION</i> | Specify the action of the application, 0 or 1. 0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked. 1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed. |

Example

```
> csm appe im -i 1 -e ICQ Login -a ICQ 0
Profile 1 - : ICQ is enabled.
```

Telnet Command: csm appe p2p

It is used to configure P2P settings for APP Enforcement Profile.

csm appe p2p -i *INDEX* [-v / -e *AP* / -d *AP* / -a *AP* [*ACTION*]]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32. |
| -v | It means to view the P2P configuration of the CSM profile. |
| -e | It means to enable the blocking for specific application. |
| -d | It means to disable the blocking for specific application. |
| -a | Set the action of specific application, 0 or 1. 0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked. 1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed. |
| <i>AP</i> | Specify one of the following applications for such profile. SoulSeek: SoulSeek Protocol eDonkey: eDonkey Protocol FastTrack : FastTrack Protocol OpenFT: OpenFT Protocol Gnutella: Gnutella Protocol OpenNap: OpenNap Protocol |

| | |
|---------------|--|
| | BitTorrent: BitTorrent Protocol |
| <i>ACTION</i> | Specify the action of the application, 0 or 1. 0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked. 1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed. |

Example

```
> csm appe p2p -i 1 -e BitTorrent -a BitTorrent 0
Profile 1 - : BitTorrent is enabled.
```

Telnet Command: csm appe prot

It is used to configure protocol settings for APP Enforcement Profile.

Telnet Command: csm appe misc

It is used to configure miscellaneous settings for APP Enforcement Profile.

csm appe misc -i INDEX [-v | -e AP | -d AP | -a AP [ACTION]]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32. |
| -v | It means to view the protocol configuration of the CSM profile. |
| -e | It means to enable the blocking for specific application. |
| -d | It means to disable the blocking for specific application. |
| -a | Set the action of specific application, 0 or 1. 0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked. 1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed. |
| <i>AP</i> | Specify one of the following applications for such profile. Streaming: MMS: MMS RTSP: RTSP TVAnts: TVAnts PPStream: PPStream PPlive: PPlive FeiDian: FeiDian UUSee: UUSee NSPlayer: NSPlayer PCAST: PCAST TVKoo: TVKoo SopCast: SopCast UDLiveX: UDLiveX TVUPlayer: TVUPlayer |

| | |
|----------------|--|
| | MySee: MySee Joost: Joost FlashVideo: FlashVideo SilverLight: MS SilverLight Slingbox: Slingbox QVOD: QVOD QQLive: QQLive |
| ACTION: | Specify the action of the application, 0 or 1. 0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked. 1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed. |

Example

```
> csm appe misc -i 1 -e TVUPlayer -a 0
Profile 1 - : TVUPlayer is enabled.
```

Telnet Command: csm ucf

It is used to configure settings for URL control filter profile.

csm ucf show

csm ucf setdefault

csm ucf msg MSG

csm ucf obj INDEX [-n PROFILE_NAME | -l [P/B/A/N] | uac | wf]

csm ucf obj INDEX -n PROFILE_NAME

csm ucf obj INDEX -p VALUE

csm ucf obj INDEX -l P/B/A/N

csm ucf obj INDEX uac

csm ucf obj INDEX wf

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| <i>show</i> | It means to display all of the profiles. |
| <i>setdefault</i> | It means to return to default settings for all of the profile. |
| <i>msg MSG</i> | It means de set the administration message. MSG means the content (less than 255 characters) of the message itself. |
| <i>obj</i> | It means to specify the object for the profile. |
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8. |
| <i>-n</i> | It means to set the profile name. |
| <i>PROFILE_NAME</i> | It means to specify the name of the profile (less than 16 characters) |
| <i>-p</i> | It means to set the priority for the profile. |
| <i>VALUE</i> | Available numbers you can define are listed below: |

| | |
|------------|---|
| | <p>0: It means Bundle: Pass. 1: It means Bundle: Block. 2: It means Either: URL Access Control First. 3: It means Either: Web Feature First.</p> |
| <i>-l</i> | <p>It means the log type of the profile. They are: P: Pass, B: Block, A: All, N: None</p> |
| <i>MSG</i> | <p>It means to specify the Administration Message, less than 255 characters</p> |
| <i>uac</i> | <p>It means to set URL Access Control part.</p> |
| <i>wf</i> | <p>It means to set Web Feature part.</p> |

Example

```

> csm ucf obj 1 -n game -l B
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[pass]
[ ]Prevent web access from IP address.
No Obj NO.   Object Name
-----
No Grp NO.   Group Name
-----

```

Telnet Command: **csm ucf obj INDEX uac**

It means to configure the settings regarding to URL Access Control (uac).

csm ucf obj INDEX uac -v

csm ucf obj INDEX uac -e

csm ucf obj INDEX uac -d

csm ucf obj INDEX uac -a P/B

csm ucf obj INDEX uac -i E/D

csm ucf obj INDEX uac -o KEY_WORD_Object_Index

csm ucf obj INDEX uac -g KEY_WORD_Group_Index

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8. |

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| -v | It means to view the protocol configuration of the CSM profile. |
| -e | It means to enable the function of URL Access Control. |
| -d | It means to disable the function of URL Access Control. |
| -a | Set the action of specific application, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the URL Access Control will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the URL Access Control will be passed. |
| -i | Prevent the web access from any IP address. E: Enable the function. The Internet access from any IP address will be blocked. D: Disable the function. |
| -o | Set the keyword object. |
| <i>KEY_WORD_Object_Index</i> | Specify the index number of the object profile. |
| -g | Set the keyword group. |
| <i>KEY_WORD_Group_Index</i> | Specify the index number of the group profile. |

Example

```

> csm ucf obj 1 uac -i E
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[pass]
[v]Prevent web access from IP address.
No Obj NO.   Object Name
-----

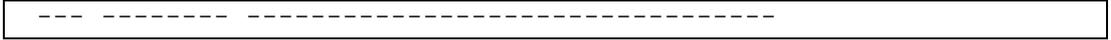
No Grp NO.   Group Name
-----

> csm ucf obj 1 uac -a B
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[block]
[v]Prevent web access from IP address.
No Obj NO.   Object Name
-----

No Grp NO.   Group Name
-----

```



Telnet Command: `csm ucf obj INDEX wf`

It means to configure the settings regarding to Web Feature (wf).

`csm ucf obj INDEX wf -v`

`csm ucf obj INDEX wf -e`

`csm ucf obj INDEX wf -d`

`csm ucf obj INDEX wf -a P/B`

`csm ucf obj INDEX wf -s WEB_FEATURE`

`csm ucf obj INDEX wf -u WEB_FEATURE`

`csm ucf obj INDEX wf -f File_Extension_Object_index`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8. |
| <i>-v</i> | It means to view the protocol configuration of the CSM profile. |
| <i>-e</i> | It means to enable the restriction of web feature. |
| <i>-d</i> | It means to disable the restriction of web feature. |
| <i>-a</i> | Set the action of web feature, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the web feature will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the web feature will be passed. |
| <i>-s</i> | It means to enable the the Web Feature configuration. Features available for configuration are: c: Cookie p: Proxy u: Upload |
| <i>-u</i> | It means to cancel the web feature configuration. |
| <i>-f</i> | It means to set the file extension object index number. |
| <i>File_Extension_Object_index</i> | Type the index number (1 to 8) for the file extension object. |

Example

```
> csm ucf obj 1 wf -s c
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[block]
[v] Prevent web access from IP address.
No Obj NO. Object Name
```

```

-----
No  Grp NO.   Group Name
-----

[ ] Enable Restrict Web Feature
Action:[pass]
File Extension Object Index : [0]      Profile Name : []
[V] Cookie [ ] Proxy [ ] Upload

```

Telnet Command: csm wcf

It means to configure the settings regarding to web control filter (wcf).

- csm wcf show**
- csm wcf look**
- csm wcf cache**
- csm wcf server WCF_SERVER**
- csm wcf msg MSG**
- csm wcf setdefault**
- csm wcf obj INDEX -v**
- csm wcf obj INDEX -a P/B**
- csm wcf obj INDEX -n PROFILE_NAME**
- csm wcf obj INDEX -l N/P/B/A**
- csm wcf obj INDEX -o KEY_WORD Object Index**
- csm wcf obj INDEX -g KEY_WORD Group Index**
- csm wcf obj INDEX -w E/D/P/B**
- csm wcf obj INDEX -s CATEGORY/WEB_GROUP**
- csm wcf obj INDEX -u CATEGORY/WEB_GROUP**

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <i>show</i> | It means to display the web content filter profiles. |
| <i>Look</i> | It means to display the license information of WCF. |
| <i>Cache</i> | It means to set the cache level for the profile. |
| <i>Server WCF_SERVER</i> | It means to set web content filter server. |
| <i>Msg MSG</i> | It means de set the administration message. MSG means the content (less than 255 characters) of the message itself. |
| <i>setdefault</i> | It means to return to default settings for all of the profile. |
| <i>obj</i> | It means to specify the object profile. |
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means to specify the index number of web content filter profile, from 1 to 8. |
| <i>- v</i> | It means to view the web content filter profile. |
| <i>-a</i> | Set the action of web content filter profile, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the web feature will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the web feature will be passed. |

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| <i>-n</i> | It means to set the profile name. |
| <i>PROFILE_NAME</i> | It means to specify the name of the profile (less than 16 characters) |
| <i>-l</i> | It means the log type of the profile. They are: P: Pass, B: Block, A: All, N: None |
| <i>-o</i> | Set the keyword object. |
| <i>KEY_WORD_Object_Index</i> | Specify the index number of the object profile. |
| <i>-g</i> | Set the keyword group. |
| <i>KEY_WORD_Group_Index</i> | Specify the index number of the group profile. |
| <i>-w</i> | It means to set the action for the black and white list. E:Enable, D:Disable, P:Pass, B:Block |
| <i>-s</i> | It means to choose the items under CATEGORY or WEB_GROUP. |
| <i>-u</i> | It means to discard items under CATEGORY or WEB_GROUP. |
| WEB_GROUP | Child_Protection, Leisure, Business, Chating, Computer Internet, Other |
| CATEGORY | Includes: Alcohol & Tobacco, Criminal Activity, Gambling, Hate & Intoleranc, Illegal Drug, Nudity, Pornography/Sexually Explicit, Weapons, Violence, School Cheating,Sex Education, Tasteless, Child Abuse Imges, Entertainment, Games, Sports, Travel, Leisure & Recreation, Fashin & Beauty, Business, Job Search, Web-based Emai, Chat, Instant Messaging, Anonymizers, Forums & Newsgroups, Computers & Technology, Download Sites, Streaming Media & Downloads, Phishing & Fraud, Search Engines & Portals, Social Networking, Spam Sites,Malware, Botnets, Hacking, Illegal Software, Information Security,Peer-to-eer, Advertisements & Pop-Ups, Arts, Transportation, Compromised, Dating & Personals, , Education, Finance, Government,Health & Medcine, News, Non-profits & NGOs, Personal Sites,Politics, Real Estate, Rligion, Restaurants & Dining,Shopping, Translators, General, Cults,Greetig cards, Image Sharing, Network Errors, Parked Domains, Private IP Addresses) |

Example

```
> csm wcf obj 1 -n test_wcf
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[test_wcf]
[]White/Black list
Action:[block]
  No  Obj NO.   Object Name
-----
  No  Grp NO.   Group Name
-----
Action:[block]
Log:[block]
-----
child Protection Group:
 [v]Alcohol & Tobacco      [v]Criminal & Activity  [v]Gambling
 [v]Hate & Intolerance     [v]Illegal Drug        [v]Nudity
 [v]Pornography & Sexually explicit [v]Violence
 [v]Weapons

 [v]School Cheating       [v]Sex Education       [v]Tasteless
 [v]Child Abuse Images
-----
leisure Group:
 [ ]Entertainment         [ ]Games                [ ]Sports
 [ ]Travel                 [ ]Leisure & Recreation [ ]Fashion & Beauty
.
.
>
```

Telnet Command: ddns log

Displays the DDNS log.

Example

```
>ddns log
>
```

Telnet Command: ddns time

Sets and displays the DDNS time.

ddns time <update in minutes>

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <i>Update in minutes</i> | Type the value as DDNS time. The range is from 1 to 1440. |

Example

```
> ddns time
ddns time <update in minutes>
```

```

Valid: 1 ~ 1440
%Now: 1440
> ddns time 1000
ddns time <update in minutes>
Valid: 1 ~ 1440
%Now: 1000

```

Telnet Command: dos

This command allows users to configure the settings for DoS defense system.

dos [-V / D / A]

dos [-s *ATTACK_F* [*THRESHOLD*][*TIMEOUT*]]

dos [-a / e [*ATTACK_F*][*ATTACK_0*] / d [*ATTACK_F*][*ATTACK_0*]]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| -V | It means to view the configuration of DoS defense system. |
| -D | It means to deactivate the DoS defense system. |
| -A | It means to activate the DoS defense system. |
| -s | It means to enable the defense function for a specific attack and set its parameter(s). |
| <i>ATTACK_F</i> | It means to specify the name of flooding attack(s) or portscan, e.g., synflood, udpflood, icmpflood, or postscan. |
| <i>THRESHOLD</i> | It means the packet rate (packet/second) that a flooding attack will be detected. Set a value larger than 20. |
| <i>TIMEOUT</i> | It means the time (seconds) that a flooding attack will be blocked. Set a value larger than 5. |
| -a | It means to enable the defense function for all attacks listed in <i>ATTACK_0</i> . |
| -e | It means to enable defense function for a specific attack(s). |
| <i>ATTACK_0</i> | It means to specify a name of the following attacks: ip_option, tcp_flag, land, teardrop, smurf, pingofdeath, traceroute, icmp_frag, syn_frag, unknow_proto, fraggle. |
| -d | It means to disable the defense function for a specific attack(s). |

Example

```

>dos -A
The Dos Defense system is Activated
>dos -s synflood 50 10
Synflood is enabled! Threshold=50 <pke/sec> timeout=10 <pke/sec>

```

Telnet Command: exit

Type this command will leave telnet window.

Telnet Command: Internet

This command allows you to configure detailed settings for WAN connection.

internet *-W n -M n [-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---|--|
| <i>-M n</i> | M means to set Internet Access Mode (Mandatory) and n means different modes (represented by 0 – 3) n=0: Offline n=1: PPPoE n=2: Dynamic IP n=3: Static IP |
| <i><command><parameter> ...]</i> | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| <i>-S <isp name></i> | It means to set ISP Name (max. 23 characters). |
| <i>-P <on/off></i> | It means to enable PPPoE Service. |
| <i>-u <username></i> | It means to set username (max. 49 characters) for Internet accessing. |
| <i>-p <password></i> | It means to set password (max. 49 characters) for Internet accessing. |
| <i>-a n</i> | It means to set PPP Authentication Type and n means different types (represented by 0-1). n=0: PAP/CHAP (this is default setting) n=1: PAP Only |
| <i>-t n</i> | It means to set connection duration and n means different conditions. n=-1: Always-on n=1 ~ 999: Idle time for offline (default 180 seconds) |
| <i>-i <ip address></i> | It means that <i>PPPoE server</i> will assign an IP address specified here for CPE (PPPoE client). If you type 0.0.0.0 as the <ip address>, ISP will assign suitable IP address for you. However, if you type an IP address here, the router will use that one as a fixed IP. |
| <i>-w <ip address></i> | It means to assign WAN IP address for such connection. Please type an IP address here for WAN port. |
| <i>-n <netmask></i> | It means to assign netmask for WAN connection. You have to type 255.255.255.xxx (x is changeable) as the netmask for WAN port. |
| <i>-g <gateway></i> | It means to assign gateway IP for such WAN connection. |
| <i>-V</i> | It means to view Internet Access profile. |

Example

```
>internet -M 1 -S tcom -u username -p password -a 0 -t -1 -i 0.0.0.0
WAN1 Internet Mode set to PPPoE/PPPoA
WAN1 ISP Name set to tcom
WAN1 Username set to username
WAN1 Password set successful
WAN1 PPP Authentication Type set to PAP/CHAP
WAN1 Idle timeout set to always-on
WAN1 Gateway IP set to 0.0.0.0
> internet -V
WAN1 Internet Mode:PPPoE
ISP Name: tcom
Username: username
Authentication: PAP/CHAP
Idle Timeout: -1
WAN IP: Dynamic IP
```

Telnet Command: ip 2ndsubnet

This command allows users to enable or disable the IP routing subnet for your router.

ip 2ndsubnet <Enable/Disable>

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Enable</i> | Enable the function. |
| <i>Disable</i> | Disable the function. |

Example

```
> ip 2ndsubnet enable
2nd subnet enabled!
```

Telnet Command: ip 2ndaddr

This command allows users to set the second IP address for your router.

ip 2ndaddr ?

ip 2ndaddr <2nd subnet IP address>

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| ? | Display an IP address which allows users set as the public subnet IP address. |
| <i>2nd subnet IP address</i> | Specify an IP address. The system will set the one that you specified as the second subnet IP address. |

Example

```

> ip 2ndaddr ?
% ip addr <2nd subnet IP address>
% Now: 192.168.2.1

> ip 2ndaddr 192.168.2.5
% Set 2nd subnet IP address done !!!

```

Telnet Command: ip 2ndmask

This command allows users to set the subnet mask for second subnet mask of your router.

ip 2ndmask ?

ip 2ndmask <public subnet mask>

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| ? | Display an IP address which allows users set as the public subnet mask. |
| <i>public subnet IP address</i> | Specify a subnet mask. The system will set the one that you specified as the public subnet mask. |

Example

```

> ip 2ndmask ?
% ip 2ndmask <2nd subnet mask>
% Now: 255.255.255.0

> ip 2ndmask 255.255.0.0
% Set 2nd subnet mask done !!!

```

Telnet Command: ip aux

This command is used for configuring WAN IP Alias.

ip aux add [IP] [Join to NAT Pool]

ip aux remove [index]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| <i>add</i> | It means to create a new WAN IP address. |
| <i>remove</i> | It means to delete an existed WAN IP address. |
| <i>IP</i> | It means the auxiliary WAN IP address. |
| <i>Join to NAT Pool</i> | 0 (disable) or 1 (enable). |
| <i>index</i> | Type the index number of the table displayed on your screen. |

Example

```

> ip aux add 192.168.1.65 1
% 192.168.1.65 has added in index 2.

```

```

> ip aux ?%% ip aux add [IP] [Join to NAT Pool]
%% ip aux remove [Index]

%%      Where IP = Auxiliary WAN IP Address.
%%      Join to NAT Pool = 0 or 1.
%%      Index = The Index number of table.

Now auxiliary WAN1 IP Address table:
Index no.      Status  IP address      NAT IP pool
-----
  1            Disable 0.0.0.0 Yes
  2            Enable 192.168.1.65   Yes

```

When you type *ip aux?*, the current auxiliary WAN IP Address table will be shown as the following:

| Index no. | Status | IP address | IP pool |
|-----------|--------|--------------|---------|
| 1 | Enable | 172.16.3.229 | Yes |
| 2 | Enable | 172.16.3.56 | No |
| 3 | Enable | 172.16.3.113 | No |

Telnet Command: ip addr

This command allows users to set/add a specified LAN IP your router.

ip addr [*IP address*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>IP address</i> | It means the LAN IP address. |

Example

```

>ip addr 192.168.50.1
% Set IP address OK !!!

```

Note: When the LAN IP address is changed, the start IP address of DHCP server are still the same. To make the IP assignment of the DHCP server being consistent with this new IP address (they should be in the same network segment), the IP address of the PC must be fixed with the same LAN IP address (network segment) set by this command for accessing into the web user interface of the router. Later, modify the start addresses for the DHCP server.

Telnet Command: ip nmask

This command allows users to set/add a specified netmask for your router.

ip nmask [*IP netmask*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>IP netmask</i> | It means the netmask of LAN IP. |

Example

```
> ip nmask 255.255.0.0
% Set IP netmask OK !!!
```

Telnet Command: ip arp

ARP displays the matching condition for IP and MAC address.

ip arp add [*IP address*] [*MAC address*] [*LAN or WAN*]

ip arp del [*IP address*] [*LAN or WAN*]

ip arp flush

ip arp status

ip arp accept [*0/1/2/3/4/5status*]

ip arp setCacheLife [*time*]

In which, **arp add** allows users to add a new IP address into the ARP table; **arp del** allows users to remove an IP address; **arp flush** allows users to clear arp cache; **arp status** allows users to review current status for the arp table; **arp accept** allows to accept or reject the source /destination MAC address; **arp setCacheLife** allows users to configure the duration in which ARP caches can be stored on the system. If **ip arp setCacheLife** is set with “60”, it means you have an ARP cache at 0 second. Sixty seconds later without any ARP messages received, the system will think such ARP cache is expired. The system will issue a few ARP request to see if this cache is still valid.

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <i>IP address</i> | It means the LAN IP address. |
| <i>MAC address</i> | It means the MAC address of your router. |
| <i>LAN or WAN</i> | It indicates the direction for the arp function. |
| <i>0/1/2/3/4/5</i> | 0: disable to accept illegal source mac address 1: enable to accept illegal source mac address 2: disable to accept illegal dest mac address 3: enable to accept illegal dest mac address 4: Decline VRRP mac into arp table 5: Accept VRRP mac into arp table status: display the setting status. |
| <i>Time</i> | Available settings will be 10, 20, 30,....2550 seconds. |

Example

```
> ip arp accept status
Accept illegal source mac arp: disable

Accept illegal dest mac arp: disable

Accept VRRP mac into arp table: disable
> ip arp status
[ARP Table]
  Index IP Address      MAC Address      Netbios Name
  1    192.168.1.113    00-05-5D-E4-D8-EE  A1000351
```

Telnet Command: ip dhcpc

This command is available for WAN DHCP.

ip dhcpc *option*

ip dhcpc *option -h/l*

ip dhcpc *option -d [idx]*

ip dhcpc *option -e [1 or 0] -w [wan unumber] -c [option number] -v [option value]*

ip dhcpc *option -e [1 or 0] -w [wan unumber] -c [option number] -x "[option value]"*

ip dhcpc *option -u [idx unumber]*

ip dhcpc *release*

ip dhcpc *renew*

ip dhcpc *status*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| <i>option</i> | It is an optional setting for DHCP server. -h: display usage -l: list all custom set DHCP options -d: delete custom dhcp client option by index number -e: enable/disable option feature, 1:enable, 0:disable -w: set WAN number (e.g., 1=WAN1) -c: set option number: 0~255 -v: set option value by string -x: set option value by raw byte (hex) -u: update by index number |
| <i>release</i> | It means to release current WAN IP address. |
| <i>renew</i> | It means to renew the WAN IP address and obtain another new one. |
| <i>status</i> | It displays current status of DHCP client. |

Example

```

>ip dhcp status
I/F#3 DHCP Client Status:

DHCP Server IP      : 172.16.3.7
WAN Ipm             : 172.16.3.40
WAN Netmask         : 255.255.255.0
WAN Gateway         : 172.16.3.1
Primary DNS         : 168.95.192.1
Secondary DNS       : 0.0.0.0
Leased Time         : 259200
Leased Time T1     : 129600
Leased Time T2     : 226800
Leased Elapsed     : 259194
Leased Elapsed T1  : 129594
Leased Elapsed T2  : 226794

```

Telnet Command: ip ping

This command allows users to ping IP address of WAN1/WAN2/PVC3/PVC4/PVC5 for verifying if the WAN connection is OK or not.

ip ping [*IP address*] [*WAN1 /PVC3/PVC4/PVC5*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| <i>IP address</i> | It means the WAN IP address. |
| <i>WAN1/PVC3/PVC4/PVC5</i> | It means the WAN port /PVC that the above IP address passes through. |

Example

```

>ip ping 172.16.3.229 WAN1
Pinging 172.16.3.229 with 64 bytes of Data:
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Packets: Sent = 5, Received = 5, Lost = 0 <0% loss>

```

Telnet Command: ip tracert

This command allows users to trace the routes from the router to the host.

ip tracert [*Host/IP address*] [*WAN1/WAN2*] [*Udp/Icmp*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <i>IP address</i> | It means the target IP address. |
| <i>WAN1/WAN2</i> | It means the WAN port that the above IP address passes through. |
| <i>Udp/Icmp</i> | It means the UDP or ICMP. |

Example

```
>ip tracert 22.128.2.62 WAN1
Traceroute to 22.128.2.62, 30 hops max
 1  172.16.3.7  10ms
 2  172.16.1.2  10ms
 3  Request Time out.
 4  168.95.90.66  50ms
 5  211.22.38.134  50ms
 6  220.128.2.62  50ms
Trace complete
```

Telnet Command: ip telnet

This command allows users to access specified device by telnet.

ip telnet [*IP address*][*Port*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <i>IP address</i> | Type the WAN or LAN IP address of the remote device. |
| <i>Port</i> | Type a port number (e.g., 23). Available settings: 0 ~65535. |

Example

```
> ip telnet 172.17.3.252 23
>
```

Telnet Command: ip rip

This command allows users to set the RIP (routing information protocol) of IP.

ip rip [*0/1/2*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| <i>0/1/2</i> | 0 means disable; 1 means first subnet and 2 means second subnet. |

Example

```
> ip rip 1
%% Set RIP 1st subnet.
```

Telnet Command: ip wanrip

This command allows users to set the RIP (routing information protocol) of WAN IP.

`ip wanrip [ifno] -e [0/1]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <i>ifno</i> | It means the connection interface. 1: WAN1,2: WAN2, 3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5 Note: PVC3 ~PVC5 are virtual WANs. |
| <i>-e</i> | It means to disable or enable RIP setting for specified WAN interface. 1: Enable the function of setting RIP of WAN IP. 0: Disable the function. |

Example

```
> ip wanrip ?
Valid ex:ip wanrip <ifno> -e <0/1>
<ifno> 1: WAN1,2: WAN2
       3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5
-e <0/1> 0: disable, 1: enable
Now status:
WAN[1] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[2] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[3] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[4] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[5] Rip Protocol disable
> ip wanrip 5 -e 1
> ip wanrip ?
Valid ex:ip wanrip <ifno> -e <0/1>
<ifno> 1: WAN1,2: WAN2
       3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5
-e <0/1> 0: disable, 1: enable
Now status:
WAN[1] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[2] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[3] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[4] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[5] Rip Protocol enable
>
```

Telnet Command: ip route

This command allows users to set static route.

ip route add [*dst*] [*netmask*][*gateway*][*ifno*][*rtype*]

ip route del [*dst*] [*netmask*][*rtype*]

ip route status

ip route cnc

ip route default [*wan1/wan2/off/?*]

ip route clean [*1/0*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <i>add</i> | It means to add an IP address as static route. |
| <i>del</i> | It means to delete specified IP address. |
| <i>status</i> | It means current status of static route. |
| <i>dst</i> | It means the IP address of the destination. |
| <i>netmask</i> | It means the netmask of the specified IP address. |
| <i>gateway</i> | It means the gateway of the connected router. |
| <i>ifno</i> | It means the connection interface. 3=WAN1 5=WAN3,6=WAN4,7=WAN5 However, WAN3, WAN4, WAN5 are router-borne WANs |
| <i>rtype</i> | It means the type of the route. default : default route; static: static route. |
| <i>cnc</i> | It means current IP range for CNC Network. |
| <i>default</i> | Set WAN1/WAN2/off as current default route. |
| <i>clean</i> | Clean all of the route settings. 1: Enable the function. 0: Disable the function. |

Example

```
> ip route add 172.16.2.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.2.4 3 static
> ip route status

Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private
C~      192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 is directly connected, LAN1
S       172.16.2.0/ 255.255.255.0 via 172.16.2.4, WAN1
```

Telnet Command: ip igmp_proxy

This command allows users to enable/disable igmp proxy server.

ip igmp_proxy set

ip igmp_proxy reset

ip igmp_proxy wan

ip igmp_proxy t_home[on/off/show/help]

ip igmp_proxy query

ip igmp_proxy ppp [0/1]

ip igmp_proxy status

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>set</i> | It means to enable proxy server. |
| <i>reset</i> | It means to disable proxy server. |
| <i>wan</i> | It means to specify WAN interface for IGMP service. |
| <i>t_home</i> | It means to specify t_home proxy server for using. |
| <i>On/off/show/help</i> | It means to turn on/off/display or get more information of the T_home service. |
| <i>query</i> | It means to set IGMP general query interval. The default value is 125000 ms. |
| <i>ppp</i> | 0 – No need to set IGMP with PPP header. 1 – Set IGMP with PPP header. |
| <i>status</i> | It means to display current status for proxy server. |

Example

```
> ip igmp t_home on
%T-Home Setting:
%T-Home Service is turned on.
%WAN1 : Enabled, connection type: PPPoE, without tag for ADSL
%WAN5 : Enabled, connection type: DHCP, tag: 8
%: PVC4(WAN5) is bound to PVC0(WAN1), protocol=MPoA 1483 Bridge
%IGMP Proxy Interface: WAN5(PVC)
%WAN5 for Router-borne Application/ IPTV on/off: ON
> ip igmp_proxy query 130000
This command is for setting IGMP General Query Interval
The default value is 125000 ms
Current Setting is:130000 ms
>
```

Telnet Command: ip wanaddr

This command is used to configure WAN IP address.

ip wanaddr [*IP address*] [<*IP netmask*] [*gateway ip*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>IP address</i> | Type the IP address for WAN. |
| <i>IP netmask</i> | Type the net mask for the IP address. |
| <i>gateway ip</i> | Type the IP address of the gateway. |

Example

```
> ip wanaddr 172.16.3.221 255.255.0.0 172.16.3.2
% Set WAN IP address OK !!!
```

Telnet Command: ip wanttr

This command is used to setup the time to return WAN1 from backup WAN.

ip wanttr [*time in seconds*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>time in seconds</i> | The available range is 0 ~600 (seconds). |

Example

```
> ip ip wanttr 500
>
```

Telnet Command: ip dmz

Specify MAC address of certain device as the DMZ host.

ip dmz [*mac*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| <i>mac</i> | It means the MAC address of the device that you want to specify |

Example

```
>ip dmz ?
% ip dmz <mac>, now : 00-00-00-00-00-00
> ip dmz 11-22-33-44-55-66
> ip dmz ?
% ip dmz <mac>, now : 11-22-33-44-55-66
>
```

Telnet Command: ip session

This command allows users to set maximum session limit number for the specified IP; set message for exceeding session limit and set how many seconds the IP session block works.

ip session *on*

ip session *off*

ip session *default [num]*

ip session *defaultp2p [num]*

ip session *status*

ip session *show*

ip session *timer [num]*

ip session [*block/unblock*][*IP*]

ip session [*add/del*][*IP1-IP2*][*num*][*p2pnum*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <i>on</i> | It means to turn on session limit for each IP. |
| <i>off</i> | It means to turn off session limit for each IP. |
| <i>default [num]</i> | It means to set the default number of session num limit. |
| <i>Defaultp2p [num]</i> | It means to set the default number of session num limit for p2p. |
| <i>status</i> | It means to display the current settings. |
| <i>show</i> | It means to display all session limit settings in the IP range. |
| <i>timer [num]</i> | It means to set when the IP session block works. The unit is second. |
| [<i>block/unblock</i>][<i>IP</i>] | It means to block/unblock the specified IP address. Block: The IP cannot access Internet through the router. Unblock: The specified IP can access Internet through the router. |
| <i>add</i> | It means to add the session limits in an IP range. |
| <i>del</i> | It means to delete the session limits in an IP range. |
| <i>IP1-IP2</i> | It means the range of IP address specified for this command. |
| <i>num</i> | It means the number of the session limits, e.g., 100. |
| <i>p2pnum</i> | It means the number of the session limits, e.g., 50 for P2P. |

Example

```
>ip session default 100
> ip session add 192.168.1.5-192.168.1.100 100 50
> ip session on
> ip session status
```

```

IP range:
  192.168.1.5 - 192.168.1.100 : 100

Current ip session limit is turn on

Current default session number is 100

```

Telnet Command: ip bandwidth

This command allows users to set maximum bandwidth limit number for the specified IP.

ip bandwidth *on*

ip bandwidth *off*

ip bandwidth *default [tx_rate][rx_rate]*

ip bandwidth *status*

ip bandwidth *show*

ip bandwidth [*add/del*] [*IP1-IP2*][*tx*][*rx*][*shared*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <i>on</i> | It means to turn on the IP bandwidth limit. |
| <i>off</i> | It means to turn off the IP bandwidth limit. |
| <i>default [tx_rate][rx_rate]</i> | It means to set default tx and rx rate of bandwidth limit. The range is from 0 – 65535 Kpbs. |
| <i>status</i> | It means to display the current settings. |
| <i>show</i> | It means to display all the bandwidth limits settings within the IP range. |
| <i>add</i> | It means to add the bandwidth within the IP range. |
| <i>del</i> | It means to delete the bandwidth within the IP range. |
| <i>IP1-IP2</i> | It means the range of IP address specified for this command. |
| <i>tx</i> | It means to set transmission rate for bandwidth limit. |
| <i>rx</i> | It means to set receiving rate for bandwidth limit. |
| <i>shared</i> | It means that the bandwidth will be shared for the IP range. |

Example

```

> ip bandwidth default 200 800
> ip bandwidth add 192.168.1.50-192.168.1.100 10 60
> ip bandwidth status

IP range:
  192.168.1.50 - 192.168.1.100 : Tx:10K Rx:60K

Current ip Bandwidth limit is turn off

```

```
Auto adjustment is off
```

Telnet Command: ip bindmac

This command allows users to set IP-MAC binding for LAN host.

ip bindmac *on*

ip bindmac *off*

ip bindmac *strict_on*

ip bindmac *show*

ip bindmac *add [IP][MAC][Comment]*

ip bindmac *del [IP]/all*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <i>on</i> | It means to turn on IP bandmac policy. Even the IP is not in the policy table, it can still access into network. |
| <i>off</i> | It means to turn off all the bindmac policy. |
| <i>strict_on</i> | It means that only those IP address in IP bindmac policy table can access into network. |
| <i>show</i> | It means to display the IP address and MAC address of the pair of binded one. |
| <i>add</i> | It means to add one ip bindmac. |
| <i>del</i> | It means to delete one ip bindmac. |
| <i>IP</i> | It means to type the IP address for binding with specified MAC address. |
| <i>MAC</i> | It means to type the MAC address for binding with the IP address specified. |
| <i>Comment</i> | It means to type words as a brief description. |
| <i>All</i> | It means to delete all the IP bindmac settings. |

Example

```
> ip bindmac add 192.168.1.46 00:50:7f:22:33:55 just for test
> ip bindmac show
ip bind mac function is turned ON
IP : 192.168.1.46 bind MAC : 00-50-7f-22-33-55 Comment : just
```

Telnet Command: ip maxnouser

This command is used to set the maximum number of NAT users.

ip maxnouser *user no*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| <i>User no</i> | A number specified here means the total NAT users that Vigor router supports. 0 – It means no limitation. |

Example

```
> ip maxnouser 100
% Max NAT user = 100
```

Telnet Command: ip6 addr

This command allows users to set the IPv6 address for your router.

ip6 addr -s [*prefix*] [*prefix-length*] [*LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#*]

ip6 addr -d [*prefix*] [*prefix-length*] [*LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#*]

ip6 addr -a [*LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <i>-s</i> | It means to add a static ipv6 address. |
| <i>-d</i> | It means to delete an ipv6 address. |
| <i>-a</i> | It means to show current address(es) status. |
| <i>-u</i> | It means to show only unicast addresses. |
| <i>prefix</i> | It means to type the prefix number of IPv6 address. |
| <i>prefix-length</i> | It means to type a fixed value as the length of the prefix. |
| <i>LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#</i> | It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address. |

Example

```
> ip6 addr -a
LAN
Unicast Address:
FE80::250:7FFF:FE00:0/64 (Link)
Multicast Address:
FF02::2
FF02::1:FF00:0
FF02::1
```

Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp req_opt

This command is used to configure option-request settings for DHCPv6 client.

ip6 dhcp req_opt [LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#] [-<command> <parameter>| ...]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i>req_opt</i> | It means option-request. |
| <i>LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#</i> | It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address. |
| [<command> <parameter> ...] | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| <i>-a</i> | It means to show current DHCPv6 status. |
| <i>-s</i> | It means to ask the SIP. |
| <i>-S</i> | It means to ask the SIP name. |
| <i>-d</i> | It means to ask the DNS setting. |
| <i>-D</i> | It means to ask the DNS name. |
| <i>-n</i> | It means to ask NTP. |
| <i>-i</i> | It means to ask NIS. |
| <i>-I</i> | It means to ask NIS name. |
| <i>-p</i> | It means to ask NISP. |
| <i>-P</i> | It means to ask NISP name. |
| <i>-b</i> | It means to ask BCMCS. |
| <i>-B</i> | It means to ask BCMCS name. |
| <i>-r</i> | It means to ask refresh time. |
| <i>Parameter</i> | 1: the parameter related to the request will be displayed. 0: the parameter related to the request will not be displayed. |

Example

```
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -S 1
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -r 1
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -a
% Interface WAN2 is set to request following DHCPv6 options:
%   sip name
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp client

This command allows you to use DHCPv6 protocol to obtain IPv6 address from server.

ip6 dhcp client [WAN1/WAN2/iface#] [-<command> <parameter>| ...]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
|-----------|-------------|

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i>client</i> | It means the dhcp client settings. |
| [<command> <parameter> ...] | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| -a | It means to show current DHCPv6 status. |
| -p [IAID] | It means to request identity association ID for Prefix Delegation. |
| -n [IAID] | It means to request identity association ID for Non-temporary Address. |
| -c [parameter] | It means to send rapid commit to server. |
| -i [parameter] | It means to send information request to server. |
| -e[parameter] | It means to enable or disable the DHCPv6 client. 1: Enable 0: Disable |

Example

```

> ip6 dhcp client WAN2 -p 2008::1
> ip6 dhcp client WAN2 -a
  Interface WAN2 has following DHCPv6 client settings:
    DHCPv6 client enabled
    request IA_PD whose IAID equals to 2008
> ip6 dhcp client WAN2 -n 1023456
> ip6 dhcp client WAN2 -a
  Interface WAN2 has following DHCPv6 client settings:
    DHCPv6 client enabled
    request IA_NA whose IAID equals to 2008
> system reboot

```

Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp server

This command allows you to configure DHCPv6 server.

ip6 dhcp server [-<command> <parameter>| ...]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i>server</i> | It means the dhcp server settings. |
| [<command> <parameter> ...] | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| -a | It means to show current DHCPv6 status. |
| -<pool_min_addr> | It means to set the start IPv6 address of the address pool. |
| -x<pool_max_addr> | It means to set the end IPv6 address of the address pool. |
| -d<addr> | It means to set the first DNS IPv6 address. |

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code>-D<addr></code> | It means to set the second DNS IPv6 address. |
| <code>-c<parameter></code> | It means to send rapid commit to server. 1: Enable 0: Disable |
| <code>-e<parameter></code> | It means to enable or disable the DHCPv6 server. 1: Enable 0: Disable |

Example

```

> ip6 dhcp server -d FF02::1
> ip6 dhcp server -i ff02::1
> ip6 dhcp server -x ff02::3
> ip6 dhcp server -a
% Interface LAN has following DHCPv6 server settings:
%   DHCPv6 server disabled
%   maximum address of the pool: FF02::3
%   minimum address of the pool: FF02::1
%   1st DNS IPv6 Addr: FF02::1

```

Telnet Command: ip6 internet

This command allows you to configure settings for accessing Internet.

ip6 internet *-W n -M n [-<command> <parameter> / ...]*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <i>-W n</i> | W means to set WAN interface and n means different selections. Default is WAN1. n=1: WAN1 n=2: WAN2 n=3: WAN3 . . n=X: WANx |
| <i>-M n</i> | M means to set Internet Access Mode (Mandatory) and n means different modes (represented by 0 – 5) n= 0: Offline, n=1: PPP, n=2: TSPC, n=3: AICCU, n=4: DHCPv6, n=5: Static n=6:6in4-Static n=7:6rd |
| <i>[<command> <parameter>/...]</i> | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| <i>-m n</i> | It means to set IPv6 MTU. N = any value (0 means “unspecified”). |
| <i>-u <username></i> | It means to set Username. <username>= type a name as the username (maximum 63 characters). |
| <i>-p <password></i> | It means to set Password. <password> = type a password (maximum 63 characters). |
| <i>-s <server></i> | It means to set Tunnel Server IP. <server>= IPv4 address or URL (maximum 63 characters). |
| <i>-d <server></i> | It means to set the primary DNS Server IP. <server>= type an IPv6 address for first DNS server. |
| <i>-D <server></i> | It means to set the secondary DNS Server IP. <server>= type an IPv6 address for second DNS server. |
| <i>-t <dhcp/ra/none></i> | It means to set IPv6 PPP WAN test mode for DHCP or RADVD. <dhcp/ra/none>= type IPv6 address. |

| | |
|----|--|
| -V | It means to view IPv6 Internet Access Profile. |
| -o | It means to set AICCU always on. 1=On, 0=Off |

Example

```
> ip6 internet -W 2 -M 2 -u 88886666 -p draytek123456 -s
amsterdam.freenet6.net
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> system reboot
```

Telnet Command: ip6 neigh

This command allows you to display IPv6 neighbour table.

ip6 neigh -s [*inet6_addr*] [*eth_addr*] [*LAN/WAN1/WAN2*]

ip6 neigh -d [*inet6_addr*] [*LAN/WAN1/WAN2*]

ip6 neigh -a [*inet6_addr*] [*-N LAN/WAN1/WAN2*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| -s | It means to add a neighbour. |
| -d | It means to delete a neighbour. |
| -a | It means to show neighbour status. |
| <i>inet6_addr</i> | Type an IPv6 address |
| <i>eth_addr</i> | Type submask address. |
| <i>LAN/WAN1/WAN2</i> | Specify an interface for the neighbor. |

Example

```
> ip6 neigh -s 2001:2222:3333::1111 00:50:7F:11:ac:22:WAN2
Neighbour 2001:2222:3333::1111 successfully added!
> ip6 neigh -a

I/F ADDR                                MAC                                STATE
-----
LAN FF02::1                             33-33-00-00-00-01                CONNECTED
WAN2 2001:5C0:1400:B::10B8              00-00-00-00-00-00                CONNECTED
WAN2 2001:2222:3333::1111              00-00-00-00-00-00                CONNECTED
WAN2 2001:2222:6666::1111              00-00-00-00-00-00                CONNECTED
WAN2 ::                                  00-00-00-00-00-00                CONNECTED
LAN ::                                    NONE
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 pneigh

This command allows you to add a proxy neighbour.

```
ip6 pneigh -s inet6_addr [LAN/WAN1/WAN2]
```

```
ip6 pneigh -d inet6_addr [LAN/WAN1/WAN2]
```

```
ip6 pneigh -a [inet6_addr] [-N LAN/WAN1/WAN2]
```

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| -s | It means to add a proxy neighbour. |
| -d | It means to delete a proxy neighbour. |
| -a | It means to show proxy neighbour status. |
| inet6_addr | Type an IPv6 address |
| LAN/WAN1/WAN2 | Specify an interface for the proxy neighbor. |

Example

```
> ip6 neigh -s FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:300 LAN
%      Neighbour FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:300 successfully added!
```

Telnet Command: ip6 route

This command allows you to

```
ip6 route -s [prefix] [prefix-length] [gateway] [LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#> [-D]
```

```
ip6 route -d [prefix] [prefix-length]
```

```
ip6 route -a [LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#]
```

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| -s | It means to add a route. |
| -d | It means to delete a route. |
| -a | It means to show the route status. |
| -D | It means that such route will be treated as the default route. |
| prefix | It means to type the prefix number of IPv6 address. |
| prefix-length | It means to type a fixed value as the length of the prefix. |
| gateway | It means the gateway of the router. |
| LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface# | It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address. |

Example

```
> ip6 route -s FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:500 16 FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:100 LAN
%      Route FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:500/16 successfully added!
> ip6 route -a LAN
```

| PREFIX/PREFIX-LEN | _EXPIRES_ | _NEXT-HOP_ | I/F | METRIC | STATE | FLAGS |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-----|--------|-------------|-------|
| FE80::/128 | 0 | :: | LAN | 0 | UNICAST | U |
| FE80::250:7FFF:FE00:0/128 | 0 | :: | LAN | 0 | UNICAST | U |
| FE80::/64 | 0 | | LAN | 256 | UNICAST | U |
| FE80::/16 | 0 | FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:100 | LAN | 1024 | UNICAST | UGA |
| FF02::1/128 | 0 | FF02::1 | LAN | 0 | UNICAST | UC |
| FF00::/8 | 0 | | LAN | 256 | UNICAST | U |
| ::/0 | 0 | | LAN | -1 | UNREACHABLE | ! |

Telnet Command: ip6 ping

This command allows you to ping an IPv6 address or a host.

ip6 ping [*IPV6 address/Host*] [*LAN/WAN1/WAN2*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <i>IPV6 address/Host</i> | It means to specify the IPv6 address or host for ping. |
| <i>LAN/WAN1/WAN2</i> | It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address. |

Example

```
> ip6 ping 2001:4860:4860::8888 WAN2

Pinging 2001:4860:4860::8888 with 64 bytes of Data:

Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms

Packets: Sent = 5, Received = 5, Lost = 0 <% loss>
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 tracert

This command allows you to trace the routes from the router to the host.

ip6 tracert [*IPv6 address/Host*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <i>IPv6 address/Host</i> | It means to specify the IPv6 address or host for ping. |

Example

```
> ip6 tracert 2001:4860:4860::8888
traceroute to 2001:4860:4860::8888, 30 hops max through protocol ICMP
 1 2001:5C0:1400:B::10B8      340 ms
 2 2001:4DE0:1000:A22::1     330 ms
 3 2001:4DE0:A::1           330 ms
 4 2001:4DE0:1000:34::1     340 ms
 5 2001:7F8:1: :A501:5169:1 330 ms
 6 2001:4860::1:0:4B3       350 ms
 7 2001:4860::8:0:2DAF      330 ms
 8 2001:4860::2:0:66E      340 ms
 9 Request timed out.      *
10 2001:4860:4860::8888    350 ms
Trace complete.
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 tspan

This command allows you to display TSPC status.

ip6 tspan [*ifno*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <i>ifno</i> | It means the connection interface. Ifno=1 (means WAN1) Info=2 (means WAN2) |

Example

```
> ip6 tspan 2
Local Endpoint v4 Address : 111.243.177.223
Local Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b9
Router DNS name : 88866666.broker.freenet6.net
Remote Endpoint v4 Address :81.171.72.11
Remote Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b8
Tspan Prefixlen : 56
Tunnel Broker: Amsterdam.freenet.net

Status: Connected
```

```
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 radvd

This command allows you to enable or disable RADVD server.

ip6 radvd *-s* [*1/0*] [*lifetime*]

ip6 radvd *-V*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| <i>-s</i> | It means to enable or disable the default lifetime of the RADVD server. 1: Enable the RADVD server. 0: Disable the RADVD server. |
| <i>Lifetime</i> | It means to set the lifetime. The lifetime associated with the default router in units of seconds. It's used to control the lifetime of the prefix. The maximum value corresponds to 18.2 hours. A lifetime of 0 indicates that the router is not a default router and should not appear on the default router list. Type the number (unit: second) you want. |
| <i>-V</i> | It means to show the RADVD configuration. |
| <i>-r</i> | It means RA default test. |
| <i>-r [num]</i> | It means RA test for item [num]. |

Example

```
> ip6 radvd -s 1 1800
> ip6 radvd -V
% IPv6 Radvd Config:
Radvd : Enable, Default Lifetime : 1800 seconds
```

Telnet Command: ip6 mngt

This command allows you to manage the settings for access list.

ip6 mngt list

ip6 mngt list [*add*<*index*> <*prefix*> <*prefix-length*>|*remove* <*index*>|*flush*]

ip6 mngt status

ip6 mngt [*http/telnet/ping*] [*on/off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <i>list</i> | It means to show the setting information of the access list. |
| <i>status</i> | It means to show the status of IPv6 management. |
| <i>add</i> | It means to add an IPv6 address which can be used to execute |

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| | management through Internet. |
| <i>index</i> | It means the number (1, 2 and 3) allowed to be configured for IPv6 management. |
| <i>prefix</i> | It means to type the IPv6 address which will be used for accessing Internet. |
| <i>prefix-length</i> | It means to type a fixed value as the length of the prefix. |
| <i>remove</i> | It means to remove (delete) the specified index number with IPv6 settings. |
| <i>flush</i> | It means to clear the IPv6 access table. |
| <i>http/telnet/ping</i> | These protocols are used for accessing Internet. |
| <i>on/off</i> | It means to enable (on) or disable (off) the Internet accessing through http/telnet/ping. |

Example

```

> ip6 mngt list add 1 FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:1010 128
> ip6 mngt list add 2 FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:1020 128
> ip6 mngt list add 3 FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:2080 128
> ip6 mngt list
% IPv6 Access List :
Index   IPv6 Prefix      Prefix Length
=====
1       FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:1010      128
2       FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:1020      128
3       FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:2080      128

> ip6 mngt status
% IPv6 Remote Management :
telnet : off,  http : off,    ping : off

```

Telnet Command: ip6 online

This command allows you to check the online status of IPv6 LAN /WAN.

ip6 online [*ifno*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| <i>ifno</i> | It means the connection interface. 0=LAN1 1=WAN1 2=WAN2 |

Example

```

> ip6 online 0
% LAN 1 online status :
% Interface : UP

```

```

% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
% Tx packets = 408, Tx bytes = 32160, Rx packets = 428, Rx bytes =
33636

> ip6 online 1
% WAN 1 online status :
% IPv6 WAN1 Disabled
% Default Gateway : ::
% UpTime : 0:00:00
% Interface : DOWN
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
% Tx packets = 0, Tx bytes = 0, Rx packets = 0, Rx bytes = 0

```

Telnet Command: ip6 aiccu

This command allows you to set IPv6 settings for WAN interface with connection type of AICCU.

ip6 aiccu [*ifno*]

ip6 aiccu subnet [*add* <*ifno*> <*prefix*> <*prefix-length*>|*remove* <*ifno*>|*show* <*info*>]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <i>ifno</i> | It means the connection interface. 1=WAN1 2=WAN2 |
| <i>add</i> | It means to add an IPv6 address which can be used to execute management through Internet. |
| <i>prefix</i> | It means to type the IPv6 address which will be used for accessing Internet. |
| <i>prefix-length</i> | It means to type a fixed value as the length of the prefix. |
| <i>remove</i> | It means to remove (delete) the specified index number with IPv6 settings. |
| <i>show</i> | It means to display the AICCU status. |

Example

```

> ip6 aiccu subnet add 2 2001:1111:0000::1111 64
> ip6 aiccu 2
Status: Connecting

>ip6 aiccu subnet show 2
IPv6 WAN2 AICCU Subnet Prefix Config:
2001:1111::1111/64
>

```

Telnet Command: ip6 ntp

This command allows you to set IPv6 settings for NTP (Network Time Protocols) server.

ip6 ntp -h

ip6 ntp -v

ip6 ntp -p [0/1]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| -h | It is used to display the usage of such command. |
| -v | It is used to show the NTP state. |
| -p <0/1> | It is used to specify NTP server for IPv6. 0 – Auto 1 – First Query IPv6 NTP Server. |

Example

```
> ip6 ntp -p 1
% Set NTP Priority: IPv6 First
```

Telnet Command: ipf view

IPF users to view the version of the IP filter, to view/set the log flag, to view the running IP filter rules.

ipf view [-VcdhrtzZ]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| -V | It means to show the version of this IP filter. |
| -c | It means to show the running call filter rules. |
| -d | It means to show the running data filter rules. |
| -h | It means to show the hit-number of the filter rules. |
| -r | It means to show the running call and data filter rules. |
| -t | It means to display all the information at one time. |
| -z | It means to clear a filter rule's statistics. |
| -Z | It means to clear IP filter's gross statistics. |

Example

```
> ipf view -V -c -d
ipf: IP Filter: v3.3.1 (1824)
Kernel: IP Filter: v3.3.1
Running: yes
Log Flags: 0x80947278 = nonip
```

| |
|---------------------------------------|
| Default: pass all, Logging: available |
|---------------------------------------|

Telnet Command: ipf set

This command is used to set general rule for firewall.

ipf set [*Options*]

ipf set [*SET_NO*] **rule** [*RULE_NO*] [*Options*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <i>Options</i> | There are several options provided here, such as -v , -c [<i>SET_NO</i>], -d [<i>SET_NO</i>],... and etc. |
| <i>SET_NO</i> | It means to specify the index number (from 1 to 12) of filter set. |
| <i>RULE_NO</i> | It means to specify the index number (from 1 to 7) of filter rule set. |
| -v | Type “-v” to view the configuration of general set. |
| -c [<i>SET_NO</i>] | It means to setup Call Filter, e.g., -c 2 . The range for the index number you can type is “0” to “12” (0 means “disable”). |
| -d [<i>SET_NO</i>] | It means to setup Data Filter, e.g., -d 3 . The range for the index number you can type is “0” to “12” (0 means “disable”). |
| -l [<i>VALUE</i>] | It means to setup Log Flag, e.g., -l 2 Type “0” to disable the log flag. Type “1” to display the log of passed packet. Type “2” to display the log of blocked packet. Type “3” to display the log of non-matching packet. |
| -p [<i>VALUE</i>] | It means to setup actions for packet not matching any rule, e.g., -p 1 Type “0” to let all the packets pass; Type “1” to block all the packets. |
| -M [<i>P2P_NO</i>] | It means to configure IM/P2P for the packets not matching with any rule, e.g., -M 1 Type “0” to let all the packets pass; Type “1” to block all the packets. |
| -U [<i>URL_NO</i>] | It means to configure URL content filter for the packets not matching with any rule, e.g., -U 1 Type “0” to let all the packets pass; Type “1” to block all the packets. |
| -a [<i>AD_SET</i>] | It means to configure the advanced settings. |
| -f [<i>VALUE</i>] | It means to accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets. |
| -E [<i>VALUE</i>] | It means to set the maximum count for session limitation. |
| -F [<i>VALUE</i>] | It means to configure the load-balance policy. |

-Q [VALUE]

It means to set the QoS class.

Example

```
> ipf set -c 1 #set call filter start from set 1
Setting saved.

> ipf set -d 2 #set data filter start from set 2
Setting saved.
> ipf set -v

Call Filter: Enable (Start Filter Set = 1)
Data Filter: Enable (Start Filter Set = 2)
Log Flag   : None

Actions for packet not matching any rule:
Pass or Block   : Pass
CodePage       : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Max Sessions Limit: 60000
Current Sessions : 0
Mac Bind IP    : Non-Strict
QOS Class     : None
APP Enforcement : None
URL Content Filter: None
Load-Balance policy : Auto-select

-----
CodePage           : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size       : 65535
Session timeout   : 1440
DrayTek Banner    : Enable
-----

Apply IP filter to VPN incoming packets      : Enable
Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets: Enable
-----

Strict Security Checking
  [ ] APP Enforcement
>
```

Telnet Command: ipf rule

This command is used to set filter rule for firewall.

ipf rule s r [-<command> <parameter> | ...

ipf rule s r -v

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| s | Such word means Filter Set, range form 1~12. |
| r | Such word means Filter Rule, range from 1~7. |
| <Command><parameter> | The following lists all of the available commands with |

| | |
|---|--|
| > | parameters. |
| -e | It means to enable or disable the rule setting. 0- disable 1- enable |
| -s o:g <obj> | It means to specify source IP object and IP group. o - indicates "object". g - indicates "group". obj - indicates index number of object or index number of group. Available settings range from 1-192. For example, "-s g 3" means the third source IP group profile. |
| -s u <Address Type> <Start IP Address> <End IP Address> / <Address Mask> | It means to configure source IP address including address type, start IP address, end IP address and address mask. u – It means "user defined". <i>Address Type</i> - Type the number (representing different address type). 0 - Subnet Address 1 - Single Address 2 - Any Address 3 - Range Address Example: Set Subnet Address => -s u 0 192.168.1.10 255.255.255.0 Set Single Address => -s u 1 192.168.1.10 Set Any Address => -s u 2 Set Range Address => -s u 3 192.168.1.10 192.168.1.15 |
| -d u <Address Type> <Start IP Address> <End IP Address> / <Address Mask> | It means to configure destination IP address including address type, start IP address, end IP address and address mask. u – It means "user defined". <i>Address Type</i> - Type the number (representing different address type). 0 - Subnet Address 1 - Single Address 2 - Any Address 3 - Range Address Example: Set Subnet Address => -d u 0 192.168.1.10 255.255.255.0 Set Single Address => -d u 1 192.168.1.10 Set Any Address => -d u 2 Set Range Address => -d u 3 192.168.1.10 192.168.1.15 |
| -d o:g <obj> | It means to specify destination IP object and IP group. o – indicates "object". g – indicates "group" <obj>- indicates index number of object or index number of group. Available settings range from 1-192. For example, "-d g 1" means the first destination IP group profile. |

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>-S o:g <obj></i> | It means to specify Service Type object and IP group. o – indicates “object”. g – indicates “group” <obj> – indicates index number of object or index number of group. Available settings range from 1-96. For example, “-S 0 1” means the first service type object profile. |
| <i>-S u <protocol> <source_port_value> <destination_port_vale></i> | It means to configure advanced settings for Service Type, such as protocol and port range. u – it means “user defined”. <protocol> – It means TCP(6),UDP(17), TCP/UDP(255). <source_port_value> – 1 – Port OP, range is 0-3. 0:=, 1:!=, 2:>, 3:< 3 – Port range of the Start Port Number, range is 1-65535. 5 – Port range of the End Port Number, range is 1-65535. <destination_port_value>: 2 – Port OP, range is 0-3, 0:==, 1:!=, 2:>, 3:< 4 – Port range of the Start Port Number, range is 1-65535. 6 – Port range of the End Port Number, range is 1-65535. |
| <i>-F</i> | It means the Filter action you can specify. 0 –Pass Immediately, 1 – Block Immediately, 2 – Pass if no further match, 3 – Block if no further match. |
| <i>-q</i> | It means the classification for QoS. 1– Class 1, 2 – Class 2, 3 – Class 3, 4 – Other |
| <i>-l</i> | It means load balance policy. Such function is used for “debug” only. |
| <i>-E</i> | It means to enable APP Enforcement. |
| <i>-a<index></i> | It means to specify which APP Enforcement profile will be applied. <index> – Available settings range from 0 ~ 32. “0” means no profile will be applied. |
| <i>-u<index></i> | It means to specify which URL Content Filter profile will be applied. <index> – Available settings range from 0 ~ 8. “0” means no profile will be applied. |
| <i>-c</i> | It means to set code page. Different number represents |

| | |
|--|---|
| | <p>different code page.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. ANSI(1250)-Central Europe 2. ANSI(1251)-Cyrillic 3. ANSI(1252)-Latin I 4. ANSI(1253)-Greek 5. ANSI(1254)-Turkish 6. ANSI(1255)-Hebrew 7. ANSI(1256)-Arabic 8. ANSI(1257)-Baltic 9. ANSI(1258)-Viet Nam 10. OEM(437)-United States 11. OEM(850)-Multilingual Latin I 12. OEM(860)-Portuguese 13. OEM(861)-Icelandic 14. OEM(863)-Canadian French 15. OEM(865)-Nordic 16. ANSI/OEM(874)-Thai 17. ANSI/OEM(932)-Japanese Shift-JIS 18. ANSI/OEM(936)-Simplified Chinese GBK 19. ANSI/OEM(949)-Korean 20. ANSI/OEM(950)-Traditional Chinese Big5 |
| -C <Windows Size> <Session_Timeout> | <p>It means to set Window size and Session timeout (Minute). <Windows Size> - Available settings range from 1 ~ 65535. <Session_Timeout> - Make the best utilization of network resources.</p> |
| -v | <p>It is used to show current filter/rule settings.</p> |

Example

```

> ipf rule 2 1 -e 1 -s "o 1" -d "o 2" -S "o 1" -F 2
> ipf rule 2 1 -v

Filter Set 2 Rule 1:

Status : Enable
Comments: xNetBios -> DNS
Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: <null>, <null>, <null>, <null>

Direction      : LAN -> WAN
Source IP      : Group1,
Destination IP: Group2,
Service Type   : TCP/UDPGROUP1,
Fragments     : Don't Care

Pass or Block      : Block Immediately

```

```

Branch to Other Filter Set: None
Max Sessions Limit      : 32000
Current Sessions       : 0
Mac Bind IP            : Non-Strict
Qos Class              : None
APP Enforcement        : None
URL Content Filter     : None
Load-Balance policy    : Auto-select
Log                   : Disable
-----
CodePage               : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size           : 65535
Session timeout       : 1440
DrayTek Banner        : Enable
-----
---
Strict Security Checking
  [ ]APP Enforcement

```

Telnet Command: ipf flowtrack

This command is used to set and view flowtrack sessions.

ipf flowtrack set [-re]

ipf flowtrack view [-f]

ipf flowtrack [-i][-p][-t]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| -r | It means to refresh the flowtrack. |
| -e | It means to enable or disable the flowtrack. 0: Disable 1: Enable |
| -f | It means to show the sessions state of flowtrack. If you do not specify any IP address, then all the session state of flowtrack will be displayed. |
| -b | It means to show all of IP sessions state. |
| - i [IP address] | It means to specify IP address (e.g., -i 192.168.2.55). |
| -p[value] | It means to type a port number (e.g., -p 1024). Available settings are 0 ~ 65535. |
| -t [value] | It means to specify a protocol (e.g., -t tcp). Available settings include: tcp |

```
udp
icmp
```

Example

```
>ipf flowtrack set -r
Refresh the flowstate ok
> ipf flowtrack view -f
Start to show the flowtrack sessions state:

ORIGIN>> 192.168.1.11:59939 ->      8.8.8.8: 53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>      8.8.8.8: 53 -> 192.168.1.11:59939 ,ifno=3
          proto=17, age=93023180(3920), flag=203
ORIGIN>> 192.168.1.11:15073 ->      8.8.8.8: 53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>      8.8.8.8: 53 -> 192.168.1.11:15073 ,ifno=3
          proto=17, age=93025100(2000), flag=203
ORIGIN>> 192.168.1.11: 7247 ->      8.8.8.8: 53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>      8.8.8.8: 53 -> 192.168.1.11: 7247 ,ifno=3
          proto=17, age=93020100(7000), flag=203
End to show the flowtrack sessions state
```

Telnet Command: Log

This command allows users to view log for WAN interface such as call log, IP filter log, flush log buffer, etc.

```
log [-cfhiptwx?] [-F a|c|f|w]
```

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| -c | It means to show the latest call log. |
| -f | It means to show the IP filter log. |
| -F | It means to show the flush log buffer. a: flush all logs c: flush the call log f: flush the IP filter log w: flush the WAN log |
| -h | It means to show this usage help. |
| -p | It means to show PPP/MP log. |
| -t | It means to show all logs saved in the log buffer. |
| -w | It means to show WAN log. |
| -x | It means to show packet body hex dump. |

Example

```
> log -w
25:36:25.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
```

```

Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
Your IP       = 0.0.0.0
Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:33.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
Your IP       = 0.0.0.0
Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:41.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
Your IP       = 0.0.0.0
Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:49.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
Your IP       = 0.0.0.0
Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:57.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
Your IP       = 0.0.0.0
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]
---
```

Telnet Command: mngt ftpport

This command allows users to set FTP port for management.

mngt ftpport [*FTP port*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| <i>FTP port</i> | It means to type the number for FTP port. The default setting is 21. |

Example

```

> mngt ftpport 21
% Set FTP server port to 21 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt httpport

This command allows users to set HTTP port for management.

mngt httpport [*Http port*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <i>Http port</i> | It means to enter the number for HTTP port. The default setting is 80. |

Example

```
> mngt httpport 80
% Set web server port to 80 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt httpsport

This command allows users to set HTTPS port for management.

mngt httpsport [*Https port*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <i>Https port</i> | It means to type the number for HTTPS port. The default setting is 443. |

Example

```
> mngt httpsport 443
% Set web server port to 443 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt telnetport

This command allows users to set telnet port for management.

mngt telnetport [*Telnet port*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <i>Telnet port</i> | It means to type the number for telnet port. The default setting is 23. |

Example

```
> mngt telnetport 23
% Set Telnet server port to 23 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt sshport

This command allows users to set SSH port for management.

mngt sshport [*ssh port*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| <i>ssh port</i> | It means to type the number for SSH port. The default setting is 22. |

Example

```
> mngt sshport 23
% Set ssh port to 23 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt ftpserver

This command can enable/disable FTP server.

mngt ftpserver [*enable*]

mngt ftpserver [*disable*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <i>enable</i> | It means to activate FTP server function. |
| <i>disable</i> | It means to inactivate FTP server function. |

Example

```
> mngt ftpserver enable
%% FTP server has been enabled.

> mngt ftpserver disable
%% FTP server has been disabled.
```

Telnet Command: mngt noping

This command allows users to reject or accept PING packets from the Internet.

mngt noping [*on*]

mngt noping [*off*]

mngt noping [*viewlog*]

mngt noping [*clearlog*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| <i>on</i> | It means to reject all PING packets from the Internet. |
| <i>off</i> | It means to accept all PING packets from the Internet. |
| <i>viewlog</i> | It means to display a log of ping action, including source MAC and source IP. |
| <i>clearlog</i> | It means to remove the log of ping action. |

Example

```
> mngt noping off
No Ping Packet Out is OFF!!
```

Telnet Command: mngt defenseworm

This command can block specified port for passing through the router.

mngt defenseworm *[on]*

mngt defenseworm *[off]*

mngt defenseworm *[add port]*

mngt defenseworm *[del port]*

mngt defenseworm *[viewlog]*

mngt defenseworm *[clearlog]*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| <i>on</i> | It means to activate the function of defense worm packet out. |
| <i>off</i> | It means to inactivate the function of defense worm packet out. |
| <i>add port</i> | It means to add a new TCP port for block. |
| <i>del port</i> | It means to delete a TCP port for block. |
| <i>viewlog</i> | It means to display a log of defense worm packet, including source MAC and source IP. |
| <i>clearlog</i> | It means to remove the log of defense worm packet. |

Example

```
> mngt defenseworm add 21
Add TCP port 21
Block TCP port list: 135, 137, 138, 139, 445, 21
> mngt defenseworm del 21
Delete TCP port 21
Block TCP port list: 135, 137, 138, 139, 445
```

Telnet Command: mngt rmtcfg

This command can allow the system administrators to login from the Internet. By default, it is not allowed.

mngt rmtcfg *[status]*

mngt rmtcfg *[enable]*

mngt rmtcfg *[disable]*

mngt rmtcfg *[http/https/ftp/telnet/ssh/tr069] [on/off]*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|---|
| <i>status</i> | It means to display current setting for your reference. |
| <i>enable</i> | It means to allow the system administrators to login from the Internet. |

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>disable</i> | It means to deny the system administrators to login from the Internet. |
| <i>http/https/ftp/telnet/ssh/tr069</i> | It means to specify one of the servers/protocols for enabling or disabling. |
| <i>on/off</i> | on – enable the function. off – disable the function. |

Example

```

> mngt rmtcfg ftp on
Enable server fail
Remote configure function has been disabled
please enable by enter mngt rmtcfg enable

> mngt rmtcfg enable
%% Remote configure function has been enabled.
> mngt rmtcfg ftp on
%% FTP server has been enabled.

```

Telnet Command: mngt lanaccess

This command allows users to manage accessing into Vigor router through LAN port.

mngt lanaccess -e [0/1] -s [value] -i [value]

mngt lanaccess -f

mngt lanaccess -d

mngt lanaccess -v

mngt lanaccess -h

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| -e[0/1] | It means to enable/disable the function. 0-disable the function. 1-enable the function. |
| -s[value] | It means to specify service offered. Available values include: FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, TELNET, SSH, None, All |
| -i[value] | It means the interface which is allowed to access. Available values include: LAN2~LAN6, DMZ, IP Routed Subnet, None, All Note: LAN1 is always allowed for accessing into the router. |
| -f | It means to flush all of the settings. |
| -d | It means to restore the factory default settings. |
| -v | It means to view current settings. |
| -h | It means to get the usage of such command. |

Example

```
> mngt lanaccess -e 1
> mngt lanaccess -s FTP,TELNET
> mngt lanaccess -i LAN3
>> mngt lanaccess -v
Current LAN Access Control Setting:
* Enable:Yes
* Service:
  - FTP:Yes
  - HTTP:No
  - HTTPS:No
  - TELNET:Yes
  - SSH:No
* Subnet:
  - LAN 2: disabled
  - LAN 3: enabled
  - LAN 4: disabled
  - LAN 5: disabled
  - LAN 6: disabled
  - DMZ: disabled
  - IP Routed Subnet: disabled
```

Note: the settings do NOT apply to LAN1, LAN1 is always allowed to access the router

Telnet Command: mngt echoicmp

This command allows users to activate/inactivate echo ICMP packet function.

mngt echoicmp *[enable]*

mngt echoicmp *[disable]*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| <i>enable</i> | It means to activate the function of echo ICMP packet. |
| <i>disable</i> | It means to inactivate the function of echo ICMP packet. |

Example

```
> mngt echoicmp enable
%% Echo ICMP packet enabled.
```

Telnet Command: mngt accesslist

This command allows you to specify that the system administrator can login from a specific host or network. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed.

mngt accesslist *list*

mngt accesslist *add [index][ip addr][mask]*

mngt accesslist *remove [index]*

mngt accesslist flush

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <i>list</i> | It can display current setting for your reference. |
| <i>add</i> | It means adding a new entry. |
| <i>index</i> | It means to specify the number of the entry. |
| <i>ip addr</i> | It means to specify an IP address. |
| <i>mask</i> | It means to specify the subnet mask for the IP address. |
| <i>remove</i> | It means to delete the selected item. |
| <i>flush</i> | It means to remove all the settings in the access list. |

Example

```
> mngt accesslist add 1 192.168.1.89 255.255.255.0
%% Set OK.
> mngt accesslist list
%% Access list :
  Index IP address      Subnet mask
=====
  1      192.168.1.89    255.255.255.0
```

Telnet Command: mngt snmp

This command allows you to configure SNMP for management.

mngt snmp [-<command> <parameter> / ...]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| [<command> <parameter>/...] | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| -e <1/2> | 1: Enable the SNMP function. 2: Disable the SNMP function. |
| -g<Community name> | It means to set the name for getting community by typing a proper character. (max. 23 characters) |
| -s <Community name> | It means to set community by typing a proper name. (max. 23 characters) |
| -m <IP address> | It means to set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IPv4 address to specify certain host. |
| -t <Community name> | It means to set trap community by typing a proper name. (max. 23 characters) |
| -n <IP address> | It means to set the IPv4 address of the host that will receive the trap community. |

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <code>-T <seconds></code> | It means to set the trap timeout <0~999>. |
| <code>-V</code> | It means to list SNMP setting. |

Example

```
> mngt snmp -e 1 -g draytek -s DK -m 192.168.1.1 -t trapcom -n 10.20.3.40
-T 88
SNMP Agent Turn on!!!
Get Community set to draytek
Set Community set to DK
Manager Host IP set to 192.168.1.1
Trap Community set to trapcom
Notification Host IP set to 10.20.3.40
Trap Timeout set to 88 seconds
```

Telnet Command: msubnet switch

This command is used to configure multi-subnet.

msubnet switch [2/3/4/5/6][On/Off]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| On/Off | On means turning on the subnet for the specified LAN interface. Off means turning off the subnet. |

Example

```
> msubnet switch 2 On
% LAN2      Subnet On!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet addr

This command is used to configure IP address for the specified LAN interface.

msubnet addr [2/3/4/5/6][IP address]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
|-----------|-------------|

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| <i>IP address</i> | Type the private IP address for the specified LAN interface. |

Example

```
> msubnet addr 2 192.168.5.1
% Set LAN2 subnet IP address done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet nmask

This command is used to configure net mask address for the specified LAN interface.

msubnet nmask [2/3/4/5/6][*IP address*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| <i>IP address</i> | Type the subnet mask address for the specified LAN interface. |

Example

```
> msubnet nmask 2 255.255.0.0
% Set LAN2 subnet mask done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet status

This command is used to display current status of subnet.

msubnet status [2/3/4/5/6]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
|-----------|-------------|

| | |
|-----------|---|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
|-----------|---|

Example

```
> msubnet status 2
% LAN2      Off: 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0, PPP Start IP: 0.0.0.60
% DHCP server: Off
% Dhcp Gateway: 0.0.0.0, Start IP: 0.0.0.10, Pool Count: 50
```

Telnet Command: msubnet dhcps

This command allows you to enable or disable DHCP server for the subnet.

msubnet dhcps [2/3/4/5/6][On/Off]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| On/Off | On means enabling the DHCP server for the specified LAN interface. Off means disabling the DHCP server. |

Example

```
> msubnet dhcps 3 off
% LAN3      Subnet DHCP Server disabled!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet nat

This command is used to configure the subnet for NAT or Routing usage.

msubnet nat [2/3/4/5/6] [On/Off]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| | 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| <i>On/Off</i> | On – It means the subnet will be configured for NAT usage. Off - It means the subnet will be configured for Routing usage. |

Example

```
> > msubnet nat 2 off
% LAN2 Subnet is for Routing usage!
%Note: If you have multiple WAN connections, please be reminded to setup
a Load-Balance policy so that packets from this subnet will be forwarded
to the right WAN interface!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet gateway

This command is used to configure an IP address as the gateway used for subnet.

msubnet gateway [2/3/4] [Gateway IP]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| <i>Gateway IP</i> | Specify an IP address as the gateway IP. |

Example

```
> msubnet gateway 2 192.168.1.13
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Gateway IP done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet ipcnt

This command is used to defined the total number allowed for each LAN interface.

msubnet ipcnt [2/3/4] [IP counts]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
|-----------|-------------|

| | |
|------------------|---|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| <i>IP counts</i> | Specify a total number of IP address allowed for each LAN interface. The available range is from 0 to 220. |

Example

```
> msubnet ipcnt 2 15
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet talk

This command is used to establish a route between two LAN interfaces.

msubnet talk [*1/2/3/4/5/6*] [*1/2/3/4/5/6*] [*On/Off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <i>1/2/3/4/5/6</i> | It means LAN interface. 1=LAN1 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| <i>On/Off</i> | On – It means Off - It means |

Example

```
> msubnet talk 1 2 on
% Enable routing between LAN1          and LAN2          !

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> msubnet talk ?
% msubnet talk <1/2/3/4/5/6> <1/2/3/4/5/6> <On/Off>
% where 1:LAN1, 2:LAN2, 3:LAN3, 4:LAN4, 5:LAN5, 6:LAN6
% Now:
%           LAN1  LAN2  LAN3  LAN4  LAN5  LAN6
% LAN1           V
% LAN2           V    V
% LAN3                   V
```

```

% LAN4          V
% LAN5          V
% LAN6          V
>

```

Telnet Command: msubnet startip

This command is used to configure a starting IP address for DHCP.

msubnet startip [2/3/4/5/6] [Gateway IP]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| Gateway IP | Type an IP address as the starting IP address for a subnet. |

Example

```

> msubnet startip 2 192.168.2.90
%Set LAN2 Dhcp Start IP done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> msubnet startip ?
% msubnet startip <2/3/4/5/6> <Gateway IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.2.90; LAN3 192.168.3.10; LAN4 192.168.4.10; LAN5
192.168.5.1
0; LAN6 192.168.6.10

```

Telnet Command: msubnet pppip

This command is used to configure a starting IP address for PPP connection.

msubnet pppip [2/3/4/5/6] [Start IP]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| Start IP | Type an IP address as the starting IP address for PPP connection. |

Example

```
> msubnet pppip 2 192.168.2.250
% Set LAN2 PPP(IPCP) Start IP done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

> msubnet pppip ?
% msubnet pppip <2/3/4/5/6> <Start IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.2.250; LAN3 192.168.3.200; LAN4 192.168.4.200; LAN5
192.168.5.200; LAN6 192.168.6.200
```

Telnet Command: msubnet nodetype

This command is used to specify the type for node which is required by DHCP option.

msubnet nodetype [2/3/4/5/6][count]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| count | Choose the following number for specifying different node type. 1= B-node 2= P-node 4= M-node 8= H-node 0= Not specify any type for node. |

Example

```
>> msubnet nodetype ?
% msubnet nodetype <2/3/4/5/6> <count>
% Now: LAN2 0; LAN3 0; LAN4 0; LAN5 0; LAN6 0

% count: 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node

> msubnet nodetype 2 1
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Node Type done !!!

> msubnet nodetype ?
% msubnet nodetype <2/3/4/5/6> <count>
% Now: LAN2 1; LAN3 0; LAN4 0; LAN5 0; LAN6 0
```

```
% count: 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node
```

Telnet Command: msubnet primWINS

This command is used to configure primary WINS server.

msubnet primWINS [2/3/4/5/6] [WINS IP]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| WINS IP | Type the IP address as the WINS IP. |

Example

```
> > msubnet primWINS ?
% msubnet primWINS <2/3/4/5/6> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 0.0.0.0; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0; LAN5 0.0.0.0; LAN6
0.0.0.0

> msubnet primWINS 2 192.168.3.5
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Primary WINS IP done !!!

> msubnet primWINS ?
% msubnet primWINS <2/3/4/5/6> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.3.5; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0; LAN5 0.0.0.0; LAN6
0.0.0.0
```

Telnet Command: msubnet secWINS

This command is used to configure secondary WINS server.

msubnet secWINS [2/3/4/5/6] [WINS IP]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| 2/3/4/5/6 | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| WINS IP | Type the IP address as the WINS IP. |

Example

```
> > msubnet secWINS 2 192.168.3.89
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Secondary WINS IP done !!!

> msubnet secWINS ?
% msubnet secWINS <2/3/4/5/6> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.3.89; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0; LAN5 0.0.0.0;
LAN6 0.0.0.0
```

Telnet Command: msubnet tftp

This command is used to set TFTP server for multi-subnet.

msubnet tftp [*2/3/4/5/6*] [*TFTP server name*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>2/3/4/5/6</i> | It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 |
| <i>TFTP server name</i> | Type a name to indicate the TFTP server. |

Example

```
> msubnet tftp ?
% msubnet tftp <2/3/4/5/6> <TFTP server name>
% Now: LAN2
      LAN3
      LAN4
      LAN5
      LAN6

> msubnet tftp 2 publish
% Set LAN2 TFTP Server Name done !!!

> msubnet tftp ?
% msubnet tftp <2/3/4/5/6> <TFTP server name>
% Now: LAN2 publish
      LAN3
      LAN4
      LAN5
      LAN6
```

Telnet Command: msubnet mtu

This command allows you to configure MTU value for LAN/DMZ/IP Routed Subnet.

msubnet mtu [*interface*][*value*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <i>interface</i> | Available settings include LAN1~LAN6, IP_Routed_Subnet, and DMZ. |
| <i>value</i> | 1000 ~ 1508 (Bytes), default: 1500 (Bytes) |

Example

```

> msubnet mtu LAN1 1492
> msubnet mtu ?
Usage:

>msubnet mtu <interface> <value>

<interface>: LAN1~LAN6,IP_Routed_Subnet,DMZ
<value>:     1000 ~ 1508 (Bytes), default: 1500 (Bytes)

e.x: >msubnet mtu LAN1 1492

Current Settings:

LAN1 MTU:           1492 (Bytes)
LAN2 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
LAN3 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
LAN4 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
LAN5 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
LAN6 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
DMZ MTU:            1500 (Bytes)
IP Routed Subnet MTU: 1500 (Bytes)

```

Telnet Command: object ip obj

This command is used to create an IP object profile.

object ip obj setdefault

object ip obj INDEX -v

object ip obj INDEX -n NAME

object ip obj INDEX -i INTERFACE

object ip obj INDEX -s INVERT

object ip obj INDEX -a TYPE [START_IP] [END/MASK_IP]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>setdefault</i> | It means to return to default settings for all profiles. |
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means the index number of the specified object profile. |
| <i>-v</i> | It means to view the information of the specified object profile. Example: <i>object ip obj 1 -v</i> |
| <i>-n NAME</i> | It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object ip obj 9 -n bruce</i> |
| <i>-i INTERFACE</i> | It means to define an interface for the IP object. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN |

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| | INTERFACE=3, means WAN Example: <i>object ip obj 8 -i 0</i> |
| <i>-s INVERT</i> | It means to set invert selection for the object profile. INVERT=0, means disabling the function. INVERT=1, means enabling the function. Example: <i>object ip obj 3 -s 1</i> |
| <i>-a TYPE</i> | It means to set the address type and IP for the IP object profile. TYPE=0, means Mask TYPE=1, means Single TYPE=2, means Any TYPE=3, means Rang Example: <i>object ip obj 3 -a 2</i> |
| <i>[START_IP]</i> | When the TYPE is set with 2, you have to type an IP address as a starting point and another IP address as end point. Type an IP address. |
| <i>[END/MASK_IP]</i> | Type an IP address (different with START_IP) as the end IP address. |

Example

```
> object ip obj 1 -n marketing
> object ip obj 1 -a 1 192.168.1.45
> object ip obj 1 -v
IP Object Profile 1
Name      :[marketing]
Interface:[Any]
Address type:[single]
Start ip address:[192.168.1.45]
End/Mask ip address:[0.0.0.0]
Invert Selection:[0]
```

Telnet Command: object ip grp

This command is used to integrate several IP objects under an IP group profile.

object ip grp setdefault

object ip grp INDEX -v

object ip grp INDEX -n NAME

object ip grp INDEX -i INTERFACE

object ip grp INDEX -a IP_OBJ_INDEX

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <i>setdefault</i> | It means to return to default settings for all profiles. |
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means the index number of the specified group profile. |

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>-v</code> | It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: <code>object ip grp 1 -v</code> |
| <code>-n NAME</code> | It means to define a name for the IP group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <code>object ip grp 8 -n bruce</code> |
| <code>-i INTERFACE</code> | It means to define an interface for the IP group. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=2, means WAN Example: <code>object ip grp 3 -i 0</code> |
| <code>-a IP_OBJ_INDEX</code> | It means to specify IP object profiles for the group profile. Example: <code>:object ip grp 3 -a 1 2 3 4 5</code> The IP object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile. |

Example

```

> object ip grp 2 -n First
IP Group Profile 2
Name      :[First]
Interface:[Any]
Included ip object index:
[0:][0]
[1:][0]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

> object ip grp 2 -i 1
> object ip grp 2 -a 1 2
IP Group Profile 2
Name      :[First]
Interface:[Lan]
Included ip object index:
[0:][1]
[1:][2]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

```

Telnet Command: object ipv6 obj

This command is used to create an IP object profile.

object ip obj setdefault

object ip obj INDEX -v

object ip obj INDEX -n NAME

object ip obj INDEX -i INTERFACE

object ip obj INDEX -s INVERT

object ip obj INDEX -a TYPE [START_IP] [END/MASK_IP]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| <i>setdefault</i> | It means to return to default settings for all profiles. |
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means the index number of the specified object profile. |
| <i>-v</i> | It means to view the information of the specified object profile. Example: <i>object ip obj 1 -v</i> |
| <i>-n NAME</i> | It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object ip obj 9 -n bruce</i> |
| <i>-i INTERFACE</i> | It means to define an interface for the IP object. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=3, means WAN Example: <i>object ip obj 8 -i 0</i> |
| <i>-s INVERT</i> | It means to set invert selection for the object profile. INVERT=0, means disabling the function. INVERT=1, means enabling the function. Example: <i>object ip obj 3 -s 1</i> |
| <i>-a TYPE</i> | It means to set the address type and IP for the IP object profile. TYPE=0, means Mask TYPE=1, means Single TYPE=2, means Any TYPE=3, means Rang Example: <i>object ip obj 3 -a 2</i> |
| <i>[START_IP]</i> | When the TYPE is set with 2, you have to type an IP address as a starting point and another IP address as end point. Type an IP address. |
| <i>[END/MASK_IP]</i> | Type an IP address (different with START_IP) as the end IP address. |

Example

```
> object ip obj 1 -n marketing
> object ip obj 1 -a 1 192.168.1.45
> object ip obj 1 -v
IP Object Profile 1
Name      :[marketing]
Interface:[Any]
Address type:[single]
Start ip address:[192.168.1.45]
End/Mask ip address:[0.0.0.0]
Invert Selection:[0]
```

Telnet Command: object ipv6 grp

This command is used to integrate several IP objects under an IP group profile.

object ip grp setdefault

object ip grp *INDEX* -v

object ip grp *INDEX* -n *NAME*

object ip grp *INDEX* -i *INTERFACE*

object ip grp *INDEX* -a *IP_OBJ_INDEX*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>setdefault</i> | It means to return to default settings for all profiles. |
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means the index number of the specified group profile. |
| -v | It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: <i>object ip grp 1 -v</i> |
| -n <i>NAME</i> | It means to define a name for the IP group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object ip grp 8 -n bruce</i> |
| -i <i>INTERFACE</i> | It means to define an interface for the IP group. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=2, means WAN Example: <i>object ip grp 3 -i 0</i> |
| -a <i>IP_OBJ_INDEX</i> | It means to specify IP object profiles for the group profile. Example: <i>:object ip grp 3 -a 1 2 3 4 5</i> The IP object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile. |

Example

```
> object ip grp 2 -n First
IP Group Profile 2
```

```

Name      :[First]
Interface:[Any]
Included ip object index:
[0:][0]
[1:][0]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

> object ip grp 2 -i 1
> object ip grp 2 -a 1 2
IP Group Profile 2
Name      :[First]
Interface:[Lan]
Included ip object index:
[0:][1]
[1:][2]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

```

Telnet Command: **object service obj**

This command is used to create service object profile.

object service obj setdefault

object service obj *INDEX* -v

object service obj *INDEX* -n *NAME*

object service obj *INDEX* -p *PROTOCOL*

object service obj *INDEX* -s *CHK* [*START_P*] [*END_P*]

object service obj *INDEX* -d *CHK* [*START_P*] [*END_P*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| <i>setdefault</i> | It means to return to default settings for all profiles. |
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means the index number of the specified service object profile. |
| -v | It means to view the information of the specified service object profile. Example: <i>object service obj 1 -v</i> |
| -n <i>NAME</i> | It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. |

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| | Example: <i>object service obj 9 -n bruce</i> |
| <i>-i PROTOCOL</i> | <p>It means to define a PROTOCOL for the service object profile.</p> <p>PROTOCOL =0, means any PROTOCOL =1, means ICMP PROTOCOL =2, means IGMP PROTOCOL =6, means TCP PROTOCOL =17, means UDP PROTOCOL =255, means TCP/UDP</p> <p>Other values mean other protocols.</p> <p>Example: <i>object service obj 8 -i 0</i></p> |
| <i>CHK</i> | <p>It means the check action for the port setting.</p> <p>0=equal(=), when the starting port and ending port values are the same, it indicates one port; when the starting port and ending port values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type.</p> <p>1=not equal(!=), when the starting port and ending port values are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the starting port and ending port values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.</p> <p>2=larger(>), the port number greater than this value is available..</p> <p>3=less(<), the port number less than this value is available for this profile.</p> |
| <i>-s CHK [START_P] [END_P]</i> | <p>It means to set source port check and configure port range (1~65565) for TCP/UDP.</p> <p>END_P, type a port number to indicate source port.</p> <p>Example: <i>object service obj 3 -s 0 100 200</i></p> |
| <i>-d CHK [START_P] [END_P]</i> | <p>It means to set destination port check and configure port range (1~65565) for TCP/UDP.</p> <p>END_P, type a port number to indicate destination port.</p> <p>Example: <i>object service obj 3 -d 1 100 200</i></p> |

Example

```

> object service obj 1 -n limit
> object service obj 1 -p 255
> object service obj 1 -s 1 120 240
> object service obj 1 -d 1 200 220
> object service obj 1 -v
Service Object Profile 1
Name      :[limit]
Protocol:[255]
Source port check action:[!=]
Source port range:[120~240]
Destination port check action:[!=]
Destination port range:[200~220]

```

Telnet Command: object service grp

This command is used to integrate several service objects under a service group profile.

object service grp setdefault

object service grp INDEX -v

object service grp INDEX -n NAME

object service grp INDEX -a SER_OBJ_INDEX

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>setdefault</i> | It means to return to default settings for all profiles. |
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means the index number of the specified group profile. |
| <i>-v</i> | It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: <i>object service grp 1 -v</i> |
| <i>-n NAME</i> | It means to define a name for the service group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object service grp 8 -n bruce</i> |
| <i>-a SER_OBJ_INDEX</i> | It means to specify service object profiles for the group profile. Example: <i>:object service grp 3 -a 1 2 3 4 5</i> The service object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile. |

Example

```
> > object service grp 1 -n Grope_1
Service Group Profile 1
Name   :[Grope_1]
Included service object index:
[0:][0]
[1:][0]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

> object service grp 1 -a 1 2
Service Group Profile 1
Name   :[Grope_1]
Included service object index:
[0:][1]
[1:][2]
[2:][0]
```

```
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]
```

Telnet Command: object kw

This command is used to create keyword profile.

object kw obj setdefault

object kw obj show PAGE

object kw obj INDEX -v

object kw obj INDEX -n NAME

object kw obj INDEX -a CONTENTS

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <i>setdefault</i> | It means to return to default settings for all profiles. |
| <i>show PAGE</i> | It means to show the contents of the specified profile. PAGE: type the page number. |
| <i>show</i> | It means to show the contents for all of the profiles. |
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means the index number of the specified keyword profile. |
| <i>-v</i> | It means to view the information of the specified keyword profile. |
| <i>-n NAME</i> | It means to define a name for the keyword profile. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. |
| <i>-a CONTENTS</i> | It means to set the contents for the keyword profile. Example: <i>object kw obj 40 -a test</i> |

Example

```
> object kw obj 1 -n children
Profile 1
Name   :[children]
Content:[ ]
> object kw obj 1 -a gambling
Profile 1
Name   :[children]
Content:[gambling]

> object kw obj 1 -v
Profile 1
Name   :[children]
Content:[gambling]
```

Telnet Command: object fe

This command is used to create File Extension Object profile.

object fe show

object fe setdefault

object fe obj *INDEX* *-v*

object fe obj *INDEX* *-n* *NAME*

object fe obj *INDEX* *-e* *CATEGORY/FILE_EXTENSION*

object fe obj *INDEX* *-d* *CATEGORY/FILE_EXTENSION*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <i>show</i> | It means to show the contents for all of the profiles. |
| <i>setdefault</i> | It means to return to default settings for all profiles. |
| <i>INDEX</i> | It means the index number (from 1 to 8) of the specified file extension object profile. |
| <i>-v</i> | It means to view the information of the specified file extension object profile. |
| <i>-n</i> <i>NAME</i> | It means to define a name for the file extension object profile. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. |
| <i>-e</i> | It means to enable the specific CATEGORY or FILE_EXTENSION. |
| <i>-d</i> | It means to disable the specific CATEGORY or FILE_EXTENSION |
| <i>CATEGORY/FILE_EXTENSION</i> | <p>CATEGORY: Image, Video, Audio, Java, ActiveX, Compression, Execution</p> <p>Example: <i>object fe obj 1 -e Image</i></p> <p>FILE_EXTENSION: ".bmp", ".dib", ".gif", ".jpeg", ".jpg", ".jpg2", ".jp2", ".pct", ".pcx", ".pic", ".pict", ".png", ".tif", ".tiff", ".asf", ".avi", ".mov", ".mpe", ".mpeg", ".mpg", ".mp4", ".qt", ".rm", ".wmv", ".3gp", ".3gpp", ".3gpp2", ".3g2", ".aac", ".aiff", ".au", ".mp3", ".m4a", ".m4p", ".ogg", ".ra", ".ram", ".vox", ".wav", ".wma", ".class", ".jad", ".jar", ".jav", ".java", ".jcm", ".js", ".jse", ".jsp", ".jtk", ".alx", ".apb", ".axs", ".ocx", ".olb", ".ole", ".tlb", ".viv", ".vrm", ".ace", ".arj", ".bzip2", ".bz2", ".cab", ".gz", ".gzip", ".rar", ".sit", ".zip", ".bas", ".bat", ".com", ".exe", ".inf", ".pif", ".reg", ".scr"</p> <p>Example: <i>object fe obj 1 -e .bmp</i></p> |

Example

```

> object fe obj 1 -n music
> object fe obj 1 -e Audio
> object fe obj 1 -v
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[music]

-----
-----
Image category:
[ ].bmp [ ].dib [ ].gif [ ].jpeg [ ].jpg [ ].jpg2 [ ].jp2 [ ].pct
[ ].pcx [ ].pic [ ].pict [ ].png [ ].tif [ ].tiff
-----
-----
Video category:
[ ].asf [ ].avi [ ].mov [ ].mpe [ ].mpeg [ ].mpg [v].mp4 [ ].qt
[ ].rm [v].wmv [ ].3gp [ ].3gpp [ ].3gpp2 [ ].3g2
-----
-----
Audio category:
[v].aac [v].aiff [v].au [v].mp3 [v].m4a [v].m4p [v].ogg [v].ra
[v].ram [v].vox [v].wav [v].wma
-----
-----
Java category:
[ ].class [ ].jad [ ].jar [ ].jav [ ].java [ ].jcm [ ].js [ ].jse
[ ].jsp [ ].jtk
-----
-----
ActiveX category:
[ ].alx [ ].apb [ ].axs [ ].ocx [ ].olb [ ].ole [ ].tlb [ ].viv
[ ].vrm
-----
-----
Compression category:
[ ].ace [ ].arj [ ].bzip2 [ ].bz2 [ ].cab [ ].gz [ ].gzip [ ].rar
[ ].sit [ ].zip
-----
-----
Execution category:
[ ].bas [ ].bat [ ].com [ ].exe [ ].inf [ ].pif [ ].reg [ ].scr

```

Telnet Command: port

This command allows users to set the speed for specific port of the router.

port [*1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, wan2, all*] [*AN, 100F, 100H, 10F, 10H, status*]

port status

port sniff [*on, off, port, txrx, restart, status*]

port 802.1x [*enable, disable, status, addport, delport*]

port jumbo

port wanfc

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <i>1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, wan2, all</i> | It means the number of LAN port and WAN port. |
| <i>AN... 10H</i> | It means the physical type for the specific port. AN: auto-negotiate. 100F: 100M Full Duplex. 100H: 100M Half Duplex. 10F: 10M Full Duplex. 10H: 10M Half Duplex. |
| <i>status</i> | It means to view the Ethernet port status. |
| <i>sniff</i> <i>[on, off, port, txrx, restart, status]</i> | |
| <i>802.1x</i> [<i>enable, disable, status, addport, delport</i>] | |
| <i>wanfc</i> | It means to set WAN flow control. |

Example

```
> port 1 100F
%Set Port 1 Force speed 100 Full duplex OK !!!
```

Telnet Command: portmaptime

This command allows you to set a time of keeping the session connection for specified protocol.

portmaptime [*-<command>* *<parameter>* | ...]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <i>[<command></i> <i><parameter> ...]</i> | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| <i>-t <sec></i> | It means "TCP" protocol. |

| | |
|-----------|--|
| | <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP session timeout. |
| -u <sec> | It means “UDP” protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the UDP session timeout. |
| -i <sec> | It means “IGMP” protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the IGMP session timeout. |
| -w <sec> | It means “TCP WWW” protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP WWW session timeout. |
| -s <sec> | It means “TCP SYN” protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP SYN session timeout. |
| -f | It means to flush all portmaps (useful for diagnostics). |
| -l <List> | List all settings. |

Example

```

> portmuptime -t 86400 -u 300 -i 10
> portmuptime -l
----- Current setting -----
TCP Timeout      : 86400 sec.
UDP Timeout      : 300 sec.
IGMP Timeout     : 10 sec.
TCP WWW Timeout  : 60 sec.
TCP SYN Timeout  : 60 sec.

```

Telnet Command: prn

This command allows you to view current status (interface and driver) of USB printer.

prn status

prn debug

Example

```

> prn status
Interface: USB bus 2.0
Printer: NotReady

> prn debug
conn[0] :
none
conn[1] :
none
conn[2] :
none
conn[3] :
none
LPD_data_total=0

usb1p_ptr=0

```

Telnet Command: qos setup

This command allows user to set general settings for QoS.

qos setup [-<command> <parameter> /...]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| [<command> <parameter>/...] | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| -h | Type it to display the usage of this command. |
| -m <mode> | It means to define which traffic the QoS control settings will apply to and enable QoS control. 0: disable. 1: in, apply to incoming traffic only. 2: out, apply to outgoing traffic only. 3: both, apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic. Default is enable (for outgoing traffic). |
| -i <bandwidth> | It means to set inbound bandwidth in kbps (Ethernet WAN only) The available setting is from 1 to 100000. |
| -o <bandwidth> | It means to set outbound bandwidth in kbps (Ethernet WAN only). The available setting is from 1 to 100000. |
| -r <index:ratio> | It means to set ratio for class index, in %. |
| -u <mode> | It means to enable bandwidth control for UDP. 0: disable 1: enable Default is disable. |
| -p <ratio> | It means to enable bandwidth limit ratio for UDP. |
| -t <mode> | It means to enable/disable Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize. 0: disable 1: enable |
| -V | Show all the settings. |
| -D | Set all to factory default (for all WANs). |
| [...] | It means that you can type in several commands in one line. |

Example

```
> qos setup -m 3 -i 9500 -o 8500 -r 3:20 -u 1 -p 50 -t 1

WAN1 QOS mode is both
Wan 1 is XDSL model ,don,t need to set up
Wan 1 is XDSL model ,don,t need to set up
```

```
WAN1 class 3 ratio set to 20
WAN1 udp bandwidth control set to enable
WAN1 udp bandwidth limit ratio set to 50
WAN1 Outbound TCP ACK Prioritizel set to enable
QoS WAN1 set complete; restart QoS
>
```

Telnet Command: qos class

This command allows user to set QoS class.

```
qos class -c [no] [-a/e/d] [no][-<command> <parameter> | ... ]
```

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| [<command> <parameter> ...] | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| -h | Type it to display the usage of this command. |
| -c <no> | Specify the index number for the class. Available value for <no> contains 1, 2 and 3. The default setting is class 1. |
| -n <name> | It means to type a name for the class. |
| -a | It means to add rule for specified class. |
| -e <no> | It means to edit specified rule. <no>: type the index number for the rule. |
| -d <no> | It means to delete specified rule. <no>: type the index number for the rule. |
| -m <mode> | It means to enable or disable the specified rule. 0: disable, 1: enable |
| -l <addr> | Set the local address. <i>addr1</i> – It means Single address. Please specify the IP address directly, for example, “-l 172.16.3.9”. <i>addr1:addr2</i> – It means Range address. Please specify the IP addresses, for example, “-l 172.16.3.9: 172.16.3.50.” <i>addr1:subnet</i> – It means the subnet address with start IP address. Please type the subnet and the IP address, for example, “-l 172.16.3.9:255.255.0.0”.0 <i>any</i> – It means Any address. Simple type “-l” to specify any address for this command. |
| -r <addr> | Set the remote address. <i>addr1</i> – It means Single address. Please specify the IP address directly, for example, “-l 172.16.3.9”. <i>addr1:addr2</i> – It means Range address. Please specify the IP addresses, for example, “-l 172.16.3.9: 172.16.3.50.” <i>addr1:subnet</i> – It means the subnet address with start IP address. Please type the subnet and the IP address, for example, “-l 172.16.3.9:255.255.0.0”.0 <i>any</i> – It means Any address. Simple type “-l” to specify any address for this command. |
| -p <DSCP id> | Specify the ID. |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code>-s <Service type></code> | Specify the service type by typing the number. The available types are listed as below: 1:ANY 2:DNS 3:FTP 4:GRE 5:H.323 6:HTTP 7:HTTPS 8:IKE 9:IPSEC-AH 10:IPSEC-ESP 11:IRC 12:L2TP 13:NEWS 14:NFS 15:NNTP 16:PING 17:POP3 18:PPTP 19:REAL-AUDIO 20:RTSP 21:SFTP 22:SIP 23:SMTP 24:SNMP 25:SNMP-TRAPS 26:SQL-NET 27:SSH 28:SYSLOG 29:TELNET 30:TFTP |
| <code>-S <d/s></code> | Show the content for specified DSCP ID/Service type. |
| <code>-V <1/2/3></code> | Show the rule in the specified class. |
| <code>[...]</code> | It means that you can type in several commands in one line. |

Example

```
> qos class -c 2 -n draytek -a -m 1 -l 192.168.1.50:192.168.1.80

Following setting will set in the class2
class 2 name set to draytek
Add a rule in class2
Class2 the 1 rule enabled
Set local address type to Range, 192.168.1.50:192.168.1.80
```

Telnet Command: qos type

This command allows user to configure protocol type and port number for QoS.

qos type [`-a <service name>` | `-e <no>` | `-d <no>`].

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>-a <name></code> | It means to add rule. |
| <code>-e <no></code> | It means to edit user defined service type. “no” means the index number. Available numbers are 1~40. |
| <code>-d <no></code> | It means to delete user defined service type. “no” means the index number. Available numbers are 1~40. |
| <code>-n <name></code> | It means the name of the service. |
| <code>-t <type></code> | It means protocol type. 6: tcp(default) 17: udp 0: tcp/udp <1~254>: other |
| <code>-p <port></code> | It means service port. The typing format must be [start:end] (ex., 510:330). |
| <code>-l</code> | List user defined types. “no” means the index number. Available numbers are 1~40. |

Example

```
> qos type -a draytek -t 6 -p 510:1330

service name set to draytek
service type set to 6:TCP
Port type set to Range
Service Port set to 510 ~ 1330
>
```

Telnet Command: quit

This command can exit the telnet command screen.

Telnet Command: show lan

This command displays current status of LAN IP address settings.

Example

```
> show lan
The LAN settings:
      ip          mask      dhcp  star_ip          pool  gateway
-----
[V]LAN1 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.1.10    200
192.168.1.1
[X]LAN2 192.168.2.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.2.10    100
192.168.2.1
[X]LAN3 192.168.3.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.3.10    100
192.168.3.1
[X]LAN4 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.4.10    100
192.168.4.1
[X]LAN5 192.168.5.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.5.10    100
192.168.5.1
[X]LAN6 192.168.6.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.6.10    100
192.168.6.1
[X]Route 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 0.0.0.0      0 192.168.0.1
```

Telnet Command: show dmz

This command displays current status of DMZ host.

Example

```
> show dmz
%      WAN1 DMZ mapping status:
Index  Status  WAN1 aux IP    Private IP
-----
1      Disable 172.16.3.221
2      Disable 192.168.1.65
```

Telnet Command: show dns

This command displays current status of DNS setting

Example

```
> show dns
%%     Domain name server settings:
%      Primary DNS: [Not set]
%      Secondary DNS: [Not set]
```

Telnet Command: show openport

This command displays current status of open port setting.

Example

```
> show openport
%%     Openport settings:
Index  Status  Comment          Local IP Address
*****
No data entry.
```

Telnet Command: show nat

This command displays current status of NAT.

Example

```
> show nat
Port Redirection Running Table:

Index  Protocol  Public Port  Private IP      Private Port
1      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
2      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
3      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
4      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
5      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
6      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
7      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
8      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
9      0          0           0.0.0.0         0
10     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
11     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
12     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
13     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
14     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
15     0          0           0.0.0.0         0
```

| | | | | |
|----|---|---|---------|---|
| 16 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 17 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 18 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 19 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 20 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |

--- MORE --- ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]

Telnet Command: show portmap

This command displays the table of NAT Active Sessions.

Example

```
> show portmap
-----
Private_IP:Port Pseudo_IP:Port Peer_IP:Port [Timeout/Protocol/Flag]
-----
```

Telnet Command: show pmtime

This command displays the reuse time of NAT session.

Level0: It is the default setting.

Level1: It will be applied when the NAT sessions are smaller than 25% of the default setting.

Level2: It will be applied when the NAT sessions are smaller than the eighth of the default setting.

Example

```
> show pmtime
Level0 TCP=86400001 UDP=300001 ICMP=10001
Level1 TCP=600000 UDP=90000 ICMP=7000
Level2 TCP=60000 UDP=30000 ICMP=5000
```

Telnet Command: show session

This command displays current status of current session.

Example

```
> show session
% Maximum Session Number: 10000
% Maximum Session Usage: 49
% Current Session Usage: 0
% Current Session Used(include waiting for free): 0
% WAN1 Current Session Usage: 0
```

Telnet Command: show status

This command displays current status of LAN and WAN connections.

Example

```
> show status
System Uptime:20:36:35
LAN Status
Primary DNS:8.8.8.8          Secondary DNS:8.8.4.4
IP Address:192.168.1.1      Tx Rate:12923    Rx Rate:8152

WAN 1 Status: Disconnected
Enable:Yes      Line:xDSL      Name:tcom
Mode:Static IP  Up Time:0:00:00  IP:172.16.3.221  GW
```

```

IP:172.16.3.2
TX Packets:0          TX Rate:0   RX Packets:0          RX Rate:0

ADSL Information:    ADSL Firmware Version:05-04-04-04-00-01
Mode:                State:TRAINING  TX Block:0           RX Block:0
Corrected Blocks:0   Uncorrected Blocks:0
UP Speed:0           Down Speed:0         SNR Margin:0        Loop Att.:0

```

Telnet Command: show adsl

This command displays current status of ADSL.

Example

```

> Vigor> show adsl
----- ATU-R Info (hw: annex A, f/w: annex A) -----
Running Mode       : T1.413      State           : TRAINING
DS Actual Rate     : 0 bps       US Actual Rate  : 0 bps
DS Attainable Rate : 0 bps       US Attainable Rate : 0 bps
DS Path Mode       : Fast        US Path Mode    : Fast
DS Interleave Depth : 0         US Interleave Depth : 0
NE Current Attenuation : 0 dB    Cur SNR Margin  : 0 dB
DS actual PSD      : 0.0 dB     US actual PSD   : 0.0 dB
ADSL Firmware Version : 05-04-04-04-00-01
----- ATU-C Info -----
Far Current Attenuation : 0 dB    Far SNR Margin  : 0 dB
CO ITU Version[0]      : 00000000   CO ITU Version[1] : 00000000
DSLAM CHIPSET VENDOR   : < ADI >

```

Telnet Command: show statistic

This command displays statistics for WAN interface.

show statistic

show statistic reset [interface]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| <i>reset</i> | It means to reset the transmitted/received bytes to Zero. |
| <i>interface</i> | It means to specify WAN1 ~WAN5 (including multi-PVC) interface for displaying related statistics. |

Example

```

> show statistic
WAN1 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN2 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN3 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN4 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN5 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
>

```

Telnet Command: **srv dhcp badip**

This command is reserved for future using.

srv dhcp badip

Example

```
> srv dhcp badip
>
```

Telnet Command: **srv dhcp public**

This command allows users to configure DHCP server for second subnet.

srv dhcp public start [IP address]

srv dhcp public cnt [IP counts]

srv dhcp public status

srv dhcp public add [MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX]

srv dhcp public del [MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX/all/ALL]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <i>start</i> | It means the starting point of the IP address pool for the DHCP server. |
| <i>IP address</i> | It means to specify an IP address as the starting point in the IP address pool. |
| <i>cnt</i> | It means the IP count number. |
| <i>IP counts</i> | It means to specify the number of IP addresses in the pool. The maximum is 10. |
| <i>status</i> | It means the execution result of this command. |
| <i>add</i> | It means creating a list of hosts to be assigned. |
| <i>del</i> | It means removing the selected MAC address. |
| <i>MAC Addr</i> | It means to specify MAC Address of the host. |
| <i>all/ALL</i> | It means all of the MAC addresses. |

Example

```
Vigor> ip route add 192.168.1.56 255.255.255.0 192.168.1.12 3 default
Vigor> srv dhcp public status
Index  MAC Address
```

Telnet Command: **srv dhcp dns1**

This command allows users to set Primary IP Address for DNS Server in LAN.

srv dhcp dns1 [?]

srv dhcp dns1 [DNS IP address]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| ? | It means to display current IP address of DNS 1 for the DHCP server. |
| <i>DNS IP address</i> | It means the IP address that you want to use as DNS1. Note: The IP Routed Subnet DNS must be the same as NAT Subnet DNS). |

Example

```
> srv dhcp dns1 168.95.1.1
% srv dhcp dns1 <DNS IP address>
% Now: 168.95.1.1
(IP Routed Subnet dns same as NAT Subnet dns)
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp dns2`

This command allows users to set Secondary IP Address for DNS Server in LAN.

`srv dhcp dns2 [?]`

`srv dhcp dns2 [DNS IP address]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| ? | It means to display current IP address of DNS 2 for the DHCP server. |
| <i>DNS IP address</i> | It means the IP address that you want to use as DNS2. Note: The IP Routed Subnet DNS must be the same as NAT Subnet DNS). |

Example

```
> srv dhcp dns2 10.1.1.1
% srv dhcp dns2 <DNS IP address>
% Now: 10.1.1.1
(IP Routed Subnet dns same as NAT Subnet dns)
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp frcdnsmanl`

This command can force the router to invoke DNS Server IP address.

`srv dhcp frcdnsmanl [on]`

`srv dhcp frcdnsmanl [off]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <code>?</code> | It means to display the current status. |
| <code>on</code> | It means to use manual setting for DNS setting. |
| <code>Off</code> | It means to use auto settings acquired from ISP. |

Example

```
> srv dhcp frcdnsmanl on
% Domain name server now is using manual settings!
> srv dhcp frcdnsmanl off
% Domain name server now is using auto settings!
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp gateway`

This command allows users to specify gateway address for DHCP server.

`srv dhcp gateway [?]`

`srv dhcp gateway [Gateway IP]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>?</code> | It means to display current gateway that you can use. |
| <code>Gateway IP</code> | It means to specify a gateway address used for DHCP server. |

Example

```
> srv dhcp gateway 192.168.2.1
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp ipcnt`

This command allows users to specify IP counts for DHCP server.

`srv dhcp ipcnt [?]`

`srv dhcp ipcnt [IP counts]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>?</code> | It means to display current used IP count number. |
| <code>IP counts</code> | It means the number that you have to specify for the DHCP server. |

Example

```
> srv dhcp ipcnt ?
% srv dhcp ipcnt <IP counts>
% Now: 150
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp off`

This function allows users to turn off DHCP server. It needs rebooting router, please type "sys reboot" command to reboot router.

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp on`

This function allows users to turn on DHCP server. It needs rebooting router, please type "sys reboot" command to reboot router.

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp relay`

This command allows users to set DHCP relay setting.

`srv dhcp relay servip [server ip]`

`srv dhcp relay subnet [index]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>server ip</code> | It means the IP address that you want to used as DHCP server. |
| <code>Index</code> | It means subnet 1 or 2. Please type 1 or 2. The router will invoke this function according to the subnet 1 or 2 specified here. |

Example

```
> srv dhcp relay servip 192.168.1.46
> srv dhcp relay subnet 2
> srv dhcp relay servip ?
% srv dhcp relay servip <server ip>
% Now: 192.168.1.46
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp startip`

srv dhcp startip [?]

srv dhcp startip [IP address]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| ? | It means to display current used start IP address. |
| IP address | It means the IP address that you can specify for the DHCP server as the starting point. |

Example

```
> srv dhcp startip 192.168.1.53
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp status

This command can display general information for the DHCP server, such as IP address, MAC address, leased time, host ID and so on.

Example

```
> srv dhcp status
DHCP server: Relay Agent
Default gateway: 192.168.1.1
Index   IP Address      MAC Address      Leased Time      HOST ID
1       192.168.1.113  00-05-5D-E4-D8-EE  17:20:08        A1000351
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp leasetime`

This command can set the lease time for the DHCP server.

`srv dhcp leasetime [?]`

`srv dhcp leasetime [Lease Time (sec)]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code>?</code> | It means to display current leasetime used for the DHCP server. |
| <code>Lease Time (sec)</code> | It means the lease time that DHCP server can use. The unit is second. |

Example

```
> srv dhcp leasetime ?
% srv dhcp leasetime <Lease Time (sec.)>
% Now: 86400
>
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp nodetype`

This command can set the node type for the DHCP server.

`srv dhcp nodetype <count>`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>count</code> | It means to specify a type for node. 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node |

Example

```
> srv dhcp nodetype 1
> srv dhcp nodetype ?
%% srv dhcp nodetype <count>
%% 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node
% Now: 1
```

Telnet Command: **srv dhcp primWINS**

This command can set the primary IP address for the DHCP server.

srv dhcp primWINS [*WINS IP address*]

srv dhcp primWINS clear

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>WINS IP address</i> | It means the IP address of primary WINS server. |
| <i>clear</i> | It means to remove the IP address settings of primary WINS server. |

Example

```
> srv dhcp primWINS 192.168.1.88
> srv dhcp primWINS ?
%% srv dhcp primWINS <WINS IP address>
%% srv dhcp primWINS clear
% Now: 192.168.1.88
```

Telnet Command: **srv dhcp secWINS**

This command can set the secondary IP address for the DHCP server.

srv dhcp secWINS [*WINS IP address*]

srv dhcp secWINS clear

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <i>WINS IP address</i> | It means the IP address of secondary WINS server. |
| <i>clear</i> | It means to remove the IP address settings of second WINS server. |

Example

```
> srv dhcp secWINS 192.168.1.180
> srv dhcp secWINS ?
%% srv dhcp secWINS <WINS IP address>
%% srv dhcp secWINS clear
% Now: 192.168.1.180
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp expired_RecycleIP`

This command can set the time to check if the IP address can be assigned again by DHCP server or not.

`srv dhcp expRecycleIP <sec time>`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| <i>sec time</i> | It means to set the time (5~300 seconds) for checking if the IP can be assigned again or not. |

Example

```
Vigor> srv dhcp expRecycleIP 250
% DHCP expired_RecycleIP = 250
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp tftp`

This command can set the TFTP server as the DHCP server.

`srv dhcp tftp <TFTP server name>`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>TFTP server name</i> | It means to type the name of TFTP server. |

Example

```
> srv dhcp tftp TF123
> srv dhcp tftp ?
%% srv dhcp tftp <TFTP server name>
% Now: TF123
```

Telnet Command: `srv dhcp option`

This command can set the custom option for the DHCP server.

`srv dhcp option -h`

`srv dhcp option -l`

`srv dhcp option -d [idx]`

`srv dhcp option -e [1 or 0] -c [option number] -v [option value]`

`srv dhcp option -e [1 or 0] -c [option number] -a [option value]`

`srv dhcp option -e [1 or 0] -c [option number] -x [option value]`

`srv dhcp option -u [idx unnumber]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
|-----------|-------------|

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| <i>-h</i> | It means to display usage of this command. |
| <i>-l</i> | It means to display all the user defined DHCP options. |
| <i>-d[idx]</i> | It means to delete the option number by specifying its index number. |
| <i>-e [1 or 0]</i> | It means to enable/disable custom option feature. 1:enable 0:disable |
| <i>-c</i> | It means to set option number. Available number ranges from 0 to 255. |
| <i>-v</i> | It means to set option number by typing string. |
| <i>-a</i> | It means to set the option value by specifying the IP address. |
| <i>-x</i> | It means to set option number with the format of Hexadecimal characters. |
| <i>-u</i> | It means to update the option value of the sepecified index. |
| <i>idx number</i> | It means the index number of the option value. |

Example

```

> srv dhcp option -e 1 -c 18 -v /path
> srv dhcp option -l
% state  idx interface          opt type  data

% enable 1  ALL LAN                18 ASCII  /path

```

Telnet Command: `srv nat dmz`

This command allows users to set DMZ host. Before using this command, please set WAN IP Alias first.

`Srv nat dmz n m [-<command> <parameter> | ...]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <i>n</i> | It means to map selected WAN IP to certain host. 1: wan1 2: wan2 |
| <i>m</i> | It means the index number of the DMZ host. Default setting is "1" (WAN 1). It is only available for Static IP mode. If you use other mode, you can set 1 ~ 8 in this field. If WAN IP alias has been configured, then the number of DMZ host can be added more. |
| <code>[<command> <parameter> ...]</code> | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| <i>-e</i> | It means to enable/disable such feature. 1:enable 0:disable |
| <i>-i</i> | It means to specify the private IP address of the DMZ host. |
| <i>-r</i> | It means to remove DMZ host setting. |
| <i>-v</i> | It means to display current status. |

Example

```
> srv nat dmz 1 1 -i 192.168.1.96
> srv nat dmz -v
%      WAN1 DMZ mapping status:
Index  Status  WAN1 aux IP      Private IP
-----
1      Disable  0.0.0.0 192.168.1.96
```

Telnet Command: `srv nat ipsecpass`

This command allows users to enable or disable IPSec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation.

`Srv nat ipsecpass [options]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>[options]</code> | The available commands with parameters are listed below. |
| <i>on</i> | It means to enable IPSec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation. |

| | |
|---------------|--|
| <i>off</i> | It means to disable IPsec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation. |
| <i>status</i> | It means to display current status for checking. |

Example

```
> srv nat ipsecpass status
%% Status: IPsec ESP pass-thru and IKE src_port:500 preservation is OFF.
```

Telnet Command: **srv nat openport**

This command allows users to set open port settings for NAT server.

srv nat openport n m [-<command> <parameter> | ...]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <i>n</i> | It means the index number for the profiles. The range is from 1 to 20. |
| <i>m</i> | It means to specify the sub-item number for this profile. The range is from 1 to 10. |
| [<command> <parameter> ...] | The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line. |
| -a <enable> | It means to enable or disable the open port rule profile. 0: disable 1:enable |
| -c <comment> | It means to type the description (less than 23 characters) for the defined network service. |
| -i <local ip> | It means to set the IP address for local computer. Local ip: Type an IP address in this field. |
| -w <idx> | It means to specify the public IP. 1: WAN1 Default, 2: WAN1 Alias 1, ...and so on. |
| -p <protocol> | Specify the transport layer protocol. Available values are TCP, UDP and ALL. |
| -s<start port> | It means to specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host. The range is from 0 to 65535. |
| -e<end port> | It means to specify the ending port number of the service offered by the local host. The range is from 0 to 65535. |
| -v | It means to display current settings. |
| -r <remove> | It means to delete the specified open port setting. remove: Type the index number of the profile. |

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code>-f <flush></code> | It means to return to factory settings for all the open ports profiles. |
|-------------------------------|---|

Example

```

> srv nat openport 1 1 -a 1 -c games -i 192.168.1.100 -w 1 -p TCP -s
23 -e 83
> srv nat openport -v
%% Status: Enable
%% Comment: games
%% Private IP address: 192.168.1.100
Index  Protocol      Start Port      End Port
*****
  1.    TCP          23              83

%% Status: Disable
%% Comment:
%% Private IP address: 0.0.0.0
Index  Protocol      Start Port      End Port
*****

%% Status: Disable
%% Comment:
%% Private IP address: 0.0.0.0
Index  Protocol      Start Port      End Port
*****
>

```

Telnet Command: `srv nat portmap`

This command allows users to set port redirection table for NAT server.

`srv nat portmap add [idx][serv name][proto][pub port][pri ip][pri port][wan1/wan2]`

`srv nat portmap del [idx]`

`srv nat portmap disable [idx]`

`srv nat portmap enable [idx] [proto]`

`srv nat portmap flush`

`srv nat portmap table`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>Add[idx]</code> | It means to add a new port redirection table with an index number. Available index number is from 1 to 10. |
| <code>serv name</code> | It means to type one name as service name. |
| <code>proto</code> | It means to specify TCP or UDP as the protocol. |
| <code>pub port</code> | It means to specify which port can be redirected to the specified Private IP and Port of the internal host. |
| <code>pri ip</code> | It means to specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service. |
| <code>pri port</code> | It means to specify the private port number of the service offered by the internal host. |

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| <i>wan1/wan2</i> | It means to specify WAN interface for the port redirection. |
| <i>del [idx]</i> | It means to remove the selected port redirection setting. |
| <i>disable [idx]</i> | It means to inactivate the selected port redirection setting. |
| <i>enable [idx]</i> | It means to activate the selected port redirection setting. |
| <i>flush</i> | It means to clear all the port mapping settings. |
| <i>table</i> | It means to display Port Redirection Configuration Table. |

Example

```
> srv nat portmap add 1 game tcp 80 192.168.1.11 100 wan1
> srv nat portmap table
```

NAT Port Redirection Configuration Table:

| Index | Service Name | Protocol | Public Port | Private IP | Private Port | ifno |
|-------|--------------|----------|-------------|--------------|--------------|------|
| 1 | game | 6 | 80 | 192.168.1.11 | 100 | -1 |
| 2 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 3 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 4 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 5 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 6 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 7 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 8 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 9 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 10 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 11 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 12 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 13 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 14 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 15 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 16 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 17 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 18 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 19 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |
| 20 | | 0 | 0 | | 0 | -2 |

Protocol: 0 = Disable, 6 = TCP, 17 = UDP

Telnet Command: `srv nat status`

This command allows users to view NAT Port Redirection Running Table.

Example

```
> srv nat status
```

NAT Port Redirection Running Table:

| Index | Protocol | Public Port | Private IP | Private Port |
|-------|----------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 | 6 | 80 | 192.168.1.11 | 100 |
| 2 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 3 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 4 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 5 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |

| | | | | |
|--|---|---|---------|---|
| 6 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 7 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 8 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 9 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 10 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 11 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 12 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 13 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 14 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 15 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 16 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 17 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 18 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 19 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| 20 | 0 | 0 | 0.0.0.0 | 0 |
| --- MORE --- ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] | | | | |
| --- | | | | |

Telnet Command: `srv nat showall`

This command allows users to view a summary of NAT port redirection setting, open port and DMZ settings.

Example

```
> srv nat showall ?
Index  Proto  WAN IP:Port          Private IP:Port      Act
*****
***
R01    TCP    0.0.0.0:80        192.168.1.11:100    Y
O01    TCP    0.0.0.0:23~83    192.168.1.100:23~83 Y
D01    All    0.0.0.0          192.168.1.96       Y
R:Port Redirection, O:Open Ports, D:DMZ
```

Telnet Command: `switch -i`

This command is used to obtain the TX (transmitted) or RX (received) data for each connected switch.

`switch -i [switch idx_no] [option]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>switch idx_no</i> | It means the index number of the switch profile. |
| <i>option</i> | The available commands with parameters are listed below. <i>cmd</i> <i>acc</i> <i>traffic [on/off/status/tx/rx]</i> |
| <i>cmd</i> | It means to send command to the client. |
| <i>acc</i> | It means to set the client authentication account and password. |
| <i>traffic [on/off/status/tx/rx]</i> | It means to turn on/off or display the data transmission from |

the client.

Example

```
> switch -i 1 traffic on
External Device NO. 1 traffic statistic function is enable
```

Telnet Command: switch on

This command is used to turn on the auto discovery for external devices.

Example

```
> switch on
Enable Extrnal Device auto discovery!
```

Telnet Command: switch off

This command is used to turn off the auto discovery for external devices.

Example

```
> switch off
Disable External Device auto discovery!
```

Telnet Command: switch list

This command is used to display the connection status of the switch.

Example

```
> switch list?
No.      Mac              IP           status    Dur Time  Model_Name
-----
-----
[1] 00-50-7f-cd-07-48 192.168.1.3  On-Line  00:01:01
Vigor2920 Series
```

Telnet Command: switch clear

This command is used to reset the switch table and reboot the router.

switch clear [*idx*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|---|
| <i>idx</i> | It means the index number of each item shown on the table. The range is from 1 to 8. |
| <i>-f</i> | It means to clear all of the data. |

Example

```
> switch clear 1
Switch Data clear successful

> switch clear -f
Switch Data clear successful
```

Telnet Command: switch query

This command is used to enable or disable the switch query.

Example

```
> switch query on
Extern Device status query is Enable
> switch query off
Extern Device status query is Disable
```

Telnet Command: sys admin

This command is used for RD engineer to access into test mode of Vigor router.

Telnet Command: sys adminuser

This command is used to create user account and specify LDAP server. The server will authenticate the local user who wants to access into the web user interface of Vigor router.

sys adminuser [*option*]

sys adminuser edit [*index*] *username password*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <i>option</i> | Available options includes: Local [0-1] LDAP [0-1] edit [INDEX] delete [INDEX] view [INDEX] |
| <i>Local [0-1]</i> | 0 – Disable the local user. 1 – Enable the local user. |
| <i>LDAP [0-1]</i> | 0 – Disable the LDAP. 1 – Enable the LDAP. |
| <i>edit [INDEX] username password</i> | Edit an existed user account or create a new local user account. [INDEX] – 1 ~8. There are eight profiles to be added / edited. Username – Type a new name for local user. Password – Type a password for local user. |
| <i>delete [INDEX]</i> | Delete a local user account. |
| <i>view [INDEX]</i> | Show the user account/password detail information. |

Example

```
> > sys adminuser Local 1
Local User has enabled!
> sys adminuser LDAP 1
LDAP has enabled!
>> sys adminuser edit 1 carrie test123
Updated!
```

```
>> sys adminuser view 1

Index:1
User Name:carrie
User Password:test123
```

Telnet Command: sys bonjour

This command is used to disable/enable and configure the Bonjour service.

sys bonjour [-<command> <parameter> | ...]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| -e <enable> | It is used to disable/enable bonjour service (0: disable, 1: enable). |
| -h <enable> | It is used to disable/enable http (web) service (0: disable, 1: enable). |
| -t <enable> | It is used to disable/enable telnet service (0: disable, 1: enable). |
| -f <enable> | It is used to disable/enable FTP service (0: disable, 1: enable). |
| -s <enable> | It is used to disable/enable SSH service (0: disable, 1: enable). |
| -p <enable> | It is used to disable/enable printer service (0: disable, 1: enable). |
| -6 <enable> | It is used to disable/enable IPv6 (0: disable, 1: enable). |

Example

```
> sys bonjour -s 1
>
```

Telnet Command: **sys cfg**

This command reset the router with factory default settings. When a user types this command, all the configuration will be reset to default setting.

sys cfg default

sys cfg status

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <i>default</i> | It means to reset current settings with default values. |
| <i>status</i> | It means to display current profile version and status. |

Example

```
> sys cfg status
Profile version: 3.0.0    Status: 1 (0x491e5e6c)
> sys cfg default
>
```

Telnet Command: **sys cmdlog**

This command displays the history of the commands that you have typed.

Example

```
> sys cmdlog
% Commands Log: (The lowest index is the newest !!!)
 [1] sys cmdlog
 [2] sys cmdlog ?
 [3] sys ?
 [4] sys cfg status
 [5] sys cfg ?
```

Telnet Command: **sys ftpd**

This command displays current status of FTP server.

sys ftpd on

sys ftpd off

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--|
| <i>on</i> | It means to turn on the FTP server of the system. |
| <i>off</i> | It means to turn off the FTP server of the system. |

Example

```
> sys ftpd on
% sys ftpd turn on !!!
```

Telnet Command: sys domainname

This command can set and remove the domain name of the system when DHCP mode is selected for WAN.

sys domainname [*wan1/wan2*] [*Domain Name Suffix*]

sys domainname [*wan1/wan2*] *clear*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <i>wan1/wan2</i> | It means to specify WAN interface for assigning a name for it. |
| <i>Domain Name Suffix</i> | It means the name for the domain of the system. The maximum number of characters that you can set is 40. |
| <i>clear</i> | It means to remove the domain name of the system. |

Example

```
> sys domainname wan1 clever
> sys domainname wan2 intellegent
> sys domainname ?
% sys domainname <wan1/wan2> <Domain Name Suffix (max. 40 characters)>
% sys domainname <wan1/wan2> clear
% Now: wan1 == clever, wan2 ==intelligent
>
```

Telnet Command: sys iface

This command displays the current interface connection status (UP or Down) with IP address, MAC address and Netmask for the router.

Example

```
> sys iface
Interface 0 Ethernet:
Status: UP
IP Address: 192.168.1.1      Netmask: 0xFFFFFFFF00 (Private)
IP Address: 0.0.0.0        Netmask: 0xFFFFFFFF
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-00
Interface 4 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0        Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-02
Interface 5 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0        Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-03
Interface 6 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0        Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-04
```

```
Interface 7 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-05
Interface 8 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-06

Interface 9 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-07
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]
---
>
```

Telnet Command: sys name

This command can set and remove the name for the router when DHCP mode is selected for WAN.

sys name [wan1] [ASCII string]

sys name [wan1] clear

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| wan1 | It means to specify WAN interface for assigning a name for it. |
| ASCII string | It means the name for router. The maximum character that you can set is 20. |

Example

```
> sys name wan1 drayrouter
> sys name ?
% sys name <wan1/wan2> <ASCII string (max. 20 characters)>
% sys name <wan1/wan2> clear
% Now: wan1 == drayrouter, wan2 ==
```

Note: Such name can be used to recognize router's identification in SysLog dialog.

Telnet Command: sys passwd

This command allows users to set password for the administrator.

sys passwd [ASCII string]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| ASCII string | It means the password for administrator. The maximum character that you can set is 23. |

Example

```
> sys passwd admin123
>
```

Telnet Command: sys reboot

This command allows users to restart the router immediately.

Example

```
> sys reboot
>
```

Telnet Command: **sys autoreboot**

This command allows users to restart the router automatically within a certain time.

sys autoreboot [*on/off/hour(s)*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <i>on/off</i> | On – It means to enable the function of auto-reboot. Off – It means to disable the function of auto-reboot. |
| <i>hours</i> | It means to set the time schedule for router reboot. For example, if you type “2” in this field, the router will reboot with an interval of two hours. |

Example

```
> sys autoreboot on
autoreboot is ON
> sys autoreboot 2
autoreboot is ON
autoreboot time is 2 hour(s)
```

Telnet Command: **sys commit**

This command allows users to save current settings to FLASH. Usually, current settings will be saved in SRAM. Yet, this command will save the file to FLASH.

Example

```
> sys commit
>
```

Telnet Command: **sys tftpd**

This command can turn on TFTP server for upgrading the firmware.

Example

```
> sys tftpd
% TFTP server enabled !!!
```

Telnet Command: **sys cc**

This command can display current country code and wireless region of this device.

Example

```
> sys cc
Country Code      : 0x 0 [International]
Wireless Region Code: 0x30
>
```

Telnet Command: **sys version**

This command can display current version for the system.

Example

```
> sys version
Router Model: Vigor2860Vn+   Version: 3.7.4.1 English
Profile version: 3.0.0     Status: 1 (0x49165e6c)
Router IP: 192.168.1.1     Netmask: 255.255.255.0
Firmware Build Date/Time: Mar 20 2014 14:09:50
Router Name: drayrouter
Revision: 40055 2860_374
VDSL2 Firmware Version: 05-04-08-00-00-06
```

Telnet Command: sys qrybuf

This command can display the system memory status and leakage list.

Example

```
> sys qrybuf
System Memory Status and Leakage List

Buf sk_buff ( 200B), used#: 1647, cached#: 30
Buf KMC4088 (4088B), used#: 0, cached#: 8
Buf KMC2552 (2552B), used#: 1641, cached#: 42
Buf KMC1016 (1016B), used#: 7, cached#: 1
Buf KMC504 ( 504B), used#: 8, cached#: 8
Buf KMC248 ( 248B), used#: 26, cached#: 22
Buf KMC120 ( 120B), used#: 67, cached#: 61
Buf KMC56 ( 56B), used#: 20, cached#: 44
Buf KMC24 ( 24B), used#: 58, cached#: 70
Dynamic memory: 13107200B; 4573168B used; 190480B/0B in level 1/2
cache.

FLOWTRACK Memory Status
# of free = 12000
# of maximum = 0
# of flowstate = 12000
# of lost by siganture = 0
# of lost by list = 0
```

Telnet Command: sys pollbuf

This command can turn on or turn off polling buffer for the router.

sys pollbuf [*on*]

sys pollbuf [*off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>on</i> | It means to turn on pulling buffer. |

| | |
|------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>off</i> | It means to turn off pulling buffer. |
|------------|--------------------------------------|

Example

```
> sys pollbuf on
% Buffer polling is on!

> sys pollbuf off
% Buffer polling is off!
```

Telnet Command: **sys britask**

This command can improve triple play quality.

sys britask [*on*]

sys britask [*off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--|
| <i>on</i> | It means to turn on the bridge task for improving the triple play quality. |
| <i>off</i> | It means to turn off the bridge task. |

Example

```
> sys britask on
% bridge task is ON, now
```

Telnet Command: **sys tr069**

This command can set CPE settings for applying in VigorACS.

sys tr069 get [*parm*] [*option*]

sys tr069 set [*parm*] [*value*]

sys tr069 getnoti [*parm*]

sys tr069 setnoti [*parm*] [*value*]

sys tr069 log

sys tr069 debug [*on/off*]

sys tr069 save

sys tr069 inform [*event code*]

sys tr069 port [*port num*]

sys tr069 cert_auth [*on/off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <i>get</i> [<i>parm</i>] [<i>option</i>] | It means to get parameters for tr-069. option=<nextlevel>: only gets nextlevel for GetParameterNames. |

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <i>set [parm] [value]</i> | It means to set parameters for tr-069. |
| <i>getnoti [parm]</i> | It means to get parameter notification value. |
| <i>setnoti [parm] [value]</i> | It means to set parameter notification value. |
| <i>log</i> | It means to display the TR-069 log. |
| <i>debug [on/off]</i> | on: turn on the function of sending debug message to syslog. off: turn off the function of sending debug message to syslog. |
| <i>save</i> | It means to save the parameters to the flash memory of the router. |
| <i>Inform [event code]</i> | It means to inform parameters for tr069 with different event codes. [event code] includes: 0-"0 BOOTSTRAP", 1-"1 BOOT", 2-"2 PERIODIC", 3-"3 SCHEDULED", 4-"4 VALUE CHANGE", 5-"5 KICKED", 6-"6 CONNECTION REQUEST", 7-"7 TRANSFER COMPLETE", 8-"8 DIAGNOSTICS COMPLETE", 9-"M Reboot" |
| <i>port [port num]</i> | It means to change tr069 listen port number. |
| <i>cert_auth [on/off]</i> | on: turn on certificate-based authentication. off: turn off certificate-based authentication. |

Example

```

> sys tr069 get Int. nextlevel
Total number of parameter is 24
Total content length of parameter is 915
InternetGatewayDevice.LANDeviceNumberOfEntries
InternetGatewayDevice.WANDeviceNumberOfEntries
InternetGatewayDevice.DeviceInfo.
InternetGatewayDevice.ManagementServer.
InternetGatewayDevice.Time.
InternetGatewayDevice.Layer3Forwarding.
InternetGatewayDevice.LANDevice.
InternetGatewayDevice.WANDevice.
InternetGatewayDevice.Services.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_InternetAcc.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_LAN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_NAT.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Firewall.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Bandwidth.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Applications.

```

```

InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_VPN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_VoIP.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_WirelessLAN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_System.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Status.

InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Diagnostics.
--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]
---
```

Telnet Command: **sys sip_alg**

This command can turn on/off SIP ALG (Application Layer Gateway) for traversal.

sys sip_alg [*1*]

sys sip_alg [*0*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------------------------|
| <i>1</i> | It means to turn on SIP ALG. |
| <i>0</i> | It means to turn off SIP ALG. |

Example

```

> sys sip_alg ?
usage: sys sip_alg [value]
 0 - disable SIP ALG
 1 - enable SIP ALG
current SIP ALG is disabled
```

Telnet Command: **sys license**

This command can process the system license.

sys license *licmsg*

sys license *licauth*

sys license *regser*

sys license *licera*

sys license *licifno*

sys license *lic_wiz* [*set/reg/qry*]

sys license *dev_chg*

sys license *dev_key*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| <i>licmsg</i> | It means to display license message. |
| <i>licauth</i> | It means the license authentication time setting. |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <i>regser</i> | It means the license register server setting. |
| <i>licera</i> | It means to erase license setting. |
| <i>licifno</i> | It means license and signature download interface setting. |
| <i>lic_wiz</i> [<i>set/reg/qry</i>] | It means the license wizard setting. qry: query service support status set [idx] [trial] [service type] [sp_id] [start_date] [License Key] reg: register service in portal |
| <i>dev_chg</i> | It means to change the device key. |
| <i>dev_key</i> | It means to show device key. |

Example

```
> sys license licifno

License and Signature download interface setting:
licifno [AUTO/WAN#]

Ex: licifno wan1

Download interface is "auto-selected" now.
```

Telnet Command: sys diag_log

This command is used for RD debug.

sys diag_log [*status/ enable/ disable/ flush/ lineno* [*w*] | *level* [*x*] | *feature* [*on/off*] [*y*]| *log*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| <i>status</i> | It means to show the status of diagnostic log. |
| <i>enable</i> | It means to enable the function of diag_log. |
| <i>disable</i> | It means to disable the function of diag_log. |
| <i>flush</i> | It means the flush log buffer. |
| <i>lineno</i> [<i>w</i>] | It means the total lines for displaying message. w - Available value ranges from 100 to 50000. |
| <i>level</i> [<i>x</i>] | It determines the level of data displayed. x – Available value ranges from 0 to 12. The larger the number is, the detailed the data is displayed. |
| <i>feature</i> [<i>on/off</i>][<i>y</i>] | It is used to specify the function of the log. Supported features include SYS and DSL (Case-Insensitive). Default setting is “on” for “DSL”. |
| <i>voip_feature</i> [<i>on/off</i>][<i>vf_name</i>] | It means VoIP feature. Type on to enable the feature or type off to disable the feature. vf_name: available settings include DRVTAPE, DRVVMC, DRVMPS, DRVFXO, DRVHAL, PSMPHONE, PSMSUPP, |

| | |
|------------|---|
| | PSM, FXO, PSMISDN, DTMFP SER, CALLERID (Case-Insensitive). |
| <i>log</i> | It means the dump log buffer. |

Example

```

> sys diag_log status
Status:
diag_log is Enabled.
lineno : 10000.
level : 3.
Enabled feature: SYS DSL
> sys diag_log log
0:00:02 [DSL] Current modem firmware: AnnexA_548006_544401
0:00:02 [DSL] Modem firmware feature: 5, ADSL_A, VDSL2
0:00:02 [DSL] xtseCfg=04 00 04 00 0c 01 00 07
0:00:02 [DSL] don't have last showtime mode!! set next mode to VDSL!!
0:00:02 [DSL] Status has changed: Stopped(0) -> FwWait(3)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status has changed: FwWait(3) -> Starting(1)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status has changed: Starting(1) -> Running(2)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status was switched: firmwareReady(3) to Init(5)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status was switched: Init(5) to Restart(10)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status was switched: Restart(10) to
FirmwareRequest(1)
0:00:02 [DSL] Line state has changed: 00000000 -> 000000FF
0:00:02 [DSL] Entering VDSL2 mode
0:00:03 [DSL] modem code: [05-04-08-00-00-06]
0:00:05 [DSL] Status was switched: FirmwareRequest(1) to
firmwareReady(3)
0:00:05 [DSL] Status was switched: firmwareReady(3) to Init(5)
0:00:05 [DSL] >> nXtseA=0d, nXtseB=00, nXtseV=07, nFwFeatures=5
0:00:05 [DSL] >> nHsToneGroupMode=0, nHsToneGroup=106,
nToneSet=43, nCamState
=2
0:00:05 [DSL] Line state has changed: 000000FF -> 00000100
0:00:05 [DSL] Line state has changed: 00000100 -> 00000200
0:00:05 [DSL] Status was switched: Init(5) to Train(6)

```

Telnet Command: testmail

This command is used to display current settings for sending test mail.

Example

```

> testmail
Send out test mail
Mail Alert:[Disable]
SMTP_Server:[0.0.0.0]
Mail to:[]
Return-Path:[]

```

Telnet Command: upnp off

This command can close UPnP function.

Example

```
>upnp off
UPNP say bye-bye
```

Telnet Command: upnp on

This command can enable UPnP function.

Example

```
>upnp on
UPNP start.
```

Telnet Command: upnp nat

This command can display IGD NAT status.

Example

```
> upnp nat ?
***** IGD NAT Status *****

((0))
InternalClient >>192.168.1.10<<, RemoteHost >>0.0.0.0<<
InternalPort >>21<<, ExternalPort >>21<<
PortMapProtocol >>TCP<<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
Ftp Example [MICROSOFT]
((1))
InternalClient >>0.0.0.0<<, RemoteHost >>0.0.0.0<<
InternalPort >>0<<, ExternalPort >>0<<
PortMapProtocol >><NULL><<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
PortMapProtocol >><NULL><<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
0<<

--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
```

Telnet Command: upnp service

This command can display the information of the UPnP service. UPnP service must be enabled first.

Example

```
> upnp on
UPNP start.

> upnp service
```

```

>>>> SERVICE TABLE1 <<<<<
  serviceType urn:schemas-microsoft-com:service:OSInfo:1
  serviceId   urn:microsoft-com:serviceId:OSInfo1
  SCPDURL    /upnp/OSInfo.xml
  controlURL  /OSInfo1
  eventURL    /OSInfoEvent1
  UDN        uuid:774e9bbe-7386-4128-b627-001daa843464

>>>> SERVICE TABLE2 <<<<<
  serviceType
urn:schemas-upnp-org:service:WANCommonInterfaceConfig:1
  serviceId   urn:upnp-org:serviceId:WANCommonIFC1
  SCPDURL    /upnp/WComIFCX.xml
  controlURL  /upnp?control=WANCommonIFC1
  eventURL    /upnp?event=WANCommonIFC1
  UDN        uuid:2608d902-03e2-46a5-9968-4a54ca499148
.
.
.

```

Telnet Command: upnp subscribe

This command can show all UPnP services subscribed.

Example

```

> upnp on
UPNP start.
> upnp subscribe
Vigor> upnp subscribe
>>>> (1) serviceType urn:schemas-microsoft-com:service:OSInfo:1

----- Subscribtion1 -----

  sid = 7a2bbdd0-0047-4fc8-b870-4597b34da7fb

  eventKey =1, ToSendEventKey = 1

  expireTime =6926

  active =1

  DeliveryURLs
=<http://192.168.1.113:2869/upnp/eventing/twtnpnsiun>

>>>> (2) serviceType
urn:schemas-upnp-org:service:WANCommonInterfaceConfig:1

----- Subscribtion1 -----

  sid = d9cd47a5-d9c9-4d3d-8043-d03a82f27983

```

```
eventKey =1, ToSendEventKey = 1
.
.
.
```

Telnet Command: upnp tmpvs

This command can display current status of temp Virtual Server of your router.

Example

```
Vigor> upnp tmpvs
***** Temp virtual server status *****

((0))
real_addr >>192.168.1.10<<, pseudo_addr >>172.16.3.229<<
real_port >>0<<, pseudo_port >>0<<
hit_portmap_index >>0<<
The protocol >>TCP<<
time >>0<<

((1))
real_addr >>0.0.0.0<<, pseudo_addr >>0.0.0.0<<
real_port >>0<<, pseudo_port >>0<<
hit_portmap_index >>0<<
The protocol >>0<<
time >>0<<
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]
---
```

Telnet Command: upnp wan

This command is used to specify WAN interface to apply UPnP.

upnp wan [*n*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| <i>n</i> | It means to specify WAN interface to apply UPnP. n=0, it means to auto-select WAN interface. n=1, WAN1 n=2, WAN2 |

Example

```
> upnp wan 1
use wan1 now.
```

Telnet Command: usb list

This command is use to display the information about the brand name and model name of the USB modems which are supported by Vigor router.

Example

```
> usb list ?
Brand      Module                Standard
-----
Aiko       Aiko 83D              3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C170          3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C270          3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C321          3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C330          3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C331          3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C502          3.5G          Y
Huawei     Huawei E169u          3.5G          Y
Huawei     Huawei E220           3.5G          Y
Huawei     Huawei E303D          3.5G          Y
Huawei     Huawei E392           3.5G          Y
Huawei     Huawei E398           3.5G          Y
Sony Ericsson Sony Ericsson MD30  3.5G          Y
TP-LINK    TP-LINK MA180         3.5G          Y
TP-LINK    TP-LINK MA260         3.5G          Y
Vodafone   Vodafone K3765-Z      3.5G          Y
Vodafone   Vodafone K4605        3.5G          Y
ZTE        ZTE MF626             3.5G          Y
ZTE        ZTE MF627 plus        3.5G          Y
ZTE        ZTE MF633             3.5G          Y
ZTE        ZTE MF636             3.5G          Y
SpinCom    SpinCom GPRS Modem    3.5G          Y
```

```
- MORE - ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] -
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg on

This command can make the router to be regarded as a modem but not a router.

Example

```
> vigbrg on
%Enable Vigor Bridge Function!
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg off

This command can disable vigor bridge function.

Example

```
> vigbrg off
%Disable Vigor Bridge Function!
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg status

This command can show whether the Vigor Bridge Function is enabled or disabled.

Example

```
> vigbrg status
%Vigor Bridge Function is enable!

%Wan1 management is disable!
```

Telnet Command: **vigbrg cfgip**

This command allows users to transfer a bridge modem into ADSL router by accessing into and adjusting specified IP address. Users can access into Web UI of the router to manage the router through the IP address configured here.

vigbrg cfgip [*IP Address*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| <i>IP Address</i> | It means to type an IP address for users to manage the router. |

Example

```
> vigbrg cfgip 192.168.1.15
> vigbrg cfgip ?
% Vigor Bridge Config IP,
% Now: 192.168.1.15
```

Telnet Command: **vigbrg wan1on**

This command is used to enable the bridge WAN1 management.

Example

```
> vigbrg wan1on
%Enable Vigor Bridge Wan1 management!
```

Telnet Command: **vigbrg wan1off**

This command is used to disable the bridge WAN1 management.

Example

```
> vigbrg wan1off
%Disable Vigor Bridge Wan1 management!
```

Telnet Command: **vpn l2lset**

This command allows users to set advanced parameters for LAN to LAN function.

vpn l2lset [*list index*] **peerid** [*peerid*]

vpn l2lset [*list index*] **localid** [*localid*]

vpn l2lset [*list index*] **main** [*auto/proposal index*]

vpn l2lset [*list index*] **aggressive** [*g1/g2*]

vpn l2lset [*list index*] **pfs** [*on/off*]

vpn l2lset [*list index*] **phase1** [*lifetime*]

vpn l2lset [*list index*] **phase2** [*lifetime*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| <i>list index</i> | It means the index number of L2L (LAN to LAN) profile. |

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>peerid</i> | It means the peer identity for aggressive mode. |
| <i>localid</i> | It means the local identity for aggressive mode. |
| <i>main</i> | It means to choose proposal for main mode. |
| <i>auto index</i> | It means to choose default proposals. |
| <i>proposal index</i> | It means to choose specified proposal. |
| <i>aggressive</i> | It means the chosen DH group for aggressive mode |
| <i>pfs</i> | It means “perfect forward secrete”. |
| <i>on/off</i> | It means to turn on or off the PFS function. |
| <i>phase1</i> | It means phase 1 of IKE. |
| <i>lifetime</i> | It means the lifetime value (in second) for phase 1 and phase 2. |
| <i>phase2</i> | It means phase 2 of IKE. |

Example

```
> VPN l2lset 1 peerid 10226
```

Telnet Command: vpn l2lDrop

This command allows users to terminate current LAN to LAN VPN connection.

Example

```
> vpn l2lDrop
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn dinset

This command allows users to configure setting for remote dial-in VPN profile.

vpn dinset <list index>

vpn dinset <list index> <on/off>

vpn dinset <list index> **motp** <on/off>

vpn dinset <list index> **pin_secret** <pin> <secret>

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <list index> | It means the index number of the profile. |
| <on/off> | It means to enable or disable the profile. on – Enable. off – Disable. |
| <i>motp</i> <on/off> | It means to enable or disable the authentication with mOTP function. on – Enable. off – Disable. |

| | |
|---|--|
| <code>pin_secret<pin></code> <code><secret></code> | It means to set PIN code with secret. <code><pin></code> - Type the code for authentication (e.g, 1234). <code><secret></code> - Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6) |
|---|--|

Example

```

> vpn dinset 1

Dial-in profile index 1

Profile Name: ???
Status: Deactive

Mobile OTP: Disabled

Password:

Idle Timeout: 300 sec

> vpn dinset 1 on
% set profile active

> vpn dinset 1 motp on
% Enable Mobile OTP mode!>
> vpn dinset 1 pin_secret 1234 e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6
> vpn dinset 1

Dial-in profile index 1

Profile Name: ???
Status: Active

Mobile OTP: Enabled

PIN: 1234

Secret: e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6

Idle Timeout: 300 sec

```

Telnet Command: vpn subnet

This command allows users to specify a subnet selection for the specified remote dial-in VPN profile.

`vpn subnet [index] [1/2/3/4/5/6]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
|-----------|-------------|

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| <i><index></i> | It means the index number of the VPN profile. |
| <i><1/2/3/4/5/6></i> | 1 – it means LAN1 2 – it means LAN2. 3 – it means LAN3 4 – it means LAN4. 5 – it means LAN51 6 – it means LAN6. |

Example

```
> vpn subnet 1 2
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn setup

This command allows users to setup VPN for different types.

Command of PPTP Dial-Out

vpn setup *<index>* *<name>* **pptp_out** *<ip>* *<usr>* *<pwd>* *<nip>* *<nmask>*

Command of IPsec Dial-Out

vpn setup *<index>* *<name>* **ipsec_out** *<ip>* *<key>* *<nip>* *<nmask>*

Command of L2Tp Dial-Out

vpn setup *<index>* *<name>* **l2tp_out** *<ip>* *<usr>* *<pwd>* *<nip>* *<nmask>*

Command of Dial-In

vpn setup *<index>* *<name>* **dialin** *<ip>* *<usr>* *<pwd>* *<key>* *<nip>* *<nmask>*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---|--|
| For PPTP Dial-Out | |
| <i><index></i> | It means the index number of the profile. |
| <i><name></i> | It means the name of the profile. |
| <i><ip></i> | It means the IP address to dial to. |
| <i><usr></i> <i><pwd></i> | It means the user and the password required for the PPTP connection. |
| <i><nip></i> <i><nmask></i> | It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 pptp_out 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0 |
| For IPsec Dial-Out | |
| <i><index></i> | It means the index number of the profile. |
| <i><name></i> | It means the name of the profile. |
| <i><ip></i> | It means the IP address to dial to. |
| <i><key></i> | It means the value of IPsec Pre-Shared Key. |

| | |
|--|---|
| <code><nip> <nmask></code> | It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 ipsec_out 1.2.3.4 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0 |
| For L2TP Dial-Out | |
| <code><index></code> | It means the index number of the profile. |
| <code><name></code> | It means the name of the profile. |
| <code><ip></code> | It means the IP address to dial to. |
| <code><usr> <pwd></code> | It means the user and the password required for the L2TP connection. |
| <code><nip> <nmask></code> | It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 l2tp_out 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0 |
| For Dial-In | |
| <code><index></code> | It means the index number of the profile. |
| <code><name></code> | It means the name of the profile. |
| <code><ip></code> | It means the IP address allowed to dial in. |
| <code><usr> <pwd></code> | It means the user and the password required for the PPTP/L2TP connection. |
| <code><key></code> | It means the value of IPsec Pre-Shared Key. |
| <code><nip> <nmask></code> | It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 dialin 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 abc 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0 |

Example

```
> vpn setup 1 name1 dialin 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 abc 192.168.1.0
255.255.255.0
% Profile Change Log ...

% Profile Index : 1
% Profile Name : name1
% Username : vigor
% Password : 1234
% Pre-share Key : abc
% Call Direction : Dial-In
% Type of Server : ISDN PPTP IPsec L2TP
% Dial from : 1.2.3.4
% Remote Network IP : 192.168.1.0
% Remote Network Mask : 255.255.255.0
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn option

This command allows users to configure settings for LAN to LAN profile.

vpn option <index> <cmd1>=<param1> [<cmd2>=<para2> | ...]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <index> | It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32 |
| For Common Settings | |
| <index> | It means the index number of the profile. |
| <i>pname</i> | It means the name of the profile. |
| <i>ena</i> | It means to enable or disable the profile. on – Enable off - Disable |
| <i>thr</i> | It means the way that VPN connection passes through. Available settings are wlf, wlo, w2f, and w2o. w1f – WAN1 First. w1o – WAN1 Only. w2f – WAN2 First. w2o – WAN2 Only. |
| <i>nnpkt</i> | It means the NetBios Naming Packet. on – Enable the function to pass the packet. off – Disable the function to block the packet. |
| <i>dir</i> | It means the call direction. Available settings are b, o and i. b – Both o – Dial-Out i – Dial-In. |
| <i>idle=[value]</i> | It means Always on and Idle Time out. Available values include: -1 – it means always on for dial-out. 0 – it means always on for dial-in. Other numbers (e.g., idle=200, idle=300, idle=500) mean the router will be idle after the interval (seconds) configured here. |
| <i>palive</i> | It means to enable PING to keep alive. -1 – disable the function. 1,2,3,4 – Enable the function and PING IP 1.2.3.4 to keep alive. |
| For Dial-Out Settings | |
| <i>ctype</i> | It means “Type of Server I am calling”. |

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| | <p>“ctype=t” means PPTP.</p> <p>“ctype=s” means IPsec.</p> <p>“ctype= 1” means L2TP(IPsec Policy None).</p> <p>“ctype= 11” means L2TP(IPsec Policy Nice to Have).</p> <p>“ctype= 12” means L2TP(IPsec Policy Must).</p> |
| <i>dialto</i> | It means Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89). |
| <i>ltype</i> | <p>It means Link Type.</p> <p>“ltype=0” means “Disable”.</p> <p>“ltype=1” means “64kbps”.</p> <p>“ltype=2” means “128kbps”.</p> <p>“ltype=3” means “BOD”.</p> |
| <i>oname</i> | <p>It means Dial-Out Username.</p> <p>“oname=admin” means to set Username = admin.</p> |
| <i>opwd</i> | <p>It means Dial-Out Password</p> <p>“opwd=1234” means to set Password = 1234.</p> |
| <i>pauth</i> | <p>It means PPP Authentication.</p> <p>“pauth=pc” means to set PPP Authentication = PAP&CHAP.</p> <p>“pauth=p” means to set PPP Authentication = PAP Only</p> |
| <i>ovj</i> | <p>It means VJ Compression.</p> <p>“ovj=on/off” means to enable/disable VJ Compression.</p> |
| <i>okey</i> | <p>It means IKE Pre-Shared Key.</p> <p>“okey=abcd” means to set IKE Pre-Shared Key = abcd.</p> |
| <i>ometh</i> | <p>It means IPsec Security Method.</p> <p>“ometh=ah/” means AH.</p> <p>“ometh=espd/espda/” means ESP DES without/with Authentication.</p> <p>“ometh=esp3/esp3a/” means ESP 3DES without/with Authentication.</p> <p>“ometh=espa/espaa” means ESP AES without/with Authentication.</p> |
| <i>sch</i> | <p>It means Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup.</p> <p>sch=1,3,5,7 Set schedule 1->3->5->7</p> |
| <i>rcallb</i> | <p>It means Require Remote to Callback.</p> <p>“rcallb=on/off” means to enable/disable Set Require Remote to Callback.</p> |
| <i>ikeid</i> | <p>It means IKE Local ID.</p> <p>“ikeid=vigor” means Set Local ID = vigor.</p> |
| For Dial-In Settings | |
| <i>itype</i> | <p>It means Allowed Dial-In Type. Available settings include:</p> <p>“itype=t” means PPTP.</p> <p>“itype=s” means IPsec.</p> |

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| | <p>“itype=L1” means L2TP (None).</p> <p>“itype=L1” means L2TP(Nice to Have).</p> <p>“itype=l2” means L2TP(Must).</p> |
| <i>peer</i> | <p>It means specify Peer VPN Server IP for Remote VPN Gateway.</p> <p>Type “203.12.23.48” means to allow VPN dial-in with IP address of 203.12.23.48.</p> <p>Type “off” means any remote IP is allowed to dial in.</p> |
| <i>peerid</i> | <p>It means the peer ID for Remote VPN Gateway.</p> <p>Type “draytek” means the word is used as local ID.</p> |
| <i>iname</i> | <p>It means Dial-in Username.</p> <p>“iname=admin” means to set username as “admin”.</p> |
| <i>ipwd</i> | <p>It means Dial-in Password.</p> <p>“ipwd=1234” means to set password as “1234”.</p> |
| <i>ivj</i> | <p>It means VJ Compression.</p> <p>“ivj=on/off” means to enable /disable VJ Compression.</p> |
| <i>ikey</i> | <p>It means IKE Pre-Shared Key.</p> <p>“ikey=abcd” means to set IKE Pre-Shared Key = abcd.</p> |
| <i>imeth</i> | <p>It means IPsec Security Method</p> <p>“imeth=h” means “Allow AH”.</p> <p>“imeth=d” means “Allow DES”.</p> <p>“imeth=3” means “Allow 3DES”.</p> <p>“imeth=a” means “Allow AES”.</p> |
| For TCP/IP Settings | |
| <i>mywip</i> | <p>It means My WAN IP.</p> <p>“mywip=1.2.3.4” means to set My WAN IP as “1.2.3.4”.</p> |
| <i>rgip</i> | <p>It means Remote Gateway IP.</p> <p>“rgip=1.2.3.4” means to set Remote Gateway IP as “1.2.3.4”.</p> |
| <i>rnip</i> | <p>It means Remote Network IP.</p> <p>“rnip=1.2.3.0” means to set Remote Network IP as “1.2.3.0”.</p> |
| <i>rnmask</i> | <p>It means Remote Network Mask.</p> <p>“rnmask=255.255.255.0” means to set Remote Network Mask as “255.255.255.0”.</p> |
| <i>rip</i> | <p>It means RIP Direction.</p> <p>“rip=d” means to set RIP Direction as “Disable”.</p> <p>“rip=t” means to set RIP Direction as “TX”.</p> <p>“rip=r” means to set RIP Direction as “RX”.</p> <p>“rip=b” means to set RIP Direction as “Both”.</p> |
| <i>mode</i> | <p>It means the option of “From first subnet to remote network, you have to do”.</p> <p>“mode=r” means to set Route mode.</p> <p>“mode=n” means to set NAT mode.</p> |

| | |
|---------------|--|
| <i>droute</i> | It means to Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this). droute=on/off means to enable/disable the function. |
|---------------|--|

Example

```
> vpn option 1 idle=250
% Change Log..

% Idle Timeout = 250
```

Telnet Command: vpn mroute

This command allows users to list, add or delete static routes for a certain LAN to LAN VPN profile.

vpn mroute <index> **list**

vpn mroute <index> **add** <network ip>/<mask>

vpn mroute <index> **del** <network ip>/<mask>

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>list</i> | It means to display all of the route settings. |
| <i>add</i> | It means to add a new route. |
| <i>del</i> | It means to delete specified route. |
| <index> | It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32 |
| <network ip>/<mask> | Type the IP address with the network mask address. |

Example

```
> vpn mroute 1 add 192.168.5.0/24
% 192.168.5.0/24
% Add new route 192.168.5.0/24 to profile 1
```

Telnet Command: vpn list

This command allows users to view LAN to LAN VPN profiles.

vpn list <index> **all**

vpn list <index> **com**

vpn list <index> **out**

vpn list <index> **in**

vpn list <index> **net**

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| <i>all</i> | It means to list configuration of the specified profile. |
| <i>com</i> | It means to list common settings of the specified profile. |
| <i>out</i> | It means to list dial-out settings of the specified profile. |
| <i>in</i> | It means to list dial-in settings of the specified profile. |
| <i>net</i> | It means to list Network Settings of the specified profile. |
| < <i>index</i> > | It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32 |

Example

```

> vpn list 32 all
% Common Settings

% Profile Name           : ???
% Profile Status         : Disable
% Netbios Naming Packet  : Pass
% Call Direction         : Both
% Idle Timeout           : 300
% PING to keep alive     : off

% Dial-out Settings

% Type of Server         : PPTP
% Link Type:              : 64k bps
% Username               : ???
% Password               :
% PPP Authentication     : PAP/CHAP
% VJ Compression         : on
% Pre-Shared Key         :
% IPSec Security Method  : AH
% Schedule                : 0,0,0,0
% Remote Callback        : off
% Provide ISDN Number    : off
% IKE phase 1 mode       : Main mode
% IKE Local ID           :

% Dial-In Settings

--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
> vpn list 1 com
% Common Settings

% Profile Name           : ???
% Profile Status         : Disable
% Netbios Naming Packet  : Pass
% Call Direction         : Both
% Idle Timeout           : 300

```

```
% PING to keep alive      : off
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn remote

This command allows users to enable or disable *PPTP/IPSec/L2TP* VPN service.

vpn remote [*PPTP/IPSec/L2TP*] [*on/off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>PPTP/IPSec/L2TP</i> | There are four types to be selected. |
| <i>on/off</i> | on – enable VPN remote setting. off – disable VPN remote setting. |

Example

```
> vpn remote PPTP on
Set PPTP VPN Service : On

Please restart the router!!
```

Telnet Command: vpn 2ndsubnet

This command allows users to enable 2ndsubnet IP as VPN server ID.

vpn 2ndsubnet *on*

vpn 2ndsubnet *off*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <i>on/off</i> | It means to enable or disable second subnet. |

Example

```
> vpn 2ndsubnet on
%Enable second subnet IP as VPN server IP!
```

Telnet Command: vpn NetBios

This command allows users to enable or disable NetBios for Remote Access User Accounts or LAN-to-LAN Profile.

vpn NetBios set <*H2I/L2I*> <*index*> <*Block/Pass*>

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| < <i>H2I/L2I</i> > | H2I means Remote Access User Accounts. |

| | |
|--------------|---|
| | L2l means LAN-to-LAN Profile. Specify which one will be applied by NetBios. |
| <index> | The index number of the profile. |
| <Block/Pass> | Pass – Have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. Block – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, set it block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel. |

Example

```
> vpn NetBios set H2l 1 Pass
% Remote Dial In Profile Index [1] :
% NetBios Block/Pass: [PASS]
```

Telnet Command: vpn mss

This command allows users to configure the maximum segment size (MSS) for different TCP types.

vpn mss show

vpn mss default

vpn mss set <connection type> <TCP maximum segment size range>

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <i>show</i> | It means to display current setting status. |
| <i>default</i> | TCP maximum segment size for all the VPN connection will be set as 1360 bytes. |
| <i>set</i> | Use it to specify the connection type and value of MSS. |
| <connection type> | 1~4 represent various type. 1 – PPTP 2 – L2TP 3 – IPsec 4 – L2TP over IPsec |
| <TCP maximum segment size range> | Each type has different segment size range. PPTP – 1 ~ 1412 L2TP – 1 ~ 1408 IPsec – 1 ~ 1381 L2TP over IPsec – 1 ~ 1361 |

Example

```
>vpn mss set 1 1400
% VPN TCP maximum segment size (MSS) :
PPTP = 1400
```

```

L2TP = 1360
IPSec = 1360
L2TP over IPSec = 1360
>vpn mss show
VPN TCP maximum segment size (MSS) :
PPTP = 1400
L2TP = 1360
IPSec = 1360
L2TP over IPSec = 1360

```

Telnet Command: vpn ike

This command is used to display IKE memory status and leakage list.

vpn ike -q

Example

```

> vpn ike -q
IKE Memory Status and Leakage List

# of free L-Buffer=95, minimum=94, leak=1
# of free M-Buffer=529, minimum=529 leak=3
# of free S-Buffer=1199, minimum=1198, leak=1
# of free Msgid-Buffer=1024, minimum=1024

```

Telnet Command: vpn Multicast

This command allows users to pass or block the multi-cast packet via VPN.

vpn Multicast set <H2l/L2l> <index> <Block/Pass>

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| <H2l/L2l> | H2l means Host to LAN (Remote Access User Accounts). L2l means LAN-to-LAN Profile. |
| <index> | The index number of the profile. |
| <Block/Pass> | Set Block/Pass the Multicast Packets. The default is Block. |

Example

```

> vpn Multicast set L2l 1 Pass
% Lan to Lan Profile Index [1] :
% Status Block/Pass: [PASS]

```

Telnet Command: vpn pass2nd

This command allows users to determine if the packets coming from the second subnet passing through current used VPN tunnel.

vpn pass2nd[on]

vpn pass2nd [*off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <i>on/off</i> | on – the packets can pass through NAT. off – the packets cannot pass through NAT. |

Example

```
> vpn pass2nd on
% 2nd subnet is allowed to pass VPN tunnel!
```

Telnet Command: vpn pass2nat

This command allows users to determine if the packets passing through by NAT or not when the VPN tunnel disconnect.

vpn pass2nat [*on*]

vpn pass2nat [*off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <i>on/off</i> | on – the packets can pass through NAT. off – the packets cannot pass through NAT. |

Example

```
> vpn pass2nat on
% Packets would go through by NAT when VPN disconnect!!
```

Telnet Command: wan ppp_mru

This command allows users to adjust the size of PPP LCP MRU. It is used for specific network.

wan ppp_mru <WAN interface number> <MRU siz >

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <WAN interface number> | Type a number to represent the physical interface. For Vigor130, the number is 1 (which means WAN1). |
| <MRU siz > | It means the number of PPP LCP MRU. The available range is from 1400 to 1600. |

Example

```
>wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1492
```

```

> wan ppp_mru 1 1490
>
> wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1490

> wan ppp_mru 1 1492
> wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1492

```

Telnet Command: wan mtu

This command allows users to adjust the size of MTU for WAN1.

wan mtu [*value*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| <i>value</i> | It means the number of MTU for PPP. The available range is from 1000 to 1500. For Static IP/DHCP, the maximum number will be 1500. For PPPoE, the maximum number will be 1492. For PPTP/L2TP, the maximum number will be 1460. |

Example

```

> wan mtu 1100
> wan mtu ?
Static IP/DHCP (Max MSS: 1500)
PPPoE(Max MSS: 1492)
PPTP/L2TP(Max MSS: 1460)
% wan ppp_mss <MSS size: 1000 ~ 1500>
% Now: 1100

```

Telnet Command: wan DF_check

This command allows you to enable or disable the function of DF (Don't fragment)

wan DF_check [*on*]

wan DF_check [*off*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>on/off</i> | It means to enable or disable DF. |

Example

```

> wan DF_check on
%DF bit check enable!

```

Telnet Command: wan disable

This command allows you to disable WAN connection.

Example

```
> wan disable WAN
%WAN disabled.
```

Telnet Command: wan enable

This command allows you to disable wan connection.

Example

```
> wan enable WAN
%WAN1 enabled.
```

Telnet Command: wan forward

This command allows you to enable or disable the function of WAN forwarding. The packets are allowed to be transmitted between different WANs.

wan forward *[on]*

wan forward *[off]*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <i>on/off</i> | It means to enable or disable WAN forward. |

Example

```
> wan forward ?
%WAN forwarding is Disable!

> wan forward on
%WAN forwarding is enable!
```

Telnet Command: wan status

This command allows you to display the status of WAN connection, including connection mode, TX/RX packets, DNS settings and IP address.

Example

```
> wan status
WAN1: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0
Primary DNS=0.0.0.0, Secondary DNS=0.0.0.0

PVC_WAN3: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
```

```

TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0

PVC_WAN4: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0

PVC_WAN5: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0

```

Telnet Command: wan vdsl

This command allows you to configure display current VDSL status and configure the fallback mode for WAN connection.

wan vdsl [*show basic*]

wan vdsl[*fbk_mode*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| <i>show basic</i> | It means to display current VDSL status. |
| <i>fbk_mode</i> | It means to display current status of Fallback Mode used. Available modes to be set as fallback mode include, Auto Vdsl_only Adsl_only |

Example

```

> wan vdsl show basic
ADSL
Link Status:    TRAINING
Firmware Version:    05-04-04-04-00-01
ADSL Profile:
Basic  Status  Upstream      Downstream      Unit
Actual Data Rate:    0      0      Kb/s
SNR:    0      0      0.1dB
> wan vdsl fbk_mode vdsl_only
Set VDSL fallback mode to VDSL ONLY
Reboot system to take effect
>

```

Telnet Command: wan detect

This command allows you to Ping a specified IP to detect the WAN connection (static IP or PPPoE mode).

wan detect [*wan1*][*on/off/always_on*]

wan detect [*wan1*]**target** [*ip addr*]

wan detect [*wan1*]**t**tl [*1-255*]

wan detect status

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| <i>on</i> | It means to enable ping detection. The IP address of the target shall be set. |
| <i>off</i> | It means to enable ARP detection (default). |
| <i>always_on</i> | disable link detect, always connected(only support static IP) |
| <i>target</i> | It means to set the ping target. |
| <i>ip addr</i> | It means the IP address used for detection. Type an IP address in this field. |
| <i>ttl</i> | It means to set the ping TTL value (work as trace route) If you do not set any value for ttl here or just type 0 here, the system will use default setting (255) as the ttl value. |
| <i>status</i> | It means to show the current status. |

Example

```
> wan detect status
WAN1: always on
WAN2: off
WAN3: off
WAN4: off
WAN5: off
> wan detect wan1 target 192.168.1.78
Set OK

> wan detect wan1 on
Set OK

> wan detect status
WAN1: on, Target=192.168.1.78, TTL=255
WAN2: off
WAN3: off
WAN4: off
WAN5: off
>
```

Telnet Command: wan lb

This command allows you to Enable/Disable for each WAN to join auto load balance member.

wan lb [*wan1/wan2/...*] *on*

wan lb [*wan1/wan2/...*] *off*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <i>wan1/wan2</i> | It means to specify which WAN will be applied with load balance. |
| <i>on</i> | It means to make WAN interface as the member of load balance. |
| <i>off</i> | It means to cancel WAN interface as the member of load balance. |

Example

```
> wan lb status
WAN1: on
WAN2: on
WAN3: on
WAN4: on
WAN5: on
WAN6: on
WAN7: on
```

Telnet Command: wan mvlan

This command allows you to configure multi-VLAN for WAN and LAN. It supports pure bridge mode (modem mode) between Ethernet WAN and LAN port 2~4.

wan mvlan [*pvc_no/status/save/enable/disable*] [*on/off/clear/tag tag_no*] [*service type/vlan priority*] [*px ...*] [*Keep Tag*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>pvc_no</i> | It means index number of PVC. There are 10 PVC, 0(Channel-1) to 9(Channel-9) allowed to be configured. However, only 2 to 9 are available for configuration. |
| <i>status</i> | It means to display the whole Bridge status. |
| <i>save</i> | It means to save the configuration into flash of Vigor router. |
| <i>enable/disable</i> | It means to enable/disable the Multi-VLAN function. |
| <i>on/off</i> | It means to turn on/off bridge mode for the specific channel. |
| <i>clear</i> | It means to turn off/clear the port. |
| <i>tag tag_no</i> | It means to tag a number for the VLAN. -1: No need to add tag number. 1-4095: Available setting numbers used as tagged number. |
| <i>service type</i> | It means to specify the service type for VLAN. 0: Normal. 1: IGMP. |
| <i>vlan priority</i> | It means to specify the priority for the VALN setting. Range is from 0 to 7. |
| <i>px</i> | It means LAN port. Available setting number is from 2 to 4. |

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| | Port number 1 is locked for NAT usage. |
| <i>Keep Tag</i> | It means Multi-VLAN packets will keep their VLAN headers to LAN. |

Example

PVC 7 will map to LAN port 2/3/4 in bridge mode; service type is Normal. No tag added.

```

> > wan mvlan 7 on p2 p3 p4
PVC Bridge p1 p2 p3 p4 p5 p6 Service Type Tag Priority Keep Tag
-----
7 ON 0 0 1 1 0 0 Normal 0(OFF) 0 OFF
>

```

Telnet Command: wan multifno

This command allows you to specify a channel (in Multi-PVC/VLAN) to make bridge connection to a specified WAN interface.

wan multifno [*channel #*] [*WAN interface #*]

wan multifno *status*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <i>channel #</i> | There are 4 (?) channels including VLAN and PVC. Available settings are: 1=Channel 1 3=Channel 3 4=Channel 4 5=Channel 5 |
| <i>WAN interface #</i> | Type a number to indicate the WAN interface. 1= <i>WAN1</i> |
| <i>status</i> | It means to display current bridge status. |

Example

```

> wan multifno 5 1
% Configured channel 5 uplink to WAN1
> wan multifno status
% Channel 3 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 4 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 5 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 6 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 7 uplink ifno: 3
>

```

Telnet Command: wl acl

This command allows the user to configure wireless access control settings.

wl acl enable [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4]

wl acl disable [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4]

wl acl add [MAC] [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [isolate]

wl acl del [MAC]

wl acl mode [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [white/black]

wl acl show

wl acl showmode

wl acl clean

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <i>enable</i> [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] | It means to enable the settings for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4. |
| <i>disable</i> [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] | It means to disable the settings for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4. |
| <i>add</i> [MAC] [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [isolate] | It means to associate a MAC address to certain SSID interfaces' access control settings. The isolate setting will limit the wireless client's network capabilities to accessing the wireless LAN only. [MAC] format: xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx |
| <i>del</i> [MAC] | It means to delete a MAC address entry defined in the access control list. |
| <i>mode</i> [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [white/black] | It means to set white/black list for each SSID. |
| <i>wl acl show</i> | It means to show access control status. |
| <i>wl acl showmode</i> | It means to show the mode for each SSID. |
| <i>wl acl clean</i> | It means to clean all access control setting. |

Example

```
> > wl acl showmode
ssid1: none
ssid2: none
ssid3: none
ssid4: none
> wl acl add 00-50-70-ff-12-70
Set Done !!
> wl acl add 00-50-70-ff-12-70 ssid1 ssid2 isolate
Set Done !!
> wl acl show
```

```

-----Enable Mac Address Filter-----
ssid1: dis  ssid2: dis  ssid3: dis  ssid4: dis
-----MAC Address Filter-----
Index   Attribute      MAC Address      Associated SSIDs
  0                00:50:70:ff:12:70  ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4
  1           s      00:50:70:ff:12:70  ssid1 ssid2

s: Isolate the station from LAN
>

```

Telnet Command: wl config

This command allows users to configure general settings and security settings for wireless connection.

wl config mode *[value]*

wl config mode show

wl config channel *[number]*

wl config preamble *[enable]*

wl config txburst *[enable]*

wl config ssid *[ssid_num enable ssid_name [hidden_ssid]]*

wl config security *[SSID_NUMBER] [mode]*

wl config ratectl *[ssid_num enable upload download]*

wl config isolate *[ssid_num lan member]*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| <i>mode[value]</i> | It means to select connection mode for wireless connection. Available settings are: "11bgn", "11gn", "11n", "11bg", "11g", or "11b". |
| <i>mode show</i> | It means to display what the current wireless mode is. |
| <i>channel [number]</i> | It means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The available settings are 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12 and 13. number=0, means Auto number=1, means Channel 1 number=13, means Channel 13. |
| <i>preamble [enable]</i> | It means to define the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync field instead of long preamble with 128 bit sync field. However, some original 11b wireless network devices only support long preamble. 0: disable to use long preamble. 1: enable to use long preamble. |
| <i>txburst [enable]</i> | It means to enhance the performance in data transmission |

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|----------|--------------|--------|-----------------|---------|------------------|-----------|------------------------------|--------|-----------------|----------|---------|----------|----------|------------|----------------------|------|-----|
| | <p>about 40%* more (by enabling Tx Burst). It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function at the same time.</p> <p>0: disable the function.</p> <p>1: enable the function.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p><i>ssid</i>[<i>ssid_num enable ssid_name</i> [<i>hidden_ssid</i>]]</p> | <p>It means to set the name of the SSID, hide the SSID if required.</p> <p><i>ssid_num</i>: Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4.</p> <p><i>ssid_name</i>: Give a name for the specified SSID.</p> <p><i>hidden_ssid</i>: Type 0 to hide the SSID or 1 to display the SSID</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p><i>Security</i> [<i>SSID_NUMBER</i>] [<i>mode</i>][<i>key</i>][<i>index</i>]</p> | <p>It means to configure security settings for the wireless connection.</p> <p><i>SSID_NUMBER</i>: Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4.</p> <p><i>mode</i>: Available settings are:</p> <table> <tr> <td>disable:</td> <td>No security.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>wpa1x:</td> <td>WPA/802.1x Only</td> </tr> <tr> <td>wpa21x:</td> <td>WPA2/802.1x Only</td> </tr> <tr> <td>wpamix1x:</td> <td>Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>wep1x:</td> <td>WEP/802.1x Only</td> </tr> <tr> <td>wpa2psk:</td> <td>WPA/PSK</td> </tr> <tr> <td>wpa2psk:</td> <td>WPA2/PSK</td> </tr> <tr> <td>wpamixpsk:</td> <td>Mixed (WPA+WPA2)/PSK</td> </tr> <tr> <td>wep:</td> <td>WEP</td> </tr> </table> <p><i>key, index</i>: Moreover, you have to add keys for <i>wpa2psk</i>, <i>wpa2psk</i>, <i>wpamixpsk</i> and <i>wep</i>, and specify index number of schedule profiles to be followed by the wireless connection.</p> <p>WEP keys must be in 5/13 ASCII text string or 10/26 Hexadecimal digit format; WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII text string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format.</p> | disable: | No security. | wpa1x: | WPA/802.1x Only | wpa21x: | WPA2/802.1x Only | wpamix1x: | Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only) | wep1x: | WEP/802.1x Only | wpa2psk: | WPA/PSK | wpa2psk: | WPA2/PSK | wpamixpsk: | Mixed (WPA+WPA2)/PSK | wep: | WEP |
| disable: | No security. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wpa1x: | WPA/802.1x Only | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wpa21x: | WPA2/802.1x Only | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wpamix1x: | Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wep1x: | WEP/802.1x Only | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wpa2psk: | WPA/PSK | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wpa2psk: | WPA2/PSK | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wpamixpsk: | Mixed (WPA+WPA2)/PSK | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| wep: | WEP | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p><i>ratectl</i> [<i>ssid_num enable upload download</i>]</p> | <p>It means to set the rate control for the specified SSID.</p> <p><i>ssid_num</i>: Choose 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4.</p> <p><i>enable</i>: It means to enable the function of the rate control for the specified SSID. 0: disable and 1:enable.</p> <p><i>upload</i>: It means to configure the rate control for data upload. The unit is kbps.</p> <p><i>download</i>: It means to configure the rate control for data download. The unit is kbps.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p><i>isolate</i> [<i>ssid_num lan member</i>]</p> | <p>It means to isolate the wireless connection for LAN and/or Member.</p> <p><i>lan</i> – It can make the wireless clients (stations) with remote-dial and LAN to LAN users not accessing for each other.</p> <p><i>member</i> – It can make the wireless clients (stations) with the</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

same SSID not accessing for each other.

Example

```
> wl config mode 11bgn
Current mode is 11bgn
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the channel
> wl config channel 13
Current channel is 13
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the channel.
> wl config preamble 1
Long preamble is enabled
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl config ssid 1 enable dray
SSID Enable Hide_SSID Name
1 1 0 dray
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl config security 1 wpa1x
%% Configured Wlan Security Setting:
% SSID1
%% Mode: wpa1x
%% Wireless card must be reset for configurations to take effect
%% (Telnet Command: wl restart)
```

Telnet Command: wl set

This command allows users to configure basic wireless settings.

wl set [*SSID*] [*CHAN* [*En*]]

wl set txburst [*enable*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <i>SSID</i> | It means to type the SSID for the router. The maximum character that you can use is 32. |
| <i>CHAN</i> [<i>En</i>] | It means to specify required channel for the router. <i>CHAN</i> : The range for the number is between 1 ~ 13. <i>En</i> : type <i>on</i> to enable the function; type <i>off</i> to disable the function. |
| <i>txburst</i> [<i>enable</i>] | It means to enhance the performance in data transmission about 40%* more (by enabling Tx Burst). It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function at the same time. 0: disable the function. 1: enable the function. |

Example

```
> wl set MKT 2 on
% New Wlan Setting is:
```

```
% SSID=MKT
% Chan=2
% Wl is Enable
```

Telnet Command: wl act

This command allows users to activate wireless settings.

wl act [*En*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| <i>En</i> | It means to enable or disable the function of VPN isolation. 0: diable 1: enable |

Example

```
> wl act on
% Set Wlan to Enable.
```

Telnet Command: wl scan

This command allows users to perform AP scanning.

wl scan [*start*]

wl scan set [*wlist/blist/stime*][*MAC*]

wl scan del [*wlist/blist*] [*MAC*]

wl scan filter [*ssid/channel/mac*]

wl scan show [*0/1/2/3*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---|--|
| <i>start</i> | It means to start AP scanning. |
| <i>set</i> [<i>wlist/blist/stime</i>] <i>[MAC]</i> | Set white list/block list/scan time. <i>wlist</i> – It means to set white list for passing. MAC address must be added in the end. e.g., <i>wl scan set wlist 001122aabbcc</i> <i>blist</i> – It means to set black list for blocking. MAC address must be added in the end. <i>stime</i> – It means to set scanning time. Time value (2~5 second) must be added in the end. e.g., <i>wl scan set time 5</i> |
| <i>del</i> | Remove white list/block list. e.g., <i>wl scan del wlist 001122aabbcc</i> |
| <i>filter</i> | Set which filter you want. <i>ssid</i> – scanning the AP based on SSID setting. <i>channel</i> - scanning the AP based on channel setting. |

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| | <i>mac</i> - scanning the AP based on MAC address setting.. |
| <i>show [0/1/2/3]</i> | It is used to show AP list. 0 - display white list 1 - display block list, 2 - display gray/unknown list, 3 - display all list |

Example

```
> wl scan set wlist 001122aabbcc
> wl scan start
> wl scan show 3
>
```

Telnet Command: wl stamgt

This command is used to configure connection time and reconnection time for each SSID that wireless client used for accessing into Internet.

wl stamgt [*enable/disable*] [*ssid_num*].

wl stamgt [*show*] [*ssid_num*].

wl stamgt set [*ssid_num*] [*c*] [*r*]

wl stamgt reset [*ssid_num*].

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>enable/disable</i> | It means to enable/disable the station management control. |
| <i>ssid_num</i> | It means channel selection. Available channel for 2.4G: 0/1/2/3 Available channel for 5G: 4/5/6/7. |
| <i>show</i> | It means to display status or configuration of the selected channel. |
| <i>c</i> | It means connection time. The unit is minute. |
| <i>r</i> | It means reconnection time. The unit is minute. |

Example

```
> wl stamgt enable 1
% Station Management Status: enabled
> wl stamgt set 1 60 60
> wl stamgt show 1
NO. SSID          BSSID          Connect time  Reconnect time
1.  Draytek        00:11:22:aa:bb:cc  0d:0:58:26    0d:0:0
```

Telnet Command: `wl iso_vpn`

This command allows users to activate the function of VPN isolation.

`wl iso_vpn [ssid] [En]`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| <i>ssid</i> | It means the number of SSID. 1: SSID1 2: SSID2 3: SSID3 4: SSID4 |
| <i>En</i> | It means to enable or disable the function of VPN isolation. 0: disable 1: enable |

Example

```
> wl iso_vpn 1 on
% ssid: 1 isolate vpn on :1
```

Telnet Command: `wl wpa`

This command allows you to configure WPA wireless settings.

`wl wpa 1/2/3`

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|---|
| <i>wl wpa</i> | Type 1/2/3 to represent different WPA modes. 1 – means WPA+WPA2 2 – means WPA2 Only 3 – means WPA Only |

Example

```
> wl wpa 1
>
```

Telnet Command: `wl wmm`

This command allows users to set WMM for wireless connection. It defines the priority levels for four access categories derived from 802.1d (prioritization tabs).

`wl wmm ap QueIdx Aifsn Cwmin Cwmax Txop ACM`

`wl wmm bss QueIdx Aifsn Cwmin Cwmax Txop ACM`

`wl wmm ack Que0_Ack Que1_Ack Que2_Ack Que3_Ack`

`wl wmm enable SSID0 SSID1 SSID2 SSID3`

`wl wmm apsd value`

wl wmm show

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>ap</i> | It means to set WMM for access point. |
| <i>bss</i> | It means to set WMM for wireless clients. |
| <i>ack</i> | It means to map to the Ack policy settings of AP WMM. |
| <i>enable</i> | It means to enable the WMM for each SSID. 0: disable 1: enable |
| <i>Apsd [value]</i> | It means to enable / disable the ASPD(automatic power-save delivery) function. 0: disable 1: enable |
| <i>show</i> | It displays current status of WMM. |
| <i>QueIdx</i> | It means the number of the queue which the WMM settings will be applied to. There are four queues, best effort, background, voice, and video. |
| <i>Aifsn</i> | It controls how long the client waits for each data transmission. |
| <i>Cwmin/ Cwmax</i> | CWMin means contention Window-Min and CWMax means contention Window-Max. Specify the value ranging from 1 to 15. |
| <i>Txop</i> | It means transmission opportunity. Specify the value ranging from 0 to 65535. |
| <i>ACM</i> | It can restrict stations from using specific category class if it is enabled. 0: disable 1: enable |

Example

```
> wl wmm ap 0 3 4 6 0 0
  QueIdx=0: APAifsn=3,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=6, APTxop=0,APACM=0
> wl wmm enable 1 0 1 0
  WMM_SSID0 =1, WMM_SSID1 =0,WMM_SSID2 =1,WMM_SSID3 =0
> wl wmm show
  Enable WMM: SSID0 =1, SSID1 =0,SSID2 =1,SSID3 =0
  APSD=0
  QueIdx=0: APAifsn=3,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=6, APTxop=0,APACM=0
  QueIdx=1: APAifsn=7,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=10, APTxop=0,APACM=0
  QueIdx=2: APAifsn=1,APCwmin=3,APCwmax=4, APTxop=94,APACM=0
  QueIdx=3: APAifsn=1,APCwmin=2,APCwmax=3, APTxop=47,APACM=0
  QueIdx=0: BSSAifsn=3,BSSCwmin=4,BSSCwmax=10, BSSTxop=0,BSSACM=0
  QueIdx=1: BSSAifsn=7,BSSCwmin=4,BSSCwmax=10, BSSTxop=0,BSSACM=0
```

```

QueIdx=2: BSSAifsn=2,BSSCwmin=3,BSSCwmax=4, BSSTxop=94,BSSACM=0
QueIdx=3: BSSAifsn=2,BSSCwmin=2,BSSCwmax=3, BSSTxop=47,BSSACM=0
AckPolicy[0]=0: AckPolicy[1]=0,AckPolicy[2]=0,AckPolicy[3]=0

```

Telnet Command: **wl ht**

This command allows you to configure wireless settings.

wl ht bw *value*

wl ht gi *value*

wl ht badecline *value*

wl ht autoba *value*

wl ht rdg *value*

wl ht msdu *value*

wl ht txpower *value*

wl ht antenna *value*

wl ht greenfield *value*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <i>wl ht bw value</i> | The value you can type is 0 (for BW_20) and 1 (for BW_40). |
| <i>wl ht gi value</i> | The value you can type is 0 (for GI_800) and 1 (for GI_4001) |
| <i>wl ht badecline value</i> | The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling). |
| <i>wl ht autoba value</i> | The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling). |
| <i>wl ht rdg value</i> | The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling). |
| <i>wl ht msdu value</i> | The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling). |
| <i>wl ht txpower value</i> | The value you can type ranges from 1 – 6 (level). |
| <i>wl ht antenna value</i> | The value you can type ranges from 0-3. 0: 2T3R 1: 2T2R 2: 1T2R 3: 1T1R |
| <i>wl ht greenfield value</i> | The value you can type is 0 (for mixed mode) and 1 (for green field). |

Example

```

> wl ht bw value 1
  BW=0
<Note> Please restart wireless after you set new parameters.

```

```
> wl restart
Wireless restart.....
```

Telnet Command: wl restart

This command allows you to restart wireless setting.

Example

```
> wl restart
Wireless restart.....
```

Telnet Command: wl btnctl

This command allows you to enable or disable wireless button control.

wl btnctl [*value*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| <i>value</i> | 0: disable 1: enable |

Example

```
> wl btnctl 1
Enable wireless botton control
Current wireless botton control is on
>
```

Telnet Command: wl iwpriv & wl wlanconfig

These two commands are reserved for RD debug. Do not use them.

Telnet Command: wl efuse

This command is used to configure parameters related to wireless RF hardware. At present, it is not allowed for end user to operate.

Telnet Command: wan vlan

This command allows you to tag packets on WAN VLAN with specified number.

wan vlan wan [#] tag [value]

wan vlan wan [#] [enable/disable]

wan vlan stat

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|--|
| # | It means the number of WAN interface. 1: means WAN1 2: means WAN2. |
| value | It means the number to be tagged on packets. The range of the value is between 32 ~ 4095. |
| enable/disable | It means to enable or disable the WAN interface for VLAN. |
| stat | It means to display the table of WAN VLAN status. |

Example

```
> wan vlan stat
%Interface      Pri      Tag      Enabled
%=====
% WAN1 (ADSL)   0        0
% WAN1 (VDSL)   0        0
%WAN2           0        0
```

Telnet Command: wol

This command allows Administrator to set the white list of WAN IP addresses/Subnets, that the magic packet from these IP addresses/Subnets will be eligible to pass through NAT and wake up the LAN client. You also need to set NAT rule for LAN client.

wol up [MAC Address]/[IP Address]

wol fromWan [on/off/any]

wol fromWan_Setting [idx][ip address][mask]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| MAC Address | It means the MAC address of the host. |
| IP address | It means the LAN IP address of the host. If you want to wake up LAN host by using IP address, be sure that that IP address has been bound with the MAC address (IP BindMAC). |
| on/off/any | It means to enable or disable the function of WOL from WAN. on: enable off: disable any: It means any source IP address can pass through NAT |

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| | and wake up the LAN client. This command will allow the user to choose whether WoL packets can be passed from the Internet to the LAN network from a specific WAN interface. |
| <i>[idx][ip address] [mask]</i> | It means the index number (from 1 to 4). These commands will allow the user to configure the LAN clients that the user may wake up from the Internet through the use of the WoL packet. <i>ip address</i> - It means the WAN IP address. <i>mask</i> - It means the mask of the IP address. |

Example

```
> wol fromWan on
> wol fromWan_Setting 1 192.168.1.45 255.255.255.0
>
```

Telnet Command: user

The command is used to create new user account profiles.

User set *[-e/-d/-c/-l/-o/-a/-r/-b]*

user edit *[PROFILE_IDX] [-e/-d/-n/-p/-t/-u/-i/-q/-r/-w/-s/-m/-x/-v]*

user account *[USER_NAME] [-t/-d/-q/-r/-w]*

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--|--|
| <i>set</i> | It means to configure general setup for the user management. |
| <i>edit</i> | It means to modify the selected user profile. |
| <i>account</i> | It means to |
| User Set | |
| <i>-e</i> | Enable User management function. |
| <i>-d</i> | Disable User management function. |
| <i>-a[Profile idx][User name][IP_Address]</i> | It means to pass an IP Address. <i>Profile idx</i> - type the index number of the selected profile. <i>User name</i> - type the user name that you want it to pass. <i>IP_Address</i> - type the IP address that you want it to pass. |
| <i>-l all</i> <i>-l userl</i> <i>-l ip</i> | Show online user. <i>all</i> – all of the users will be displayed on the screen. <i>user name</i> – type the user name that you want to view on the screen. <i>ip</i> – type the IP address that you want to view on the screen. |
| <i>-o</i> | It means to show user account information. e.g.,-o |
| <i>-c[user name]</i> | Clear the user record. |

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>-c all</i> | <i>user name</i> – type the user name that you want to get clear corresponding record. <i>all</i> – all of the records will be removed. |
| <i>-buser [user name]</i> <i>-b ip [ip address]</i> | Block specifies user or IP address. <i>user name</i> – type the user name that you want to block. <i>ip address</i> — type the IP address that you want to block. |
| <i>-u user [user name]</i> <i>-u ip [ip address]</i> | Unblock specifies user or IP address. <i>user name</i> – type the user name that you want to unblock. <i>ip address</i> — type the IP address that you want to unblock. |
| <i>-r [user name all]</i> | Remove the user record. <i>user name</i> – type the name of the user profile. <i>all</i> – all of the user profile settings will be removed. |
| <i>-q</i> | It means to trigger the alert tool to do authentication. |
| <i>-s</i> | It means to set login service. 0:HTTPS 1:HTTP e.g., <i>-s 1</i> |
| User edit | |
| <i>PROFILE_IDX</i> | Type the index number of the profile that you want to edit. |
| <i>-e</i> | Enable User profile function. |
| <i>-d</i> | Disable User profile function. |
| <i>-n</i> | It means to set a user name for a profile. e.g., <i>-n forttest</i> |
| <i>-p</i> | It means to configure user password. e.g., <i>-p 60forttest</i> |
| <i>-t</i> | It means to enable /disable time quota limitation for user profile 0:Disable 1:Enable |
| <i>-u</i> | It means to enable /disable data quota limitation for user profile 0:Disable 1:Enable |
| <i>-i</i> | It means to set idle time. e.g., <i>-i 60</i> |
| <i>-q</i> | set time quota It means to set time quota of the user profile. e.g., <i>-q 200</i> |
| <i>-r</i> | It means to set data quota. e.g., <i>-r 1000</i> |
| <i>-w</i> | It means to specify the data quota unit (MB/GB). |

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| | e.g., -w MB |
| -s | It means to set schedule index. Available settings are” sch_idx1,sch_idx2,sch_idx3, and sch_idx4. |
| -m | It means to set the maximum login user number. e.g., -m 200 |
| -x | It means to set external server authentication 0: None 1: LDAP 2: Radius 3: TACAS e.g., -x 2 |
| -v | It means to view user profile(s). |
| User account | |
| <i>USER_NAME</i> | It means to type a name of the user account. |
| -t | It means to enable /disable time quota limitation for user account. 0:Disable 1:Enable |
| -d | It means to enable /disable data quota limitation for user account. 0:Disable 1:Enable |
| -q | It means to set account time quota. e.g., -q 200 |
| -r | It means to set account data quota. e.g., -r 1000 |
| -w | It means to set data quota unit (MB/GB). |

Example

```
>
```

Telnet Command: nand bad /nand usage

“NAND usage” is used to display NAND Flash usage; “nand bad” is used to display NAND Flash bad blocks.

nand bad

nand usage

Example

```
>nand usage
Show NAND Flash Usage:
Partition    Total        Used          Available    Use%
cfg          4194304      7920          4186384      0%
```

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------|------------|-----------|----------|-----|
| bin_web | 33554432 | 11869493 | 21684939 | 35% |
| cfg-bak | 4194304 | 7920 | 4186384 | 0% |
| bin_web-bak | 33554432 | 11869493 | 21684939 | 35% |
| > nand bad | | | | |
| Show NAND Flash Bad Blocks: | | | | |
| Block | Address | Partition | | |
| 1020 | 0x07f80000 | unused | | |
| 1021 | 0x07fa0000 | unused | | |
| 1022 | 0x07fc0000 | unused | | |
| 1023 | 0x07fe0000 | unused | | |

Telnet Command: **apm show /clear/discover/query**

The `apm` command(s) is use to display, remove, discover or query the information of VigorAP registered to Vigor2860.

apm show

apm clear

apm discover

apm query

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| <i>show</i> | It displays current information of APM profile. |
| <i>clear</i> | It is used to remove all of the APM profile. |
| <i>discover</i> | It is used to search VigorAP on LAN. |
| <i>query</i> | It is used to query any VigorAP which has been registered to APM (Central AP Management) in Vigor2860. Information related to the registered AP will be send back to Vigor2860 for updating the web page of Central AP Management. |

Example

```
> apm clear ?
Clear all clients ... done
```

Telnet Command: **apm profile**

This command allows to configure wireless profiles to be used in Central AP Management.

apm profile clone [*from index*][*to index*][*new name*]

apm profile del [*index*]

apm profile reset

apm profile summary

apm profile [*show* [*profile index*]]

apm profile apply [*profile index*] [*client index1*] [*index2 .. index5*]]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| <i>clone</i> | It is used to copy the same parameters settings from one profile to another APM profile. |
| <i>del</i> | It is used to delete a specified APM profile. The default (index #1) should not be deleted. |
| <i>reset</i> | It is used to reset to factory settings for WLAN profile. |
| <i>summary</i> | It is used to list all of the APM profiles with required information. |
| <i>show</i> | It is used to display specified APM profile. |
| <i>apply</i> | It is used to apply the selected APM profile onto specified VigorAP. |
| <i>from index</i> | Type an index number in this field. It is the original APM profile to be cloned to other APM profile. |
| <i>to index</i> | Type an index number in this file. It is the target profile which will clone the parameters settings from an existed APM profile. |
| <i>new name</i> | Type a name for a new APM profile. |
| <i>profile index</i> | Type the index number of existed profile. |
| <i>client index1/2/3/4/5</i> | It is useful for applying the selected APM profile to the specified VigorAP. |

Example

```

> apm profile clone 1 2 forcarrie
(Done)

> apm profile summary
# Name          SSID          Security      ACL      RateCtrl(U/D)
- - - - -
0 Default      DrayTek-LAN-A  WPA+WPA2/PSK x      - / -
                DrayTek-LAN-B  WPA+WPA2/PSK x      - / -
1 -            -             -             -             -
2 forcarrie    DrayTek        Disable       x          - / -
3 -            -             -             -             -
4 -            -             -             -             -

```

Telnet Command: apm cache

This command is used to display or remove the information of registered VigorAP, including MAC address, name, and authentication. Up to 30 entries of registered information can be stored and displayed.

apm cache [*show*]

apm cache clear

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| <i>show</i> | It means to display the information related to VigorAP registered Vigor2860. |
| <i>clear</i> | It means to remove the information related to VigorAP registered Vigor2860. |

Example

```
> apm cache show
MAC          Name          Auth
-----
>
```

Telnet Command: apm lbcfg

This command allows to set parameters related to AP management control.

apm lbcfg [*set*] [*value*]

apm lbcfg[*show*]

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|---|
| <i>set</i> | It means to set the load balance configuration file for APM. |
| <i>Show</i> | It shows the configuration value. |
| [<i>value</i>] | <p>You need to type 10 numbers in this field. Each number represents different setting value.</p> <p>[1] – The first number means the load balance function. Type 1 – enable load balance, 0 – disable load balance.</p> <p>[2] – The second number means the station limit function. Type 1 –enable station limit, 0 – disable station limit.</p> <p>[3] – The third number means the traffic limit function. Type 1 – enable traffic limit, 0 – disable traffic limit.</p> <p>[4] – The fourth number means the limit num of station. Available range is 3~64.</p> <p>[5] – The fifth number means the upload limit function. Type 1 – enable upload limit, 0 – disable upload limit.</p> <p>[6] – The sixth number means the download limit function. Type 1 – enable download limit, 0 – disable download limit.</p> |

| | |
|--|--|
| | <p>[7] – The seventh number means disassociation by idle time. Type 1 – enable disassociation, 0 – disable disassociation.</p> <p>[8] – The eighth number means to enable or disable disassociation by signal strength. Type 1 – enable disassociation, 0 – disable disassociation.</p> <p>[9] – The ninth number means to determine the unit of traffic limit (for upload) 1 – Mbps 0 – kbps</p> <p>[10] – The tenth number means to determine the unit of traffic limit (for download) 1 – Mbps 0 – kbps</p> |
|--|--|

Example

```

> apm lbcfg show
apm LoadBalance Config :
1. Enable LoadBalance : 0
2. Enable station limit : 0
3. Enable traffic limit : 0
4. limit Number : 64
5. Upload limit : 0
6. Download limit : 0
7. Enable disassociation by idle time : 0
8. Enable disassociation by Signal strength : 0
9. Traffic limit unit (upload) : 0
10. Traffic limit unit (download) : 0
flag : 0
> apm lbcfg set 1 1 0 15 0 0 0 0 1 1
> apm lbcfg show
apm LoadBalance Config :
1. Enable LoadBalance : 1
2. Enable station limit : 1
3. Enable traffic limit : 0
4. limit Number : 15
5. Upload limit : 0
6. Download limit : 0
7. Enable disassociation by idle time : 0
8. Enable disassociation by Signal strength : 0
9. Traffic limit unit (upload) : 1
10. Traffic limit unit (download) : 1
flag : 49

```

Telnet Command: apm napdetect

This command is used to enable/disable AP detection function.

apm napdetect [get]

apm napdetect [set] [enable/disable AP Detection 1/0][Refresh Time].

Syntax Description

| Parameter | Description |
|--|---|
| <i>get</i> | It is used to get AP detection data from VigorAP (e.g., AP900). |
| <i>set</i> | It allows to set detect configuration to VigorAP. |
| <i>enable/disable AP Detection 1/0</i> | It is used to enable or disable the AP detection function. 0 – disable the function. 1 – enable the function. |
| <i>Refresh Time</i> | Available values are 1, 3 or 5 (minutes). |

Example

Note: To check the scanning result of AP detection, use the command of “*wl scan show*”.

```
> apm napdetect set 1 1
> wl scan show 3
Sta Ch SSID          BSSID          BssType Security Siganl(%) Beacon
Period First Detected Last Detected
 11 DrayTek-LAN-B    02:1d:aa:4c:bd:a8 AP      Mixed      26      100
 11 DrayTek-LAN-A    00:1d:aa:4f:bd:a8 AP      Mixed      42      100
Dec 09,10:35:44 Dec 09,10:35:44
```